



**PROPERTY OF UNIVERSITY  
OF WASHINGTON LIBRARIES  
GRADUATE READING ROOM  
NON-CIRCULATING**









Hamilton, Locke and Clark Series.

THE  
ANABASIS OF XENOPHON;

WITH AN

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE  
LEARNSR,

ON THE

HAMILTONIAN SYSTEM,

AS IMPROVED BY

THOMAS CLARK,

Editor of the Latin and Greek Interlinear Classics.

DAVID MCKAY COMPANY, INC.  
NEW YORK

---

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1859, by  
CHARLES DE SILVER,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern  
District of Pennsylvania

---

---

Copyright,  
CHARLES DE SILVER & SONS.  
1887.

---

*Printed in the United States of America*

## PREFACE.

---

THIS interlinear edition of the Anabasis of Xenophon has been carefully translated by the editor of the Latin and Greek series of interlinear classics. His plan is somewhat peculiar, being intermediate between the systems of Hamilton and Locke. The uncouth and frequently unintelligible sentences of Hamilton are avoided, while on the other hand the verbal and grammatical meanings are given with an accuracy fully equal to his, if not surpassing it. By this plan the sense of the text is also conveyed more precisely than is done either by the plan of Hamilton or that of Locke—every idiomatic and grammatical difficulty being completely overcome.

The work will be found of great service to the student of the Greek language, as it removes many of the difficulties so perplexing in its study.

The use of a few signs and characters, explained on another page, has, in a measure, enabled the author to accomplish what he has above set forth.

THOMAS CLARK.

(iii)

## EXPLANATIONS

---

THE union of two or more words by hyphens denotes, that they together express the meaning of one Greek word; as,

*γεγνονται.*

are-born.

When two or more words, employed to express a Greek word, are separated by one or more words placed between them, such interposition is denoted by a figure ' prefixed to the word next preceding that interposed, and another figure ' placed before the next succeeding word; as,

*οὗτω διατιθεὶς πάντας.*

'having so 'disposed all.

An English word or sentence included within parentheses ( ) is an indication that such word or sentence is not expressed in Greek; as

*ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν παρὰ Βασιλέως.*  
used-to-come to him of-the (persons sent) from (the) king.

When a word placed in parentheses is italicized, it shows that the word above it is either superfluous or not to be expressed in English; as,

*ἔθεούλετο τῷ ἀμφοτέρῳ παῖδε.*  
he-desired (the) both (his) sons.

A dash directs the word above it to be omitted in the translation; as,

*ὁ Κῦρος.*  
— Cyrus.

Where an italicized word or sentence within parentheses is followed by another word or sentence, also in parentheses, but not in italics, the latter forms the proper reading; as,

*ἐτύγχανε παρὼν.*

happened (being-present) (to-be-present).

When a word or sentence is put in brackets [ ] it serves as an explanation, in the nature of a note; but when the reading thus enclosed is to be used instead of the literal translation, a vertical line ( | ) is placed at the beginning of the reading that is to be changed; as,

*ἔχοιεν.*

| might-have (themselves) [might be].

## TESTIMONIALS

AS TO

THE MERITS OF

### The Interlinear Translation of the Classics.

---

*Testimony of celebrated men in favour of the interlineary system of translations, as being best adapted for learning a language.*

MILTON.— We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely in scraping together as much Latin and Greek as might be learned easily and delightfully in one year.

If, after some preparatory grounds of speech by their certain forms got into memory, they were led to the *praxis* thereof in some chosen short book *lessoned thoroughly to them*, [that is, read and translated to them], which would bring the whole language quickly into their power. This I take to be the most natural and most profitable way of learning languages.

[Children] should begin with the chief and necessary rules of some good grammar, either that now used, or any better; and while this is doing, their speech is to be fashioned to a distinct and clear pronunciation, as near as may be to the Italian, especially in the vowels. Next, to make them expert in the usefulest points of grammar, some easy and delightful book should be read to them.

[By this, Milton means that the teacher should read some easy Latin book to his pupils, and translate and explain it repeatedly, until they understand such Latin book, and can themselves translate it.]

JOHN LOCKE, author of the "Essay on the Human Understanding." — When I consider what ado is made about a little Latin and Greek, how many years are spent in it, and what a noise and business it makes to no purpose, I can hardly forbear thinking that the parents of children still live in fear of the schoolmaster's rod, which they look on as the only instrument of education; as a language or two to be his whole business. How else is it possible that a child should be chained to the oar, seven, eight, or ten of the best years of his life, to get a language or two, which, I think, might be had at a great deal cheaper rate of pains and time, and be learned almost in playing.

[The first project of Locke] is to trouble the child with no grammar at all, but to have Latin as English has been, without the perplexity of rules, talked into him, for, if you will consider it, Latin is no more unknown to a child, when he comes into the world, than English; and yet he learns English without a master, rule, or grammar; and so might he Latin, too, as Tully did, if he had somebody always to talk to him in this language. And when we so often see a French woman teach an English girl to speak and read French perfectly in a year or two, without any rule of grammar, or anything else but prattling to her I cannot but wonder how gentlemen have overseen this way for their sons. If, therefore, a man could be got, who, himself speaking good Latin, would always be about your son, talk constantly to him, and suffer him to speak and read nothing else. this would be the true and genuine way, and that which I would propose, not only as the easiest and best, wherein a child might, without pains or chiding, get a language which others are wont to be whipt for at school six or seven years together; but also as that wherein, at the same time, he might have his mind and manners formed, and be instructed in all other parts of knowledge of things that fall under the senses, and require little more than memory. But if such a man cannot be got who speaks good Latin, the next best thing is to have him taught as near this way as may be, which is by taking some easy and pleasant book, such as *Æsop's Fables*, and writing the English translation (made as literal as can be) in one line, and the Latin words which answer each of them, just over it in another. These let him read every day over and over again, till he perfectly understandeth Latin; and then go on to another Fable.

till he is also perfect in that, not omitting what he is already perfect in, but sometimes reviewing that to keep it in his memory.

The formation of the verb first, and afterwards the declensions of the nouns and pronouns, perfectly learned by heart, facilitate his acquaintance with the genius and manner of the Latin tongue, which varies the signification of verbs and nouns not as the modern languages do, by particles prefixed, but by changing the last syllable. More than this of grammar, I think, we need not have, till he can read himself *Sanctii Minerva*.

As he advances in acquiring a knowledge of words, he must advance, *pari pasu*, in obtaining a thorough and critical knowledge of grammar. When by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little farther, to the reading of some other easy Latin book, such as Justin, or Eutropius; and, to make the reading and understanding of it the less tedious and difficult to him, let him help himself with the English translation. Nor let the objection, that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one. This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning a language. For languages are only to be learned by rote; and a man who does not speak English and Latin perfectly by rote, so that having thought of the thing he would speak of, his tongue, of course without thought of rule or grammar, falls into the proper expression and idiom of that language, does not speak it well, nor is master of it. Languages were made, not by rules of art, but by accident, and the common use of the people; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that, nor anything to trust to but his memory, and the habit of speaking after the fashion learned from those that are allowed to speak properly, which, in other words, is only to speak by rote.

**SYDNEY SMITH.** — The Hamiltonian system, on the other hand, 1st. Teaches an unknown tongue by the closest interlinear translations, instead of leaving a boy to explore his way by the lexicon or dictionary. 2d. It postpones the study of grammar till a considerable progress has been made in the language, and a great degree of practical grammar has been acquired. 3d. It substitutes the cheerfulness and competition of the Lancasterian

system for the dull solitude of the dictionary. By these means a boy finds he is making a progress, and learning something from the very beginning. He is not overwhelmed with the first appearance of insuperable difficulties; he receives some little pay from the first moment of his apprenticeship, and is not compelled to wait for remuneration till he is out of his time. The student, having acquired the great art of understanding the sense of what is written in another tongue, may go into the study of the language as deeply and as extensively as he pleases. The old system aims at beginning with a depth and accuracy which many men never will want, which disgusts many from arriving even at moderate attainments, and is a less easy, and not more certain road to a profound skill in a language, than if attention to grammar had been deferred to a later period.

In fine, we are strongly persuaded that, the time being given, this system will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed. If there is any truth in this, it will make Mr. Hamilton one of the most useful men of his age; for, if there is anything which fills reflecting men with melancholy and regret, it is the wast of mortal time, parental money, and puerile happiness, in the present method of pursuing Latin and Greek.

## ANABASIS OF XENOPHON

## BOOK I.

## CHAPTER I.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται δύο παῖδες;  
Of Darius and Parysatis are-born two sons,

πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, δὲ νεώτερος  
(the) elder (indeed) Artaxerxes, (but) (the) younger

Κῦρος. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἦσθενε καὶ ὑπώπτευε  
Cyrus. After — Darius was-sick, and suspected (the)

τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἔθοιτεν τῷ ἀμφοτέρῳ  
end (of-the) (his) life, he-desired (the) both (his)

παῖδε παρεῖναι. Οἱ πρεσβύτερος μὲν  
sons to-be-present (with him). The elder indeed

οὖν ἐτύγχανε παρὼν. δὲ μεταπέμψεται  
(therefore) happened | (being-present) (to be present); but he-sends

πεται Κῦρον ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, τῆς ἐποίησε  
for Cyrus from the government, of-which 'he (had) 'made

αὐτὸν σατραπην καὶ ἀπέδειξε αὐτὸν δὲ  
him satrap, and 'he (had) 'appointed him also

στρατηγὸν πάντων, ὅσοι ἀδροίζονται εἰς  
commander of-all (the forces), as-many-as muster in

πεδίον Καστωλοῦ. Οἱ Κῦρος οὖν ἀναβαίνει  
(the) plain of-Castolus. — Cyrus therefore goes-up

λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον,  
(to his father) having-taken (with him) Tissaphernes as (a) friend.

*καὶ ἀνεβη ἔχων δὲ τριακοσίους ὄπλιτας  
and he-went-up having also (with him) three-hundred heavy-armed-men  
τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἀρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίχη  
of-the Greeks, (and) (the) commander also of-them Xenias*

**Παρθάσιον.**

(the) Parrhasian.

*\*Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης  
After — Darius died, and Artaxerxes  
κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, Τισσαφέρνης δια-  
was-established in the kingdom, Tissaphernes ca-  
βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, ὡς  
luminates — Cyrus to (the) (his) brother, as-how-that  
ἐπιβούλευοι αὐτῷ. Ο δὲ πείθεται  
he-might-be-plotting against-him. — (Artaxerxes) indeed believes  
τε καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενών.  
(this) and also he-arrests Cyrus | as-if about-killing;*

*δὲ ἦ μήτηρ  
[with the intention of putting him to death;] but (the) (his) mother  
ἔξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν, ἀποπέμπει  
having-entreathed-for-her-own-sake (pardon for) him sends*

*πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. Ο δέ ὡς ἀπῆλθε,  
(him) back to — (his) government. — But when he-departed,  
κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βουλεύεται  
(after) having-been-in-danger and disgraced, he-deliberates  
ὅπως μήποτε ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ  
how 'he-shall never 'be hereafter (dependent) on — (his)  
ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ' ἦν δύνηται βασιλεύσει ἀντ'  
brother, but if he-could he-would-reign instead  
ἔκεινον. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἦ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχη τῷ  
of-him. Parysatis indeed — the mother went-for —*

*Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα  
Cyrus, loving him more than the reigning*

*\*Ἀρταξέρξην. Οστις δέ ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν  
Artaxerxes. Whoever indeed used-to-come to him*

*τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως, οὕτω διατίθει  
of-the (persons sent) from (the) king, | 'having so 'disposed*

πάντας, ὅστε ἀπεπέμ  
 all, [having so disposed all towards himself,] that he-used-to.  
**πέτο** εἶναι φίλους αὐτῷ  
 'send (them) 'away-from-him (inclined) to-be friends to-himself  
 μᾶλλον ἢ βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δὲ ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν  
 more than 'to (the) 'king. And also he-took-care of-the  
 βαρβάρων παρ' ἔαυτῷ, ὡς τε εἰησαν οἷανοι  
 barbarians with him, in-order-that not-only they-might-be fit  
 πολεμεῖν καὶ ἔχοιεν εὖνοϊκῶς  
 to-wage-war but-also | might-have (themselves) [might be] well-disposed  
 αὐτῷ. Δέ ἦδροιζε τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν  
 to-him. But he-collected the Greek force  
 ἐπικρυπτόμενος ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, ὅπως ὅτι  
 concealing (this) as most he-could, in-order that  
 λάβοι βασιλέα ἀπαρασκευότατον. Ωδε οὐν  
 he-might-take the-king the-most-unprepared. Thus therefore  
 ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν. Οπόσας φυλακάς  
 did-he-make the collection (of troops). As-'many garrisons 'as  
 εἶχε ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, παρίγγειλε τοῖς ἑκάστοις  
 he-had in the cities, he-sent-instructions — to-each  
 φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν Πελοποννησίους ἄνδρας ὅτι  
 commander-of-them to-take Peloponnesian men as  
 πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς  
 many-as (they could) and (the) best (soldiers), inasmuch-as  
 Τισσαφέρνους ἐπιβούλεύοντος ταῖς πόλεσι. Καὶ  
 Tissaphernes is-plotting-against the cities. —  
 γὰρ αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις ἦσαν τὸ ἀρχαῖον  
 For the Ionian cities were — formerly (under the  
 Τισσαφέρνους, δεδομέναι ἐξ  
 government) of-Tissaphernes, (they) having-been-given (to him) by  
 βασιλέως, τότε δ' ἀφεστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον  
 (the) king, afterwards they-had-revolted to Cyrus  
 πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου. Δέ Τισσαφέρνης προαισ-  
 all (of them) except Miletus. But Tissaphernes having-be-  
 δόμενος ἐν Μιλήτῳ βουλευομέ-  
 forehand-perceived (that certain persons) in Miletus are-plan

νοις *ια* αύτά ταῦτα ἀποστῆναι πρὸς  
 ning — these very-same (things) | to-have-revolted [to revolt] to  
 Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δὲ  
 Cyrus, | the indeed [some indeed] of-them he-killed, | the but  
 ἔξεβαλεν. 'Ο δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαθῶν τοὺς  
 [but others] he-banished. — But Cyrus having-received | (the  
 φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα  
 fleeing) (the exiles) (and) having-collected (an) army  
 ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ  
 besieged Miletus both by land and by  
 θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειράτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἔκπεπτ-  
 sea, and he-endeavoured to-bring-back | (the) having-  
 τωκότας. Kai αὖ οὖν αὕτη ἄλλη  
 (been)-driven-out) (the exiles). And again there-was this other  
 πρόφασις αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀδροίζειν στράτευμα.  
 pretext for-him | (of-the to-collect) (for assembling) (an) army.  
 Δέ πέμπων πρὸς βασιλέα ἦξιον ὡν  
 For sending to (the) king he-requested (that) being (a)  
 ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ταῦτας τὰς πόλεις δοθῆναι  
 brother of-him, those — cities (ought) to-have-been-given  
 αἵ μᾶλλον ή τισσαφέρνην ἀρχεῖν  
 to-himself rather than (that) Tissaphernes (should) rule  
 αὐτῶν, καὶ η μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ  
 them, and — (his) mother supported him (in)  
 ταῦτα· οστε βασιλεὺς οὐκ μὲν ησδάνετο  
 this; therefore (the) king did not indeed perceive  
 τῆς επιβουλῆς πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, δὲ ἐνόμιζε αὐτὸν  
 the plot against himself, but he-thought he (Cyrus)  
 πολεμοῦντα τισσαφέρνει δαπανᾶν αμφὶ  
 fighting with-Tissaphernes spends (his means) upon  
 τὰ στρατεύματα· οστε οὐδέν ηχθετο  
 | (the) (his) armies; | therefore it-was not hated  
 αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων.  
 of-them fighting [therefore he was not displeased with their  
 being at war]. Kai γάρ ο δ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπτε βασιλεῖ  
 For — Cyrus remitted to (the) 'king

τοὺς δασμοὺς γυγνομένους ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὃν  
the tributes arising from the cities, which

Τισσαφέρνης ἐτίγχανεν ἔχων.

Tissaphernes | happened having [had].

Δ' ἀλλο στράτευμα συνελεγετο αὐτῷ ἐν  
But another army was-collected for-him in

Χερόνησῳ τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβίδου, τόνδε  
Chersonesus (in the) right-over-against Abydos, this (was)

τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἦν  
the manner (thereof) Clearchus (a) Lacedæmonian was (an)

φυγάς· ὁ Κύρος συγγενόμενος τούτῳ  
exile; — Cyrus having-become-acquainted with-this (man,

τε ἥγασθη αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ  
not-only was struck-with-admiration (for) him, but-also gives him

μυρίους δαρεικούς. Ο δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον  
ten-thousand daries. — But having-taken the gold

συνέλεξε στράτευμα ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων,  
he-collected (an) army | from these — things

καὶ δρμώμενος ἐκ Χερόνησου  
[by means thereof], and making-irruptions from (the) Chersonesus

ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξὶ, τοῖς οἰκοῦσι ὑπέρ  
he-waged-war against (the) Thracians, — (who) dwell above (the)

Ἐλλήσποντον, καὶ ὠφέλει τοῖς Ἑλληνας· καὶ  
Hellespont, and he-was-of-service to-the Greeks; and

ὅστε αἱ Ἑλλεσποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἔκοῦσαι συνεβάλ-  
so-that the Hellespontian towns willingly contri-

λοντο χρήματα αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν  
buted (the necessary) things to-him for the nourishment of-the

στρατιωτῶν. Τοῦτο δ' αὖ αὖτο τὸ στράτευμα  
soldiers. | This indeed again (was) thus — (an) army

τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ.  
being-maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was se

‘Αρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς  
surely maintained for him]. Aristippus — the Thessalian

ὃν ἐτίγχανεν αὐτῷ ξένος,  
| being happened to-him (a) guest-friend [happened to be his

καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν  
guest bound by the ties of hospitality], and being-pressed by the  
ἀντιστασιωτῶν οἴκοι ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κύρον, καὶ  
opposite-faction at-home he-goes to — Cyrus, and  
αὐτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ μισθί<sup>ν</sup>  
requests (of) him — two-thousand mercenaries, and παγ

τριῶν μηνῶν, ὡς οὕτω ἀν περιγε-  
(for them for) three months, as thus | 'he might 'have-been  
νόμνος τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.  
superior [so that he might be superior to] the opposite-faction.

Ο δὲ Κύρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρα-  
— But Cyrus gives him to (the number of) four-  
κισχιλίους καὶ μισθόν ἔξ μηνῶν, καὶ δεῖται  
thousand and pay (for) six months, and he-requests  
αὐτοῦ μὴ πρὸσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς  
of-him he-'would not first 'terminate (the strife) against  
τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἀν συμβουλεύσηται  
the opposite-faction before (that) — he-should-consult

κύτῳ. Οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ στράτευμα τρε-  
with-him [Cyrus]. | Thus — again — (an) army being

φόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ  
maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was secretly

ἐν Θετταλίᾳ. Ἐκέλευσε Πρόξενον  
maintained for him] in Thessaly. He-ordered Proxenus

δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ὄντα ξένον αὐτῷ  
— the Boeotian | being (a) guest (of) him [who was in the ties

λαβόντα πλείστους  
of hospitality with him] (that) | having-taken [having collected] as-many

ἄνδρας ὅτι παραγενέσθαι, ὡς βουλόμενος  
men as-possible to-come-to (him), as-if he-were-wishing

στρατεύεσθαι εἰς Πισίδας, ὡς, τῶν  
to-lead-an-army against (the) Pisidians, in-as-much-as, the

Πισιδῶν παρεχόντων πράγματα τῇ χώρᾳ ἔαντοι.  
Pisidians being-pretending thing in-the province of-himself

Ἐκέλευσε δὲ Σοφαινετον  
[for the Pisidians infested his territories]. He-ordered also Sophænetos

τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, τούτους  
the Stymphalian and Socrates the Achaian, these  
καὶ ὄντας ξένους, λαβόντας  
also being (his) guest-friends, (that) | having-taken [having collected]  
πλείστους ἄνδρας δτι ἐλθεῖν, ὡς  
as many men as-possible | to-have-come [to come to him], as  
πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι  
he-was-about-waging-war against-Tissaphernes with the exiles  
τῶν Μιλησίων. Καὶ οὗτοι ἐποίουν οὕτως.  
of-the Milesians. And they did so.

---

## CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἦδη πορεύεσθαι  
AFTER indeed it-seemed to-him already (time) | to-go  
ἀνω, μὲν ἐποιεῖτο  
up, [to march into the interior against his brother], — he-made  
τὴν πρόφασιν ὡς βούλομενος ἔκβαλεῖν  
(the) (this) pretext, that (he-wishing) (he was desirous) to-expel  
Πισίδας παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀδροίζει  
the Pisidians entirely from the territory; and he-collects  
ἐνταῦθα ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν  
there, as-if against these (Pisidians), the — barbarian  
καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα, καὶ παραγγέλλει τε  
and the Grecian army, and he-sends-word not-only  
τῷ Κλαιρχῷ ἥκειν λαβόντι ὅσον στράτευμας  
— to-Clearchus to-come (to him) | taking whatever army  
ἥν αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ Ἀρισ-  
here-was to-him [bringing all the forces he had] but-also — Aris-  
τίστῳ, συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς  
dip-los, (that) having-been-reconciled with — (those opposed  
οἶκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν  
to him) at-home | (to-have-sent) (to send) to himself (the  
στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε· καὶ παραγγέλλει Ξενίᾳ τῷ  
army which he-had; and he-sent-word to-Xenias the

Ἄρκαδι, ὃς προεστήκει τοῦ ξενικοῖ τῷ ταῖς  
 Arcadian, who had been commander-over the mercenaries in the  
 πόλεσι αὐτῷ, ἵκειν λαβόντα τοῖς ἄνθρας,  
 towns for-him, to-come | taking [bringing] (all) the men  
 πλὴν ὅποσοι ἦσαν ἕκανοι φυλάττειν τὰς ἀκρυπόλεις  
 except as-many-as were sufficient to-guard the citades

Ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς πολιορκοῦντας Μίλητον  
 He-called-for — also — (those) besieging Miletus  
 καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς φυγάδας στρατεύεσθαι σὺν αὐτῷ  
 and he-exhorted the exiles to-serve-as-soldiers with him.  
 ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειν,  
 having-promised to-them, if 'he-should successfully 'accomplish

ἔφ' ἀ ἐστρατεύετο, μή πρόσθεν παύσασθαι  
 (the objects) for which he-took-the-field, ||not (first) to-cease

πρὶν καταγάγοι αὐτοῖς οἰκαδε.  
 before he-might-have-led them home [he would not cease before

Οἱ δέ ἥδεως ἐπειδοντο· γάρ  
 he led them home]. — — 'They cheerfully 'obeyed (him); for  
 ἐπίστενον αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα  
 they-believed him; and having-taken — (their) arms

παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίας μὲν δὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 | were-present at [joined him at] Sardis. Xenias also —

παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις λαβὼν τοὺς  
 came to Sardis having-taken (with him) the (soldiers)

ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὄπλίτας εἰς τετρα-  
 from the towns, (being) heavy-armed-men to-the-number-of four-

χισχιλίους· Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὄπλι-  
 thousand; Proxenus — | was-present [came] having heavy-

τας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους,  
 armed-men — to-the-number-of five-hundred and a-thousand,

δὲ πεντακοσίους γυμνῆτας· Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ  
 also five-hundred light-armed; Sophænetus likewise, the

Στυμφάλιος ἔχων χιλίους ὄπλίτας· Σωκράτης  
 Stymphalian having a-thousand heavy-armed-men; Socrates

δε ἐ Αχαιὸς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους ὄπλίτας  
 also the Achaian having about five-hundred heavy-armed-men

Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς δὲ παρεγένετο ἔχων μὲν  
Pasion the Megarean also came having —

εἰς τριακοσίους ὅπλιτας, δὲ τριακοσίους  
to-the-number-of three-hundred heavy-armed-men, and three-hundred  
πελταστὰς· καὶ δὲ οὗτος ἦν καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης  
peltastæ, both he was and (also) — Socrates

τῶν στρατευομένων ἀμφὶ Μίλητον.  
(among) — (those) serving-in-the-army at Miletus

Οὗτοι μὲν ἀφίκοντο αὐτῷ εἰς Σάρδεις.  
These indeed | arrived-at to-him [joined him] at Sardis.

Τισσαφέρην δε κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ ἤγησάμενος  
Tissaphernes - having-observed these-things, and having-considered

τὴν παρασκευὴν εἶναι μείζονα ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
the preparation to-be greater than as-if against (the)

Πισίδας, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα τάχιστα ἥ  
Pisidians, he-set-out to (the) king as-speedily as

ἔδινατο, ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους ἵππεας. Καὶ  
he-could, having about five-hundred cavalry. And (the)

βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους  
king — therefore, after he-heard from Tissaphernes

τὸν στόλον Κύρου ἀντιπαρεσκενάζετο.  
(of) the military-expedition of-Cyrus began-to-prepare-himself-against-it.

Κύρος δὲ, ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα ὡρμᾶ.  
Cyrus —, | having which I-have-said [as I said] put-himself-in-

το ἀπὸ Σάδεων· καὶ ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας  
motion from Sardis; (and) he-advances through — Lydia

τρεῖς σταδμοῖς, εἴκοσι  
| three stations [three days' march], (being a distance of) twenty

καὶ δύο παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Μαιάνδρον.  
and two parasangs, to the river Maeander.

Τὸ εὖρος τούτου δύο πλεδρα·  
The breadth of-this (river was) two plethra; [about 200 feet]; (a,

γέφυρα δε ἐπὶν ἐζευγμένη ἐπτά πλοίοις.  
bridge — was-over (it) connected-together by-seven boats.

Διαβάς τοῦτοι ἐξελαίνει διὰ Φρυγίας  
Having-crossed-over this river) he-advances through Phrygia

ένα σταδιον ὄκτω παρασάγγας, εἰς  
one station [one day's march] (being) eight parasangs, to

Κολοσσάς οἰκουμένην πόλιν, εὐδαιμονα καὶ  
Colossa, (an) inhabited town, wealthy and

μεγάλην. Ενταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἑπτά ἡμέρας· καὶ  
large. Here he-remained seven days; and

Μένων ὁ Θετταλός ἦκε ἔχων χιλίους  
Men the Thessalian came (to him) having (a) thousand

ὅπλίτας καὶ τεντακοσίους πελταστὰς,  
heavy-armed-men and five-hundred peltastæ [targetiers],

Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶντας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.  
(they being) Dolopians and Aenians and Olynthians.

\*Εντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταδιοὺς  
Hence he-advances three stations [three days' march]

εἴκοσιν παρασάγγας εἰς Κελαινάς οἰκουμένην  
(making) twenty parasangs to Celænae (an) inhabited

πόλιν τῆς Φρυγίας, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαιμονα.  
town of-the Phrygians, large and wealthy

\*Ενταῦθα ἦν βασιλεία Κύρῳ  
| Here there-was (a) palace for-Cyrus, [here Cyrus had a pa-  
καὶ μέγας παράδεισος, πλήρης αγρίων θηρίων,  
lace] and (a) large park, full of-wild beasts,

ἄντεινος ἐδίρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὅποτε  
which he used-to-hunt | from horse, [on horseback], | when

βούλοιτο γυμνάσαι εἶντόν  
he-might-wish to-have-exercised [when he wished to exercise] himself

τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. Οἱ ποταμός Μαιάνδρος ῥεῖ  
— and the horses. The river Maeander flows

διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου· δὲ αἱ πηγαὶ  
through (the) middle — of-the park; | and the springs

αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων.  
of-it are from the palace; [and its springs issue from

δὲ καὶ ῥεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως Κελαινῶν.  
the palace]; and also it flows through the city of-Celænae.

\*Ἐστι δὲ καὶ ἐρυμνά βασιλεία μεγάλοι  
There-is also — ("erymna) palace 'of (the) 'great

**Βασιλέως** ἐν Κελαιναῖς, ἐπὶ ταῖς  
king [the king of Persia] in Celænæ, (situated) at the  
**πηγαῖς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Μαρσύου, ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει**  
sources of-the river Marsyas, under the citadel;  
**οὗτος δὲ καὶ βεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ**  
this (river) also — flows through the city, and  
**ἐκβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαιάνδρον· τὸ δὲ εὖρος τοῦ**  
empties into the Maeander; the — breadth of-the  
**Μαρσύου ἔστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.**  
Marsyas is twenty and five | of-feet [feet]  
**Ἐνταῦθα Ἀπόλλων λέγεται ἐκδεῖρα Μαρσύαν.**  
Here Apollo is-said to-have-flayed Marsyas  
**νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ**  
having-conquered (him) | contending — (they contending) about  
**σοφίας, καὶ κρεμάσαι τὸ δέρμα ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ**  
music, and to-have-hung-up the skin in the cave  
**ὅδεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ τοῦτο δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς**  
whence the springs (rise); from this indeed the river  
**καλεῖται Μαρσύας. Ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἀπεχώρει**  
is-called Marsyas. Here Xerxes, when he-departed  
**ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἥττηδεις τῇ μάχῃ, λέγεται**  
from — Greece having-been-defeated in-the battle, is-said  
**οἰκοδομῆσαι τε ταῦτα τα βασιλεια καὶ τὴν**  
to-have-built also this — palace and the  
**ἀκρόπολιν Κελαινῶν. Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἔμεινε**  
citadel of-Celænæ. Here Cyrus remained  
**τριάκοντα ἡμέρας καὶ Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος**  
thirty days and Clearchus the Lacedæmonian  
**φυγας ἦκε, ἔχων χιλίους ὄπλιτας, καὶ**  
exile came (to him), having a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and  
**ὅκτακοσίους Θρᾷκας πελταστὰς, καὶ διακοσίους**  
eight-hundred Thracian targetiers, and two-hundred  
**Κρῆτας τοξότας. Δὲ καὶ ἀμα Σωκράτης ὁ**  
Creten archers. And also at-the-same-time Socrates the  
**Συρακόσιος παρῆν**  
Syracusian I was-present [arrived] having  
**τριακοσίους** three-hundred

οπλίτας, καὶ Σοφαινετος ὁ Ἀρκάς, ἔχων χιλίους  
heavy-armed-men, and Sophænetus the Arcadian, having a-thousand  
όπλιτας. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κύρος ἐποίησεν  
heavy-armed-men. And here Cyrus made (un)  
ἀριθμὸν καὶ ἔξετασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν τῷ  
enumeration and (had a) review of-the Greeks in the  
παραδεῖσῳ, καὶ ἔγενοντο οἱ σύμπαντες, μὲν  
park, and they-were — all-together, (indeed)  
μίριοι καὶ χίλιοι ὄπλιται, δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς  
ten-thousand and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, but about —  
δισχιλίους πελτασταῖ.

two-thousand peltastæ [light-armed men and targetiers].

Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει δύο σταδιοὺς,  
Hence he-advances two stations [two days' march],  
δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Πέλτας, οἰκουμένη  
(making) ten parasangs to Peltæ, (a) peopled  
πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν αἷς  
city. Here he-remained three days; in which (days)  
Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκας ἔδυσε τὰ Λύκαια καὶ ἔθηκε  
Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycean-rites, and instituted (a)  
ἀγῶνα· τὰ δὲ ἀδλα ἥσαν χρυσαὶ<sup>1</sup>  
contest; [public games]; the — prizes were golden  
στλεγγίδες· καὶ δὲ Κύρος ἐθεώρει τὸν ἀγῶνα.  
strigils; and also Cyrus viewed the public-games.  
Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει δύο σταδιοὺς, δώδεκα  
Hence he-marches-forth two stations, (making) twelve  
παρασάγγας εἰς ἀγοράν Κεραμῶν,  
parasangs to (the) market-place 'of (the) Ceramians, (an)  
οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἐσχάτην  
inhabited city, (the) last (on the road to Mysia) (and)  
πρὸς τὴν Μυσία χώρα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει τρεῖς  
next-to the Mysian territory. Hence he-advances three  
σταδιοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας,  
stations, [days' march], (making) thirty parasangs,  
εἰς πεδίον Καῦστρου, οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ'  
to (the) plain of Caÿstrus, (an) inhabited city. Here

ἴμεινε πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ μισθός ὥφείλετο τοῖς  
 ae-remained five days; and pay was-due to-the  
 στρατιώταις πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ ιόντες  
 soldiers (for) more than three months, and going  
 πολλάκις ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπήτουν.  
 often | to the gates [to his quarters] they-demanded (it)  
 Δέ ὁ λέγων ἐλπίδας διῆγε  
 But — Cyrus | saying hopes [giving hopes] | passed-the-time [put  
 καὶ ἦν δῆλος ἀνιώμενος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ  
 them off], and he-was manifestly distressed; for it-was not  
 πρὸς τρόπου τοῦ Κύρου μὴ ἀποδιδόναι  
 of the-nature — of-Cyrus not to-pay  
 ἔχοντα.  
 ne-having (wherewith so to do).

<sup>1</sup>Ἐνταῦδα <sup>2</sup>Ἐπίαξα ἡ γυνή Συεννέσιος τοῦ  
 Here Epyaxa the wife of-Syennesis the  
 βασιλέως Κιλίκων ἀφικνεῖται, παρὰ  
 king <sup>1</sup>of (the) <sup>1</sup>Cilicians arrives, (on a visit) to  
 Κύρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο δοῦναι Κύρῳ πολλά χρήματα.  
 Cyrus; and she-was-said to-have-given Cyrus much money.  
 Κύρος δ' οὖν τότε ἀπέδωκε τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν  
 Cyrus — therefore then paid the army (their) wages  
 τεττάρων μενῶν. Ἡ Κιλισσα δὲ καὶ εἶχε  
 for-four months. The Cilician (queen) also — had (a)  
 φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κιλικας καὶ <sup>2</sup>Ασπεν-  
 δίους· καὶ δὲ ἐλέγετο Κύρον συγγενέσδαι τῇ  
 dians; and also it-was-said (that) Cyrus had-connexion with-the  
 Κιλίσση. <sup>1</sup>Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἔξελαίνει δύο σταδιοὺς,  
 Cilician (queen). Hence — he-marches-forth two stations,  
 δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Θύμβριον, οἰκουμένην  
 (making) ten parasangs to Thymbrium, (a) peopled  
 πόλιν. <sup>3</sup>Ἐνταῦδα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν χρήν  
 town. Here there-was, by the road(side) (a) fountain  
 ἡ καλουμένη Μίδου τοῦ βασιλέως  
 which was-called (the fountain of) Midas, the king

Φρυγιῶν, ἐφ' ἣ Μίδας λέγεται θηρεῦσαι τὸν  
of Phrygia, at which, Midas is-said to-have-captured the  
Σάτυρον, κεράσας αὐτήν οἶνῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν  
Satyr, having-mixed it [the fountain] with-wine. Hence  
ἔξελαύνει δύο σταδμοὺς δέκα παρασάγγας,  
he-marches-forth two stations (making) ten parasangs,  
εἰς Τυριαῖον οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε  
to Tyræum (an) inhabited town. Here he-remained  
τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἡ Κιλισσα λέγεται δεηδῆναι  
three days, and the Cilician (queen) is-said to-have-requested  
Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ.  
of Cyrus | to-have-shown [to show] | (the) (his) army to-her.

Οὖν βουλόμενος ἐπιδεῖξαι, ποιεῖται  
He therefore 'willing | to-have-shown [to show it], makes (a).  
ἐξέτασιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν  
review in the plains of-the Greeks and of-the  
βαρβάρων. Ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἑλληνας οὕτω  
barbarians. He-orders — the Greeks | so  
ταχθῆναι ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς.  
to-have-been-arranged [so to be marshalled] as (was the) custom for-them  
εἰς μάχην καὶ στῆναι, δὲ ἐκαστον  
in battle, and to-stand (in such order), but (that) each.  
συντάξαι τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.  
(commander) was-to-arrange | the of-himself [his own men]. | 'They-

Οὖν ἐτάχθησαν ἐπὶ τεττάρων.  
were therefore 'arranged in fours; [they were drawn up.

Μένων μὲν δὲ, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἴχε  
four deep]; Menon indeed — and | (the) (those) with him had.  
τὸ δεξιὸν, δὲ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου  
the right, but Clearchus | and the of-him [and his men]  
τὸ εὐώνυμον, οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί δὲ τὸ μέσον.  
the left, the other commanders — the centre.  
Ο Κύρος οὖν μὲν πρῶτον ἐδεώρει τοὺς βαρβάρους.  
— Cyrus therefore — first reviewed the barbarians  
οἱ δὲ παρίλανον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἥλας καὶ  
— and they-marched-past-him drawn-up in troops and.

κατὰ τάξεις, δὲ εἶτα τοὺς Ἑλλήνας  
 in companies, and afterwards (he reviewed) the Greeks  
 παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ'  
 riding-by-them in (his) chariot, and the Cilician (queen) in  
 ἄρμαμάξης. Πάντες δὲ εἶχον χαλκᾶ κράνη, καὶ  
 (a) covered-carriage. All — had brazen helmets, and  
 φοινικοῦς χιτῶνας, καὶ κυνηγίδας, καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας  
 scarlet tunics, and greaves, and the shields  
 ἐκκεκαδαρμένας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ παρῆλασε πάντας,  
 barnished. After — he-had-ridden-past all,  
 στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος,  
 having-stopped — (his) chariot in-front-of the phalanx, (and)  
 πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἔρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατη-  
 having-sent Pigres the interpreter to the command-  
 γούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι  
 ders of-the Greeks he-commanded (them) to-thrust-forward  
 τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι τὴν  
 — (their) arms, and | to-have-moved-forward [to move forward] the  
 ὅλην φάλαγγα. Οἱ δὲ προεῖπον ταῦτα  
 entire phalanx. The (commanders) — announced these  
 τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλ-  
 (things) to-the soldiers; and after it-was-sounded-with-the  
 πιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι τα ὅπλα, ἐπίεσαν.  
 trumpet, putting-forward — (their) arms, they-advanced.  
 Δὲ ἐξ τούτου προϊόντων δάσσον σὺν κραυγῇ  
 And from this going-on more-quickly with (a) shout, | (a)  
 δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις  
 running happened to-the soldiers [the soldiers commenced ran-  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. Καὶ δὲ  
 — [ing] of — their-own-accord to the tents. And also  
 πολὺς φόβος ἀλλοις τῶν βαρβάρων, καὶ  
 (there was) (a) great fear to-others of-the barbarians, and  
 τε ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφυγεν ἐξ τῆς ἄρμαμάξης, καὶ  
 — the Cilician (queen) fled from the Persian-carriage, and  
 οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἐφυγον καταλιπόντες τὰ  
 — (those) in the markets fled having-left-behind the

ωνια. δέ οἱ Ἔλληνες ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰς  
things-exposed-to-sale; but the Greeks went to the

σκηνάς σὺν γέλωτι. Δέ ἡ Κιλισσα ἴδοῦσα  
tents with laughter. (But) the Cilician (queen) having-seen

τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος  
the splendour and the discipline of-the army

ἐδαύμασε. Δέ Κύρος ἤσθη ἴδων τὸν  
was-struck-with-admiration. (But) Cyrus was-delighted seeing the

φόβον ἐκ τῶν Ἐλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους.  
fear (inspired) by the Greeks into the barbarians

\*Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει τρεῖς σταδμοῖς, εἴκοσι  
Hence he-marches-forth three stations, (making) twenty

παρασάγγας, εἰς Ἰκόνιον, ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς  
parasangs, to Iconium, (the) last town —

Φρυγίας. \*Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας.  
of-Phrygia. Here he-remained three days.

\*Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας πέντε  
Hence he-marches-forth through — Lycania five

σταδμοῖς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας. \*Ἐπείτρεψε  
stations, (making) thirty parasangs. He-permitted

τοῖς Ἐλλησι διαρπάσαι τὴν ταύτην  
the Greeks | (to-have-plundered) (to plunder) — this

χώραν, ὡς οὖσαν πολεμίαν. \*Ἐντεῦθεν Κύρος  
country, as being hostile. Hence Cyrus

ἀποπέμπει τὴν Κιλισσαν τὴν ταχίστην  
sends-away the Cilician (queen) by-the | quickest [shortest]

ὁδὸν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· καὶ συμέπεμψεν αὐτῇ  
road into — Cilicia; and he-sent-with her (the)

στρατιώτας, οὓς Μένων εἶχε, καὶ αὐτόν.  
soldiers, that Menon had, and (Menon) himself.

Κύρος δέ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἔξελαίνει διὰ Καπ-

Cyrus indeed with the others marches-forth through Cap-

παδοκίας τέτταρας σταδμοῖς, εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε  
padocia four stations, (making) twenty and five

παρασάγγας, πρὸς Δάναν οἰκουμένην πόλιν,  
parasangs, to Dana (a) peopled town

μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαιμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἐμειναν τρεῖς  
large and wealthy. Here they-remained three  
ἡμέρας. ἐν δὲ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινε Πέρσην  
days; during which (time) Cyrus put-to-death (a) Persian  
ἄνδρα Μεγαφέρνην, βασίλειον φοινικιστὸν,  
(man) Megaphernes (by name), (a) royal purple-wearer  
καὶ τινα ἔτερόν δυνάστην τῶν ὑπάρχων  
(and) a-certain other powerful-person of-the officers-high-in-command  
αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιθουλεύειν αὐτῷ.  
having-accused (him) | to-conspire to-him [of conspiring against

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν  
him]. Hence they-endeavoured to-throw-themselves into —  
Κιλικίαν. δὲ ἡ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς  
Cilicia; but the entrance was (a) road (only broad enough for a  
ἀμαξιτὸς, ισχυρῶς ὁρδία, καὶ ἀμύχανος  
single) wagon-way, very steep, and impracticable 'for (an)  
στρατεύματι εἰσελθεῖν, εἰ τις ἔκώλυε. Καὶ δε  
'army to-enter, if any-one opposed And also  
Συέννεσις ἐλέγετο εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, φυλάττων  
Syennesis was-said to-be on the heights, guarding  
τὴν εἰσβολήν. δι' ὅτι ἐμεινεν ἡμεραν ἐν  
the entrance; for which (reason) he-remained (a) day on  
τῷ πεδίῳ. Δέ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγγελος ἤκε λέγων  
the plain. But on-the next-day (a) messenger came saying  
ὅτι Συέννεσις εἴη λελοιπὼς τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ  
that Syennesis | might-be having-left [had left] the heights, after  
ἥσθετο ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα Μένωνος ἦν ἥδη ἐν  
he-perceived that the army of-Menon was already in  
Κιλικίᾳ, εἰσω τῶν ὄρέων, καὶ ὅτι ἤκουε  
Cilicia, within the mountains, and because he-heard (that)  
Ταμᾶν ἔχοντα τριάρεις τὰς Λακε-  
Tamos having galleys (namely) — (those) 'of (the) 'Lace-  
δαιμονίων καὶ Κύρου αὐτοῦ, περιπλε-  
daemonians and of-Cyrus himself, (and that) 'he (Tamos) 'was-sail-  
ούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν. Κῦρος δ' οὐ  
long-round from Ionia into Cilicia. Cyrus — therefore

THE ANABASIS OF XENOPHON.

ἀνέβη επι τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς καλίοντος, καὶ εἶδε  
ascended (on) the mountains, no-one opposing, and he-saw  
τὰς σκηνάς, οὐ οἱ Κιλικες ἐφίλαττον. Ἐντεῦθεν  
the tents, where the Cilicians kept-guard Hence  
δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς μέγα καὶ καλόν πεδίον,  
— he-descended into (a) large and beautiful plain.  
ἐπίρρυτον, καὶ ἐμπλεων παντοδαπῶν δευδρῶν καὶ  
well-watered. and (being)-full of-all-kinds of-hées and  
ἀμπέλων· καὶ δὲ φέρει πολὺ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην,  
vines; and also it-bears much sesamum, and panic,  
καὶ κέχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριδας. Ὅρος δ'  
and millet, and wheat, and barley. (A) mountain (chain)—  
ὄχυρὸν καὶ ἵψηλὸν περιέχει αὐτὸν  
strong (by nature and art) and high surrounds it  
πάντη ἐξ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.  
on-all-sides from sea to sea.

Καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τοῦτον τοῦ πεδίου ἥλασε  
Descending — through this — plain he-proceeds  
τέτταρας σταδιοῖς, πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι παρα-  
four days' march, (making) five and twenty para-  
σάγγας, εἰς Ταρσούς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαιμονα πόλιν  
sangs, to Tarsus (a) large and wealthy city  
τῆς Κιλικίας. Ἐνταῦθα ἥσαν τὰ βασιλεῖα  
— of-Cilicia. Here were the palaces  
Συεννέσιος τοῦ βασιλέως Κιλίκων· δὲ δια  
of-Syennesis the king of (the) 'Cilicians; and through (the)  
μέσης τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμός ὄνομα  
middle of-the city runs (a) river (the) name (of which is)  
Κύδνος, εὔρος δύο πλέθρον. Οἱ  
Cydnus, (the) breadth (of which is) two plethra. — (Those;  
ἔνοικοῦντες τὴν ταύτην πόλιν εξέλιπον μετὰ  
inhabiting — this city deserted (it) together-with  
Συεννέσιος εἰς ὄχυρὸν χωρίον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, πλὴν  
Syennesis for (a) fortified place on the mountains, except  
οἱ ἔχοντες τὰ καπηλεῖα· καὶ δὲ οἱ οἰκοῦντες  
— (those) having — shops; and also — (those) dwelling

εγρει την θάλατταν ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.  
near the sea at Soli and at Issus.

Ἐπίνεξα δὲ, ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος ἀφίκετο εἰς Ταρσούς  
Eryxax also, the wife of-Syennesis arrived at Tarsus  
πέντε ἡμέρας προτερα Κύρου· δὲ ἐν τῇ ὑπερβολῇ  
five days before Cyrus; but in the crossing-over

τῶν ὄρῶν, τῶν εἰς τὸ πεδίον,  
the mountains, — (namely, those which descend) to the plain,

δύο λόχοι στρατεύματος τοῦ Μένωνος  
two companies of (the) army — of-Menon

ἀπώλοντο. Οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς  
perished. — (Some) indeed said | (that while) plundering

τι κατακοπῆναι

something to-have-been-cut-to-pieces [that they had been cut to pieces

ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικῶν· δὲ οἱ  
while plundering] by the Cilicians; but — (others) (that)

ὑπολειφθέντας, καὶ οὐ δυναμέοντες εὗρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο  
being-left-behind, and not being-able to-find the rest (of the)

στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδούς εἴτα πλανωμένους  
army nor the roads after wandering-about

ἀπιλέσθαι· οὗτοι δὲ οὖν ἦσαν ἐκατὸν ὅπλιται.  
to-have-perished; these — therefore were a-hundred heavy-armed-men.

Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, ὀργιζόμενοι  
But the rest (of Menon's command) after they-arrived, enraged

διὰ τὸν ὀλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν διρραγαν  
at the destruction — (of their) fellow-soldiers plundered

τὴν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσούς, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν  
the — city — Tarsus, and the palaces — in

αὐτῇ. Κύρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,  
it. Cyrus indeed after he-entered into the city,

μετεπέμπετο τὸν Συεννέσιν πρὸς ἔαυτόν· ὃ  
sent-for — Syennesis (to come) to him; —

δ' ἐφη οὐτε πω πρότερον ἐλθεῖν εἰς χεῖρας  
but he-said | never yet before-this to-have-come into hands

οὐδενὶ<sup>ν</sup>  
[that never yet before this had he put himself in the power of] any-person

κρείττονι ἔαυτοῦ, οὐτε γέλε τότε ἰέναι  
 superior-in-power (to) himself, neither would-he then | (to-go) (go)  
 Κύρω, πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ ἤπεισε αἰτὸν, καὶ ἤλαβε  
 to-Cyrus, before — (his) wife 'brought him 'to-it, and he-received  
 πίστεις. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα, ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο  
 assurances (of safety). After — these-things, when they-met  
 ἀλλήλοις, Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ πολλὰ χρήματα  
 one-another, Syennesis (indeed) gave Cyrus many things  
 εἰς την στρατιάν, δὲ Κύρος ἐκείνῳ δῶρα, ἃ  
 for — (his) army, and Cyrus (gave) to-him gifts, which  
 νομίζεται τίμια παρὰ βασιλεῖ  
 are-accustomed-to-be-held as-valuable by (a) king (namely) (a)  
 ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον, καὶ χρυσοῦν στρεπτὸν, καὶ  
 horse having-a-golden-bridle, and a-golden twisted-collar, and  
 φέλλια, καὶ χρυσοῦν ἀκινάκην, καὶ Περσικήν στολὴν,  
 bracelets, and a-golden scimitar, and a-Persian robe,  
 καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι ἀφαρπάξεσθαι·  
 and (he agreed that) the country (was) not-hereafter to-be-plundered;  
 δὲ ἀπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἥρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα,  
 and (that they were) to-receive-back the captured slaves,  
 ἃν που ἐντυγχάνωσι.  
 if any-where they-meet-with-them.

---

## CHAPTER III

\*Ἐνταῦθα Κύρος καὶ ἡ στρατια ἔμεινε εἴκοσι  
 HERE Cyrus and the army remained twenty  
 ἡμέρας· γάρ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφασαν οὐκ ἰέναι τοῦ  
 days; | for the soldiers said not to-go —  
 πρόσω. Γάρ ἦδη  
 farther [for the soldiers refused to go any farther]. For already  
 ὑπόπτευον ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα·  
 they-suspected | to-go against (the) king; [that they were going  
 δὲ ἔφασαν οἱ  
 against the king of Persia]; and they-said (that they) 'were not

ωσδωδηται ἐπὶ τοιτῷ.      Κλέαρχος δὲ πρῶτος  
hired                    for            this (purpose),      Clearchus —      first  
 ἔβιάξετο τοις στρατιώτας αὐτοῦ  
endeavoured-to-compel | the                    soldiers            of-him [his soldiers]  
 ἴεναι· οἱ δὲ τε ἔβαλλον αὐτόν  
to-go; — but — (his men) began-to-pelt him (with stones)  
 καὶ τά ιποζύγια τά ἐκείνοις,  
and (also) the beasts-of-burden | the of-him, [belonging to him],  
 ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προιέναι.      Κλέαρχος δὲ μὲν τότε  
after he-began to-advance.      Clearchus indeed — then  
 μικρὸν ἐξεφυγε μὴ τὸ καταπετρωδῆναι.  
narrowly escaped | lest the to-have-been-stoned; [stoning to death];  
 ὑστερον δ', ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται  
at-length —, after he-knew that he-would not 'be-able  
 βιάσασθαι, συνίγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν στρατιωτῶν  
to-use-force, he-brought-together (a) meeting | of-the            soldiers  
 αὐτοῦ.      Καὶ μὲν πρῶτον ἐστώς  
if-him [of his soldiers]. And — at-first standing (before them)  
 ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον· δὲ οἱ ὄρῶντες  
he-shed-tears (for a) long time; but — (they) seeing-this  
 ἐδαίμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἰτα δὲ ἔλεξε  
wondered                    and            were-silent; afterwards — he-spoke-to-them  
 τοιάδε.  
thus.

\*Ανδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλε-  
Men                    soldiers,            'do not            'wonder            that 'I griev-  
 πᾶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασι.      Γάρ  
easily            'bear            the            present (state of)            things.      | For  
 Κῦρος ἐγένετο ξένος ἐμοὶ  
Cyrus                    became (a) guest-friend to-me [for Cyrus bound himself to  
 καὶ ἐτίμησε με, φεύγοντα  
me by the ties of hospitality] and he-honoured me, (an)            exile  
 ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος, τε τὰ ἄλλα,  
from — (my) country, | and the others, [and also in other  
 καὶ ἐδώκε μυρίους δαρεικούς  
things], and (in particular) he-gave (me) ten-thousand            darics

οὗτος ἐγώ λαβών, οὐ κατεδέμην ἐμοὶ εἰς τὸ  
 which I having-taken, 'did not 'put-by for-myself for — (my)  
 ἴδιον, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ καθηδυπάθησα, ἀλλ' ἔδαπάνω  
 own-private (use), — neither did-I-spend-it-in-luxury, but I-spent-it  
 εἰς ὑμᾶς. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπολέμησα πρὸς τοὺς  
 for you. For first — I-made-war against the  
 Θράκας, καὶ μεδ' ὑμῶν ἐτιμωρούμην ὑπέρ  
 Thracians, and together-with you I-took-vengeance (on them) for  
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἐξελαίνων αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῆς Χερσόνησου,  
 -- Greece, expelling them from the Chersonesus,  
 βούλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν τοὺς  
 (they) desiring to-take-away the land (of) the  
 Ἑλληνας ἐνοικοῦτας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κύρος ἐκάλει  
 Greeks dwelling-there. After — Cyrus called-me  
 ἐπορευόμεν, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς, ἵνα εἴ τι  
 I-went, taking you (with me), in-order-that if —  
 δέοιτο ὡφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνδ’  
 he-might-need (my assistance) I-might-help him | for (those things)  
 ὃν ἐπαδόν εὖ ὑπὲρ ἐκείνου.  
 af-which I-was-affected beneficially by him [in return for the bene-  
 'Επεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς βούλεσθε οὐ  
 ats I have received from him]. Since however you wish not  
 συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δή μοι  
 to-accompany (him), | the-necessity — (is) to-me [I am constrained]  
 ή προδόντα ὑμᾶς χρῆσθαι τῇ φιλίᾳ Κύρου,  
 either (by) deserting you | to-use the friendshin of-Cyrus,  
 ή ψευσάμενον  
 [to preserve the friendship of Cyrus], or having-deceived (him by being  
 πρὸς ἐκείνον ἰέναι μεδ' ὑμῶν. Εἰ μὲν δὴ  
 false) towards him to-go with you. | If indeed —  
 ποιέω δίκαια οἶδα οὐκ  
 I-shall-make just-things I-know not [whether indeed I shall act cor-  
 αίρομαι δ' οὐν ὑμᾶς, καὶ συ-  
 rectly, I know not] I-shall-hold — therefore (to) you, and with  
 ὑμῖν πείσομαι ὅ τι ἀν δέη. Καὶ οὐδείς  
 you will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. | And no-one

οἴπωτε ἔρεῖ, ὡς ἔγω  
 shall never 'have-said, [and no one shall ever say], that I  
 ἀγαγὼν Ἐλληνας εἰς τοὺς Βαρβάρους, προδοῖς  
 having-led Greeks among the barbarians, deserting  
 τοὺς Ἐλληνας εἰλόμεν την φιλίαν τῶν Βαρ-  
 the Greeks took-in-preference the friendship of-the bar-  
 βάρων. Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς γὰρ θέλετε πειθεσθαι  
 barbarians. But since you 'do not 'desire to-obey  
 ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ ἐπεσθαι, ἐγὼ ἔψομαι σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ  
 me nor to-follow (me), I will-follow (with) you, and  
 πείσομαι ὅ τι ἀν δέη. Γάρ νομίζω  
 will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. For I-consider  
 ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἐμοὶ καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ  
 you to-be to-me (and) (my) country, and (my) friends and (my)  
 συμμάχους, καὶ ἀν μὲν οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν  
 fellow-soldiers, and 'I may indeed 'think (that) with you (I am)  
 εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἀν ὁ, δὲ ὁν ἔρημος ὑμῶν,  
 to-be honoured wherever 'I may 'be, but being destitute of-you,  
 ἀν οἶμαι οὐκ εἶναι ἵκανὸς οἵτ' ἀν ὠφελῆσαι  
 I may 'think (myself) not to-be competent either — to-help  
 φίλον, οὐτ' ἀν ἀλέξασθαι ἔχθρὸν. Ως οὖν  
 (a) friend, or — repel (an) enemy. That therefore  
 ἐμοῦ ἰόντος, ὅπῃ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἀν, οὗτο ἔχετε  
 I am-going, where also you may (be going), then hold-to  
 τὴν γνώμην. Ταῦτα  
 — (this) opinion (that I am determined to go with you). | These-things  
 εἶπε. δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται, οἱ τε  
 he-said [thus did he speak]; and the soldiers, | — as-well  
 ἐκείνου αὐτοῦ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι,  
 of-those of-himself, [as well those of his own command], as the others,  
 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, ὅτι φαίη οὐ  
 hearing these-things, that he-should-say (that he was) not  
 πορεύεσθαι παρα βασιλέα, ἐπιγνεσαν· πλείους ḥ  
 to-march-forth against (the) king, they-applauded; more than  
 δισχίλιοι παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος,  
 two-thousand (soldiers) from — Xenias and Pasion,

λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἔστρα-  
taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage en-  
τοπεδεῖσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κύρος δὲ ἀπορῶν  
camped with Clearchus. Cyrus — being-perplexed  
τε καὶ λυπούμενος τούτοις, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέ-  
and also distressed at-these-things, sent-for — Cle-  
αρχον· ὁ δὲ ἦδελε οὐ μὲν ἵεναι, λάθρα δὲ  
archus; who however would not — go, unknown however (to)  
τῶν στρατωτῶν πέμπων ἀγγελον αὐτῷ ἐλεγε  
the soldiers, sending (a) messenger to-him, he-told (him)  
θαρρεῖν, ὡς τούτων καταστησομένων εἰς τὸ  
to-l-e-of-good-courage | as these-things being-arranged in the  
δέον· δὲ  
req uired-manner; [as those affairs would be satisfactorily arranged]; also

μεταπέμπεσθαι ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν·  
(he requested Cyrus) to-send (and again) request him

δ' αὐτὸς εἶφη  
(to come to him); but he (after being sent for again) said (that he

οὐκ ἵεναι. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς  
would) not go. After — this assembling | the  
δὲ στρατιώτας ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ τοὺς  
— soldiers of-himself, [his soldiers] and — (those)  
προσελθόντας αὐτῷ, καὶ τὸν Βουλόμενον τῶν  
having-joined him, and the desirous of-the  
ἱλλων,  
soldiers to be present), he-spoke thus (to them.)

\*Ανδρες στρατιῶται, μὲν δη δῆλον ὅτι τὰ  
Men soldiers, (it is) indeed — evident that | the (affairs)  
Κύρου ἔχει οἵτως πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ὥσπερ τὰ  
of-Cyrus hold (themselves) so to us, as —  
ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἔχεινον·  
our (affairs do) to him; [the affairs of Cyrus are in the

γὰρ οὐτε ἡμεῖς ἔτι  
same relation to us, that ours are to him]; for neither (are) we now  
στρατιῶται ἔχεινον γε ἔπει οἴ  
! (the) soldiers of-him [his soldiers] at-least after we-do not

συνεπόμεδα αὐτῷ, οὐτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι μισθοδότης  
 follow him, nor (is) he now paymaster  
 ἡμῖν. "Οτι μήντοι νομίζει ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑφ  
 to-us. That however he-thinks (himself) injured by  
 ἡμῶν οἴδα· καὶ ὥστε ωὗτοῦ μεταπεμπομένου  
 us I-know; and so-that he sending-for (me)  
 ἐδέλω οὐκ ἐλθεῖν, μὲν τὸ μέγιστον,  
 I-will not have-gone, [go], indeed (what is) the greatest,  
 αἰσχυνόμενος, ὅτι σύνοιδα ἔμαυτῷ  
 being-ashamed, because I-am-conscious to-myself (of)  
 ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν πάντα, καὶ δὲ ἐπειτα  
 having-deceived him in-all (this), and indeed then-also  
 δεδίως, μή, λαβὼν με ἐπιδῆ  
 having-feared, lest, having-seized me | he-may-have-inflicted [he may  
 δίκην, ὅν νομίζει  
 inflict] punishment, (for the things) | of-which [in which] he-thinks (him-  
 ἤδικησθαι ὑπ' ἔμοι. Οὖν δοκεῖ ἔμοι  
 self) to-have-been-injured by me. Therefore (this) seems to-me  
 εἶναι οὐχ ὥρα ἡμῖν καθεύδειν, οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν  
 to-be no time for-us to-sleep, nor to-neglect our  
 αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ, τι χρὴ ποιεῖν  
 selves but to-deliberate — what is-necessary to-do  
 ἐκ τούτων. Καὶ ἐώς τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ,  
 [from these [next]. And as (long) indeed (as) we-remain here,  
 δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι σκεπτέον, ὅπως μενοῦμεν  
 it-seems to-me to-be necessary-to-be-considered, how 'we (may) 'remain  
 ἀσφαλέστατα, εἰ τε ἥδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως  
 the-most-securely, if also (it) now seems (best) to-depart, how  
 ἀπιμεν ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ ὅπως ἔξομεν τὰ  
 we-may-depart the-most-safely, and how we-shall-have the  
 ἐπιτήδεια· γὰρ ἀνευ τούτων οὐδέν  
 necessities-of-life; for without these (necessaries) | (there is) no  
 ὕφελος οὐτε στρατηγοῦ οὐτε ·  
 advantage | neither [either] (to the) commander | nor [or] (to the)  
 ἰδιώτου.  
 private-soldier [the commander and private soldier are alike insufficient].

Δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν φίλος ἄξιος πολλοῦ  
But the man (is) indeed (a) friend worthy of-much (estimation)

ῳ ἀν τῷ φίλος, δέ χαλεπώτατος ἔχθρος,  
to-whom 'he may 'be (a) friend, but (a) most-bitter enemy,

ῳ ἀν τῷ πολέμος. ἔχει δέ καὶ δύναμιν  
to whom 'he may 'be (an) enemy; he-has — also (a) forces

καὶ πεζὸν καὶ ἵππον καὶ ναυτικὸν, ἣν  
both foot and cavalry, also (a) naval (one), which 'we

πάντες ὅμιλοι ὄρδωμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεδα· καὶ  
all alike 'see and also know; and (this is

γάρ δοκοῦμέν μοι καθῆσθαι οὐδὲ  
not strange) for we-seem to-me | to-sit [to be encamped] not-indeed

πόρρο αὐτοῦ· ὡστε ὥρα λέγειν ὃ τι τις  
far-from him; wherefore (it is) time to-say what — any-one

γιγνώσκει εἶναι ἀριστον. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἐπαύσατο.  
knows to-be better. Saying this he-finished.

'Ἐκ τούτο δ' ἀνίσταντο, οἱ μὲν ἐκ  
Upon this then (several) rose (to speak), — (some) indeed —

τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέγοντες  
— of-their-own-accord, | (about)-saying [intending to say] what they-

νωσκον, καὶ οἱ δέ ἐγκέλευστοι ὑπ'  
thought (of affairs) and — (others) indeed ordered by

ἐκείνους ἐπιδεικνύντες οἵα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία  
him [Clearachus] pointing-out what might-be the difficulty

ἀνεν τῆς γνώμης Κύρου καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι.  
without the consent of-Cyrus both to-remain and to-go.

Δε εἰς δὴ προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν  
And one namely (of those instructed) pretending earnestly-to-desire

πορεύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,  
to-proceed as speedily-as-possible to — Greece,

εἶπε, ἀλλοις στρατηγούς μὲν ἔλεσθαι  
said, (that) other commanders — | to-have-been-chosen

ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ Κλέαρχος μή  
[were to be chosen] as speedily-as-possible, if Clearachus is not

βούλεται ἀπάγειν· δέ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
willing to-lead-them-back; (that) also the necessities-of-life

ἀγοράζεσθαι, δ' ἦν ἡ ἀγορὰ ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ  
 are-to-be-bought, for there-was — (a) market in the barbarian  
 στρατείματι, καὶ συσκενάζεσθαι. δ'  
 army, and-also (the) baggage-is-to-be-packed-up; and  
 ἐλθόντας Κύρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς  
 (that they), going to-Cyrus, to-ask-for ships, in-order-that  
 ἀποπλέοιεν. εἰὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα, αἰτεῖν  
 they-may-set-sail; if however he-'do not 'give these, to-ask  
 Κύρον ἡγεμόνα, ὅσπις ἀπάξει διὰ τῆς φιλίας  
 Cyrus (for a) leader, who will-lead (them) through the friendly  
 χώρας. Ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ διδῷ ἡγεμόνα  
 countries. If however he-'does not-even give (a) leader (they are)  
 συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, καὶ  
 to-form-themselves-in-order-of-battle — as-speedily-as-possible, and  
 δὲ πέμψαι προκαταληφομένους τὰ ἄκρα,  
 also | to-have-sent hereafter preoccupying the heights, [and also  
 ὅπως μήτε  
 to send men to take possession of the heights in advance], so-that neither  
 Κύρος νήτε οἱ Κιλικες μὴ καταλαβόντες  
 Cyrus nor the Cilicians | 'may not having-seized-upon  
 φθάσωσι  
 have-occupied, [may not have anticipated us, in taking possession of these  
 ὕψη  
 ἔχομεν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ  
 heights], of-whom [the Cilicians] we-have many-men and much  
 χρήματα ἀνηρπακότες Οὗτος μὲν δὴ  
 property having-taken-them-away-from-them. Thus indeed — (in)  
 τοιαῦτα εἶπε. δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος  
 this (manner) he-spoke; but after this Clearchus  
 εἶπε τοσοῦτον.  
 spoke just-so-much.

Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω ὡς μὲν ἐμοὶ στρατη-  
 γοῦσσα ταῦτην τὴν στρατηγίαν.  
 'Let no-one of-you say that — | I (am) about-lead-  
 ing-the-army (in) this the command (thereof); [that I  
 γὰρ ἐνορῶ πολλὰ,  
 will accept the office of commander]; for I-perceive many-things

δι' α τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον ἔμοι· δ'  
on-account-of which this 'must not 'be-done by-me; but(let-nim  
ώς πείσομαι ἢ μάλιστα δυνατὸν, τῷ ἀνδρὶ<sup>say)</sup> that I-shall-obey in-as much-as possible, the man,  
ὅτι ἀν ἐλησθε, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἐπίσταμαι  
whom 'you may 'choose, that you-may-see, that also I-know-how  
ἀρχεσθαι καὶ ὡς τις μάλιστα ἄλλος  
to-be-commanded, | and even-thus — as-much-as (any) other  
ἀνδρῶπων. Μετὰ τοῦτων ἀλλος  
of-men [as well as any other man]. After this another  
ἀνέστη ἐπιδειχνὺς μὲν τὴν εἰνῆθειαν τοῦ  
arose (to speak) pointing-out — the simplicity — (of him)  
κελεύοντος αἰτεῖν τὰ πλοῖα, ὡσπερ Κύρου  
advising to-ask — (for) ships, as-if Cyrus 'would  
μὴ ποιουμένου τὸν στόλον πάλιν,  
not 'hereafter | be-making the fleet return, [order the fleet to re-  
δ' ἐπιδειχνὺς ὡς εἰνῆθες εἴη αἰτεῖν  
turn], also showing how foolish (a thing) it-would-be to-ask-for (a)  
ἡγεμόνα παρὰ τούτου φρικαλέα  
leader from this (very person) whom we-are-frustrating  
τὴν πρᾶξιν. Καὶ δὲ εἰ πιστεύσομεν τῷ  
(in) — (his) undertaking. And also if we-shall-confide in-the  
ἡγεμόνι φρικαλέα τὸν διδῷ, τι κωλύει Κύρου  
leader, whom Cyrus may give, what hinders (that) Cyrus 'may  
καὶ κελεύειν τὰ ἄκρα προκαταλαμβάνειν ἡμῖν;  
also 'order the heights | to-preoccupy for us?  
Γάρ ἐγὼ μὲν ὁκνοίην ἀτ  
[to be preoccupied for us]? For I indeed shall-be-reluctant —  
ἔμβαίνειν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, ἃ δοιη ἡμῖν,  
to-embark on (board) the vessels, which he-might-give us,  
μὴ καταδύσῃ ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι·  
lest he-should-submerge us (together) with-these — galleys  
ὅτι δοιη φοβοίμην ἐπεσθαι τῷ ἡγεμόνι  
themselves; 'I should indeed 'be-afraid to-follow the guide  
φρικαλέα δοιη, μὴ ἀγάγῃ ἡμᾶς ὅδει  
whom he-may-give, lest he-might-lead us (to a place) whence it-'wil'

οὐχ ἔσται οἶόν τε ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἀν  
not be possible — to-escape; | I-would-wish — —  
ἀπιών. Κύρου ἀκοντος, ἀπελθόν λαθεῖν  
departing. Cyrus (being) unwilling, depart to-have-concealed  
αὐτὸν·

him [I would rather, if departing against the will of Cyrus, depart  
οὐ ἔστιν οὐδυνατόν. Ἀλλ' ἐγά<sup>ν</sup>  
without his knowledge]; which is not possible. But I

φημι ταῦτα μεν εἶναι φλυαρίας. δέ μοι  
say (that) these (things) indeed are absurdities; but to-me  
δοκεῖ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι, ἐλθόντας  
it seems (that) men, who (are) fit, having-gone

πρὸς Κύρον σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτāν ἔκεινον τι  
to Cyrus with Clearchus to-ask him (for) what

βούλεται χρῆσθαι ἡμῖν· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἦ  
(purpose) he-wished to-use us; and if indeed the

πρᾶξις η̄ παραπλησία οἴαπερ καὶ  
undertaking be similar (to that) in-which-kind 'he also

τρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις, καὶ ἡμᾶς  
before employed — foreign-troops, and (that) we (should)

ἐπεσθαι, καὶ μὴ εἶναι κακίους  
follow (him), and (that we might) not be worse (than)

τῶν πρόσθεν συναναβάντων τοῖτω·  
— (those) before going-up with-him; [who before

ἐὰν δέ η̄ πρᾶξις φαίνηται μείζων  
went up with him]; but if the undertaking may-seem greater (than)

τῆς πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρα, καὶ ἐπικινδυνοτέρα,  
the former, and more-difficult, and more-dangerous,

ἀξιοῦν η̄ πείσαντα ἄγειν  
(then that we) request either (that) having-persuaded (us) to-lead

ἡμᾶς, η̄ πεισθέντα  
us (with him), or having-been-persuaded (by us) (he would allow us

ἀφίεναι πρὸς φιλίαν· γάρ οὕτω καὶ  
to-depart to (a) friendly (country); for thus also

ἐπόμενοι αἰτῶ φίλοι, καὶ ἀν ἐποίμεδα  
accompanying him 'as friends, 'we also may 'accompany (him)

πρόδυμοι καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀν ἀπίομεν  
zealous (in his cause), and leaving (him) 'we may 'leave-him  
ἰστοφαλῶς. δεῦρο ἀναγγεῖλαι ὁ  
safely; (that) here | they-have-announced [they report] —  
τι δ' ἀν λεγη πρός ταῦτα. δ' οὐδὲς  
what (he) — may say to these (things); and we  
ἀκούσαντας βουλεύεσθαι πρός ταῦτα.  
having-heard (it) to-deliberate upon these (things)

\*Ἐδοξε ταῦτα,  
[It-seemed-good (respecting) these-things, [these propositions were ap-

καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἀνδρας πέμποντι σὺν Κλε-  
approved], and having-chosen men they-send (them) with Cle-  
άρχῳ, οἱ ἡρώτων Κύρου τὰ δόξαντα  
archus, who asked Cyrus | (respecting) the (things) were-seeming  
τῇ στρατιᾷ. Ο

(good) to-the army [the questions agreed on by the army]. Who  
δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἀκοίει Ἀβροκόναν ἀνδρα  
— answered, that he-hears (that) Abrocomas (a) mar-  
ἐχθρὸν εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ,  
inmical (to him) is on the river Euphrates,

ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταδιούς. ἔφη οὖν Βού-  
being-distant twelve days'-march; he-said (that) therefore he-  
λεσθαι ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τοῦτον. καν μὲν οὐ  
desires to-go against this (Abrocomas); and-if — he-were  
ἔκει ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι τὴν δίκην  
there he-said (that) he-longed to-have-inflicted — punishment

αὐτῷ δ' ήν φείγη, ήμεις ἔκει βουλευσόμενα προς  
on-him but if he-retreat, we there will-deliberate about

ταῦτα. Οἱ αἵρετοι ἀκούσαντες δέ ταῦτα  
these-things. The deputies having-heard — these-things  
ἀγγέλλοντι τοῖς στρατιώταις. δέ τοῖς  
announce (them) to-the soldiers; but — (to them)

μὲν ήν ιποψία ὅτι ἄγει πρός  
indeed there-was suspicion that he-is-leading (them) against (the)  
βασιλέα, δέ ὅμως ἐδόκει ἐπεσθαι.  
king, but however it-seemed (to them best) to-accompany (βίᾳ)

Προραιτυῦσι δὲ μισθὸν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται  
They-ask-for-more — wages; — — Cyrus promised  
δώσειν πᾶσι ἡμιόλιον οὐ ἐφερον  
to-give-hereafter to-all the-half-more (than that) which they-had-received  
πρότερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρεῖκα  
before, (that is) in-place-of (a) daric three half-darics  
τοῖ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· δὲ ὅτι ἄγοι  
the month — 'to (each) 'soldier; but that he-might-be-leading  
ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδεὶς ἤκουσεν οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα  
(them) against (the) king, no-one heard, not-even there,  
γε ἐν τῷ φανερῷ.  
(at least) indeed in — public.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

\*Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει δύο σταδιοὺς δέκα  
HENCE (Cyrus) proceeds two days'-march (making) ten  
παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Ψάρον, τὸ εὖρος  
parasangs, to the river Psarus, the breadth  
οὗ ἦν τρία πλέδρα. \*Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει ἕνα  
of-which was three plethra. Thence he-proceeds one  
σταδιοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν  
days'-march (making) five parasangs to the river  
Πύραμον, τὸ εὖρος οὐ στάδιον. \*Ἐνταῦθεν  
Pyramus, the breadth of-which (is a) stadium. Thence  
ἔξελαίνει δύο σταδιοὺς πεντεκαΐδεκα παρ-  
he-proceeds two days'-march (making) fifteen para-  
σάγγας εἰς Ἰσσούς ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς Κιλικίας,  
sangs to Issus, the-last town — in-Cilicia,  
ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ, οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην κα  
(situated) on the sea (coast), peopled, large and  
εὐδαιμόνα. \*Ἐνταῦθα ἐμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ  
wealthy. Here they-remained three days; and  
αἱ τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε νῆες ἐκ Πελοποννήσοι  
the thirty and five ships from Peloponnesus

παρῆσαν Κύρω, καὶ ναὶ  
 [were-present (for) Cyrus, [arrived at Cyrus's camp], and (the) ad-  
 αρχος ἐπ' αὐταῖς Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος.  
 mural over them (was) Pythagoras (the) Lacedæmonian  
 Δὲ Ταμώς Αἰγύπτιος ἤγειτο αὐτῶν ἐξ Ἐφέσος·  
 But Tamos (an) Egyptian conducted them from Ephesus  
 χων πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν ἔτερας ναῖς  
 having (with him) five and twenty other ships (belonging to)  
 Κύρου, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε ἦν φίλη  
 Cyrus, with-which he-(had)-besieged Miletus when it-was friendly  
 Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ συνεπόλεμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτον.  
 to-Tissaphernes, and he-fought-with Cyrus against him.  
 Καὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος παρῆν ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 And also Cherasphos the Lacedæmonian was-present on (board)  
 τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἔχων ἑπτακοσίος  
 the ships, having-been-sent-for by Cyrus, he-having seven-hundred  
 ὀπλίτας, ὃν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ.  
 heavy-armed (soldiers), of-whom he-was-commander for Cyrus  
 Αἱ δέ νῆες ὕδρον κατὰ τὴν σκηνήν Κύρου.  
 The — ships moored opposite the tent of-Cyrus.  
 Ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες μισθοφόροι παρ'  
 Here also the Greek mercenaries, (who were) with  
 Ἀβροχομα ἀποστάντες ἥλιθον παρὰ Κύρου,  
 Abrochoma, deserting-him went to Cyrus, (in number)  
 τετρακόσιοι ὀπλίται, καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο  
 four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and accompanied-the-expedition  
 ἐπὶ βασιλεα. Ἐιτεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἓνα σταδ.  
 against (the) king. Hence be-proceeds one days'-  
 μὸν, πεντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ πύλας  
 march, (making) five parasangs to (the) gates [passes]  
 τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. Ταῦτα δ' ἦσαν  
 — of-Cilicia and — of-Syria. These — were  
 δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἐσωθεν τὸ πρὸ<sup>2</sup>  
 two walls, and (of) the — internal (one) — (that) before  
 τῆς Κιλικίας Συέννεσις καὶ φυλακή Κιλίκων  
 Cilicia. Syennesis and (a) guard of-Cilicians.

**εἴχε·** δὲ τὸ ἔξω, τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας,  
had (charge); but the external (one), — (that) before — Syria,

**ἔλεγετο** φυλακή βασιλέως φυλάττειν.  
it-was-said (that a) guard 'of (the) 'king's (soldiers) guarded-it.

**Διὰ μέσου δὲ τούτων** ποταμός  
!Through (the) middle — of-these [between these two walls] (a) river

**Κάρσος ὄνομα ῥεῖ,** εὐρος πλέθρου.  
Carsus (by) name flows, (the) breadth (being a) plerum.

**Δε ἄπαν τὸ μέσον** τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν  
But the-whole — middle (space between) the walls were

**τρεῖς στάδιοι· καὶ παρελθεῖν βίᾳ ἦν οὐ·**  
three stadia; and to-have-passed by-force was not (possible);

**γὰρ ἡ πάροδος ἦν στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη καθίκοντα**  
for the passage was narrow, and the walls reaching

**εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ὑπερθέν δ' ἦσαν ἥλιβατοι**  
to the sea, above also were impassable

**πέτραι· δὲ πύλαι ἐφειστήκεσαν ἐπὶ ἀμφοτέρους**  
rocks; and (the) passes (had) stood-by (at) each

**τοὺς τείχεσιν.** "Ενεκα ταύτης τῆς  
(of) the walls. (It was) on-account-of this —

**παρόδου** Κῦρος μετεπέμψατο τὰς ναῦς. ὅπως  
passage (that) Cyrus sent-for the fleet, so-that

**ἀποβιβάζειν ὁπλίτας εἰσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν,**  
he-might-land heavy-armed-men within and without the passes,

**καὶ βιασάμενοι παρέλθοιν τοὺς πολε-**  
and (who) having-forced (a passage) might-pass-through the ene-

**μίους, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις**  
my, if they-'might (yet) 'guard — the Syrian

**πύλαις ὅπερ δὲ Κῦρος ὤετο ποιήσειν, τὸν Ἀβρο-**  
passes which — Cyrus thought would-be-done, — Abro-

**κόμαν ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα.** Δ' Ἀβροκόμας  
comes having (a) great army. But Abrocomas

**οὐκ ἐποίησε τοῦτ', ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον**  
'did not 'do this, but after he-heard (of) Cyrus

**ούτα ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀπήλαυνε**  
being in Cilicia having-retired from Phoenicia ne-departed

παρὰ βασιλέα ἔχων ὡς ἐλέγετο τριακοντα  
to (the) king having as it-was-said | thirty

μυριάδας στρατίας.  
ten-thousands [three hundred thousand] military.

\*Εντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει διὰ Σύριας ἓνα σταδ.  
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds through Syria one days'.

μον πέντε παρασάγγας, εἰς Μυριανδρον,  
march, (making) five parasangs, to Myriandrus, (a)

πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλλάττῃ οἰκουμενην ἵπο  
town on the sea (or ast) peopled by

Φοινίκαν. Ήν δὲ ἐμπόριον τὸ χωρίον,  
Phoenicians. It was also (a) mart (for that district of) the country,

καὶ πολλαὶ ὁλκάδες ὠρμοιν αὐτόδι. \*Ἐνταῦθ  
and many ships-of-burden arrived there. Here

ἔμειναν ἑπτά ημέρας· καὶ Ξενίας, ὁ Ἀρκάς  
he-remained seven days; and (here) Xenias, the Arcadian

στρατηγός, καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεῖς, ἐμβάντες  
commander, and Pasion the Megarian, having-embarked

εἰς πλοῖον, καὶ ἐνθέμενοι τὰ ἀξια  
in (a) vessel, and having-placed-on-board — (their) effects

πλείστου, ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις  
of-the-greatest (value), they-sailed-away, as indeed to-the most

ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμοδέντες  
they-thought having-been-made-jealous-of-their-honour [the most thought,

ὅτι Κύρος εἰα τὸν  
that they were influenced by jealousy] because Cyrus allowed —

Κλεαρχον ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν,  
Clearchus to-have | the soldiers of-them, [their soldiers],

τοὺς ἀπελθόντας παρὰ Κλέαρχον, ὡς  
(namely) — (those) deserting to Clearchus, | as

ἀπιόντας πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
departing back to — Greece [when they intended to

καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα. \*Ἐπεὶ  
return to Greece] and not (march) against (the) king. | After

δὲ ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς λόγος  
— they-were invisible [after their disappearance] (a) ~~καμών~~

διῆλθε ὅτι Κῦρος διάκοι αὐτοῖς  
 went-through (the army) that Cyrus might-follow them 'with (the)  
 τριήρει· καὶ οἱ μὲν εὑχόντο αὐτοῖς  
 'galleys; and —(some) indeed prayed (that) they (might)  
 ληφθῆναι ὡς ὄντας δολίους, οἱ δ'  
 'taken as being perfidious (men), — (others) indeed  
 φόντειρον εἰ ἀλάσσοιντο. Δέ Κῦρος  
 pitied (them) if they-should-be-captured. But Cyrus  
 συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπε. Ξενίας καὶ  
 having-called-together the commanders said; Xenias and  
 Πασίωι ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς· ἀλλὰ γε  
 Pasion have-left us; but 'let-them at-least 'be  
 εὗ μέντοι ἐπιστάσθωσαν, ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδε-  
 well indeed 'assured, that they-'have neither 'fled.  
 δράκασι, γάρ οἶδα ὅπῃ οἰχονται, οὔτε  
 away (clandestinely), for I-know where they-are-going, nor  
 ἀποπέφεύγασι, γάρ ἔχω τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν  
 have-they-escaped, for I-have galleys | in-order-to have-seized  
 τὸ πλοῖον ἔκείνων. Ἀλλά, μὰ  
 the ship of-them [to capture their ship]. But, by  
 τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε διώξω αὐτοῖς· οὐδὲ  
 the gods not even-I will-follow them; nor (shall)  
 οὐδεὶς ἔρει, ὡς ἔγώ ἔως μὲν τις ἀν παρῇ  
 any-one say, that I, as-long-as indeed any-one might stay-with  
 χρᾶμαι, δ' ἐπειδὰν βούληται ἀπι-  
 (me), make-use (of their services), but after he-may-wish to-  
 ἔναι συλλαβὼν αὐτοῖς καὶ κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ  
 leave (me) having-seized them 'I both ill 'treat (them) and  
 ἀποσυλῶ τὰ χρήματα. Ἀλλὰ ιόντων,  
 despoil (them of their) — goods. But let-them-go,  
 εἰδότες ὅτι εἰσὶ κακίους  
 |they-having-known [they being conscious] that they-are worse  
 περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἔκείνους. Καίτοι γε  
 towards us than we towards them. Although 'I indeed  
 ᔁχω καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναικας αὐτῶν φρουρούμενα  
 have both (the) children and wives of-them guarded

ἐν Τράλλεσι· ἀλλ' οὐδέ στερήσονται  
at Tralles; but they-shall not-even be-deprived  
τούτων, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψοντα ἐνεκα τῆς  
of-these, but they-shall-receive (them) on-account-of — (their)  
ἀρετῆς περὶ ἐμὲ πρόσθεν. Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶπε  
good-conduct towards me formerly. And — | he indeed 'said  
ταῦτα· δέ οἱ Ἑλληνες, εἰ τις καὶ  
these; [thus did he speak]; and the Greeks, if any (one) in-fine  
ἵν αδυμότερος πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν ἀκοίοντες  
was disinclined towards the ascent [expedition] hearing  
τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου, συνεπορεύοντο ἥδιον  
the noble-conduct of Cyrus, accompanied (him) with-great-pleasure  
καὶ προδυμότερον.  
and with-greater-alacrity-of-mind.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κύρος ἔξελαίνει τέταρας  
After these (things) Cyrus proceeds four  
σταδμοῖς εἴκοσιν παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν  
days'-march (making) twenty parasangs to the  
ποταμὸν Χάλον, ὃντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου,  
river Chalus, (it) being the breadth 'of (a) 'plethrum,  
δὲ πλήρη μεγάλων καὶ τραέων ἵχσιῶν, οὓς οἱ  
and full of-large and tame fish, which the  
Σύροι ἐνόμιζον θεοὺς, καὶ οὐκ εἴων  
Syrians considered (to be) gods, and 'did not 'permit (any one)  
ἀδικεῖν οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. Αἱ δέ  
to-injure (neither them) nor the pigeons. The —  
χῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνων ἦσαν Παρυσάτιδος  
villages in which they-encamped | were of-Parysatis [belonged  
δεδομέναι εἰς ζώνην.  
to Parysatis] having-been-given (her) | for (her) girdle [for pin-money]  
Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει πέντε σταδμοῖς τριάκοντα  
Thence he-proceeds five days'-march, (making) thirty  
παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ  
parasangs to | the springs [sources] of-the river  
Δάρδητος τὸ εὖρος οὐ πλέθρου.  
Dardes the breadth of-which (is that) 'of (a) plethrum

Ἐνταῦδα ἦσαν τὰ βασιλεῖα Βελέσνος τοῦ  
Here were the palaces of Belesys | the  
ἀρξαντος Συρίας, καὶ παράδεισος, πάνυ  
having-ruled-over [the ruler] of Syria, and (a) park, very  
μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὥραι  
large and beautiful, having all, how-much-so-ever (th<sup>3</sup>) seasons  
φύουσι. Δὲ Κύρος αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ κατέκαυσε  
produce. But Cyrus 'cut it 'down and burned  
τὰ βασιλεῖα.  
the palaces.

Ἐντεῦδεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταδιοὺς πεντε-  
Thence he-proceeds three days'-march (making) fif.  
καί δεκα παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην  
teen parasangs, to the river Euphrates  
ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ  
(it) being (there) the breadth of-four stadia; and (there  
πόλις αὐτόδι Θάψακος ὄνοματι ὤκεῖτο  
was a) city there Thapsacus by-name (which) was-inhabited,  
μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαιμων. Ἐνταῦδα  
(and which was) large and wealthy. There  
ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ Κύρος μεταπεμψάμενος  
they-remained five days; and Cyrus having-sent-for  
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἐλεγεν ὅτι ἡ  
the commanders of-the Greeks, said that the  
ὅδος ἔσοιτο εἰς Βαβυλῶνα πρὸς μέγαν  
road might-hereafter-be to Babylon against (the) great  
βασιλέα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα  
king; and he-requests them to-tell these (things)  
τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ ἀναπειδεῖν ἔπεσθαι.  
to-the soldiers, and to-persuade (them) to-follow (him);  
Δ' οἱ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν  
And who | having-made [having called] (an) assembly (of the soldiers)  
ἀπίγγελλον ταῦτα. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται  
communicated these (things to them). But the soldiers  
ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς  
were-angry with-the commanders, and told them

πάλαι εἰδόντας τὰντα  
 (that) 'having already-before known these-things, (that they)  
 κρύπτειν· καὶ ἐφασαν  
 conceal (them from the soldiers); and they-said (that they would)  
 οὐκ iέναι, ἐὰν μή τις διδῷ χρήματα αὐτοῖς  
 not go, unless some-one should-give money to-them  
 ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς προτέροις ἀνα-  
 | as also (had been given) to-the former (soldiers) having-  
 βᾶσι μετὰ Κίρου  
 gone-up with Cyrus, [in like manner as had been given to the soldiers,

παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ  
who had formerly accompanied Cyrus] to the father —  
Κίρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἴόντων ἐπὶ μάχην, ἀλλὰ  
of-Cyrus, and this not going to battle, but  
τοῦ πατρὸς καλοῖντος Κίρου. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ<sup>1</sup>  
the father (merely) sending-for Cyrus. The commanders  
ἀπήγειλλον ταῦτα Κίρῳ. δὲ ὁ ἵπεσχετο  
reported these (things) to-Cyrus; and who promised  
δώσειν πέντε μενάς ἀργυρίου ἐκάστῳ ἀνδρὶ, ἐπάν  
to-give five minæ of-silver to-each man, when  
ἥκωσι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ τὸν ἐντελὴν μισθὸν  
they-arrived at Babylon, and — (their) entire pay  
μέχρι ἀν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἑλληνας πάλιν  
until 'he should place the Greeks back-again  
εἰς Ἰωνίαν. Τὸ πολὺ μὲν δὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ  
in Ionia. The most indeed — of-the Greek  
οὖτας ἐπείσθη.

**Δέ Μένων, πρὶν εἶναι δῆλον τί οἱ ἄλλοι**  
 But Menon, before | to-be [it is] evident what the other  
**στρατιῶται ποιήσουσι, πότερον ἔφονται Κύρως**  
 soldiers will-do, whether they-will-follow Cyrus  
**ἢ οὐ, συνέλλεξε τὸ στράτευμα αὐτοῦ χωρὶς**  
 or not, assembled | the army of-himself [his army] apart  
**τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.**      **Ανδρες**  
 from-the others, and spoke | these (things) [thus].      **Mes**

Εάν πεισθῆτε μοι, προτιμήσεσθε ὑπὸ Κύρου  
 if you-might-be-persuaded by-me, you-will-be-honoured by Cyrus  
 πλέον τῶν ἄλλων στρατιῶτων οὐτε  
 more (than) the other soldiers (and this) 'having neither  
 κινδυνεύσαντες, οὐτε πονήσαντες. Τί οὖν  
 'incurred-danger, nor having-laboured. What therefore  
 κελεύω ποιῆσαι: Κῦρος νῦν δεῖται  
 do-I-request (of you) | to-have-done? [to do]? Cyrus now wants  
 τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐπεσθαι ἐπὶ βασιλέα·  
 the Greeks to-accompany (him) against (the) king;  
 ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι  
 I therefore say | (that) you to-behove [that it behoves you]  
 διαβῆναι τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, πρὶν εἶναι  
 to-have-crossed the river Euphrates, before | to-be [it is]  
 δῆλον ὁ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἑλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται  
 manifest — what the other Greeks will-answer  
 Κύρῳ. Γάρ ἡν μὲν ψηφίσωνται ἐπεσθαι,  
 Cyrus. For if indeed they-should-determine-by-ballot to-follow,  
 ὑμεῖς δόξετε εἶναι αἰτιοι, ἀρξαντες τοῦ  
 (then) you will-appear to-be (the) cause, | having-begun of-the  
 διαβαῖνειν, καὶ ὑμῖν  
 crossing-over, [as having first crossed over the river], and to-you  
 ὡς οὖσι προδυμοτάτοις Κῦρος εἰσεται  
 as being most-prompt, Cyrus perceive (and acknowledge  
 χάριν, καὶ ἀποδώσει. δ' ἐπίσταται  
 the) favour, and will-repay (it); | but he-knows (how to do this)  
 εἰ καὶ τις ἄλλος.  
 if even-also any other (does); [but he knows how to reward a favour,  
 δ' ἡν οἱ ἄλλοι ἀποψησωνται,  
 as well as any other man]; but if the others should-ballot-against-it,  
 ἀπαντες μὲν ἀπιμεν εἰς τοιμπαλιν·  
 (we) all-together indeed | depart to the-contrary; [return back  
 δε ὑμῖν, ὡς μόνοις πειδομένοις πιστο-  
 again]; but you, as alone being-persuaded (and as being) most  
 τάτοις χρίσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ  
 faithful he-will-use (and employ) both in garrisons and

εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι Κύροι  
for captaincies, and-also I-know that as friends of-Cyrus

τείξεσθε οὐτινος ἀλλου ἀν δέσθε.  
you-will-obtain whatever else 'you may 'require. (The soldiers)

Ἄκουσατες ταῦτα, ἐπείδοντο, καὶ διέβησαν  
having-heard these (things), were-persuaded, and crossed-over  
πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Δέ ἐπεὶ  
before (that) the others answered. But when

Κύρος ἤσθετο διαβεβηκότας, τε  
Cyrus perceived (them) having-crossed-over (the river), 'he not-only

ἥσθη, καὶ πέμψας Γλοῦν τῷ στρατεύματι  
was-pleased, but-also having-sent Glus to-the army

εἶπεν, Ἐγώ μέν ὁ ἄνδρες, ἥδη ἐπαινῶ  
of Menon) said, I indeed O men, now praise

ὑμᾶς· δὲ μελήσει ἔμοι ὅπως καὶ ὑμεῖς  
you; | but it-shall-be-a-care to-me how also you

ἐπαινέσητε ἐμὲ,  
might-praise me, [but I will take care, that you also shall praise me],

ἡ μηκέτι νομίζετε με Κύρον. Οἱ στρατιῶται  
or no-longer think me Cyrus. The soldiers

ὄντες δὴ μὲν ἐν μεγάλαις ἐλπίσι εὐχούντο αὐτὸν  
being now indeed in great hopes | wished him  
εὔτυχησαι·

δὲ καὶ ἐλέγετο  
to-have-been-fortunate; [prayed for his success]; and also he-was-said

πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς δῶρα Μένωνι. Δέ,  
to-have-sent in-a-magnificent-manner presents to-Menon. And,

ποιήσας ταῦτα, διέβαινε· δὲ καὶ  
having-done these (things), he-crossed-over (the river); and also

ἵπαν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα συνείπετο αὐτῷ. Καὶ  
all the other army followed him. And

οὐδεὶς τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν  
no-one — (of those) crossing the river

ἔβρεχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῖ  
was-wetted higher (than) the breasts by the

ποταμοῦ. Δέ οἱ Θαψακηνοὶ ἐλεγον, ὅτι οὗτος  
river. But the Thapsaceni said that this

οὐ πόταμός οὐ πάποτε γένοιτο διαβατός πεζῷ  
 (the) river never at-any-time might-be passable on-foot  
 εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις· ἀ 'Αβρό-  
 ς if not [except] then, but (always) in-boats; which Abro-  
 κόμας προιών τότε κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα Κῦρος  
 comes going-before 'had then 'burnt, that Cyrus  
 μὴ διαβῇ. Δὴ ἐδόκει εἶναι  
 'might not 'cross-over (the river). (This) then seemed to-be (a)  
 θεῖον. καὶ τὸν πόταμὸν σαφῶς ὑπο-  
 divine (interposition), and (that) the river manifestly re-  
 χωρῆσαι Κύρω ως βασιλεύσοντι. Ἐντεῦθεν  
 ceded for-Cyrus as about-reigning. Hence  
 ἔξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας ἐννέα σταδιούς,  
 ne-advances through — Syria nine days'-march, (making)  
 πεντήκοντα παρασάγγας, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς  
 fifty parasangs, and they-came to  
 τὸν πόταμὸν Ἀράξην. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν πολλαὶ  
 'he river Araxes. Here there-were many  
 κῶμαι μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. Ἐνταῦθα ἐμειναν  
 villages full of-corn and wine. Here they-remained  
 τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.  
 three days, and provisioned (the army).

---

## CHAPTER V.

\*Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας, ἔχων  
 THENCE he-marches through — Arabia, having  
 τὸν πόταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν δεξιᾷ, πέντε  
 the river Euphrates on (the) right, (making) five  
 ἔρημους σταδιούς,  
 desert stations, [five days' march through the desert], (and)  
 τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε παρασάγγας. Δε ἐν τοῖτω  
 thirty and five parasangs. But in this  
 τῷ τόπῳ ἡ γῆ ἦν μὲν πεδίον, ἀπαν  
 — district-of-country the ground was indeed (a) plain, entirely

ὅμαλὸν ὥσπερ θάλαττα, δέ πλῆρες ἀψινθίου,  
 level as (the) sea, and full of-wormwood,  
 εἰ δὲ καὶ τι ἄλλο ὕλης ἢ καλάμου  
 if indeed also any other (kind) of-underwood or of-reed  
 ἐνῆν, ἀπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα·  
 was-on-it, all were (as) odoriferous as perfumes;  
 δ' οὐδεὶς δένδρον ἐνῆν. Δέ παντοῖα  
 but no tree was-thereon. But (here there were) various  
 θηρία, πλεῖστοι μὲν ἄγριοι ὄνοι, δέ  
 wild-animals, the-most (numerous) indeed (were) wild asses, also  
 πολλοὶ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· δέ καὶ ὡτίδες  
 many | sparrows the large [ostriches]; and also bustard  
 καὶ δορκάδες ἐνῆσαν· δέ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐνίστε  
 and antelopes were-thereon; and the horsemen sometimes  
 ἐδίωκον ταῦτα τὰ θηρία. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ὄνοι  
 pursued these — wild-animals. And indeed the wild-asses  
 ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες  
 when any-one might-pursue (them), having-run-before (some distance)  
 ἔστασαν· γάρ ἐτρεχον πολὺ θάττον τῶν  
 stood-still; for they-ran much (more) quickly (than) the  
 ἵππων· καὶ πάλιν ἐπεὶ οἱ ἵπποι πλησιάζοιεν  
 horses; and again when the horses might-approach  
 ἐποίουν ταῦτὸν. καὶ ἦν οὐ λαβεῖν  
 they-did the-same (thing); and it-was not (possible) to-take  
 εἰ μὴ οἱ ἵππεῖς διαστάντες  
 (them) | if not [unless] the horsemen stationed-at-intervals  
 θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι τοῖς  
 should-hunt (them), (also) succeeding (one another) 'with (fresh) —  
 ἵπποις. Δέ τὰ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ἦν  
 'horses. And the flesh 'of — (those) 'caught was  
 παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, δέ ἀπαλώτερα.  
 like the stags' (flesh), but more-tender  
 Δέ ονδεὶς ἐλαβε Στρουθὸν: δέ οἱ τῶν  
 But no-one took (an) ostrich; | and — (those) of-the  
 ἵππεων διώξαντες ταχὺ<sup>ν</sup>  
 horsemen having-pursued [and those horsemen that pursued them] quickly

ἰπαύνοντο· γάρ ἀπεσπάτο πολὺ<sup>desisted;</sup> | for it-withdrew-itself much [for it outstripped the horse.]

**Φείγανσα,** δρόμῳ μὲν τοῖς  
men) fleeing (away from them), in-running (using) — — (its)  
ποσὶ, δε ταῖς πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ  
feet, and — (its) wings raising (these), as  
χρωμενη ἴστιο. Δε ἔστι λαμβάνειν τὰς  
using (a) sail. But it-is (possible) to-take the  
ώτιδας, ἀν τις ἀνιστῇ ταχὺ· γάρ  
bustards, if any-one should-start (them) up quickly; for  
πέτονται βραχύ ὥσπερ πέρδικες, καὶ  
they-fly (a) short (distance) like-as partridges, and  
ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. Δε τὰ κρέα αὐτῶν ἦν  
speedily ture. But the flesh of-them was  
ἥδιστα.  
very-delicious.

Πορευόμενοι δε διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφι  
Marching — through this — country they  
κοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Μάσκαν, τὸ εὔρος  
come to the river Mascas, the breadth  
πλεθριαῖον. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη<sup>(of which is a)</sup> plethrum. Here there-was (a) large  
ἐρήμη πόλις, δ' ὄνομα αὐτῇ Κερσωτή.<sup>deserted city, but (the) name (to-it) (of it was)</sup> Corsote;  
δ' αὗτη περιερθεῖτο ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα<sup>| and this (city) was-flowed-round by the Mascas 'in (a)</sup>  
κίκλῳ. <sup>'Enτaῦθ'</sup> [the river Mascas flowed round about this city]. Here  
ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.<sup>they-remained three days and provisioned (the army).</sup>  
'Εντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει τρεῖς καὶ δέκα<sup>Thence he (Cyrus) proceeds | three and ten [thirteen</sup>  
ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς <sup>ἐνενήκοντα</sup> (or days' march) (making) ninety  
παρασάγγας, ἔχων τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν  
parasangs, having the river Euphrates on (the)

δεξιᾷ, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. Ἐν τούτοις  
 right, and he-arrives at (the) Gates. In these  
 τοῖς σταδμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ήποζυγίων ἀπώλετο  
 — stations many of-the beasts-of-burden perished  
 ἵππο λιμοῦ· γάρ ἦν οὐ χόρτος οὐδὲ οὐδὲν  
 of hunger; for there-was no grass nor any  
 ἄλλο δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἀπασα χώρα ἦν  
 (other) (kind of) tree, but the entire country was  
 φυλή· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες  
 bare (being destitute of vegetation); | the — inhabiting [the  
 ὄρυττοντες καὶ τοιοῦντες  
 inhabitants of this desert district] quarrying and fashioning  
 ἀλέτας ὄνους πάρα τὸν ποταμὸν, ἥγον  
 ;grinding upper-stones [millstones] near the river, carried  
 εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ ἐπώλουν, καὶ ἀντα-  
 (them) to Babylon and sold (them), and buying  
 γοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. Οἱ δὲ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε  
 in-return corn lived (thereon). — Also corn failed  
 τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἦν οὐ πρίασθαι  
 the army, and it-was not (possible) to-buy (any)  
 εἴ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾶ ἐν τῷ Βαρ-  
 |if not [unless] in the Lydian market among the bar  
 βαρικῷ Κύρου, τὴν καπίδην ἀλείρων ἢ  
 barbarian (forces) of-Cyrus, the capithe of-wheat-flour or  
 ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. Οἱ δὲ σίγλος  
 barley-meal (being sold for) four sigli. The — siglus  
 δύναται ἐπτὰ Ἀττικούς ὅβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιοβόλιον·  
 is-worth seven Attic oboli and (a) half-obolus;  
 δὲ ἡ καπίδη ἔχώρει δύο Ἀττικὰς χοίνικας.  
 and the capithe contained two Attic choenices.  
 Οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο ἐσδίοντες κρέα  
 |Therefore the soldiers continued eating flesh

Ἐν δὲ  
 [therefore the soldiers lived entirely on flesh]. There-were also (some)  
 τοιτῶν τῶν σταδμῶν, οὓς ἤλαυνε  
 of-these — days'-marches, which he-urged-on (*εἰς τοις to make them*)

πάνι μακροῖς, ὅποτε βούλοτο διατελεσαι  
very long, whenever he-might-wish | to-finish-the-road [to ar-  
rive] either at water, or at forage. And indeed  
ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος δυσπο-  
ντε-when | narrow-place and mud having-appeared difficult-  
ρεύτου ταῖς ἀμάξαις,  
of passage for-the wagons, [a narrow and muddy road appeared,

οὐδὲ Κῦρος ἐπέστη  
which was of difficult passage for wagons], — Cyrus stood  
σὺν τοῖς ἀριστοῖς καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις περὶ<sup>1</sup>  
with the most-distinguished and most-wealthy about  
αὐτὸν, καὶ ἐταξεὶ Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα,  
him, and ordered Glus and Pigris, (that)  
λαβόντας τοὺς βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ, συνεκ-  
having-taken (a part) of-the barbarian army, to-extri-  
βιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐδόκοιν αὐτῷ  
rate the wagons. But when they-seemed to-him  
ποιεῖν σχολαίως, ὥσπερ ὁργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς  
to-do (this) tardily, as-if in-anger he-ordered the  
κρατίστους Πέρσας περὶ αὐτὸν συνεπισ-  
most-distinguished Persians about him | together-to-have-acce-  
πένσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. Ενδα δὴ ἦν θεάσασ-  
lerated [to hasten] the wagons. There then was to-be-  
δαι τι μέρος τῆς εὐταξίας. Γάρ  
seen some portion (of) — good-order (and discipline). For  
μίθαντες τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς, ὅπου ἐκαστος  
having-thrown-off — (their) purple cloaks, where each  
ἐτυχεν ἐστηκώς  
|| happened having-been-standing [happened to have stood] | they-sent-  
το, ὥσπερ τις ἀν δράμοι themselves, [they rushed], as-if | any-one might run | on a race]  
περὶ νίκης, καὶ κατὰ μάλα πρανοῦς γηλόφουν,  
for victory, and down (a) very steep hill,  
ἔχοντες τε τοίτους τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας,  
having also (on) those — rich tunics.

καὶ τις ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, δέ καὶ ἔνιοι  
 and — variegated trowsers, and also some (having)  
 στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχύλοις, καὶ ψέλλα  
 chains about — (their) necks, and bracelets  
 περὶ τὰς χερσὶν· εὐδίνς δὲ εἰσπηδήσαντες  
 about — (their) | hands; [wrists]; directly also having-leaped  
 σὺν τούτοις εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐξεκόμισαν  
 with these (ornaments) into the mud they-brought-out  
 τὰς ἀμάξας μετεώρους θάττον ἢ ὡς τις  
 the wagons lifted-up quicker than (even-thus) any-one  
 ἀν ᾔετο. Δε τὸ σύμπαν Κύρος ἦν δῆλος  
 might have-thought. And (on) the whole | Cyrus was evident  
 σπεύδων πασαν τὴν ὁδὸν  
 hastening all the road, [Cyrus was evidently hastening  
 καὶ οὐ διατρίβων, μὴ ὅπου ἐκαθέζετο  
 the march], and not delaying, unless where he-halted  
 ἔνεκα ἐπιστισμοῦ ἢ τινος ἀλλού ἀναγκαίου,  
 on-account-of provisions or of-some other necessary  
 νομίξων ὥστε μὲν θάττον ἔλθοι  
 (thing), thinking (that) by-how-much — the-more-speedily he-might-go  
 τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκεναστοτέρῳ μαχεῖσθαι  
 by-so-much the-more-unprepared (he might come) to-fight  
 βασιλεῖ, δέ ὥστε σχολαιότερον  
 (the) king, and by-how-much the-more-tardily (he might march)  
 τοσούτῳ πλέον στράτευμα συναγείρεσθαι  
 by-so-much the-more (numerous) army is-to-be-collected  
 βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δ' ἦν συνιδεῖν τῷ προσέ-  
 'for (the) 'king. | And also it-was to-perceive to-the direct-  
 χοντι τὸν νοῦν  
 ing the mind [and it might readily be perceived by any one  
 ἢ ἀρχὴν βασιλέως οὖσα  
 directing his attention to it] | the empire of (the) 'king (as) being  
 ἰσχυρὰ μὲν  
 strong indeed [that the empire of the king was indeed strong] 'from  
 πλῆθει χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων,  
 (the) 'multitude (and extent of) territory and (the number) of-men

δέ ἀσθενής τοῖς μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ  
but weak by-the lengths of-the roads and | in-the  
διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις, εἰ τις  
to-have-separated [in the dispersion] (of) — (its) forces, if any-one  
ἐποιείτο τὸν πόλεμον διὰ ταχέων.  
made — war (against it) by quick (movements).

Δέ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ Εὐφράτου, κατὰ  
But beyond the river Euphrates, through (the opposite)  
τοὺς ἔρημους σταδιούς  
— | desert stations [marches through the desert] there-was  
εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη πόλις, δέ ὄνομα  
(an) opulent and large city, and (its) name (was)  
Χαρμάνδη. Ἐκ ταίτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἤγόραζον  
Charmande. From this (city) the soldiers brought  
τὰ ἐπιτήδεια διαβαίνοντες σχεδίας ὅδε·  
the necessities-of-life crossing-over on-temporary-rafts (made) thus;  
ἐπίμπλασαν κούφου χόρτου διφθέρας ἃ,  
they-filled with | light grass [hay] (the) skins, which  
εἶχον στεγάσματα, εἴτα συνῆγον  
they-had (as) covering (for their tents), then they-united-together  
καὶ συνέσπασν ὡς τὸ  
(the edges) and | 'drew (them) 'together [sewed them] so-that he  
ἔδωρ μη ἀπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης ἐπὶ τούτη  
water (could) not (to)-touch the hay; οὐ τις  
διέβαινον, καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, τέ  
they-crossed-over, and procured the necessities, not- only  
οἶνον πεποιημένον ἐξ τῆς βαλάνου τῆς ὄποι  
wine made of the fruit — from  
τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν  
ne palm-tree, but-also corn of-pannie; for this was  
πλεῖστον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.  
most-plentiful in — (this) country.

Δέ ἐνταῦθα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε τοῦ Μέναρος  
And here the soldiers not-only — of-Menon  
καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ἀμφιλεξάντων  
but-also — (those) of-Clearchus having-been-disputing-about

τι, οὐ Κλέαρχος κρίνας τὸν τοῦ  
 something, — Clearchus | having-judged [judging] the (soldier) —  
 Μένωνος ἀδίκειν ἐνέβαλε πληγὰς.  
 of-Menon | to-do-wrong [to be in the wrong] inflicted blows (on him);  
 δεὶς ὁ ἔλθὼν πρὸς τὸ στράτευμα ἔσαντοῦ  
 but who having-gone | to the army of-himself [to the  
 ἐλεγε. δ' οἱ  
 army, to which he belonged] told [what had befallen him]; but the  
 στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ἵσχυρῶς ἔχαλε-  
 soldiers having-heard (this) were vehemently 'irri-  
 πανον, καὶ ὡργίζοντο τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. Δεὶς τῇ  
 tated, and enraged — (at) Clearchus. And the  
 αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος, ἔλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν  
 same day Clearchus, having-gone to the crossing  
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγοράν,  
 of-the river, and here having-inspected the market  
 ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἔσαντοῦ  
 he-rides-away | to the tent of-himself [to his own ten-  
 διὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος Μένωνος, σὺν ὄλιγοις  
 through the army of-Menon, | with (a) few  
 τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν. δὲ Κύρος  
 followers, namely) (the) (those) about him; but Cyrus 'had  
 οὐτω ἤκεν, ἀλλ' ἐτι προσῆλαυνε. δὲ τις  
 not-yet 'come, but still proceeded (on his march); but some-one  
 τῷ στρατιωτῶν Μένωνος σχίζων ξύλα, ὡς  
 of-the soldiers of-Menon (who was) splitting wood, as  
 εἶδε τὸν Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἵησι  
 he-saw — Clearchus riding-through (the camp), throws (at him)  
 τῇ ἀξίνῃ. καὶ αὗτος μέν ἥμαρτει  
 'with — (his) 'axe; and this (soldier) indeed missed  
 αὗτοῦ. δ' ἀλλος λίθῳ καὶ ἀλλος,  
 nim, but another (throws) 'with (a) 'stone and-also another,  
 εἴτα πολλοί, κραυγής γενομενης.  
 then many, (a) shout (at the same time) having-occurred  
 Δεὶς ὁ καταφείγει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα ἔσαντοῦ,  
 But — (Clearchus) takes-refuge | in the army of-himself

καὶ εἰδὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς  
 [in his own camp], and immediately calls [his men] to  
 τὰ ὅπλα. καὶ ἐκελευσε τοὺς μὲν ὅπλίτας  
 — arms; and he-ordered | the — heavy-armed-men  
 οὐτοῦ μεῖναι δέν  
 of-him [his heavy-armed men] | to-have-remained [to remain] having-  
 τας τας ἀστίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα. δὲ αὐτὸς  
 placed — (their) shields against — (their) knees; but he  
 λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας καὶ τοὺς ἵππεας,  
 | having-taken [taking] the Thracians and the horsemen,  
 οἵ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ  
 that were with-him in the army more than  
 τετταράκοντα, δὲ οἱ πλεῖστοι τούτων  
 forty (in number), but the most of-these (were)  
 Θρᾷκες, ἤλαυννεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὡστ'  
 Thracians, proceeded-out against the (troops) of-Menon, so (that)  
 ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ Μένωνα  
 they were-struck (with astonishment, as was) also Menon  
 αὐτὸν, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. Δέ  
 himself, and (so that they) run to — arms. But  
 καὶ οἱ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγ-  
 also — (some) stood hesitating (about) the af-  
 ματι.  
 fair (not knowing what to make of it).

‘Ο δέ Πρόξενος, γὰρ ἐτυχε προσιὼν ὕστερος,  
 — But Proxenus, | for he-happened approaching last  
 καὶ τάξις τῶν ὅπλων  
 (in order), [who brought up the rear], and (a) division of-the heavy  
 τῶν ἐπομένη αὐτῷ, ἄγων οὖν  
 armed-men following him, leading therefore (his soldiers)  
 εὐδὺς εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρου  
 immediately | into the middle of-both [into the space be-  
 ἐδεῖτο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλε-  
 tween both] stood (under) — arms, and required of — Cle  
 ἀρχον μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δέ ὁ  
 archus nat to-do these (things). But — (Clearchus)

ἐχαλέπαινεν, δτι αὐτοῦ δεῖσαντος ὅλιγον κατα-  
 was-irritated, because he having-wanted little to-have  
 λευσθῆναι, πράως λέγοι τὸ πάδος  
 been-stoned, (that he, Proxenus,) 'should mildly 'mention | the suffering  
 αὐτοῦ ἔκέλενέ τε αὐτὸν ἔξιστασδαι  
 of-him [his ill treatment] he-ordered — him (then) to-stand-out  
 ἐκ τοῦ μέσου. Δε Κύρος καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἐπήει,  
 from the middle. But Cyrus also at this came-up,  
 καὶ ἐπύδετο τὸ πρᾶγμα. δ' εὐδίς ἐλαβε  
 and inquired-into the affair; — (then) 'he immediately 'took  
 τα παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, καὶ σὺν τοῖς  
 — javelins in — (his) hands, and with — (those)  
 παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν, ἤκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ  
 present of — (his) faithful-attendants, came hastening to the  
 μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Κλέαρχε καὶ  
 midst (of them), and speaks thus. O-Clearchus and  
 Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι "Ελληνες οἱ παρόντες,  
 Proxenus, and (you) the other Greeks who are-present,  
 ιστε οὐκ ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. Γάρ εἰ συνάψετε  
 you-know not what you-are-doing. For if you-shall-join-in  
 τίνα μάχην ἄλληλοις, νομίζετε ἐμέ  
 any battle with-one-another, | think [be assured] (that) I  
 τε κατακεκόψδαι ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ  
 not-only will-instantly-be-cut-off in this (the) (very) day, but-also  
 ὑμᾶς οὐ τολὺ ὕστερον ἐμοῦ· γάρ τῶν ἡμετέρων  
 you not long after me; | for — our-affairs  
 ἔχοντων κακῶς πάντες οὗτοι  
 having badly [for if our affairs go ill] all these  
 βάρβαροι, οὓς ὁρᾶτε ἐσονται πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν  
 barbarians, that you-see will-be more-hostile to-us  
 τῶν ὀντων παρὰ βασιλεῖ  
 than) — (those barbarians) | being [who are] with (the) king.  
 'Ο Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐγένετο ἐν  
 — Clearchus hearing these (things) | became in  
 ταυτῷ καὶ ἀμφότεροι πανσά-  
 himself; [recovered self-possession]; and both (parties) having-

μενοι ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα κατὰ  
seased (from strife) placed — (their) arms in ('their appropriate)  
χώραν.  
place.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

Προϊόντων ἐντεῦθεν ἵχνα καὶ κόπρος ἵππων  
PROCEEDING thence (the) footsteps and dung of-horses  
ἐφαίνετο· ὁ στίβος δὲ εἰκάζετο εἶναι ὡς  
appeared; the track indeed was-conjectured to-be about (that)  
δισχιλίων ἵππων. Οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ  
of-two-thousand horses. These going-before burned both (the),  
χιλὸν καὶ τι ἄλλο εἴ τὴν χρήσιμον. Ὁρόντης  
fodder and any-thing else, if (it) was useful. Orontes  
δέ, Πέρσης ἀνήρ τε προσήκων γένει  
indeed, (a) Persian man not-only being-related by-birth 'to (the),  
βασιλεῖ, καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος  
'king, but-also (as respects) — warlike-affairs being-considered  
ἐν τοῖς ἀριστοῖς Περσῶν, ἐπιθουλεύει  
among the most-distinguished 'of (the) 'Persians, plots-against  
Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολενήσας  
Cyrus. and (with whom) he-'had formerly 'been-at-war,  
δὲ καταλλαγεῖς. Οὗτος εἶπε Κύρῳ εἰ  
but had-become-reconciled. This (person) said to-Cyrus, if  
δοίη αὐτῷ χιλίους ἵππεας, δτι ἐνεδρεύσας  
he-would-give him a-thousand horsemen, that having-lain-in-ambush  
ἀν τὴν κατακάνοι τοὺς ἵππεας προκατα-  
'he would either 'destroy the horsemen burning-down-every-  
καίοντας τὴν ἔλοι πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ζῶντας, καὶ  
thing-before-them, or might-take many of-them alive, | and  
κωλύσειε ἐπιόντας τοῦ καίειν,  
would-hinder (them) going-against of-the to-burn, [and would hinder  
καὶ ποιήσειεν,  
them from going and burning everything], | and would-make, [and would

ὥστε αὐτοῖς ἴδόντας τὸ στράτευμα Κύρον  
 [cause], that they having-seen the army of-Cyrus  
 μήποτε δίνασθαι διαγγεῖλαι  
 -would never | be-able | to-have-told [to tell] (it) | to (the,  
 βασιλεῖ. Δέ τῷ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα  
 | But to — Cyrus hearing these (things,  
 ἔδόκει εἶναι ὡφέλιμα,  
 it-seemed to-be advantageous, [but Cyrus hearing these prepositions  
 καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν  
 approved of them as being advantageous], and he-ordered him  
 λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἦγε-  
 to-take (a) part (of the troops) from each of-the com-  
 μόνων. Ο δ' Ὁρόντης, νομίσας τοῖς ἵππεας  
 manders. — But Orontes, having-thought the horsemen  
 εἶναι ἐτοίμους αὐτῷ, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ  
 to-be ready for-him, writes (a) letter to (the)  
 βασιλέα, ὅτι ἦξοι ἔχων πλείστους ἵππεας  
 king, that he-would-come having the-most horsemen  
 ὡς ἀν δύνηται.  
 that 'he might | be-able (to obtain); [that he would come to him with  
 ἀλλὰ ἐκέλευε  
 the greatest number of horsemen he could obtain]; but he-requested  
 φράσαι τοῖς ἵππεῦσιν ἑαυτοῦ  
 (him) | to-have-told the horsemen of-him [to tell his horsemen]  
 ὑποδέχεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς φίλιον. Καὶ ἐντῆν  
 to-receive him as (a) friend. And there | was [were]  
 ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ δὲ ὑπομνήματα πρόσδεν φιλίας  
 in the letter not-only reminiscences of-former friendships  
 καὶ πίστεως. Δίδωσι ταῦτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν  
 but-also of-fidelity (to him). He-gave this the letter  
 πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ὤετο. δέ ὁ λαβὼν  
 to (a) 'faithful man, as he-thought; but — (he) taking (the letter)  
 δίδωσι Κύρῳ. Δέ ὁ Κύρος ἀναγνοὺς αὐτὴν  
 gave (it) to-Cyrus. But — Cyrus having-read it  
 συλλαμβάνει Ὁρόντην, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν  
 arrests Orontes, and he-convokes | in the

τηνήν ἔαυτοῦ τους ἐπτά ἀριστούς  
 tent of-himself [in his own tent] the seven most-distinguished

Περσῶν τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν· καὶ ἐκέλευε τους  
 'of (the) Persians — about him; and he-ordered the

στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀγαγεῖν ὄπλιτας,  
 commanders of-the Greeks to-bring-up heavy-armed-men,

δὲ θέσδαι τούτους τὰ ὄπλα περὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 and | to-have-placed [to place] these — (in) arms around

τὴν σκηνήν αὐτοῦ. Δέ οἱ ἐποιήσαν  
 ¶the tent of-him [his tent]. And — (they) did

ταῦτα ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὄπλιτας.  
 these (things) bringing about three-thousand heavy-armed-men.

Δέ καὶ παρεκάλεσε εἰσω Κλέαρχον σύμβουλον,  
 And also he-called within Clearchus (as) counsellor,

ὃς γε ἐδόκει καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 who at-least seemed both to-himself and the others 'to-be

μάλιστα προτιμηθῆναι τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δ' ἐπεὶ  
 the-most 'honoured of-the Greeks. But after

ἐξῆλθεν ἐξῆγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ  
 he-came-out he-related to — (his) friends the trial —

Ορόντου, ὡς ἐγενέτο· γὰρ ἦν οὐκ  
 of-Orontes, how it-was (conducted); for there-was no

ἀπόρρητον. Ἐφη δέ Κύρον ἀρχειν  
 secrecy (enjoined), He-said — (that) Cyrus began

ιοῦ λόγου ὅδε·  
 the subject thus;

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς ἀνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως βου-  
 I-have-invited you (O-men) (my) friends, that de-

λενόμενος σὺν ὑμῖν πράξω περὶ τούτουι Ὁρόντου  
 liberating with you I-will-do respecting this Orontes

τοῦτο δ τι δίκαιον ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν  
 | that whatever just is [that which is just] both before gods

καὶ πρὸς ἀνδρώπων. Γάρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς  
 and before men. For first indeed — my

πατὴρ ἐδώκε τοῦτον εἶναι ὑπίκοον ἐμοί. Δ  
 father gave this (man) to-be obedient to-me. But

ἐπει ταχθείς, ὡς αὐτός ἐφη, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἔμου  
 when having-been-ordered, as 'he himself said, by (the) my  
 ἀδελφοῦ, οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων  
 brother, this (Orontes) made-war-against me (he) having  
 τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν Σάρδεσι καὶ ἐγώ προσπολεμῶν  
 the citadel in Sardis, and I making-war-against  
 αὐτὸν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι  
 him | made (it so) [carried it on so] that (it) seemed (best)  
 τούτῳ παίσασθαι τοῦ πολέμου πρὸς  
 to-this (person) to-have-put-an-end (to) the war against  
 ἐμέ, καὶ ἐλαβον δεξιὰν καὶ ἐδωκα.  
 me, and I-took (his) right-hand and gave (him mine in  
 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐφη, ὁ Ὁρέντα ἔστιν  
 friendship). After these he-said, O Orentes is-there  
 ὃ τι ἥδικησα σε; Ἀπεκρίνατο  
 |what any [any thing in which] I-have-wronged you? He-answered  
 ὅτι οὐ. Δεῖς ὁ Κύρος πάλιν ἥρωτα.  
 that (there-is) not But — Cyrus again inquired; (did you)  
 οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς σὺ αὐτὸς δύολογεῖς, ἀποστὰς  
 not-then afterwards, as you yourself confess, having-gone-over  
 εἰς Μυσούς ἀδικούμενος οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἔμου  
 to (the) Mysians, being-injured (in) no (manner) by me,  
 ἐποίεις κακῶς τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν, ὁ τι  
 act ill (against) — my territory, | what any-thing  
 ἔδίνω; Οἱ Ὁρόντης ἐφη.  
 [in whatever] you-could? — Orentes said (that he did).  
 Οὐκοῦν ἐφη ὁ Κύρος ὅποτ' αὖτις ἤγνως  
 (Did you) not-then said — Cyrus | when again you-knew  
 τὴρ δίναμιν σεαυτοῦ  
 the strength of-yourself, [when you were aware of the little a strength  
 ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν βωμόν τῆς  
 you possessed against me], coming to the altar —  
 Ἀρτέμιδος, ἐφησθα τε μεταμέλειρ σοι,  
 of-Diana, you-said (that it) not-only repented you  
 καὶ πείσας ἐμέ πάλιν ἐδωκάς μοι  
 but-also, having-persuaded me, 'you again 'gave me

πιστὰ, καὶ ἐλαβεῖς παρ' ἔμοῦ; Καὶ  
 pledges (of good faith), and received (the same) from me? And  
 ὁ Ὁρόντης ὡμολόγει ταῦτα Τί οὖν, ἐφη  
 — Orontes confessed these (things). (In) what then, said  
 ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ἵπ' ἔμοῦ,  
 — Cyrus, | having-been-injured by me, [hast thou been injured by  
 νῦν τὸ τρίτον γέγονας φανερὸς  
 me], (that) now (for) the third (time) you-have-been manifestly  
 ἐπιθεουλεύων μοι; Δὲ τοῦ Ὁρόντου εἰπόντος ὅτι  
 plotting-against me? But — Orontes saying, that  
 ἀδικηθεὶς οὐδὲν. Οὐ Κῦρος ἥρωτησεν  
 having-been-injured (in) nothing (he did so). — Cyrus asked  
 αὐτόν· Οὐιολογεῖς οὖν γεγενῆσθαι ἀδικος περὶ  
 him; You-confess therefore to-have-been unjust towards  
 ἔμε; Γάρ η ἀνάγκη, ἐφη ὁ  
 me? (I confess it) for certainly (there is a) necessity, said —  
 Ὁρόντης. Ἐκ τούτο οὐ Κῦρος πάλιν ἥρωτησεν.  
 Orontes. After this — Cyrus again asked;  
 Αν εἴτι οὖν γένοιο πολέμιος τῷ ἔμῳ ἀδελφῷ,  
 Would 'you yet then 'become hostile — to-my brother,  
 δε φίλος καὶ πιστός ἔμοι; Ο δέ ἀπεκρίνατο  
 but friendly and faithful to-me? — And he-answered,  
 ὅτι οὐδὲ εἰ γενοίμην, ω Κῦρε, ἀν εἴτι  
 that neither if I-should-become (so), O Cyrus, would-it yet-ever  
 δόξαιμι, σοὶ γε ποτε. Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος  
 seem-so, to-you at-least never. On this Cyrus  
 εἶπε τοῖς παροὺσιν. Ο ἀνηρ μὲν  
 said — (to those) present. — (This) man indeed 'has  
 μὲν πεποίηκε τοιαῦτα δε λέγει τοιαῦτα. Δέ  
 certainly 'done such-things and he-acknowledges the-same. And  
 ὑμῶν σὺ ω Κλέαρχε πρῶτος ἀπόφηνα  
 if-you (present) 'do you O Clearchus first declar  
 γνώμην, ό τι δοκεῖ σοι. Δέ Κλέαρχος  
 (your) opinion, whatever seems (right) to-you. And Clearchus  
 εἶπε τάδε. Εγώ συμβουλεύω τον τοῦτον ἀνδρα  
 spoke thus; I advise (that) — this man

ποιεῖσθαι ἐκποδῶν ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς  
oe-put out-of-the-way as quickly (as possible), that 'it-may'  
μηκέτι δέν φυλάττεσθαι τοῦτον,  
no-longer 'be-necessary to-guard-against this (person),  
ἀλλὰ οὐ σχολὴ ἡμῖν, κατὰ τὸ εἶναι  
but (that) there-may-be leisure to-us, | concerning the to-be  
τοῦτον ποιεῖν εὖ τούτους  
this-one [so far as relates to this man] to-do good (to) those  
τοὺς ἐδειλοντας φίλους. Δέ ἔφη ταίτη  
— willing (to be) friends. And he-said (that) in-this  
τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσδέσθαι. Μετά  
— opinion also the others concurred. After  
ταῦτα, Κύρου κελεύοντος, ἀπαντες καὶ οἱ  
these (things), Cyrus ordering (it), all even the  
συγγενεῖς ἀναστάντες ἐλαβον τὸν Ὁρόντην  
relations (of Orontes) rising-up took — Orontes  
τῆς ζώνης ἐπὶ θανάτῳ.  
(by) the girdle | as-to death; [in token of his being condemned  
δέ εἴτα οἷς προσετάχθη ἐξῆγον  
to death]; but then (those) to-whom it-was-commanded, led  
αὐτὸν. Δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἵπερ πρόσδεν  
him (out). But when (those) saw him who formerly  
προσεκίνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκίνησαν,  
used-to-bow-down (before him), and then (also) they-bowed-down  
καὶ περ εἰδότες, ὅτι ἀγοιτο ἐπὶ θανατον.  
(before him) although knowing, that he-might-be-led to death.  
Δέ ἐπεὶ εἰσηνέχθη τὴν σκηνὴν Ἀρταπάτου, τοῦ  
And then he-was-led to-the tent of-Artapatas, the  
πιστοτάτου τῶν σκηνητούχων Κύρου,  
most-faithful (and trusted) of-the | sceptre-bearers [ushers] of-Cyrus,  
μετὰ ταῦτα οὐδεὶς πάπιοτε εἶδε Ὁρόντην οὔτε  
after this no-one ever saw Orontes, neither  
ζῶντα οὔτε τεδινηκότα, οὐδέ οὐδεὶς εἶδως  
living nor having died, | nor any-one having-known  
ἔλεγεν ὅπως ἀπέδανε  
was-said [nor . . .uld any one of his own knowledge say] how he died

δὲ ἄλλοι εἰκαζον ἄλλως.  
 [and others conjectured otherwise [some conjectured this, and  
 Δέ οὐδεὶς τάφος αὐτοῦ τώπος  
 others that]. But no tomb of-him was ever  
 ἐφαντ. 'seen.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἔξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας  
 HENCE he-proceeds through the Babylonian (province)  
 τρεῖς σταδμοῖς δώδεκα παρασάγγας. Δ' ἐν  
 three days'-march (making) twelve parasangs. And on  
 τῷ τρίτῳ σταδμῷ Κύρος ποιεῖται, περὶ μέσας  
 the third day's march Cyrus makes, about (the) middle  
 νίκτας, ἔξετασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν Βαρβάρων,  
 of-night, a-review of-the Greeks and of-the Barbarians,  
 ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ γάρ ἐδόκει βασιλέα ἦξειν  
 on the plain; for he-thought (that the) king would-arrive  
 εἰς τὴν ἡώ ἐπιοῦσαν σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι  
 on the morning coming with the army (and)  
 μαχούμενον· καὶ μὲν ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον ἥγεισδα.  
 offering-battle; and — he-ordered Clearchus to-take-command  
 τοῦ δεξιῶν κέρως, δὲ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ  
 of-the right wing, and Menon the Thessalian of-the  
 εὐωνύμου δὲ αὐτὸς διέταξε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.  
 left; but he-himself drew-up-in-order-of-battle | the of-himself

Δέ μετὰ τὴν ἔξετασιν ἀμα  
 [his own troops]. But after the review | at-the-same-time  
 τῇ ἐποιήσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, αὐτόμολοι ἥκοντες  
 with-the coming day, [at dawn of day], deserters coming  
 παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπίγγελλον Κύρῳ  
 from (the) great king informed Cyrus  
 περι τῆς στρατιᾶς βασιλέως. Δέ Κύρος,  
 abour (the state) of-the army of (the) king. — Cyrus,

συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν  
having-assembled the generals and captains of-the

Ελλήνων, συνεβούλεύετό τε, πῶς ἀν  
Greeks, consulted (with them) not-only, how 'he might  
ποιοῦτο τὴν μάχην, καὶ αὐτὸς  
make the battle, [conduct the engagement], but-also he  
θαρρύνων τοιάδε παρῆνει. Οὐ Ελληνες ἄνδρες,  
encouraging thus exhorted (them). O Grecian men,

οὐκ ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων ἀνθρώπων  
(it is) not (for) being-in-want of-barbarian men (that)  
ἄγω ὑμᾶς συμμάχους, ἀλλὰ νομίζων  
L-lead you (with me as) auxiliaries, but thinking  
ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττονς πολλῶν  
you to-be more-efficient and better (than) many

βαρβάρων, διὰ τοῦτο  
(or a great multitude of) barbarians, 'I for this (reason alone)  
προσέλαβον. Οὖν δπῶς ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες  
'take-you-with (me). (See) then that you-will-be men  
ἀξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἡς κέκτησθε καὶ ὑπὲρ  
worthy of-the liberty which you-have-acquired and for  
ἥς ἔγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ εὖ ιστε,  
which I 'esteem you 'fortunate. For 'you well 'know,  
ὅτι ἀν ἐλοίμην τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἀντὶ πάντων  
that 'I would 'prefer — liberty before all

δν ἔχω καὶ ἀλλων πολλαπλασίων.  
(that) which I-have, and other (things) numerous

Δέ καὶ δπῶς εἰδῆτε εἰς  
(and greater). But also in-order-that 'you (may) 'know to  
οἵον ἀγῶνα ἔρχεσθε, ἔγὼ εἰδὼς  
what (kind of) contest you-come, | I having-known [I knowing

διδάξω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος μὲν πολὺ<sup>well]</sup> will-inform you. For the multitude (is) indeed large,  
καὶ ἐπίασι πολλῇ κραυγῇ. δ' ἀν ἀνάσ-  
and they-come-on 'with (a) 'great shout; but should you-

χησθε ταῦτα, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα  
have-sustained this, and (as respects) the other (things)

δοκῶ μοι αἰσχύνεσθαι γνώσεσθε οἵους τοὺς  
I-seem to-myself to-be-ashamed (that) you-will-know what the  
ἀνδρῶτους ὄντας ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἡμῖν.  
men | being [born] in — (this) country (are of use) to-us  
 Δέ ύμῶν ὄντων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ  
(as soldiers). But you being men (of courage), and  
γενομένων εὐτόλμων,  
having-become bold (and spirited), (so as to conquer in the ap-  
 ἔγὼ μὲν ποιήσω τὸν ύμῶν  
proaching engagement), I indeed will-make (the) (those) of-you  
βούλομενον ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε ἀπελθεῖν ζηλωτὸν  
desiring to-go home | to-have-departed [to-return] envied  
 τοῖς οἴκοι· δέ οἶμαι ποιήσειν πολλοὺς  
— (by those) at-home; but I-think to-make many <sup>hereafter</sup>  
 ἐλέσθαι τὰ  
| to-have-taken-for-yourselves [to prefer] the (things to be obtained)  
 παρ' ἐμοὶ ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.  
with me before — (those that may be obtained) at-home.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης Σάμιος φυγάς, δέ  
Then Gaulites (a) Samian exile, but (a)  
 πιστος Κίρω παρών εἶπε· καὶ μήν ὁ  
faithful (adherent of) Cyrus being-present said; and yet, O  
 Κῦρε τινες λέγουσι, ὅτι νῦν ὑπισχνῇ πολλὰ  
Syrus, some say, that now you-promise many (things)  
 διὰ τὸ εἶνα ἐν τοιούτῳ τοῦ προ-  
on-account-of | the to-be [being] in such (a state) of — ap-  
 σιόντος κινδύνου· δέ ἀν τι γένηται εὖ,  
proaching danger; but should any-thing happen well, [but  
 φασὶ σε οὐ μεμ-  
should success attend you], they-say | (that) you would not have-  
 ἔσθαι·  
remembered; [that you would not hereafter remember your promises]  
 δὲ εἴδει μεμνῶτε καὶ βούλοιο  
— some (also say that) neither if you-remember and also may-wish  
 δίνασθαι ἀν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνῇ. Ο Κῦρος  
will-you-be-able — to-give what you-promise. — Cyrus.

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐλεξεν· Ἄλλ' ἐστι οὐμὲν ὁ ἀνδρες  
hearing this said; But there-is to-us, O men,

ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῷα,  
|the empire the paternal, [the empire, that belonged to my father],

μεν μεχρι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οὗ  
(which) indeed (extends) so-far to (the) south where  
ἄνθρωποι οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν διὰ καῦμα,  
men are not able to-dwell by-reason-of heat,

δε μεχρι πρὸς ἄρκτον οὐ διὰ  
and so-far to (the) north where (they cannot live) for  
χειμῶνα. δε οἱ φίλοι τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σατρα-  
cold; but the friends of — my brother govern-as-

πεινόντι πάντα τα ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.  
satraps all (the countries situated) — in (the) middle of-these

Δε ἡν νικήσωμεν δει ἡνᾶς  
(northern and southern limits). But if we-conquer it-becomes us  
ποιῆσαι τους ήμετέρους φίλους ἔγκρατεις τούτων.  
to-make — our friends masters of-those

"Ωστε οὐ δέδοικα τοῦτο μὴ ἔχω  
(countries). So-that I-'have not 'feared this, lest I-have  
οὐκ τι δ δῶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν φίλων,  
not any-thing which I-might-give to-each — 'of (my) friends,  
ἀν γένηται εὖ, ἀλλὰ, μὴ ἔχω  
|should it-happen well, [should we be successful], but lest I-have

οὐκ ixanouς, οἵ δῶ. Δε  
not (friends) enough, to-whom I-might-give. But 'I-will

καὶ δώσω ἐκάστῳ οὐμῶν Ἐλλήνων χρυσοῦν  
also 'give to-each of-you Greeks (a) golden

στέφανον. Δε οἱ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,  
erown. But the (Greeks present) hearing these (things),

αὐτοὶ ἦσαν τε πολὺ προδυμότεροι,  
they were not-only much 'more (encouraged and) 'prompt-for-action,

καὶ ἔξηγελλον τοῖς ἀλλοῖς.  
but-also they-reported (what they had heard) to-the others (of the

Δε τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τινες  
Greeks). And not-only the commanders about in but-also some

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εἰσῆσαν δέξιοῦτες  
of-the other Greeks entered (his tent) desiring

εἰδέναι τι ἐσται σφίσιν, ἐάν κρατήσωσι.  
to-know what (reward) shall-be to-them, if they-should-conquer.

Δέ ὁ ἐμπιπλάς τὴν γνώμην ἀπάντων,  
But — (he) having-satisfied the minds of-all,

ἀπέπεμπε. Δέ πάντες ὅσοι περ διελεγούντο  
'sent (them) 'away. And all whoever conversed

παρεκελεύοντο αἵτω, μὴ μάχεσθαι,  
(with him) exhorted him, not to-fight (personally),

ἄλλ' τάττεσθαι ὅπισθεν ἔαντῶν.  
but to-place-himself behind (the line of battle) of-themselves.

Ἐν δε τῷ τούτῳ καιρῷ Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τὸν Κύρον  
At — — this time Clearchus inquired-of — Cyrus

πως ὡδε. Οἰει γάρ σοι ὁ Κύρε τὸν  
some-how thus; Do-you-think then (to-you), O Cyrus, (that) — (your

ἀδελφόν μαχεῖσθαι; Νη Δί εἴφη ὁ Κύρος  
brother will-fight? Yes, by-Jupiter, said — Cyrus

εἰπερ γε ἐστὶ παῖς Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος  
if indeed he-is (the) son of-Darius and Parysatis,

δὲ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, ἐγὼ οὐ λήψομαι  
and my brother, I shall not 'take (possession of

ταῦτ' ἀμαχεῖ.  
these (dominions) without-a-fight.

Ἐνταῦθα δή οὐ τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ  
There indeed (of those) (in) — under-arms (the

ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων μυρία καὶ  
number was of-the — Greeks ten-thousand ana

τετρακοσία ἀσπίς, δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πέντα-  
four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and two-thousand and five-

κόσιοι πελτασταὶ, δέ τῶν βαρβάρων  
hundred targetiers, and (the number) of-the barbarians

ιετὰ Κύρου δέκα μυριάδες, καὶ  
with Cyrus (was) | ten ten-thousands, [one hundred thousand], and

ἀμφὶ τὰ εἰκοσι δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα. Δέ  
about — twenty scythe-bearing chariots. And (the number)

τῶν πολεμίων ἐλεγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι  
 of-the enemy was-said to-be | a-hundred and twenty  
 μυριάδες, καὶ διακόσια δρεπανηφόρα  
 ten-thousands, [1,200,000], and two-hundred scythe-bearing  
 ἄρματα. Δέ ἡσαν ἔξακισχιλοι ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς,  
 chariots. And there-were six-thousand other horsemen,  
 ὃν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οἵτοι ἡσαν  
 of-whom Artageres had-the-command; these (horsemen) were  
 τεταγμένοι πρὸ βασιλεως αὐτοῦ. Δέ  
 drawn-up before (the) king himself. But 'of (the)  
 στρατεύματος τοῦ βασιλέως ἡσαν τέτταρες  
 army of-the king there-were four (being)  
 ἀρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοι καὶ ἥγεμονες, ἑκαστος  
 commanders and generals and leaders, each  
 τριάκοντα μυριάδων  
 (having under his command) | thirty ten-thousands, [300,000],  
 Ἀβροχόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας,  
 (their names were) Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobruas,  
 Ἀρβάκης. Δέ τούτων παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ  
 Arbaces. But of-these there-were-present in the battle  
 ἑνενήκοντα μυριάδες, καὶ ἑκατὸν καὶ  
 | nine-hundred ten-thousands, [900,000], and a-hundred and  
 πεντήκοντα δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα· γάρ Ἀβροχόμας  
 fifty scythe-bearing chariots; for Abrocomas  
 ἐλαύνων ἐκ Φοινίκης ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης πέντε  
 marching from Phoenicia arrived-after the battle five  
 ἡμέρας. Δέ οἱ αὐτομολίσαντες ἐκ τῶν  
 days. And — (those) having-deserted from the  
 πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως  
 enemy (that were) with (the) great king  
 ἥγελλον ταῦτα πρὸς Κύρον προ τῆς μάχης·  
 announced these (things) to Cyrus before the battle;  
 καὶ μετὰ τὴν μάχην, οἱ ὕστεροι  
 and, after the battle, — (those that) thereafter  
 ἐλήφθησαν ἥγελλον ταῦτα.  
 were-taken-prisoners reported the-same (things).

Δέ εντεῦδεν Κύρος ἔξελαίνει ἕνα σταδμὸν  
 And thence Cyrus proceeds one days'-march,  
 τρεῖς παρασάγγας παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,  
 (making) three parasangs, with-all the army,  
 καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ Βαρβαρικῷ συντε-  
 both the Greek and the barbarian, drawn-up-in-  
 ταγμένῳ· γάρ θετο βασιλέα μαχεῖσθαι  
 order-of-battle; for he-thought (that the) king would-offer-battle  
 ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· γάρ κατὰ μέσον τὸν  
 (on) that — (same) day; for about (the) middle (of) the  
 σταδμὸν ἦν τάφρος ὁρυκτή βαθεῖα, τὸ  
 days'-march there-was (found) a-ditch dug deep, the  
 εὖρος μὲν πέντε ὄργυιαι, δὲ τὸ βάδος τρεῖς  
 breadth indeed (was) five fathoms, and the depth three  
 ὄργυιαι. Δέ ἡ τάφρος παρετέτατο ἀνω διὰ τοῦ  
 fathoms. And the ditch was-extended up through the  
 πεδίον ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι τείχους  
 plain to twelve parasangs, just-to (the) walls  
 τοῦ Μηδίας. Ἔνδα δή εἰσιν αἱ διώρυχες ῥέονται  
 — of-Media. Here — are the canals flowing  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ εἰσὶ τέτταρες,  
 from the river Tigris; and there-are four (of them),  
 τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεδριαῖαι, δὲ ἵσχυρῶς  
 the — breadth (of each is) of-the-size-of-a-plethrum, and very  
 βαθεῖαι, καὶ σιταγωγά πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς·  
 deep, and corn-carrying vessels sail on them;  
 δὲ εἰσβάλλοντι εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, δὲ δια-  
 and they-discharge-their-water into the Euphrates, and they-  
 λείπουσι ἐκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ'  
 leave (between) each a-parasang, bridges also  
 ἐπειπιν. Ἡν δὲ στενή πάροδος  
 'are (thrown) 'over (them). There-was — (a) narrow passage  
 παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην, μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ  
 along the Euphrates, between the river and  
 τὴς τάφρου ως τὸ εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. Ταύτην  
 the trench about the breadth of-twenty feet. This

δε τὴν τάφρον μέγας βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἀντί<sup>α</sup>  
 — — trench (the) great king makes for (a)  
 ἔρυματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαίνοντα.  
 defence, after he-heard-of Cyrus marching-against

Ταύτην τὴν πάροδον δὴ τε Κῦρος καὶ  
 (him). This — passage indeed not-only Cyrus but-also  
 ἦ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε, καὶ ἐγένοντο εἰσω τῆς  
 the army went-through, and (so) became within the  
 τάφρου. Βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ οὖν ἐμαχέσατο  
 trench. (The) king indeed 'did not therefore 'offer-battle  
 ταύτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἀλλὰ πολλά ἵχνη καὶ ἵππων  
 on-that — day, but many tracks both of-horses  
 καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἵποχωρούντων ἤσαν φανερά.  
 and of-men retreating were visible.

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρα-  
 There Cyrus having-called Silanus the Ambra-  
 κιώτην μάντιν, ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ τρισχιλίους δαρεικοὺς,  
 elian soothsayer, gave him three-thousand daries,  
 ὅτι πρότερον τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης τῆς  
 because previously on-the eleventh (day) from that —  
 ἡμέρας θυόμενος, εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς  
 day (while) sacrificing, he-said to-him that (the) king  
 οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν. Κῦρος δ'  
 'would not fight (for) ten days; Cyrus ther-  
 εἶπεν, οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ οὐ  
 said, he-will not then thereafter fight, if he-will not  
 μαχεῖται ἐν ταύταις ταῖς ἡμεραῖς. δ' ἐὰν ἀλη-  
 'fight in these — days; but if you-speak-  
 θείσης, ὑπισχνοῦμαι σοι δέκα τάλαντα. Τοῦτο  
 the-truth, I-promise you ten talents. Thus  
 τὸ χρυσόν τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ αἱ δέκα ἡμέρα  
 — gold 'he then 'paid, when the ten days  
 παρῆλθον. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ, βασιλεὺς  
 εἴηραν. After indeed, at the trench, (the) king  
 εκώλυε τὸ στράτευμα Κύρου διαβαίνειν,  
 'prevent the army of-Cyrus to-go-through (it)

ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρω καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι  
ae-seemed both to-Cyrus and to-the others to-have-given-up  
τοῦ μάχεδαι· ὅστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος  
the (design) to-fight; so-that on-the following (day) Cyrus  
ἐπορεύετο μᾶλλον ἡμελημένως. Δὲ  
proceeded (on his march) more negligently. But  
τῇ τρίτῃ ἐποιεῖτο τὴν πορείαν τε καθήμενος  
on-the third (day) he-made the march not-only being-seated  
ἐπὶ τοῦ ἄρματος, καὶ ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ  
in — (his) chariot, but-also having before him  
ὅλγους ἐν τάξει· δὲ τὸ πολὺ  
few (men, drawn up) in order; but the greater (part of  
αὐτῷ ἐπορεύετο ἀνατεταραγμένον,  
the army) for-him proceeded-on | having-been-put-in-disorder, [without  
καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρα-  
observing any order], and many of-the arms for-the sol-  
τιώταις ἤγοντο ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν καὶ ἵποξυγίων.  
diers were-carried on wagons and beasts-of-burden.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Καὶ ἦν ἥδη τε ἀμφὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγορὰν,  
And it-was now not-only about full market (time),  
καὶ ὁ σταδμός ἦν πλησίον ἐνδα ἔμελε κατα-  
not-also the station was near where he-was-about to-ter-  
ίειν ἥνικα Παταγύας Πέρσης ἀνήρ,  
.since (the day's march) when Pataguas (a) Persian man,  
ὧν πιστῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον προφαίνεται  
of-the faithful (adherents) about Cyrus appears  
ἔλαύνων ἀνὰ χράτος τῷ ἵππῳ ἰδροῦντι·  
riding at full-speed — (with his) horse sweating,  
καὶ εὐθὺς ἔβόα πᾶσιν, οἷς ἐνετύγχανε,  
and immediately he-called-out to-all, whom he-met,  
καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς, ὅτι  
both in-barbarian [in Persian] and in-Greek. that (the

βασιλεὺς προσέρχεται σὺν πολλῷ στρατεύματι,  
king approaches with (a) large army,  
παρεσκευασμένος ὡς εἰς μάχην. Ἐνδα δὴ ἐγέ-  
prepared as for battle. Then indeed there-  
νετο πολὺς τάραχος· γὰρ οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ δὲ  
was great confusion; for the Greeks and also  
πάντες ἔδόκουν αἵτίκα ἐπιπε-  
all thought (that) 'he (the king) would suddenly fall  
σεῖσθαι σφίσιν ἀτάκτοις· Κύρος τε, καταπηδήσας  
on them in-disorder; Cyrus not-only, having-leaped-down  
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος, ἐνέδυ τὸν θώρακα, καὶ  
from the chariot, put-on — (his) breast-plate, but-also  
ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ  
mounting on — (his) horse he-took — (his) javelins  
εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, τε παρήγελλε πᾶσι τοῖς  
in — (his) hands, (and) not-only did-he-order all the  
ἄλλοις ἔξοπλίζεσθαι, καὶ ἔκαστον καδίστασθαι  
rest to-arm-themselves, but-also each-one | to-place-himself  
εἰς τὴν τάξιν ἔαυτοῦ.  
in the rank of-himself [to station himself in his own rank].

\*Ἐνδα δὴ καδίσταντο σὺν  
There indeed (in their proper stations) they-placed-themselves with  
πολλῇ σπουδῇ, Κλέαρχος μὲν ἔχων τὰ δεξιὰ  
great haste, Clearchus indeed having the right  
τοῦ κέρατος πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ, δὲ  
of-the (right) wing near the river Euphrates, but  
Πρόξενος ἔχόμενος δ' οἱ ἄλλοι  
Proxenus having (his station next to him) and the others  
μετὰ τοῦτον. Δέ Μένων καὶ τὸ  
after this (in order). But Menon and — (his)  
στράτευμα ἔσχε τὸ εἰδώνυμον κέρας τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ.  
army had the left wing of-the Greek

Δέ τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεῖς μὲν Παφλα-  
(army;. But of-the barbarian (force) horsemen namely (the) Paphla-  
γόνες εἰς χιλίους ἔστησαν παρὰ Κλέαρχον  
goniar about a-thousand stood near Clearchus

καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ·  
and the Greek peltastic (force) on the right,  
δὲ ἐν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τε Ἀριαῖος ὁ ὑπαρχος  
but on the left (was) not-only Ariæus the lieutenant  
Κύροι, καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν· Κῦρος δέ  
of-Cyrus, but-also the other barbarian (force); Cyrus also  
καὶ ἵππεis μετ' αὐτοῦ ὅσον ἔξακόσιoi,  
and (the) horsemen with him about six-hundred (were in the  
αὐτοὶ μὲν ὥπλισμένoi θώραξi καὶ  
centre), they indeed having-been-armed with-breastplates and  
παραμηρίδiois, καὶ πάντes κράνεσi πλήν Κύρου·  
armour-for-the-thighs, and all with-helmets, except Cyrus;  
Κῦρος δὲ καθίστατo εἰς τὴν μάχην ἔχων  
Cyrus indeed stationed-himself in the battle having  
τὴν κεφαλὴν ψιλὴν· δὲ καὶ λέγεται  
— (his) head bare; and (it is) also said (that)  
τοὺς ἄλλονs Πέρσas διακινδυνεύειn ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ  
the other Persians expose-themselves in — battle  
ταὶς ψιλaiς κεφαλaiς. Δὲ πάντes oī ἵππoi,  
— with-bare heads. Also all the horses, (namely)  
οἱ μετα Κύρου, εἰχον καὶ προμετω-  
— (those) with Cyrus, had both defensive-armour-on-their-  
πίδia καὶ προστερνίδia· δὲ oī ἵππeis καὶ  
foreheads and defensive-armour-for-the-breast; and the horsemen also  
εἰχον Ἑλληνικάς μαχάρias.  
had Grecian swords.

Kai ἦν ἦδη τε μέσον ἡμέρας,  
And it-was now not-only (the) middle 'of (the) 'day,  
καὶ οὖπω ἤσαν οἱ πολέμoi καταφαινεῖs· δέ  
but-also not-yet were the enemy visible; but  
ἡνίκa ἐγίγνετo δεῖλη κονιορτόs ἐφάνη, ὥσπερ  
when it-was early-afternoon a-dust appeared, like-as  
λευκή νεφέλε, δέ οὐ συχνῷ χρόνῳ ὥστερον  
(a) white cloud, but 'in no 'much time after,  
τις ὥσπερ μελανία ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπί<sup>o</sup>  
something like blackness (appeared) on the plain on

πολύ. Δέ δέ ἐγίγνοντο ἐγγύτερον,  
much [much extended]. But when they became nearer,  
καὶ δὴ τάχα τις χαλκός ἥστραπτε, καὶ  
and — thereupon something (like) brass gleamed-forth, and  
αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις ἐγίγνοντο καταφανεῖ.  
he spears and the ranks became visible

Καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεῖς μὲν λευκοδώρακες ἐπὶ<sup>ον</sup>  
And there-were horsemen — (having) white-corselets on  
τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων, Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο  
the left of-the enemy, Tissaphernes was-said

ἄρχειν τούτων· ἔχόμενοι δέ τοιτων  
to-command these; next then (to) these (were the)  
γερέοφόροι· ἔχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλῖται  
wicker-shield-bearers; next also (to these were) heavy-armed-men

σὺν ξυλίναις ἀσπίσι ποδήρεσι· δ' οἵτοι ἐλέγοντο  
with wooden shields reaching-to-the-feet; and these were-said

τίναι Αἰγύπτιοι· δέ ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς  
to-be Egyptians; and (next followed) other horsemen (next)

ἄλλοι τοξόται. Πάντες δ' οὗτοι  
other bowmen. All — these (marched together)

κατὰ ἔθνη, ἔκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο  
according-to (their) nation, each — nation marched-on

ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνδρώπων. Δέ  
|in (an) oblong full of-men [in solid column]. And

πρὸ αὐτῶν ἄρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν  
before them (were) chariots leaving (a) considerable (space)

ἀπ' ἄλληλων, τὰ δὴ καλούμενα δρέπανη-  
between one-another, — (these) indeed were-called scythe

φόρα· εἶχον δέ τὰ δρέπανα ἀποτεταμένα ἐκ  
chariots; they-had — the scythes extended from

τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον, καὶ ὑπὸ<sup>ον</sup>  
the axles in (an) oblique (direction), and (others) under

τοῖς δίφοροις βλέποντα εἰς γῆν ὡς  
the seats-of-the-drivers looking towards (the) ground so-as

διακόπτειν δτῷ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. Δέ ἣ γυώμη<sup>ον</sup>  
to-cut-through whatever they-might-meet. And the | places

ἢν ὡς ἐλώντων καὶ διακοψόντων εἰς  
(of them) was that hereafter-driving-into, and cutting-through into  
τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων.  
the ranks of-the Greeks. [The design of these chariots

Ο Κῦρος  
was to drive into, and cut through the ranks of the Greeks.] What Cyrus  
μέντοι εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο  
however said when having-called (the men) he-exhorted  
τοῖς Ἑλλησι ἀνέχεσθαι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρ-  
the Greeks to-sustain the shout of-the bar-  
βάρων, τούτο ἐψεύσδη· γάρ προσήσαν οὐ  
barians, in-this he-was-deceived; for they-approached not 'with (a)  
κραυγῆ, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ, ὡς ἀνυστόν,  
'shout, but 'in (as much) 'silence, as (it was) possible,  
καὶ ὑσυχῇ, ἐν ἵσω καὶ βραδέως. Καὶ ἐν  
and quietly, in (an) even (step) and slowly. And at  
τούτῳ Κῦρος, παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι.  
this (time) Cyrus, riding-by himself with Pigres,  
τῷ ἐρμηνεῖ, καὶ τρισὶν ἡ τέτταροι ἀλλοις, ἐβόα  
the interpreter, and three or four others, he-called-out  
τῷ Κλέαρχῳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ τὸ  
— to-Clearchus to-lead — (his) army against the  
μέσον τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι βασιλεὺς εἴη ἔκει·  
centre of-the enemy, that (the) king might-be there;  
καν ἔφη νικῶμεν τοῦτο πάντα πεποίηται  
and-if, said-he, we-conquer (in) this (quarter) all has-been-done  
ἡμῖν. Δέ ὁ Κλέαρχος ὁρῶν τὸ μέσον στίφος,  
for-us. But — Clearchus seeing — (that) middle dense-body  
καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου βασιλέα ὅντα  
(of soldiers), and hearing from-Cyrus (of the) king being  
ἔξω τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὑωνύμου, γάρ βασιλεὺς  
beyond the Grecian left, for (the) king  
περιῆν τοσοῦτον πλῆθει, ὥστε ἔχων τὸ μέσον  
excelled so-much in-magnitude, | so-that having the middle  
ἔαυτοῦ  
of-himself [so that, stationed in the centre of his army,] he-was (even)

οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας ἀπὸ<sup>τὸν ποταμοῦ,</sup> φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθεῖν ἐκατέ-  
 'did not wish to-draw-off the right wing from  
 the river, fearing lest he-might-be-surrounded on-both-  
 sides, but — to-Cyrus he-replied, | that it-would-be-a-care  
 αὐτῷ ὅπως ἔχοι καλῶς.  
 to him that it-may-have (itself) well [that he would take care.

that everything should terminate well].

Kai ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν Βαρβαρικὸν  
 And during this — time the — barbarian  
 στράτευμα προήει ὁμαλῶς, δὲ τὸ Ἑλλη-  
 army advanced steadily (and equally), and the Gre-  
 νικόν ἔτι μένον ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ, συνε-  
 cian (army) still remaining in the same (place), was-formed-  
 τάττετο ἐξ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. Kai ἐ-  
 in-order-of-battle from — (those) still coming-up. And —  
 Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάντα πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ  
 Cyrus riding-past not very near to-this (his) —  
 στρατείματι, κατεδεῖτο ἀποβλέπων ἐκατέρωσε,  
 army, surveyed (the armies) looking-at each-side,  
 τε εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς  
 not-only towards the enemy but-also (towards) — (his)  
 φίλους. Δέ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος ἰδὼν αὐτὸι  
 friends. But Xenophon (an) Athenian seeing hin  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ, ἵπελάσας ὡς συναν  
 from the Grecian (line), having-ridden-up as-if to-have  
 τῆσατ, ἦρετο εἰ τι παραγγέλλοι  
 met (him), asked if he-may-'have any-thing  
 δέ δὲ ἐπιστῆσας εἶπε, καὶ ἐκέλευε  
 who — having-stopped (his horse) said, and-also ordered (him)  
 λέγειν πᾶσιν, ὅτι καὶ τὰ ιερὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια  
 in-tell ali, that both the sacrifices and the victims (were)

καλα. Λέγων δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε θορύβου ἵόντος  
 favourable. Saying — this he-heard (a) noise going  
 διὰ τῶν τάξεων, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος  
 through the ranks, and he-inquired what the noise  
 εἴη. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν, ὅτι τὸ σύνδημα  
 might-be. — And Xenophon said, that the watch-word "is  
 ἴδη παρέρχεται δεύτερον. Καὶ  
 now passing (through the ranks) for-the-second-time. And  
 ὃς ἐδαίμασε τίς παραγγέλλει, καὶ  
 (who) (Cyrus) wondered what-person gives-out (the word), and  
 ἤρετο ὁ τι τὸ σύνδημα εἴη. Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,  
 he-asked what the watch-word might-be. — And he-replied,  
 ὅτι Ζεὺς σωτήρ καὶ νίκη. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
 that (it was) Jupiter (the) preserver and victory. — And Cyrus  
 ἀκούσας, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ τε δέχομαι καὶ ἔστω  
 having-heard (it), said, but 'I not-only receive (it) but-also let-it-be  
 τοῦτο. Δέ εἰπών ταῦτα ἀπῆλαυνε εἰς τὴν  
 so. And having-said this he-rode-away to | to-the  
 χώραν ἑαυτοῦ· καὶ τῷ φάλ-  
 place of-himself; [to his own station in the line,] and the-two ar-  
 λαγγε διειχέτην ἀπ' ἀλλήλων οὐκέτι τρία ἢ  
 mises were-apart from one-another not-more-than three or  
 τέτταρα στάδια, ἥνικα οἱ Ἑλληνες τε ἐπαιάνιζον,  
 four stadia, when the Greeks not-only sang-the-pæan,  
 καὶ ἤρχοντο ἵέναι ἀντίοι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Δέ  
 but-also began to-go against the enemy. But  
 ὃς πορευομένων τι τῆς φάλαγγος ἐξεκύ-  
 as (they) were-proceeding some (part) of-the phalanx fluctu-  
 μανε τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο  
 ated (from the rest) the (part) left-behind began  
 θεῖν δρόμῳ· καὶ πάντες ἄμα ἐφθέγξαντο  
 to-run with-speed; and (they) all together made-a-noise  
 σίόνπερ ἐλελίζοντι τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ, καὶ δὲ πάντες  
 like-as they-shout to — Mars, and also all  
 ἐσεον. Δέ τις ει λέγουσι, ὃς καὶ ἐδούπησαν  
 ran. And some say, that 'they also 'sounded

ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα, ποιῶντες  
 — with (their) shields against the spears, causing  
 φόβον τοῖς ἵπποις. Δέ πρὶν τόξευμα  
 fear to-the horses. But before (that) (an) arrow  
 ἔξικνεῖσθαι, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐκκλίνουσι, καὶ  
 reaches (them), the barbarians give-way, and  
 φεύγουσι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 flee And also there indeed the Greeks  
 ἐδίωκον κατὰ κράτος, δὲ ἐβόνται ἀλλήλοις  
 followed with (all their) might, and calling-out to-one-another  
 μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλὰ ἐπεσθαι ἐν τάξει. Δέ  
 not to-run with-speed, but to-follow in order. But  
 τὰ ἄρματα, κενὰ ἦνιόχων, ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν  
 the chariots, void of-drivers, were-born — (some) indeed  
 διὰ τῶν πολεμίων αὐτῶν, δὲ τὰ  
 through (the ranks) of-the enemy themselves, but — (others)  
 καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δέ οἱ,  
 also through (the ranks) of-the Greeks. But — (they),  
 ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, δύσταντο.  
 when they-could see (them coming) | they-stood-apart [they opened their  
 δ' ἔστι ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη,  
 ranks]; but there-was some-one-person (who) also was-caught,  
 ὁσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ, ἐκπλαγεῖς. καὶ  
 as in (a) race-course, he-having-been-struck-with-fear; and  
 ἐφασαν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν οὐδὲν.  
 they-said however (that) neither 'did this-person 'suffer | nothing;  
 οὐδ' οὐδεὶς ἄλλος δὲ  
 [in any thing]; | neither 'did no-one other indeed [nor did any one  
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπαθεν οὐδέν] εἰν  
 else] of-the Greeks | suffer nothing [suffer any thing] in  
 ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τις  
 this — battle, except on the left, some-one  
 ἐλέγετο τοξευθῆναι.  
 was said to-have-been-shot-with-an-arrow.  
 Δέ Κῦρος ὥρων τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντα, καὶ  
 But Cyrus seeing the Greeks conquering and

διώκοντας τὸ καδ' αὐτοὺς, ἥδμιενος  
 pursuing the (part of the army) opposed-to them, being-pleased.  
 καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἥδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ἦπο τῶν  
 and being-saluted now as king by — (those)  
 ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδὲ ὡς ἔξήχθη διώκειν,  
 about him, nor(yet) was-'he thus led-away to-pursue (the enemy),  
 ἀλλὰ ἔχων συνεσπειρανμένην τὴν τάξιν τῶν  
 but keeping drawn-up-in-close-order the band of-the  
 ἔξαρσίων ἵππεων σὺν ἑαυτῷ, ἐπεμελεῖτο δὲ τι  
 six-hundred horsemen with himself, he-carefully-watched what  
 βασιλεὺς ποιήσει· γάρ καὶ ἤδει αὐτόν  
 (the) king would-do; for 'he well 'knew (him)  
 δὲ τοῦ ἔχοι μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.  
 that he-kept the-centre of-the Persian army.  
 Καὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν βαρβάρων  
 And also all the commanders of-the barbarians  
 ἔχοντες τὸ μέσον αὐτῶν ἤγοῦντο,  
 occupying the centre of-their (command) led (them thus  
 νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ  
 into action) thinking thus also to-be — the-most-secure  
 ἢν τὸ iσχὺς αὐτῶν ἢ ἐκατέρωθεν,  
 if | the strength of-them [their strength] should-be on-either-side,  
 καὶ εἰ χρήζοιεν παραγγεῖλαι τι, τὸ  
 and, if they-should-want to-order any-thing, (that) the  
 στράτευμα ἀν αἰσθάνεσθαι ἥμίσει χρόνῳ. Καὶ  
 army may perceive in-half (the) time. And  
 δὴ βασιλεὺς ἔχων τότε μέσον τῆς  
 even-indeed (the) king having then (the) centre of-the  
 στρατιᾶς αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο δῆμως ἔξω  
 army of-him [of his army] was nevertheless beyond (the)  
 εὐωνύμου κέρατος τοῦ Κύρου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς  
 left wing — of-Cyrus. When indeed no-or  
 ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου αὐτῷ οὐδὲ  
 fought from the opposite (part) (either) against-himself (nor) (or)  
 τοῖς τεταγμένοις ἐμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ,  
 - (those of his own troops) drawn-up before him

\*Ἐνδα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ γενόμενος ὅπισθεν  
Then indeed Cyrus, fearing lest having-got in-the-rear  
κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος·  
he-might-cut-to-pieces the Grecian (forces), moves-on against  
καὶ ἔμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἔξακοσίοις  
καὶ ἔμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἔξακοσίοις  
[him]; and having-charged with the six-hundred (horsemen with  
νικᾷ τοὺς τεταγμένους πρὸ βασιλέως,  
him), conquers — (those) drawn-up before (the) king,  
καὶ ἔτρεψε εἰς φυγὴν τοὺς ἔξακισχιλίους,  
and turns into flight the six-thousand (horsemen  
καὶ αὐτὸς λέγεται ἀποκτεῖναι  
guarding the king), and he (Cyrus) is-said to-have-killed  
τῇ χειρὶ ἑαυτοῦ Ἀρταγέρσην  
|with-the hand of-himself [with his own hand] Artagenses  
τὸν ἀρχοντα αὐτῶν. Δὲ ὡς ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο,  
the commander of-them. But as the rout occurred,  
καὶ οἱ ἔξακοσιοι Κύρου, διασπείρονται  
also the six-hundred (horsemen) of-Cyrus, are-dispersed  
ὅρμήσαντες εἰς τὸ διώκειν· πλὴν πάνυ  
having-rushed-on | to the pursuing; [in pursuit]; except (a) very  
ὅλιγοι κατελείφθησαν ἀμφ' αὐτὸν,  
few, (that) were-left about him, (and who were)  
σχεδὸν οἱ καλούμενοι διμοτράπεζοι. Ὡν  
nearly-all — (those who) are-called table-companions. Being  
δέ σὺν τούτοις, καθορᾶ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ  
therefore with these, he-sees (the) king and the  
στίφος ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον, καὶ εὐδὺς οὐκ  
dense-body-guard around him, and immediately he-did not  
ἡνέσχετο ἀλλ' εἰπών, ὅρῶ τὸν ἄνδρα, θέτο ἐπ'  
restrain-himself, but saying, I-see the man, he-rushed on  
αὐτὸν· καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον, καὶ  
aim, and strikes at — (his) breast, and  
τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς Κτησίας ὁ  
wounds (him) through the brest-plate. as Ctesias the

*ἰατρός φησί, καὶ αὐτὸς φησί ἵασθαι*  
 physician says, and (moreover) he-himself says (that) he-healed  
*τὸ τραῦμα. Δὲ τις παίοντα*  
 the wound. But some-one, (while he was) striking (at the king)  
*ἀκοντίζει αὐτὸν βιαίως παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν*  
 hits him violently 'with (a) 'javelin under the  
*ὅφθαλμὸν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα καὶ βασιλεὺς*  
 eye; and there (then were) both (the) king  
*καὶ Κῦρος μαχόμενοι, καὶ οἱ ἀμφ'*  
 and Cyrus fighting, and — (those likewise) about  
*αὐτοὺς ὑπέρ ἐκατέρουν.*  
 them (were fighting), for each (of their own chiefs);  
*ὅπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέδνησκον*  
 how-many indeed — (of those) about (the) king died

*Κτησίας λέγει. γάρ ἦν παρ' ἐκείνῳ.*  
 (in battle) Ctesias tells (us); | for he-was about him;  
*δέ τε Κῦρος αὐτός*  
 [for he attended the king's person]; and not-only Cyrus himself  
*ἀπέδανε, καὶ ὄκτω, οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν*  
 died, but-also eight, the most-distinguished (persons) —  
*περὶ αὐτὸν, ἐκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Δὲ*  
 (of those) about him, lay (dead) on him. But  
*'Αρταπάτης, ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκῆπ-*  
 Artapates, the most-faithful to-him — (of his) sceptre-  
*τούχων θεράπων, λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ εἶδε Κῦρον*  
 bearing servants, is-said, after he-saw Cyrus  
*πεπτωκότα, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕπου*  
 fallen, (that) having-leaped from — (his) horse  
*περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἱ μὲν φασι*  
 to-have-thrown (himself) on-him. And — (some) indeed say (that)  
*βασιλέα κελεῦσαι τινα ἐπισφάξαι*  
 (the) king ordered some one | to-have-killed [to kill]  
*αὐτὸν Κῦρον, οἱ δέ σπασάμενον*  
 him (lying) on-Cyrus, — but (others say, that) having-drawn  
*τὸν ἀκινάκην, ἐπισφάξασθαι ἔαυτὸν. γάρ*  
 — (his) scimitar, he-killed himself; for

εἰχε χρυσοῦν· δὲ καὶ ἐφόρει στρεπτὸν, καὶ  
he-had (a) golden-one; and also he-wore (a) chain, and  
ψέλλια, καὶ τάλλα, ὡσπερ οἱ ἀριστοί<sup>οι</sup>  
bracelets, and (such) other (ornaments), as the most-distinguished  
Περσῶν· γὰρ ἐτείμητο<sup>οι</sup>  
of (the) Persians (are accustomed to wear); for he-had-been-honoured  
ἄπο Κύρου τε δι' εὔνοιαν καὶ  
by Cyrus not-only for (his) good-will-and-affection, but-also (for his)  
πιστότητα.  
very-great-fidelity.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

Οὐτως οὖν μὲν ἐτελευτησε Κύρος, ἀνὴρ ὁν  
Thus now indeed died Cyrus, (a) man being  
τε τῶν Περσῶν γενομένων μετὰ Κύροι·  
not-only 'of (all) the Persians existing since Cyrus  
τὸν ἀρχαῖον, βασιλικώτατος, καὶ ἀξιώτατος  
the elder, princely, but-also the-most-worthy  
ἀρχειν, ὡς ὅμολογεῖται παρὰ πάντων τῶν  
to-reign, as is-agreed-to by all — | (those  
δοκούντων γενέσθαι ἐν πείρᾳ Κύρου.  
appearing to-have-been in (the) experience of Cyrus [those inti-

Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον, ὃν ἔτι  
mately acquainted with Cyrus]. For indeed first, being yet (a)  
παῖς, δτε ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ  
boy, when he-was-educated both with — (his) brother  
καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισί, ἐνομίζετο κράτιστος  
and with the other boys, he-was-thought (to be) the-best  
πάντων πάντα. Γὰρ πάντες οἱ παιδες  
of-all in-all-things. For all the sons  
Περσῶν τῶν ἀριστῶν παιδεύονται ἐπὶ ταῖς  
of-Persians — eminent-in-rank, are-educated | at the  
Ἄραις βασιλέως· ἐνδα τις ἂν  
gates 'of 'the) king; [in the royal palace]; there one may

καταμάδοι μὲν πολλὴν τωφροσύ-  
 learn indeed much (of the) wisdom-of-temperance-and-  
 νην, δ' ἔστι οὐτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὐτ' ἵδειν  
 modesty, but it-is (possible) neither to-hear nor to-see  
 οὐδὲν αἰσχρὸν. Δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ θεῶνται τοὺς  
 any-thing base. But the boys both see — (those)  
 τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούονται,  
 honoured by (the) king and hear (thereof),  
 καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὅστε εἰδότες  
 and (in like manner of) others being-disgraced; so-that straightway  
 ὄντες παῖδες μανδάνονται τε ἀρχεῖν καὶ  
 being (yet) boys they-learn not-only to-govern but-also  
 ἀρχεσθαι. Ἐνδεια Κῦρος μὲν ἐδόκει πρῶτον  
 to-be governed. There Cyrus indeed seemed first (of all)  
 εἶναι αἰδημονέστατος τῶν ἥλικιωτῶν, τε  
 to-be the-most-modest — (of his) equals-in-age, (and) not-only  
 πείθεσθαι τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις καὶ μᾶλλον  
 to-obey the elders but-also much-more (readily than)  
 τῶν ἴποδεεστέρον ἔαυτοῦ· δ' ἔπειτα  
 — (those) more-inferior (to) him (in rank); and next-then  
 φιλιππότατος, καὶ χρῆσθαι τοῖς  
 he-was-most-fond-of-horses, and (was able) to-use (or manage) the  
 ἵπποις ἄριστα. Δ' ἔκρινον αὐτὸν  
 horses (in the) best (manner). And they-discerned him  
 εἶναι καὶ φιλομαθέστατον καὶ μελετηρότα-  
 to-be also the-most-desirous-in-learning, and most-diligent and-indefa-  
 τον τῶν ἔργων εἰς τὸν πόλεμον,  
 tigable |(in) the operations for — war, [in warlike exercises],  
 τε τοξεῖς καὶ ἀκοντίσεως. Ἐπει  
 not-only (those) of-archery but-also (those) of-throwing-the-dart. When  
 δὲ ἔπειτε τῇ ἥλικᾳ, ἦν καὶ φιλοδηρότατος,  
 indeed it-became — (his) age, he-was both most fond-of-hunting,  
 καὶ μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος πρὸς  
 and even most-fond-of-danger-and-adventure (in encounters) against  
 τὰ θηρία. Καὶ ποτὲ οὐκ ἔτρεσεν ἀρκτον  
 — wild-creatures. And once he-did not 'fear (a) she-bear

ἐπιφερομένην, ἀλλὰ συμπεσών  
 (when) attacking (him), | but falling-together [but in the at-  
 tack and conflict] κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου,  
 he-was-dragged from — (his) horse,  
 καὶ μὲν ἔπαθε τὰ καὶ, τὰς  
 [and indeed he-suffered the [he received some wounds] and, the  
 ώτειλάς ὡν εἶχε φανεράς, δὲ τέλος  
 scars of-which he-had visible (on his body), but at-last  
 κατέκανε, καὶ μέντοι ἐποίησε τὸν πρῶτον  
 he-killed (the bear), and indeed he-made the (person) first  
 βοηδήσαντα μακαριστὸν πολλοῖς.  
 coming-to-assist (him) to-be-considered-very-happy by-many.

\*Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς  
 When indeed he-was-sent-down by — (his) father (as  
 γατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας  
 satrap of-Lydia and also of-the Great Phrygia  
 καὶ Καππαδοκίας, δὲ καὶ ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγὸς  
 and Cappadocia, and likewise appointed commander  
 πάντων, οἵς καδήκει ἀδροίζεσθαι εἰς πεδίον  
 of-all, to-whom it-appertains to-be-assembled in (the) plain  
 Καστωλοῦ, πρῶτων μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι  
 of-Castolus, first indeed he-showed himself | that  
 ποιοίτο περὶ πλείστου,  
 he-made (it) for 'himself very-much, [that he held it of the great  
 εἴ σπείσατο τῷ καὶ εἴ τῷ  
 est importance to himself], if he-made-a-treaty — (with any one), and  
 εἴ σύνδοιτο τῷ καὶ εἴ τῷ  
 if he-made-an-agreement — (with any one), and if — (to any one)  
 ὑπόσχοιτό τι ψεύδεσθαι μηδὲν. Καὶ γαρ  
 he-promised any-thing, to-deceive (in) nothing. And  
 εὖ μὲν αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι αὐτῷ ἐπίστευον  
 therefore indeed the cities entrusting-themselves to-him, confide

δ' οἱ ἄνδρες ἐπίστευον·  
 in him) as-also (in like manner did private) — men confide  
 καὶ εἴ τις ἐγένετο πολέμιος, Κύροι  
 'in him); and if any-one became hostile, Cyrus

**σπεισαμένου** **ἐπίστενε** **ἀν**  
having-made-a-treaty (with him) he-was-confident(that) 'he would (have to)  
**παθεῖν μηδὲν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς.** **Τοιγαροῦν ἐπει**  
suffer nothing contrary to-the treaty. Therefore when  
**πολέμησε** **Τισσαφέρνει,** **πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις**  
he-waged-war (against) Tissaphernes, all the towns  
**ἔκοῦσαι εἵλοντο Κύρου ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρους πλὴν**  
voluntarily chose Cyrus before Tissaphernes except (the)  
**Μιλησίων.** **δὲ οἵτοι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτὸν ὅτι** **οὐκ**  
Milesians, but they feared him, because he-did not  
**ἥδελε προέσθαι τοὺς φεύγοντας.** **Γάρ**  
'wish to-abandon | — (those) fleeing [the exiles] For  
**καὶ ἐπεδείκνυντο ἔργῳ, καὶ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι**  
'he also 'showed 'by (his) 'deeds, and said, that  
**ἀν οὐ ποτε προοίτο ἐπεὶ ἀπαξ ἐγένετο**  
'he would not ever 'desert (them), when once he-became (a)  
**φίλος αὐτοῖς, οὐδὲ εἰ μὲν γένοιντο ἔτι μείους**  
friend to-them, nor if indeed they-should-become yet less  
**δὲ πράξειαν ἔτι κάκιον.**  
(in number), and should-suffer (a) yet worse (condition than they  
**Καὶ εἰ τίς ποιήσειεν αὐτὸν τι ἄγαδὸν**  
were in). And if any-one should-do him any-thing good  
**ἢ κακὸν, ἦν δὲ φανερός πειρώμενος**  
or bad, it-was indeed evident (that he was) striving  
**νικᾶν.** **καὶ δὲ τινες ἔξεφερον**  
to-conquer (in these respects); and also some used-to-mention (a)  
**εὐχὴν αὐτοῦ, ὡς εὐχοίτο ζῆν τοσοῦτον χρόνον,**  
wish of-him, that he-desired to-live so-long (a) time,  
**ἔστε ἀλεξόμενος, νικών καὶ τοὺς**  
until 'he, requiring (them), 'might-excel both — (those)  
**ποιοῦντας εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς.**  
acting well and — (those acting) ill (to him)  
**Καὶ γὰρ οὖν δὴ πλεῖστοι ἐπεδύσκαται**  
And — therefore truly the-most (of men) desired  
**τροέσθαι αὐτῷ ἐνί ἀνδρὶ γε τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν**  
to-commit to-him (the) one (only) man at-least — in our (time)

*καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ σώματα*  
 — (their) property, — (heir) towns, | and the bodies  
*ἔχωντῶν.*

of-them [and their persons].

Οὐ μὲν δὴ ἀν τις εἴποι οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ὡς εἴα τοὺς  
 Nor indeed — can any-one say — this, that he-let the  
*κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους καταγελᾶν,* ἀλλ'  
 evildoers and unjust deride (his authority), but  
*ἀφειδέστατα πάντων εἰτιμωρεῖτο.* Δ'  
 most-unspareingly of-all (men) he-punished (transgressors). | And

*ἵν πολλάκις ἰδεῖν,* παρὰ  
 it-was often to-see, [and there were often to be seen], | on  
*τὰς στειβομένας ὁδούς,* ἀνθρώπους  
 the trodden roads [on the frequented roads] men  
*στερομένους καὶ ποδῶν, καὶ χειρῶν καὶ*  
 deprived — of-feet, — (or) of-hands, — (or)  
*οφθαλμῶν.* ὅστε ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ Κύρου ἐγένετο  
 of-eyes, so-that in the dominion of-Cyrus it-was  
*καὶ Ἑλληνι καὶ βαρβαρῷ, μηδὲν*  
 (possible) 'for both Greek and barbarian, 'doing nothing  
*ἀδικοῦντι, πορεύεσθαι ἀδεῶς, ὅποι τις ἤθελεν,*  
 'wrong, to-travel fearlessly, withersoever one wished,

*ἔχοντι ὁ τι προχωροίη.*  
 (and) having (with him) whatever he-might-proceed-with (that suited

*‘Ωμολόγητο γε μέντοι*  
 his convenience). It-has-been-acknowledged — indeed (that)  
*τιμᾶν διαφερόντως τούς ἀγαδούς εἰς πόλεμον.*  
 he-honoured very-much | — (those) good for war

*Kai*  
 [those having a disposition for, and skilled in, military affairs]. And  
*ιέντι πόλεμος ἦν αὐτῷ πρῶτον*  
 indeed |(a) war was to-him first [his first war was]

*πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς.* καὶ οὖν αὐτὸς  
 against (the) Pisidians and Mysians; and therefore himself  
*στρατευόμενος εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας,* οὓς  
 leading-an-army into these — places, (those) whom

ἔώρα ἐδελοντας κινδυμεύειν τούτους  
he-saw willing to-encounter-danger (in his service) the-same  
καὶ ἐποίει ἄρχοντας χώρας ἣς κατεστρέφετο,  
(also) he-made rulers 'of (the) 'places which he-subjugated,  
δε ἔπειτα καὶ ἐτίμα δώροις ἀλλη.  
and moreover 'he also 'honoured (them) with-rewards in-another (man

“Ωστε μὲν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς φαίνεσθαι  
ner). So (that) indeed [the good [brave men] appear  
εὐδαιμονεστάτους, δε τοὺς κακοὺς  
(to be) the-most-fortunate, but (that) the bad [cowards]  
ἀξιωσθαι εἶναι δούλους τούτων.  
were-considered-worthy (only) to-be (the) slaves of-these (brave  
men). Therefore there-was (a) great abundance to-him  
τῶν θελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις  
[Cyrus] of-those willing to-encounter-danger, when any-one  
οἴοιτο Κύρον αἰσθῆσθαι.  
might-think (that) Cyrus would-perceive (him).

Μὲν γε εἰς δικαιοσύνην, εἰ τις γένοιτο  
In-truth — as-regards justice, if any-one might-become  
φανερὸς αὐτῷ Βουλόμενος ἐπιδείκνυσθαι,  
apparent to-him (as) desiring to-show (this vir-  
περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο ποιεῖν τούτους  
ture in himself), above all, he-caused to-make such  
πλουσιωτέρους τῶν φιλοκερδούντων  
(persons) richer (than) — (those) seeking-gain  
ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου. Καὶ γὰρ οὖν τε πολλὰ ἄλλα  
by — injustice. And therefore — not-only many other  
διεχειρίζετο δικαίως αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐχρήσατο  
(things) were-administered justly for-him, but-also he-had-he-use-of

ἄληθινῷ στρατεύματι. Γάρ  
(a) real army, (and one worthy of the name). For  
καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἐπλευσαν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον  
also generals and captains | sailed to him  
οὐ ἐνεκα χρημάτων,  
[came to him from other countries] not on-account of-money,

ἀλλ' ἐπει ἔγνωσαν εἶναι κερδαλεώτερον πειδαρχεῖν  
but after they-knew (it) to-be more-profitable to-obey

Κύρω καλῶς, ἢ τὸ κέρδος κατὰ μῆνα.  
(and serve) Cyrus well, | than the gain for (a) month

Αλλὰ μὲν εἰ τίς γέ, αὐτῷ  
[than their monthly wages]. But indeed if any-one at-least, he

προστάξαντι τι, ὑπηρετήσειν καλῶς  
having-commanded any-thing, should-have-assisted-to-do (it) wel'  
οὐδενὶ πώποτε εἴασε τὴν προδυμίαν  
to-no-one (acting thus) did-'he ever 'permit — (his) alacrity

ἀχάριστον. Τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρέ-  
(to go) unrewarded. Therefore truly | the-best servants-and-

ται παντὸς ἔργου ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι  
officers of-every work (or undertaking) were-said to-be

Κύρω.

to-Cyrus [the best talents for all affairs were at the command of Cyrus].

Εἰ δὲ ὅρῳ τινα δυτα δεινὸν οἰκονόμον ἔκ τοῦ  
If also he-saw any-one (being) (a) skilful manager | from —  
δικαίου, καὶ κατασκευάζοντά, τε  
justice, [consistent with justice], and improving-the-land, not-only

χώρας, ἵσ ἄρχοι, καὶ ποιούντα προσ-  
'of (the) country, which he-governed, but-also making (an) increased-  
όδους ἀν πώποτε ἀφείλετο οὐδένα  
produce (therefrom) 'he would never 'take-away any-thing (from

ἀλλ' ἀεὶ προσεδίδον πλείω· ὕστε  
such a person), but always (rather) he-added more; so-that

καὶ ἐπόνουν ἥδεως, καὶ ἐκτῶντο θαρραλέως,  
— (men) laboured cheerfully, and acquired (property) confidently,

καὶ αὖ δ τις ἐπέπιατο ἥκιστα ἔκρυπτε  
and moreover what any-one had-acquired the-least did-he-conceal (it);

Κύρον· γάρ ἐφαίνετο οὐ φδονῶν  
from-Cyrus; | for he-was-manifestly not envying [for he manifestly

τοῖς φανερῶς πλουτοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ  
did not envy] — (those who) openly acquire-riches, but

πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς χρήμασι  
was-endeavouring to-use (or put into circulation) the wealth

τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων. Ὅσους φίλους γε μὴν  
of-those concealing (it). As-'many friends 'as — indeed  
ποιήσαιτο, καὶ γνοίν δύντας εὔνους,  
ae-might-make, and knew (them as) being well-disposed (to him-  
καὶ κρίνειε εἰναι ἴκανοὺς συνεργοὺς,  
self), and might-judge (them) to-be fit eo-operators,  
ὅ τι Βουλόμενος τυγχάνοι κατεργάζεσθαι,  
in-whatever wishing he-might-happen to-accomplish, [in  
διμολογεῖται  
whatever he might happen to wish to accomplish], he-is-acknowledged  
πρὸς πάντων γενέσθαι δὴ κράτιστος  
by all to-have-been certainly the-best (and most skilful)  
θεραπεύειν· Γὰρ  
so-cherish your friends, and attach them to himself). For  
καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦτο ἐνεκαὶ οὖπερ αὐτὸς  
also (for) this same (reason) on-account of-which he-himself  
ἔρετο δεῖσθαι φίλων ὡς ἔχοι συνερ-  
thought(that) he-needed friends (namely) that he-might-have co-ope-  
ρους, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο εἰναι κράτιστος συνεργός  
rators, and he-himself endeavoured to-be the-best assistant  
τοῖς φίλοις δτον τούτου αἰσθάνοιτε  
'to — (his) friends (in) whatever that he-might-perceive  
ἔκαστον ἐπιδυμοῦντα.  
each-one (was) desiring (to effect).

Δὲ μὲν οἶμαι γε ὅν εἰς ἀνὴρ  
And indeed I-think | (that) 'he at-least being one man [that he  
ἐλάμβανε πλεῖστα δῶρα  
of any one man at least] received the-most presents, (and this)  
διὰ πολλά. δὲ ταῦτα διεδίδον τοῖς  
for many (reasons); but these (presents) he-distributed 'to —  
φίλοις μάλιστα δὴ  
(this) 'friends very-much (excelling) certainly (in this respect)  
πάντων, σκοπῶν πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἔκαστου,  
all (men), looking to the manners of-each,  
καὶ δτον ὁρών ἔκαστον μάλιστα δεόμενον  
and (to that) of which he-saw each-one the-most needed

Kai δσα τις πέμποι κόσμον  
 And whatever (present) any-one might-send (him as a-) ornament

τῷ τώματι αὐτοῦ, ή ὡς εἰς  
 |for the body of-him, [for his person], either as-if for (use in

πόλεμον, ή ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ  
 war, or as-if for (use in personal) ornament, and

περὶ τούτων ἔφασαν λέγειν, δτι μὲν  
 about these (presents) they-affirmed (that) he-said, | that indeed

τὸ σῶμα ἔαυτοῦ ἀν οὐ δύνατο κοσμηθῆναι  
 the body of-himself could not be-able to-have-been-adorned

πᾶσι τούτοις,  
 [that his own person could not be adorned] with-all these (presents).

δε νομίζοι φίλους καλῶς κεκοσμημένους  
 but he-might-think (that) friends (having-'been) handsomely adorned

μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρί. Kai μὲν τὸ  
 (to be) the-greatest ornament 'to (a) 'man. | And indeed the

νικᾶν τὰ μεγάλα  
 to-surpass [the surpassing] the great [greatly] [and indeed that

τοὺς φίλους ποιοῦντα εν  
 he should greatly surpass] — (his) friends (in) doing good (is)

οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδή γε ήν καὶ δυνατώτερος.  
 nothing wonderful, since at-least he-was also the-most-able;

δε τὸ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων  
 |but the to-be-superior [but that he should excel] — (his) friends

τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ, καὶ τῷ προδυνεῖσθαι  
 — in-kind-attention, and | the to-be-eager [his eagerness]

χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ εἶναι  
 to-gratify (and oblige), these, to-me-at-least, seem to-be

μᾶλλον ἀγαστά. Γὰρ Κῦρος πολλάκις ἐπεμπε  
 more admirable. For Cyrus often sent

ἕαιδεεῖς βίκους οἴνου, ὅπότε λάβοι πάνυ  
 half-empty jars of-wine, whenever he-might-receive (any) very

ἥδιν, λέγων, δτι οὕτω δὴ πολλοῦ  
 sweet (and fine-flavoured), saying, that never-yet truly 'for (a) 'long

χρόνου ἐπιτύχοι ἥδιον οἴνῳ τούτου.  
 time uid-he meet with-finer-flavoured wine (than) this

οὖν ἔπειμψε τοῦτον σοὶ, καὶ δεῖται σου εκπιεῖν  
therefore he-sent this to-you, and he-requests of-you to-drink

τοῦτον τήμερον σὺν οἷς φίλεις μάλιστα.  
this to-day with those-whom you-love most

Πολλάκις δὲ ἤπειμπε ἡμιβρώτους χῆνας,  
Often indeed he-sent | half-eaten geese [parts of geese],

καὶ ἡμίσεα ἀρτων, καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, κελεύων  
and halves of-loaves, and other such (things), ordering

τὸν φέροντα ἐπιλέγειν. Κῦρος  
the bearer to-say (when he presented them); Cyrus

ἥσθη τούτοις. οὖν Βούλεται καὶ σὲ γεύσασθαι  
was-delighted with-these; therefore he-wishes also you to-taste

τούτων. "Οπου δὲ χιλὸς εἴη πάνυ σπάνιος,  
of-these (same). Whenever indeed fodder was very scarce,

δ' αἰτός ἐδύνατο παρασκενάσασθαι διὰ τὸ ἔχειν  
and he was-able to-procure-it | through the to-have

πολλοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐτιμέλειαν,  
[by having] many servants and through — (his) care,

διαπέμπων τοὺς φίλοις ἐκέλευε  
sending-it-about (among) — (his) friends he-ordered (them)

ἔμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν τοῖς ἵπποις ἄγοντο  
to-throw this — fodder to-the horses | carrying

τὰ σώματα ἔαυτῶν ὡς  
the bodies of-them [carrying their persons], so-that (the horses)

μὴ ἄγωσι τοὺς φίλους ἔαυτοῦ πεινῶντες. Εἰ  
may not 'carry the friends of-himself hungering. If

δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο, καὶ πλεῖστοι  
— indeed at-any-time he-might-proceed (anywhere), and many

μέλλοιεν δύψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους  
might-be-about to-see (him), calling-to — (his) friends

ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοίη οἵ  
he-held-earnest-conversation-with-them, that he-might-show (those) whom

τιμᾷ. "Ωστε ἔγωγε ἕξ δὲ ἀκούων κρίνων  
he-honoured. So-that I-at-least from (that) which I-hear judge

οὐδένα οὔτε βαρβάρων  
(that) no-one either 'of (the) 'Greeks or 'of (the) 'barbarians'

πεφιλῆσθαι ὑπὸ πλειόνων. Δέ καὶ τόδε  
to-have-been-loved by more (persons). And also this  
 τεκμήριον τούτου, οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπῆγει  
(is a) proof of-this-same (thing), no-one indeed deserted  
 πρὸς βασιλέα παρὰ Κύρου, ὅντος  
to (the) king from Cyrus, he-being (as a subject ne  
 δούλου. πλὴν Ὁρόντας  
better than a) slave (of the king); except Orontes (who)  
 ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ δὴ οὗτος ταχὺ εὗρε αὐτὸν  
attempted (it); and truly this (Orontes) speedily found him,  
 διν ὡςτο εἶναι πιστόν οἱ φιλαίτερον Κύρῳ  
whom he-thought to-be faithful to-himself, more-friendly to-Cyrus  
 ἢ ἔαυτῷ· δέ πολλοὶ ἀπῆλθον παρὰ βασιλέως  
than to-himself; but many deserted from (the) king  
 πρὸς Κῦρον, ἐπειδὴ ἐγένοντο πολέμοι ἀλλήλοις,  
to Cyrus, after they-became hostile to-one-another,  
 καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ἀγαπώμενοι  
and these indeed — (persons) the-most beloved  
 ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, νομίζοντες ὅντες ἀγαδοὶ<sup>1</sup>  
by him (the king), thinking (that) being brave (men)  
 παρὰ Κύρῳ, ἀν τυχάνειν ἀξιωτέρας τιμῆς  
under Cyrus, — to-obtain more-worthy honour (and reward)  
 ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. Δέ καὶ τὸ γενόμενον  
than from (the) king. And also — (that) happening  
 αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου μέγα  
to-him at the end — 'of (his) 'life (is a) great  
 τεκμήριον, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαδός, καὶ ἐδύνατο  
 proof, that — he was brave, and could  
 ὄρθως κρίνειν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὔνους  
 rightly judge — (those) faithful (to him), and well-disposed,  
 καὶ βεβαίους. Γάρ αὐτοῦ ἀποδινήσκοντος, πάντες  
 and steadfast. For he dying, all  
 οἱ φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι παρ' αὐτὸν ἀπέδανοι  
 — (his) friends and table-companions with him died  
 μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου, πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος  
 fighting over Cyrus. except Ariæus; this (person

Ἐπί<sup>επί</sup>  
 ιδέ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν  
 indeed | stationed happened [happened to be stationed] on  
 τῷ εὐωνύμῳ, ἀρχῶν τοῦ ἵππικοῦ· δ' ὡς ἤσθετο  
 the left, commanding the cavalry; but when he-learned  
 Κῦρον πεπτωκότα ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ  
 (of) Cyrus having-fallen he-fled having also (with him)  
 τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα οὐ ἦγεῖτο.  
 the entire army which he-commanded.

---

## CHAPTER X.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἡ κεφαλὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμνεται  
 There indeed the head of-Cyrus is-cut-off,  
 καὶ ἡ δεξιά χείρ. Δὲ βασιλεὺς, καὶ οἱ  
 and-also the right hand. But (the) king, and — (those)  
 σὺν αὐτῷ, διώκων εἰςπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κυρεῖον  
 with him, pursuing falls | on the Cyrean  
 στρατόπεδον. καὶ μὲν οἱ  
 camp, [on the camp of Cyrus]; and indeed — (those soldiers)  
 μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴσταται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι  
 with Ariaeus no-longer stand but flee  
 διὰ τοῦ στρατοπέδου αὐτῶν εἰς τὸν  
 through | the camp of-them [their camp] to the  
 σταδιὸν. ἐνθεν ὥρμηντο. δ' ἐλεγοντο εἶναι  
 station, whence they-had-started (last); | and there-were-said to-be  
 τέτταρες παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ.  
 four parasangs of-the road [and which was said to be  
 Δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν  
 four parasangs distant]. But (the) king and — (those) with  
 αὐτῷ τε διαρπάζουσι τὰ ἄλλα  
 him not-only plunder — other (things, which were)  
 πολλὰ, καὶ λαμβάνει τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν  
 many, but-also he-takes the Phocæan (woman), the  
 παλλακίδα Κύρου καὶ λεγομένην εἶναι, την  
 concubine of-Cyrus, and (who) was-said to-be, —

σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν. Δὲ ἡ νεωτέρα ἡ Μιλησία,  
 wise and beautiful. But the younger (concubine) the Milesian  
 ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα  
 (woman), having-been-taken by — (those) about (the) king  
 ἔκφεύγει γυμνή πρὸς τῶν  
 escapes | naked [in her under garments] to (those of) the  
 Ἑλλήνων, οἵ ἔχοντες ὅπλα ἔτυχον ἐν  
 Greeks, who having arms happened (to be stationed) among  
 τοῖς σκευοφόροις· καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες  
 the baggage-train, and having-been-drawn-up-against (the Persians)  
 ἀπέκτειναν πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀρπαζόντων, δὲ  
 they-killed many indeed of — (those) plundering, but  
 οἵ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέδανον· γε μὴν  
 —(some) also of-themselves died; at-least indeed they-did  
 οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔσωσαν ταύτην, καὶ  
 not flee, but also saved this (woman), and  
 ἄλλα, ὅποσα ἐγένοντο ἐντὸς αὐτῶν  
 other (things), whatever were within (the lines) of-them,  
 καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἀνθρώπους, πάντα ἔσωσαν.  
 both property and men, all were-saved.  
 Ἐνταῦθα τε βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἑλλῆνες  
 There not-only (the) king, but-also the Greeks  
 διέσχον ἀλλήλων ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ  
 were-distant from-one-another about thirty stadia, the  
 μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καδ' αἴτοὺς,  
 (Greeks) indeed pursuing — (those opposed) against themselves,  
 ὡς νικῶντες πάντας, δ' οἱ ἀρπάζοντες, ὡς  
 as conquering all, but the (Persians) plundering, as  
 οἵδη νικῶντες πάντες. Δ' ἐπεὶ μέν οἱ Ἑλλῆνες  
 now conquering all. But when indeed the Greeks  
 ἤσθοντο, δτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι  
 perceived, that (the) king with — (his) army  
 εἴη ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις, δὲ βασιλεὺς  
 might-be among — (their) baggage-train, and (the) king  
 αὖ ηκούσε Τισσαφέρνους, δτι οἱ Ἑλλῆνες  
 on-the-other-hand heard from-Tissaphernes. that the Greeks

τικῶν τὰ καὶ αὐτοὺς, καὶ διώκοντες  
 might-be-conquering the (army) opposed to-them, and pursuing,  
 οἴχονται εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ  
 they-advance to — (a distance) forward, there truly (they  
 βασιλεὺς μὲν τε ἀδροίζει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ,  
 the) king indeed not-only | collects — (those) of-himself,  
 καὶ συντάττεται. δὲ ὁ  
 [collects together his forces], but-also draws-them-up-in-line; but —  
 Κλέαρχος καλέσας Πρώξενον, γὰρ ἦν πλησιαίτατος,  
 Clearchus having-called Proxenus, for he-was the-nearest,  
 ἔβοντες οὔτε, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας, ἢ  
 consulted (with him), if they-should-send some (of the troops), or  
 πάντες οἱεν ἀρήξοντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.  
 all should-go | about-helping [to relieve] (to) the camp.

Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἦν πάλιν  
 During this (time) also (the) king was again  
 δῆλος προσιών, ὡς ἐδόκει ὅπισθεν. Καὶ μὲν οἱ  
 evidently approaching, as it-seemed from-behind. And indeed the  
 Ἑλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς  
 Greeks having-faced-about prepared-themselves, as-if (the king  
 προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι ταύτη. δὲ οἱ  
 were-advancing and-also receiving (him) in-that (direction); but the  
 βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ ἦγε ταύτη,  
 king indeed did not lead (his troops) in-that (direction),  
 δὲ ἢ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου  
 but (by the way) in-which he-had-passed beyond — (their) left  
 κέρατος, ταύτη καὶ ἀπήγαγεν, ἤναλαβὼν  
 wing, by-the-same (way) also he-led-back (his forces), taking-with  
 καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ αὐτομολήσαντας  
 (him) both — (those) in the battle, having-deserted  
 κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας, καὶ Τισσαφέρινη, καὶ τοὺς  
 to the Greeks, and Tissaphernes, and —  
 σὺν αὐτῷ. Γὰρ ὁ Τισσαφέρινης οὐκ  
 (those) with him. For — Tissaphernes did not  
 ἔφυγεν ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ, ἀλλὰ διῆλαστ κατὰ  
 flee in the first encounter, but charged ~~μετανέ~~

τοὺς Ἐλλήνας πελταστάς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν·  
the Greek targetiers along the river.

δὲ διελαύνων μεν κατέκαυνε οὐδενα.  
but charging-through (the ranks) 'he indeed 'killed no-one

δ' οἱ Ἐλλῆνες διαστάντες ἔπαιον  
but the Greeks standing-apart (and making a passage) struck  
καὶ ἥκόντιζον αὐτοὺς·  
(them with their swords) and threw (their javelins) at-them;

Ἐπισθέντος δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε τῶν πελ-  
Episthenes — (the) Amphipolite commanded the tar-  
ταστῶν, καὶ ἐλέγετο γενέσθαι φρόνιμος.  
getiers, and was-said to-be (a) prudent (and able com-

Δ' ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὖν, ὡς ἔχων μεῖον,  
Tissaphernes therefore, as having less

ἀπηλλάγη, μὲν οἴκ άναστρέφει  
[the worst], was-forced-to-depart, indeed he-'does not return

πάλιν, δὲ ἀφικόμενος εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ τῶι  
again, but having-arrived at the camp — of-the

Ἐλλήνων, ἐκεὶ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ δὴ  
Greeks, there he-meets-with (the) king, and —

συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο διοῦ πάλιν.  
(then) having-drawn-up-their-forces they-marched together back (again

Δ' ἐπει ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τῶι  
But when they-were opposite the left wing of-the

Ἐλλήνων, οἱ Ἐλλῆνες ἔδεισαν, μὴ προσάγοιεν  
Greeks, the Greeks feared, lest they-might-lead

πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ  
against — (that) wing [lest they would attack that wing] and

περιπτέξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν κατακόψειαν  
surrounding (them) on-both-sides they-might-cut

αὐτοὺς· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ  
them 'off; and it-seemed (best) to-them to-fold-back the

κέρας, καὶ ποιήσασθαι τὸν ποταμόν διποσθεν.  
wing and to-place the river in-the-rear.

Ἐν τῷ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβούλευοντο,  
In (the time) in-which indeed (that) they-were-planning (this manœuvre)

καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος  
 and now-indeed (the) king having-changed (his line)  
 εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν  
 into the same form (that) he-placed (it) fronting the  
 φάλαγγα, ὡσπερ τὸ πρῶτον συνήσει μαχού-  
 phalanx, | just-as — (at) first he-might-have-come fight  
 μενος. Δὲ ὡς οἱ  
 ing [just as he came at first to offer battle]. But as the  
 Ἑλληνες εἶδον ὄντας τε ἐγγύς καὶ παρ-  
 Greeks saw (them) being not-only near and-also dawn-  
 τεταγμένους, αὖθις παιανίσαντες ἐπήσαν ἔτι  
 up-in-order-of-battle, again singing-the-paeon they-advanced yet  
 πολὺ προδυνμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσδεν. Δ'  
 much more-eagerly (and spirited) than — before. But  
 αὖ οἱ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ'  
 again the barbarians did not receive (their attack), but  
 ἔφευγον ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσδεν· δ'

they-fled from a-greater (distance from them) | than (they did) —  
 πρόσδεν· δ' οἱ ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι τινός  
 before; but — (the Greeks) pursued (them) to a-certain  
 κώμης· δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐστησαν. Γὰρ  
 village, but there the Greeks halted. For  
 ἦν γύνιοφος ὑπὲρ τῆς κώμης, ἐφ' οὐ οἱ  
 there-was (a) hill above the village, upon which — (those)  
 ἀμφὶ βασιλεά, ἀνεστράφησαν, μετ'  
 about (the) king, stood-faced-about, (there-were) indeed  
 οὐκέτι πεζοὶ, δὲ ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη  
 no-longer (any) foot-soldiers (there), but the hill was-filled  
 τῶν ἵππεων, ὡστε μὴ γιγνώσκειν τὸ  
 with-the cavalry, | so-that they-did not know the (thing  
 ποιούμενον.  
 that) was-doing [so that they knew not what the infantry might  
 Kαὶ ἔφασαν ὥραιν τὸ βασίλειον  
 be doing]. And they-said (that) they-saw the revo

σημείον τινα χρυσοῦν ἀετόν ἀνατεταμένον ἐπὶ<sup>on</sup>  
standard a-certain golden eagle elevated

πέλτης.

(a) shield.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔχώρουν ἐνταῦθῳ,  
When indeed also the Greeks proceeded thither,  
οἱ ἵππεῖς δὴ καὶ λείπουσι τὸν λόφον, οὐ μὴν ἔτι  
the horsemen indeed also leave the hill, not however as  
ἀδροοι, ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοδεν,  
collected-in-a-body, | but others in-other-direction, [but dispersed in  
δ' ὁ λόφος ἐψιλοῦτο τῶν  
different directions], and the hill was (gradually) thinned of-the  
ἵππεων. δὲ τέλος καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. Οὐ  
horsemen; but at-last also all departed. —

Κλέαρχος οὖν οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν  
Clearchus therefore did not march on (to) the  
λόφον, ἀλλ' στήσας ὑπὸ αὐτὸν πέμπει  
hill, but having-halted under [at the foot of] it he-sends  
Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον,  
Lycius the Syracusan and another on the hill,  
καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπέρ τοῦ  
and he-orders (them) having-viewed the (things) on the  
λόφου ἀπαγγεῖλαι τί ἐστι. Καὶ ὁ Λύκιος  
hill to-report what is (there). And — Lycius  
ῆλασε τε καὶ ἴδων ἀπαγ-  
rode-on — (to the hill) and seeing (the state of affairs) brings  
γέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. Δέ  
word that they-flee to the-utmost-of-their-ability. And  
σχεδὸν δτε ταῦτα ἦν θλιος καὶ  
nearly when these (things) | were [happened] (the) sun also  
ἴδυετο. Δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστησαν, καὶ  
set. And there the Greeks halted, and  
σεμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἀμα  
placing — (their) arms rested; and at-the-same-time  
μὲν ἐδαίμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδαμοῦ φαίνοιτο  
indeed they-were-surprised that Cyrus no-where appeared

οὐδ' ἄλλος οὐδεὶς παρεῖη αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ  
 nor did (any) other one 'come from-him. For  
 ηδεσαν οὐ αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἴκαζον  
 they-knew not (that) he was-dead, but they-supposed (him)  
 ἢ οἰχεσθαι διώκοντα ἢ προεληλαχένα.  
 either to-go-away pursuing (the enemy) or to-have-pushed-on-before  
 καταληφόμενον τι. Καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβούλευονται  
 about-to-seize some (post). And they deliberated  
 εἰ μείναντες αὐτοῦ ἄγοιντο ἐνταῦθα τὰ σκευο-  
 if remaining there they-should-bring thither the baggage  
 φόρα, ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἔδοξεν  
 train, or return to the camp; it-seemed  
 αὐτοῖς οὖν ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ  
 to-them therefore (best) to-return; and they-arrived at  
 τὰς σκηνάς ἀμφὶ δόρπηστον. Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ  
 the tents about supper-time. Such was the  
 τέλος μὲν ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας. Δέ καταλαμβά-  
 end indeed of-this — day. But they  
 νουσι τε τὰ πλεῖστα τῶν ἄλλων χρημάτων  
 find not-only the most of — (their) other things  
 διηρπασμένα, καὶ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν  
 plundered (or destroyed), but-also whatever food or drink  
 εἰ ἦν· καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ  
 there may-be; and the wagons full-of wheat-flour and  
 σίνου, ἃς Κῦρος παρεσκευάσατο, ἵνα εἰ ποτε  
 wine, which Cyrus provided, that if ever  
 σφοδρὰ ἐνδεια λάβοι τὸ στράτευμα, διαδοίη  
 vehement want should-seize the camp, he-might-distribute  
 τοῖς Ἐλληνσιν, αὗται ἀμάξαι δ' ἦσαν  
 (them) to-the Greeks, these wagons — were  
 τετρακόσιαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο, καὶ ταύτας τότε  
 four-hundred as they-said, and these then  
 οἱ σὺν Βασιλεὶ διηρπασαν. "Ωστε οἱ πλεῖστοι  
 — (those) with (the) king plundered. So-that the most  
 τῶν Ἐλλήνων ἦσαν ἀδειπνοι· δέ καὶ ἦσαν  
 of-the Greeks were supperless; but also they-were

ἀνάριστοι· γαρ δὴ πρὶν τὸ στράτειμα  
without-dinner; for indeed before the army  
καταλύσαι πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη.  
halted for dinner (the) king appeared.  
Οὖτως οὖν μὲν διεγένοντο ταύτην τὴν  
Thus therefore indeed did-they-pass that --  
νύκτα.  
night

## BOOK II.

## CHAPTER I.

Ως μὲν οὖν τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἥδροισδε  
 How — therefore the Grecian (force) was-collected  
 Κύρω, ὅτε ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν  
 for-Cyrus, when he-led-an-army against — (his) brother  
 Ἀρταξέρξην, καὶ δοσα ἐπάχθη ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ,  
 Artaxerxes, and what was-done in the upward-march,  
 καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ ὡς Κύρος ἐτελεύτησε,  
 and how — (a) battle took-place, and how Cyrus died,  
 καὶ ὡς οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐλθόντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον  
 and how the Greeks having-come to the camp  
 ἐκοιμήθησαν, οἴόμενοι νικᾶν τὰ πάντα,  
 went-to-rest, | thinking to-conquer — all, [believing that  
 καὶ Κύρον ζῆν,  
 they were completely victorious], and (that) Cyrus lived, (all this)  
 δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσδεν λόγῳ. Δέ  
 has-been-indicated in the preceding discourse (or book) But  
 ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοί  
 |at-the-same-time with-the day [at dawn of day] the generals  
 συνελθόντες ἐδαίμαζον, ὅτι Κύρος οὐτε πέμποι  
 having-come-together were-surprised, that Cyrus 'had neither 'sent  
 ἄλλον σημανοῦτα ὁ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, οὐτε  
 any-one-else signifying what is-necessary to-do, nor  
 αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. Ἐδοξεν οὖν αἰτοις  
 did-'be himself 'appear. It-seemed therefore (best) to-them  
 τυσκευασαμένοις ἀ εἶχον, καὶ ἔξοπλισαμένοις,  
 having-packed-up what they-had, and having-armed-themselves,  
 προιέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσδεν ἔως συμμίξειαν  
 |to-march in the forward [to advance] until they-formed-a-junction

Κύρω. Δέ τις ἡδη ὅντων ὁρμῆ, ἀμα ἀνίσ  
 with-Cyrus. But now being in-motion, at-the-same-time with-the-  
 χοντι ἥλιῳ ἥλιδε Προκλῆς ὁ ἄρχων Τευθρανίας  
 rising sun, came Procles the governor-of Teuthrania  
 γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δημαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ  
 having-descended from Damaratus the Lacedæmonian, and  
 Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. Οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος  
 Glus the (son of) Tamos. These informed (them) that Cyrus  
 μὲν τέθνηκε, δέ Ἀριαῖος πεφευγὼς εἴη μετα  
 indeed was-dead, and (that) Ariæus having-fled was, with  
 τῶν ἀλλων βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ σταδιῳ δόθει  
 the other barbarians, at the station whence  
 ὁρμῶντο τῇ προτεραιᾳ, καὶ λέγοι, ὅτι ἀν μὲν  
 they-started on-the day-before, and he-said, that he might indeed  
 περιμείνειν αὐτούς ταῦτην τὴν ἡμέραν, εἰ μέλ-  
 wait-for them that-same — day, if they-  
 λοιεν ἥκειν, δέ φαίν οἱ πιέναι τῇ  
 might-intend to-come, — (for) he-said (he was about) to-depart on the  
 ἀλλῃ ἐπὶ Ιωνίας, δόθενπερ ἥλιδε.  
 next (day) for Ionia, whence he-had-come.

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ οἱ  
 The generals hearing these (things), and the  
 ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι  
 other Greeks hearing (them from the generals)  
 ἔφερον βαρέως. Δέ Κλέαρχος εἶπε τάδε. Ωφελε  
 bore-it grievously. But Clearchus spoke thus: Would  
 ἀλλὰ μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν. δέ ἐπει τετελεύτηκεν,  
 then indeed (that) Cyrus lived; but since he-has-died,  
 ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαῖο, ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν τε  
 announce to-Ariæus, that we are-victorious not-only (over  
 βασιλέα, καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι μάχεται  
 the) king, and as you-see, no-one any-longer offers  
 ἡμῖν, καὶ εἰ μὴ ἥλιδετε ἡμεῖς, ἀν  
 us 'battle, but-also if you-'had not 'come to-us, 'we would  
 ἐπορυόμεδα ἐπὶ βασιλέα. Ἐπαγγελλόμεδα δέ  
 have-marched against (the) king. We-promise also

Αριαίω, ἐὰν ἔλλη ἐνδάδε, καθίσει  
 Ariæus, if he-come here, (that we are ready) to-place  
 αὐτόν εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασιλείου. γάρ  
 him on the throne, the royal (throne); for  
 τῶν νικώντων μάχῃ καὶ ἐστί τὸ ἄρχειν.  
 — (those) conquering in-battle also (to them) | is the to-rule

Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ἀποστέλλει τοὺς  
 [it belongs to rule]. Saying these (things) he-sends-away the  
 ἀγγέλους, καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκονα  
 messengers, and with them Cheirisophus the Lacedæmonian  
 καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· γάρ καὶ Μένων  
 and Menon the Thessalian; for indeed Menon  
 αὐτὸς ἐθεούλετο· γάρ ἦν φίλος καὶ ξένος  
 himself desired (to go); for he-was (a) friend and guest

\*Αριαίου. Οἱ μὲν ὠχοντο, of-Ariæus (bound by the ties of hospitality). — (These) then departed,

δὲ Κλέαρχος περιέμενε. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα  
 but Clearchus waited (for them). But the army

ἐπορίζετο σῖτον δῆπος ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν  
 supplied-itself with-food as-well-as they-were-able from — (their)

ὑποζυγίων, κόπτοντες τοὺς βοῦς καὶ ὄνους·  
 beasts-of-burden, slaughtering — (their) oxen and asses;

δὲ προιόντες μικρὸν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, οὖ  
 and advancing (a) little from the army, (to) where

ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις, τε τοῖς  
 the battle took-place they-got wood (for fuel), not-only from-the

οἰστοῖς, οὖσιν πολλοῖς, οὓς οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 arrows, being many (in number), which the Greeks,

ὑνάγκαζον τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως  
 compelled — (those) deserting from (the) king

ἐκβάλλειν, καὶ τοῖς γέρροις, καὶ ταῖς  
 to-throw-away, and the wicker-shields (of the Persians), and the

ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίναις ταῖς αἰγυπτίαις. Δὲ καὶ  
 shields the wooden-ones the Egyptian. And also

πολλαὶ πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἔρημοι ήσαν  
 many targets and wagons emptied (of their contents) were

φέρεσθαι. χρώμενοι πᾶσι οἷς, ἔφοντες κρέα  
to-be-carried-off, using all which, (for) cooking meat

ἥσθισν εἰκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.  
they-eat (enough for) that — day.

Καὶ ἦν ἥδη τε περὶ πλῆθουσαν ἀγορὰν,  
And it-was now not-only|about full market,

καὶ ἐρχονται παρὰ  
[about the middle of the forenoon], but also there-arrived from (the)

βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι  
king and Tissaphernes heralds, | the — others

βάρβαροι δὲ ἦν εἰς αὐτῶν Ἑλλην  
barbarian [being barbarian] but there-was one of-them (a) Greek

Φαλίνος, δος ἐτύγχανε ὅν παρὰ  
Phalinus (by name), who | happened being [happened to be] with

Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ ἔχων ἐντίμως.  
Tissaphernes, | and (who) holding (him) honourably; [and was

καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο εἶναι  
highly esteemed by him]; — for he-pretended to-be

ἐπιστήμων τῶν τε ἀμφὶ τάξεις καὶ  
skilled (in) the (things) not-only relative-to tactics but-also

ὅπλομαχίαν. Δὲ οὗτοι  
(in those relative to) fighting-with-heavy-arms. But these (heralds)

προσελθόντες, καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς ἄρχοντας  
approaching, and calling to the generals

τῶν Ἑλλήνων, λέγοντις δὲ τι βασιλεὺς κελεύει  
of-the Greeks, said, that (the) king commanded

τοὺς Ἑλληνας, ἐπει τικῶν τυγχάνει,  
the Greeks, | since conquering he-happens, [since he had

καὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον, παραδόντας  
gained the victory], and had-slain Cyrus, (that) having-delivered-up

τὰ ὅπλα, ἵοντας ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας  
— (their) arms, (and) going | to the gates 'of (the,

βασιλέως, εὑρίσκεσθαι ἀν  
king, [to the palace of the king], to-obtain-for-themselves if

δύνωνται τι ἀγαθόν. Ταῦτα μὲν οἱ  
they-can any-thing good (or favourable). Thus — did the

κήρυκες βασιλέως εἶπον· δὲ οἱ Ἔλληνες μὲν  
 heralds of (the, king speak; but the Greeks indeed  
 ἤκουσαν βαρέως, δὲ Κλέαρχος ὅμως  
 heard (them) heavily (with concern), but Clearchus only  
 εἶπε τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἴη οὐ τῶν νικώντων  
 spoke so-much, that it-was not (the part) of — (those) conquering  
 παραδιδόναι τὰ δπλα· ἀλλ', μὲν ἔφη ὑμεῖς  
 to give-up — (their) arms; but, indeed said-he, 'do you  
 ὃ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί ἀποκρίνασθε τούτοις  
 O men generals reply to-these (men)  
 τε ὁ τι ἔχετε κάλλιστον καὶ ἀριστον·  
 not only what you-hold (to be) most-proper but-also the-best;  
 δὲ ἐγὼ ἦξω αὐτίκα. Γάρ τις τῶν ὑπηρετῶν  
 and I will-come directly. For some-one of-the attendants  
 ἐκάλεσε αὐτὸν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ιερα  
 called him, that he-might-see the (entrails of a) victim  
 ἐξηρημένα· γάρ ἐτυχε θυόμενος.  
 (that just) had-been-taken-out; for he-happened (to be) sacrificing.  
 \*Ενδα δὴ Κλέανωρ μὲν ὁ Ἀρκάς, ὃν πρεσβύτατος,  
 Then indeed Cleanor — the Arcadian, being the-oldest,  
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀν πρόσθεν ἀποδάνοιεν ἢ  
 answered that 'they would sooner die than (that)  
 παραδοίησαν τὰ δπλα· δὲ Πρόξενος δ Θηβαῖος  
 they-would-deliver-up — (their) arms; but Proxenus the Theban  
 ἔφη, 'Αλλ' ἐγώ ὃ Φαλίνε θαυμάζω. πότερα  
 said, But I, O Phalinus, wonder, whether (the)  
 βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ δπλα ὡς κρατῶν ἢ  
 king asks (for) — (our) arms as conquering or  
 ὡς δῶρα διὰ φιλίαν. Γάρ εἰ μὲν ὡς κρατῶν,  
 as gifts through friendship. For if indeed as conquering,  
 τί δεῖ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐκ ἐλθόντα  
 why does-it-become him to-ask (for them) and not coming  
 λαβεῖν; δὲ εἰ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν,  
 take (them)? but if having-persuaded (us) he-desires to-take  
 λεγέτω, τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,  
 them), let-him-say, what will-be (left) to-the soldiers

ἔὰν χαρίσωνται αὐτῷ ταῦτα. Πρὸς ταῦτα  
if they-should-gratify him (in) this. To this

Φαλινός εἶπε, βασιλεὺς ἡγεῖται  
Phalinus said, (The) king considers (himself) to-be-the-con-  
κᾶν, ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτονε Κύρον· γάρ τις ἔστιν αὐτῷ,  
queror, since he-has-slain Cyrus; for who is-there against-him,

ὅστις ἀντιποιεῖται τῆς ἀρχῆς; δὲ καὶ  
who disputes the government (with him)? | and also  
νομίζει ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἑαυτοῦ  
considers you to-be to-himself [he moreover considers you as

ἔχων ἐν τῇ μήσῃ χώρᾳ  
belonging to him as captives] | having (you) in the middle country  
ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ἐντὸς  
of-himself, [having you in the interior of his kingdom], and within  
ἀδιαβάτων ποταμῶν, καὶ δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ἐφ'  
impassable rivers, and being-able to-lead against  
ὑμᾶς πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ὅσον εἰ  
you (such a) multitude of-men (and) so-great (that) if  
παρέχου ὑμῖν οὐδὲ ἀν δύναισθε ἀποκτεῖναι  
he-should-allow-it to-you neither would you-be-able to-kill (them).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν  
After this-one Theopompus (the) Athenian spoke,

Ω Φαλινε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὄρας, ἔστιν οὐδὲν ἄλλο  
O Phalinus, now, as you see, there-is nothing else  
ἀγαθὸν ἥμιν, εἰ μὴ  
good (or of value) to-us, | if not [unless] (our) ὅπλα  
καὶ ἀρετὴ. Οὖν μὲν ἔχοντες ὅπλα,  
and courage. Therefore indeed having (our) arms,  
οἴμεδα ἀν καὶ χρῆσθαι τῷ  
we-are-of-the-opinion (that) 'we could also 'make-use — (of our)  
ἀρετῇ, δὲ παραδόντες δν ταῦτα, στερηθῆναι  
courage, but giving-up — these, (would be) to-deprive  
καὶ τὸν σωμάτων. Οὖν μὴ οἷον  
(us) also — (of our) bodies. Therefore 'do not 'suppose  
παραδώσειν ὑμῖν τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ  
that) we will-give-up to-you the sole (advantageous) good

διτα ἡμῖν· ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ  
 existing for-us; but with these (in our hands) 'we also  
 μαχούμεδα περὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν ὑμετέρων. Δὲ ὁ  
 'may-fight for the good-things of-yourselves. But —  
 Φαλίνος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔγέλασε, καὶ εἶπεν·  
 Phalinus hearing these (things) smiled, and said.  
 'Αλλὰ μὲν, ὁ νεανίσκε, ἔοικας φιλοσόφῳ,  
 But indeed, O young-man, you-seem (to be like to a) philosopher,  
 καὶ λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριστα· οἰδι μέντοι ὅν  
 and you-speak not without-grace; | know however (you) being  
 ἀνόητος,  
 εἰ  
 out-of-your-senses, [be assured that you are out of your senses], if  
 οἴει τὴν ὑμετέραν ἀρετὴν ἀν περιγενέσθαι  
 'u-suppose (that) — your valour — is-to-be-superior  
 τῆς δυνάμεως βασιλέως. Δὲ ἔφασαν  
 (to) the power 'of (the) 'king. But they-reported (that)  
 τινας ἄλλους ιπομαλακιζό-  
 some others (of the generals) having-become-somewhat-timid-and-  
 μένους λέγειν, ὡς καὶ ἐγένοντο πιστοὶ Κύρῳ,  
 apprehensive said, as also they-had-been faithful to-Cyrus,  
 καὶ ἀν γένοιντο ἄξιοι πολοῦ βασιλεῖ  
 so 'they might 'become | worthy of-much 'to (the) king  
 εἰ βούλοιτο γενέσθαι  
 [of great service to the king] if he-desired to-become (their)  
 φίλους· καὶ εἴτε θέλοι χρῆσθαι τι  
 friend; and afterwards he-might-wish to-employ (them) for-any  
 ἄλλο, εἴτε στρατεύειν ἐπ'  
 other (purpose), (or if) afterwards (he were) to-march against  
 Αἴγυπτον, ἀν συγκαταστέψαντο αὐτῷ. Ἐν  
 Egypt, 'they would 'assist-in-reducing-it for-him. During  
 τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε, καὶ ἤρωτησεν εἰ ἦδη  
 this (time) Clearchus came, and inquired if now  
 ἀποκεκριμένοι εἰεν. Δὲ Φαλίνος ιπολαβών  
 they-had-returned-an-answer. But Phalinus having-taken-up (the dis-  
 εἶπεν· Ω Κλέαρχε, οὗτοι λέγει ἄλλος  
 source) said O Clearchus these say (one thing). others

ἀλλα· δέ σὺ εἰπέ ἡμῖν, τί λέγεις.  
(say) other (things); but 'do you 'tell us, what you-say.

Δ' ὁ εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Φαλίνε, ἀσμενος  
But — 'he [Clearchus] 'said : I, O Phalinus, am-glat

ἐώρακα σε, δὲ καὶ οἷμαι πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι·  
I-have-seen you, and also I-think all the others (are so);

γὰρ τε εἰ σύ Ἑλλην, καὶ ἡμεῖς,  
for not-only are you (a) Greek, but-also we (ourselves are),

ὅντες τοσοῦτοι, ὅσους σὺ ὄρᾶς· ὅντες δέ  
being so-many (in number), as you see; being then

ἐν τοιούτοις πράγμασι, συμβουλευόμενά σοι,  
in such circumstances, 'we (would) 'consult with-you,

τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις.  
(about) what it-is-proper to-do concerning (that) which you-announce

Οὖν, πρὸς θεῶν, σὺ συμβού-  
(from the king). Therefore, by (the) gods, | 'do you 'con-  
λευσον ἡμῖν δ τι δοκεῖ σοι εἶναι  
sult with-us [give us your advice] what seems to-you to-be  
κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον, καὶ δ σοι οἵσει  
the-most-honourable and the-best, and which to-you will-bring

τιμὴν εἰς τὸν χρόνον ἔπειτα ἀναλεγόμενον  
honour in the time to-come, (when) it-is-related,

ὅτι Φαλίνος ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως,  
that Phalinus when, having-been-sent from (the) king,

κελεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα,  
commanding the Greeks to give-up — (their) arms,

ξυνεβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς ξυλβουλευομένοις τάδε  
counselled them consulting (with him) so-and-sic

Οἰσδα δὲ, ὅτι ἀ ἀν συμβουλεύσῃς  
(For) you-know —, that what 'you may 'have-advised (of a)  
ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Ο δέ Κλέαρχος  
necessity is-to-be-reported in — Greece. — — Clearchus

ἴπηγετο ταῦτα, καὶ βουλόμενος αὐτόν,  
craftily-urged these (things), also desiring (that) he

τὸν πρεσβεύοντα παρὰ βασιλέως, ξυμβουλεῦσαι  
— coming-as-envy from (the) king, should-counsel

*μη παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα, ὅπως οἱ Ἑλλῆνες  
(them) not to-give-up — (their) arms, that the Greeks  
εἰσεν μᾶλλον εὐέλπιδες. Δὲ Φαλίνος ὑποστρέψας  
might-be more full-of-good-hopes. But Phalinus | having-turned*

*παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ  
[having evaded this appeal] contrary to-the opinion of-him [Clearchus]*

*εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων ἔστι  
said: I, if indeed of — ten-thousand hopes there-is*

*τις μία ὑμῖν σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας  
any one (remaining) to-you to-save (yourselves) fighting-against*

*βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ  
(the) king, counsel (you) not to-give-up —*

*ὅπλα· εἰ δὲ τοι ἔστιν μηδεμία ἐλπὶς  
(your) arms: if indeed — there-is not-one hope (for you)*

*σωτηρίας ἀκοντος βασιλέως, συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν  
of-safety opposing (the) king, I-advise you*

*σώζεσθαι ὅπῃ δυνατόν. Δὲ  
to-save-yourselves | in-what-way possible [in the only way you can]. But*

*Κλέαρχος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ μὲν  
Clearchus to these (things) said: But indeed*

*δὴ σὺ λέγεις ταῦτα· δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν  
really 'do you 'say these (things); but for our (part)*

*ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, δτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ μὲν  
announce this, that we think. if indeed*

*δέοι εἶναι φίλους βασιλεῖ ἄν  
it-may-become (us) to-become friends 'to (the) king | (that)'we would*

*ἀξιοι πλείονος ειναι φίλοι,  
'be-worthy of-more to-be friends, [that we would be more valuable*

*ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες  
friends), having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up*

*ἄλλω· δὲ εἰ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἀν ἀμενον  
to-another; but if it-behoves (us) to-make-war, (it) would (be) better*

*πολεμεῖν ᔁχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες  
to-make-war having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up*

*ἄλλω. Δὲ ὁ Φαλίνος εἶπε, Ταῦτα μὲν δη  
to-another. But — Phalinus said. These (things) — certainly*

ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσε  
we-will-announce, but also (the) king commanded (us)  
εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν τάδε, ὅτι μὲν μένουσι αὐτοῦ  
to-say to-you thus, that — (to you) remaining here  
εἶησαν σπονδαί, προϊόντι δὲ καὶ ἀποῦσι  
here-would-be (a) truce, (but) advancing and also | going-away  
πόλεμος. Καὶ οὖν εἴπατε  
[retreating] (there would be) war. And therefore tell (as

περὶ τούτου, πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ  
your answer) respecting this, whether you-will-remain and  
εἰσὶ σπονδαί, ή ἀπαγγελῶ παρ' ὑμῶν  
there-is (a) truce, or (whether) I-shall-announce from you

ώς πολέμου ὄντος. Δέ Κλέαρχος  
|that war being [that there is war]. But Clearchus

ἔλεξεν· Ἀπάγγελλε καὶ τοίνυν περὶ τούτου,  
said: Announce also therefore respecting this,  
ὅτι καὶ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν, ταῦτα ἀπερ παί  
|that it also seems to-us, the-same as (it does) likewise to (the)  
βασιλεῖ.

king [that we are of the same opinion and determination with the king]

Τί οὖν ἔστι ταῦτα; ἔφη ὁ Φαλίνος. Ο Κλέ-  
What therefore are these? said — Phalinus. — Cle-

αρχος ἀπεκρίνατο· Ήν μὲν μένωμεν σπονδαί,  
archus replied: If indeed we-remain (here), (a) truce,

ἀποῦσι δὲ καὶ προιοῦσι πόλεμος. Δέ ὁ  
(if) we-retreat and also (if) we-advance war. But — (Phalinus)

πάλιν ἥρωτησε· Ἀπαγγελῶ σπονδὰς ή πόλεμον;  
again asked: Shall-I-announce (a) truce or war?

Δέ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο ταῦτα πάλιν· σπονδαί  
But Clearchus answered the-same again; (a) truce

μὲν μένουσι, δὲ ἀποῦσι ή προιοῦσι πόλεμος. Δέ  
— remaining, but retreating or advancing war. But

τι ὁ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.  
what — (he) might-do he-did not 'signify.

## CHAPTER II.

**Φαλίνος μὲν δὴ ὤχετο, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ**  
 PHALINUS — indeed departed, as-also — (those) with him  
**Δέ οἱ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἥκον, Προκλῆς καὶ**  
 But — (those from Ariæus were-come, (namely) Procles an-  
**Χειρίσοφος· δὲ Μένων ἔμενε αἵτοῦ παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ·**  
 Cheirisophus; but Menon remained there with Ariæus;  
**δὲ οὗτοι ἐλεγον, δτι Ἀριαῖος φαίη εἰναι**  
 and these reported, that Ariæus said (that) there-are  
**πολλοὺς Πέρσας βελτίους ἑαυτοῦ, οὓς οὐκ**  
 many Persians superior (to) himself, who 'would not  
**ἀνασχέσθαι αἵτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε**  
 'endure him reigning; but if you-wish  
**συναπίέναι κελεύει ἡκειν ἡδη τῆς**  
 to-depart-with (him) he-requests (you) to-come now — (this)  
**νυκτός· δὲ εἰ μή, φησίν αὐτὸς ἀπίέναι**  
 night; but if (you do) not, he-says (that) he (is) to-depart  
**πρωΐ.**      **Δέ ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄλλα**  
 early-in-the-morning. And — Clearchus said: But  
**χρὴ ποιεῖν οὕτως· ὅσπερ λέγετε, εἴαν μὲν**  
 it-is-necessary to-do so; as you-say, if indeed  
**ἥκωμεν· δὲ εἰ μή, πράττετε ὅποιον τι**  
 we-might-come (to Ariæus); but if not, do whatever  
**ἄν οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν.**      **Δέ οὖδὲ**  
 you may 'think (to be) the-most advantageous. But neither  
**εἶπε τούτοις δτι ποιήσοι.**      **Δέ μετὰ ταῦτα,**  
 did-he-say to-those what he-would-do. But after these  
**ἥλιον ἡδη δύνοντος, συγκαλέσας τοὺς**  
 (things), (the) sun now setting, having-assembled the  
**στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐλεξε τοιάδε·**  
 generals and captains he-spoke (in) this-manner:  
**Ὦ άνδρες, ἐμοὶ θυνμένῳ**  
 O man to-me sacrificing-and-inspecting-the-entrails (for a sign re

iένα. επὶ βασιλέα τὰ ιερά οὐκ  
 respecting; | to-go [marching] against (the) king the victims 'did not  
 ἐγίγνετο. Καὶ εἰκότως ἀρά ἐγίγνετο  
 'become (favourable). And with-good-reason therefore they-were  
 οὐ. γὰρ ὡς ἐγώ νῦν πυνθάνομαι δὲ ναυσίπορος  
 not (so); f - as I now learn the navigable  
 ποταμός Τίγρης ἔστι ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ  
 river Tigris is in (the) middle (between) us and  
 βασιλέως, δὸν ἀν οὐ διναίμεδα διαβῆναι  
 (the) king, which 'we would not 'be-able to-cross  
 ἀνευ πλοίων. δὲ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα. Μὲν δὴ  
 without boats; but we have not boats. — Certainly  
 γε οὐκ οἶόν τε μένειν αὐτοῦ· γαρ  
 (for us) at-least (it is) not possible to-remain here, for  
 τα ἐπιτήδια ἔστιν οὐκ ἔχειν.  
 the necessities-of-life | are not to-have, [are not to be procured],  
 δὲ ιέναι παρα τοὺς φίλους Κύρου τὰ ιερά ήτι  
 but to-go to the friends of-Cyrus the sacrifices were  
 πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν. Οὖν δέ χρή  
 altogether favourable to-us. Therefore thus it-is-necessary (for us;  
 ποιεῖν. ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν δὲ τι τις ἔχει.  
 to-act, having-retired to-sup (on) whatever any-one has  
 Ἐπειδὰν δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι ὡς  
 After indeed the-signal-may-be-given with (the) horn as (if)  
 ἀναπαύσθαι συσκευάζεσθε. ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον  
 to-go-to-rest pack-up-your-baggage; after — the second  
 ἀνατίθεσθε επὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια. δὲ  
 (signal) place (the baggage) on the beasts-of-burden; but  
 επὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, ἐπειδε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ,  
 on the third (signal), follow — (your) leader,  
 ἔχοντες μὲν τὰ ὑποζύγια πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ,  
 having indeed the beasts-of-burden next the river,  
 δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ἔξω. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ  
 but the heavy-armed-men on-the-outside. The generals and  
 λοχαγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπῆλθον καὶ  
 captains having-heard these (things) departed, and

ἐποίουν οὖτω. Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ  
 did so. And (for) the rest (of the time) — (Clearchus)  
 μὲν ἡρχε, δὲ οἱ ἐπείσοντο, οὐχ  
 indeed commanded, and — (the others) obeyed, (they) not  
 ἔλόμενοι,  
 having-chosen (him actually as their commander), but perceiving  
 ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει  
 that (he) alone thought (and had the mental qualifications) such-as  
 ἐδει τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ ἄλλοι δ' ἡσαν  
 became — (a) commander, the other (commanders) indeed were  
 ἀπειροι. Αριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ,  
 inexperienced. | (The) number — of-the road, [the computation  
     ἥν ἥλθον ἔξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας  
 of the distance] which they-came from Ephesus — (in) Ionia  
 μέχρι τῆς μάχης, τρεῖς καὶ ἑνενήκοντα  
 to-the (place) of-the battle, (was) three and ninety  
 σταδιοι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντα-  
 day's-march (making) five and thirty and five-  
 κόσιοι παρασάγγαι, πεντήκοντα καὶ ἕξακις-  
 hundred [535] parangs, (or) fifty and six-  
 χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι στάδιοι. ἀπὸ<sup>τοῦ</sup>  
 thousand and ten-thousand [16,050] stadia; (the distance) from  
 δὲ τῆς μάχης εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἐλέγοντο εἶναι  
 — (the place) of-the battle to Babylon was-said to-be  
 ἑξήκοντο καὶ τριακόσιοι στάδιοι.  
 sixty and three-hundred [360] stadia.

Ἐντεῖδεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο σκότος, Μιλτοκύδης μὲν  
 Thence, when it-became dark, Miltoclythes —  
 ὁ Θράξ ηὔτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα, ἔχων τε  
 the Thracian deserted to (the) king, having not only  
 τοὺς ἵππεας τοὺς μεδ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς  
 the horsemen — (those) with him to-the-number-of  
 τετταράκοντα καὶ ὡς τριακοσίους τῶν Θρακῶν  
 forty, but-also about three-hundred of-the Thracian  
 πεζῶν. Δε Κλέαρχος ἤγειτο τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 foot-soldiers. But Clearchus lead-the-way for-the res

κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα,  
 according [to-the things-which-had-been-directed, [in the prescribed order]]  
 δὸς οἱ εἶποντο, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον  
 and — (they) followed, and arrived at the first  
 σταδιόν, παρὰ Ἀριαίου καὶ τὴν στρατιάν  
 station, to (where) Ariæus, and the army  
 ἐκείνου, ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ  
 of-himself (were), about mid night; and (when they arrived)  
 θέμενοι ἐν τάξει τὰ ὅπλα οἱ  
 having-been-placed in order (of battle) — (under) arms, the  
 στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ξυνῆλθον  
 generals and captains of-the Greeks went-together  
 παρὰ Ἀριαίου· καὶ τε οἱ Ἑλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος,  
 to Ariæus; and not-only the Greeks but-also Ariæus,  
 καὶ οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ὄμοσαν, μήτε  
 and the principal-men of — (those) with him took-an-oath, not  
 προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, τε ἔσεσθαι σύμμαχοι· οἱ  
 to-betray one-another, but to-be-hereafter allies; the  
 βάρβαροι δὲ προσώμοσαν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι  
 barbarians indeed swore-in-addition also to-lead-the-way  
 ἀδόλως. Δ' ὄμοσαν ταῦτα, σφάξαντες  
 without-treachery. And they-swore these (things), killing  
 ταῦρον, καὶ λύκον, καὶ κάπρον, καὶ  
 (in sacrificing) (a) bull, and wolf, and boar, and  
 κριόν, εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἑλληνες  
 ram, (receiving the blood) in (a) shield, the — Greeks  
 βάπτοντες ξίφος, δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι λόγχην.  
 dipping (a) sword, and the barbarians (a) lance, (into the  
 "Επεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο  
 blood). When indeed — (these) pledges-of-fidelity had-taken-place  
 δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν. Ἄγε δή, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπείπερ  
 — Clearchus said: Come then, O Ariæus, since-then  
 δὸς αὐτὸς στόλος ἔστι ὑμῖν καὶ ὑμῖν, εἴπε τίνα  
 the same route is to-you and to-us, tell-us what  
 γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας. πότερον  
 opinion (or plan) you-have respecting the march. whether

ἀπιμεν, ηπιπερ ηλθομεν η  
shall) we-return, (by the same route) which we-came or  
δοκεις εννενοηκεναι τινα αλλην κρειττω  
do-you-think to-have-thought-of (or devised) any other better  
οδὸν; ο δε είπεν Ἀπιόντες μὲν ην  
road? — (He) — replied: Returning — (by the way) which  
ηλθομεν. αν παντελῶς ἀπολοίμεδα ιπια  
we-came, 'we would 'be entirely 'destroyed by  
λιμουν. γάρ ιπάρχει ήμιν νῦν οὐδέν τῶν  
famine; for there-is to-us now no (supply) of —  
ἐπιτηδείων. γάρ οὐδέ τῶν ἐγγυτάτω  
provisions; for neither (during) the nearest (or last)  
έπτακαίδεκα σταδιων ιόντες δειρο, είχομεν  
seventeen days'-march coming hither, | we-having  
λαμβάνειν οὐδέν ἐκ τῆς χώρας.  
to-take nothing from the country [we could procure nothing  
Δ' εἴτι ην ενδα, ήμεις  
from the country] But any-thing (that) was there, we  
διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. Δέ νῦν ἐπινο-  
passing-through consumed-it. But now we  
οῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μὲν μακροτέραν, δ'  
think to-go — (a) longer (way), but 'we-shall  
οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Δέ πορευτέον  
not want — provisions. But |it-is-to-be-marched  
ήμιν τοὺς πρώτους σταδιοὺς  
to-us [we must make the march] (on) the first days'-marches  
μακροτάτους ὡς αν δυνάμεδα, ίνα ὡς  
the-longest that 'we can 'possibly-make-them, in-order that  
ἀποσπασθῶμεν πλεῖστον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύ-  
we-may-be-removed the-farthest from-the royal ar-  
ματος. γάρ ην ἀπαξ ἀπόσχωμεν οδὸν δύο η  
my; for if once we-be-distant (a) journey of-two or  
τριῶν ήμερῶν, βασιλεὺς οὐκέτι μὴ  
three days. (the) king 'would | no-more not [not]  
δύνηται καταλαβεῖν ήμᾶς. Γάρ μὲν ὄλιγω  
'be able to-overtake us. For indeed 'with (a) small

στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι. Δ' army he-will not dare to-pursue (us). But  
 ἔχων πολὺν στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται πορεύεσθαι. having (a) large force he-will not 'be-able to-march  
 ταχέως. δέ καὶ ἵσως σπανεῖ τῶν fast-enough; and also 'will probably 'experience-want of-the  
 ἐπιτηδείων. Ἔγωγε, ἔφη, ἔχω ταύτην τὴν necessities-of-life. I-at-least, said-he, hold this —  
 γνώμην.  
 opinion.

Δέ αὖτη η στρατηγία ἦν δυναμένη οὐδέν But this — plan-of-campaign was equivalent-to nothing  
 ἄλλο, ἢ ἀποδρᾶντι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν, δέ ἢ τύχη else, than to-stealing-away or to-fleeing-openly-away, but — fortune  
 ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. Γὰρ ἐπει ἐγένετο ἡμέρα conducted-the-army more-honourably. For when it-became day  
 ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον ἐν δεξιᾷ they-marched-forth, having the sun on the-right  
 λογιζόμενοι ἤξειν ἅμα δύνοντι ἥλιῳ expecting to-arrive at-the-same-time 'with (the) 'setting sun  
 εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας. καὶ at (some) village of-the Babylonian territory; and (as respects)  
 τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν. Δέ ἔτι this they-were indeed not 'deceived. And yet  
 ἀμφὶ δεῖλην ἔδοξαν ὄραν about the-fore-part-of-the-afternoon they-thought (that) they-saw (the)  
 πολεμίους ἵππεας. καὶ τε οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων enemy's cavalry; and not-only — (those) of-the Greeks  
 ἔτυχον μὴ ὄντες ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν, (who) happened not being [who were not] in the ranks  
 ἔδεον εἰς τὰς τάξεις, καὶ Ἀριαῖος, (γὰρ ἔτύχανε ran to the ranks, but-also Ariæus, (for he-happened  
 πορεύομενος ἐφ' ἀμάξης, διότι. ἔτέτρωτο,) to be proceeding in (a) wagon, because he-had been-wounded,) καταβὰς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν coming-down did-'put-on (his) 'corselet and-also — (those) with

*aντρῷ.*                    'Εν                    ὥδε                    ὥπλι-  
him (did the same). During (the time) in-which — they-were-arm-

**Ζούτο** οἱ σκοποὶ προπεμφθέντες, ἦκου λέγοντες,  
ing-themselves the scouts sent-out-before, came saying,

**ὅτι εἰσιν οὐχὶ ἵππεῖς, ἀλλ' ἵποζύγια**  
that they-were not horsemen, but beasts-of-burden (that)

*νέμοιντε.* Kai πάντες εὐδὺς ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι  
might-be-pasturing. And all immediately knew. that

(the) βασιλεύς ἐστραποπεδεύετο πον εγγύς· καὶ  
king was-encamped some-where near; and

*γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω.*  
really also smoke appeared in (the) villages not far

*Δέ Κλέαρχος μὲν οὐκ ἤγειν*  
(distant). But Clearchus indeed did not lead (his forces).

**ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ ἦδε τοὺς στρατιώτας**  
against the enemy: for he knew (that) the soldiers

**δῆτας καὶ ἀπειρηκότας καὶ ἀσίτοντος.** δὲ καὶ ήν  
were both fatigued and fasting; and also it was

ἢδη ὀψὲ· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε,  
now late; | not however [not however] he did not | decline

(from his route) φυλαττόμενος taking care μή δοκοῖν (that) he might not seem

φεύγειν, ἀλλ' ἄγων εὐδύωρον, ἔχων

*τοὺς πρώτους κατεσκήνωσεν*

**ἀμα** τῷ δνομένῳ ἥλιῳ, εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω

*κώμας, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ Βασιλικοῦ*

στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ξύλα ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν.

*Oὐν μὲν οἱ πρῶτοι ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο*

Therefore indeed the first (or advance) encamped  
δῆμως τινὶ τρόπῳ, δὲ οἱ ὑστεροὶ προσιόντες  
however in some order but — (those) following coming in

σκοταιοι ηὐλίζοντο ὡς ἔκαστοι ἐτύγχανον,  
 in-the-dark quartered-themselves as 'they severally chanced  
 καὶ ἐποίουν πολλὴν κραυγὴν καλλοῦντες  
 (to find quarters), and they-made much noise calling  
 ἀλλήλους, ὅστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν.  
 so-one-another, so-that even the enemy heard (it);  
 ὅστε μὲν οἱ ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἐφυγούν  
 so-that indeed the nearest of-the enemy even fled  
 ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. Δέ τοῦτο ἐγένετο δῆλον  
 from the encampments. And this became apparent  
 τῇ ὑστερίᾳ· γάρ οὔτε ἔτι οὐδὲν  
 on-the following-day; for neither any-longer | 'did no  
 ὑποζύγιον ἐφάνη, οὔτε  
 beasts-of-burden appear, [did any beasts of burden appear], or  
 στρατόπεδον, οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. Δέ  
 camp, or smoke any-where near. And  
 ὡς ἤοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ  
 as it-seemed, even (the) king was-alarmed at-the approach  
 τοῦ στρατεύματος. Δέ τοῦτο ἐδήλωσε  
 of-the (Grecian) army. And this was-manifest  
 οἵς ἐπραττε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ. Μέντοι τῆς ταύτης  
 by-what he-did on-the following-day. However — this-same  
 νυκτὸς προιόνσης, φόβος ἐμπίπτει καὶ τοῖς Ἑλλήσι  
 night advancing, (a) panic fell also on-the Greeks  
 καὶ ἦν θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος εἰκὸς οἷον  
 and there-was tumult and noise like as (sudden)  
 φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίγνεσθαι. Δέ Κλέ-  
 fear falling-on (one) (causes) to-be. But Cle-  
 αρχος Τολμίδην Ἡλεῖον, ὃν ἐτύγχανε  
 archus (ordered) Tolmides (the) Eleian, | whom he-happened  
 ἔχων πάρ' ἔαυτῷ,  
 having [whom he happened to have] with himself, (and who was)  
 ἄριστον κήρυκα τῶν τότε, τοῦτον  
 the-best herald of — (those) then (existing), this-one /then/  
 ἐκέλευσε ἀνειπεῖν, κατακηρύξαντα συγῆν,  
 he-ordered to-proclaim, he 'having (first) 'ordered silence

ὅτι οἱ ἄρχοντες προαγορεύουσιν, ὃς ἀν  
that the generals publicly-announce, (that he) who might  
μηνύσῃ τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὅνον εἰς  
give-information (respecting) the (one) having-let-loose the ass among  
τὰ ὅπλα, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον  
the arms, that he-would-receive (as) reward (a) talen  
ἀργυρίου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, οἱ στρα  
of-silver. When indeed this was-proclaimed, the sol-  
τιῶται ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι ὁ φόβος εἶη κενὸς, καὶ  
diers knew, that — (their) fear was groundless, and  
οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. Δέ ἀμα ὅρθρῳ  
'that) the generals (were) safe. But at-the-time-of day-break  
ὁ Κλέαρχος παρῆγγειλε τοὺς Ἕλληνας τίθεσθαι  
— Clearchus ordered the Greeks to-place-themselves  
τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τάξιν ἥπερ εἶχον ὅτε  
— (under) arms in (the) order in-which they-had(themselves) when  
ἡ μάχη ἦν.  
the battle was.

---

## CHAPTER III

Δέ ὁ δὴ ἔγραψα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἔξεπλάγη  
But what 'I already 'wrote, that (the) king was-alarmed  
τὴ ἐφόδῳ ἦν δῆλον τῷδε.  
at-the approach (of the Greeks) was evident by-this (that follows).  
Γάρ μὲν τῇ πρόσδεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων  
For indeed on-the preceding day sending (to the Greeks)  
ἰκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα, δέ τότε  
i.e.-ordered (them) to-give-up — (their) arms, but afterwards  
ἄμα ἀνατέλλοντι ἥλιῳ ἔπειμψε  
at-the-same-time 'with (the) 'rising sun he-sent  
κήρυκας περὶ σπουδῶν. Δ' οἱ ἔπει  
heralds about (a) true. But — (these heralds), when  
ἥλιον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρ  
·he went in the outposts, inquired-for the com-

χοντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ προφύλακες  
 manders When indeed the guards (at the <sup>μέσης</sup>  
 ἀπήγγελλον, Κλέαρχος, τυχῶν τοτε ἐπισκοπῶν  
 reported-this, Clearchus, happening then to-be-inspecting  
 τὰς τάξεις, εἰπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύει  
 the troops-drawn-up-in-order, told the guards to-request  
 τους κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἀν σχολάσῃ  
 the heralds to-remain till 'he might 'be-at-leisure  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὥστε ἔχειν  
 When — he-had-arranged the army so-as to-have  
 καλῶς ὄρασθαι πάντη φάλλαγγα  
 (itself) beautifully to-be-seen on-all (sides), (the) phalanx  
 πυκνήν, δὲ μηδένα τῶν ἀόπλων  
 (being) in-close-order, but not-one of-the unarmed (men)  
 καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ  
 appeared to-be (there), he-called-for the messengers, and  
 αὐτός τε προῆλθε ἔχων τε τούς εὐοπλοτάτους  
 he-himself — advanced having — the best-armed  
 καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν στρατιωτῶν αἵτοι  
 and the-handsomest of-the soldiers of-himself (there about  
 καὶ ἔφρασε τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς  
 him), and he-told the other commanders (to do the)  
 ταῖτά. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις  
 same (thing). When indeed he-was near the messengers  
 ἀνηρώτα τί βούλοιτο. Οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον, ὅτι  
 he-demanded what they-wished. — (They) indeed replied, that  
 ἤκοιεν ἄνδρες περὶ σπονδῶν, οἵτινες  
 they-came (as) men respecting (a) truce, (and) who  
 ἔσονται ἵκανοι πε τε ὀπαγγεῖλαι τὰ  
 would-be competent (and empowered) not-only to-announce —  
 παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἑλλησι,  
 (any communication) from (the) king to-the Greeks,  
 καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ.  
 but-also — (those) from the Greeks 'to (the) 'king  
 Δέ ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο. Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν  
 But — (he, Clearchus,) replied: Announce therefore

καὶ τῷ, δτι πρῶτον δεῖ μάχης, γὰρ  
 τοῦν (the king), that first there-is-need 'of (a) 'battle, for  
 ἔστιν οὐκ ἀριστον, οὐδὲ ὁ τολμή-  
 there is no breakfast (for us), nor (is there any one) who will-be-  
 σει, λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν τοῖς Ἑλλησι,  
 dasg (enough) to-speak about (a) truce to-the Greeks,  
 μὴ πορίσας ἀριστον. Οἱ ἄγγελλοι ἀκού-  
 not having-provided (them) breakfast. The messengers hear-  
 σαντες ταῦτα ἀπήλαυνον, καὶ ταχύ ἥκουν·  
 ing these (things) departed, and soon came  
 καὶ Ὡς ἦν δῆλον δτι βασιλεὺς  
 (back), and to-whom [Clearachus] it-was manifest that (the) king  
 ἦν που ἐγγυς, ἢ τις ἄλλος, ὡς  
 was some-where near, or some (persons) else, to-whom  
 ἐπετέτακτο πράττειν ταῦτα. ἔλεγον δὲ  
 it-was-commanded to-transact these (affairs); they-said indeed  
 δτι λέγειν δοκοῖεν βασιλεῖ εἰκότα,  
 that (the things) they-reported seemed 'to (the) 'king reasonable  
 καὶ ἥκοιεν ἔχοντες ἥγεμόνας, οἱ, εἴας  
 and they-came (back) having guides, who, if (the)  
 σπονδαὶ γένωται, ἀξονσιν αὐτούς ἐνθεν ἔξουσι  
 truce should-take-place, would-conduct them to-where they-would-have  
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οἱ δὲ ἤρωτα, εἰ  
 the necessities-of-life. — But 'he (Clearachus) 'inquired, if  
 σπένδοιτο αἵτοις τοῖς ἀνδράσι ιοῦσι  
 a-truce-would-be-made (only) for-those — men going-to  
 καὶ ἀπιοῦσιν, ἢ ἔσοιντο σπονδαί  
 and returning-from (the king), or (if) there-would-be (a) truce  
 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. Δέ οἱ ἔφασαν ἀπασι,  
 also 'for (all) 'the others. But — (they) said for-all,  
 μέχρι τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν ἀν διαγγελθῇ  
 until the (things) from you may be-communicated to (the)  
 βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπον ταῦτα, μεταστη-  
 'king. When indeed they-said these (things), having-dis-  
 πάμενος αὐτοὺς, ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβούλευετο.  
 missed these (messengers), — Clearachus consulted ,with

Kai ἐδόκει τας σπονδὰς  
his officers). And it-seemed (to them) (that) the true  
ποιεῖσθαι ταχύ, καὶ ἐλθεῖν τε καὶ' ὑσυχίας  
was-to-be-made speedily, and to-go not-only at (their) leisure  
ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ λαβεῖν.<sup>ο</sup>  
after the necessities-of-life, but-also to-take [them as required]. —

δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε. Δοκεῖ μὲν κάμοι ταῦτα.  
But Clearchus said: | It-seems indeed also-to-me the-same,

οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε  
[I am of the same opinion]; I-'will not however immediately indeed  
ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἔστ' οἱ  
'announce (our determination), but will-delay until the  
ἄγγελοι ἀν δοκνήσωσι μὴ ἀποδέξῃ  
messengers might be-apprehensive (that) it-'might not seem

ἥμιν ποιήσασθαι τας σπονδὰς.  
(proper) to-us to-have-made-for-ourselves the truce; 'I  
μέντοι γε οἶμαι, ἔφη, τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον  
however certainly 'think, said-he, (that) the same fear  
παρέσεσθαι, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις.  
will-be-present, even — to-our-own soldiers.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι καιρὸς ἀπίγγελλεν  
When indeed he-thought (it) to-be the-proper-time he-announced  
ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ ἐκέλευε  
(to the messengers) that he-would-make-the-truce, and requested  
ἥγεισθαι εὑδὺς πρὸς τάπιτήδεια.  
(them) to-conduct (them) immediately to the-provisions.

Kai οἱ μὲν ἥγοῦντο. Κλέαρχος  
And the (messengers then) indeed led-the-way; Clearchus  
μέν μέντοι ἐπορεύετο ποιησόμενος τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς,  
indeed however proceeded about-making the — true,  
δε ἔχων τὸ στράτευμα ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς  
but having the army in order (of battle), and he-himself  
ἀπισθοφυλάκει. Kai ἐνετίγχανον τάφροις καὶ  
brought-up-the-rear. And they-met-with ditches and  
καλλῶσι πλήρεσιν ὕδατος ὡς μὴ δύνασθαι  
canals (so) full of-water as not to-be-able

διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο δια-  
 to-cross (them) without bridges; but they-made cross-  
 βάσεις ἐξ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἥσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες;  
 ings out-of the palm-trees which had fallen-down,  
 δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἔξέκοπτον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν  
 and also of — (those) they-cut-down. And here was  
 καταμαθεῖν Κλέαρχον ὃς ἐπεστάτει,  
 (an opportunity) to-observe Clearchus how he-exercised-command,  
 ἔχων μὲν ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ, δὲ  
 having indeed in — (his) left hand the spear, but  
 ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἰ τις  
 in — (his) right (hand a) truncheon; and if any-one  
 δοκοίη αὐτῷ τῷν τεταγμένων πρὸς τοῦτο  
 might-seem to-him of — (those) appointed to this (work)  
 βλαχεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον  
 to-loiter, selecting — (a) fit (person) 'he  
 ἂν ἐπαισε, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς ἐμβαίνων  
 would 'beat (him), and at-the-same-time he leaping  
 εἰς τὸν πηλὸν προσελάμβανεν. ὅστε  
 into the mud took-part (in the work); so-that  
 αἰσχύνην εἶναι πᾶσιν μὴ οὐ συσπουδάζειν.  
 shame was to-all — not to-emulate (him in  
 Καὶ οἱ γεγονότες τριάκοντα  
 expediting the work). And — (those) being thirty  
 ἔτη ἐτάχθησαν μὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ.  
 years (of age) were-appointed — by him (for this work);  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρων Κλέαρχον σπου-  
 after indeed also the older persons) saw Clearchus hasten-  
 δάζοντα, καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι προσελάμβανον.  
 ing (the work), even the older-men took-part  
 Δὲ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐσπευδε πολύ μᾶλλον,  
 (in it). But — Clearchus hastened (the work) much more  
 ἵποπτεύων τὰς τάφρους εἶναι μὴ ἀεὶ οὖτω πλήρεις  
 suspecting the ditches to-be not always so full  
 ὕδατος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ δρα οἴα ἄρδειν το  
 of-water; for it-was not (the) season proper to-water the

πεδίον· ἀλλ' ὑπώπτευε βασιλέα ὄφεικένα  
ground; but suspected (that the) king had-sent-out  
τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον ἔνεκα τούτου, ἵνα ἥδη  
the water on the plain by-reason-of this, that already  
πολλὰ δεινὰ προφαίνοιτο τοῖς Ἑλλησι εἰς τὴν  
many difficulties might-appear to-the Greeks in the  
πορείαν.  
march

Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας, ὅδει  
And proceeding they-arrived at (the) villages, from-which  
οἱ ἄγεμόνες ἀπέδειξαν λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτή-  
the guides signified (to them) to-take the provi-  
δεια. Ἐνην δὲ πολὺς σῖτος, καὶ  
sions. There-was-in (these villages) indeed much corn, and  
οἶνος φοινίκων, καὶ ὅξος ἔψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν  
wine of-date-palms, and (an) acid-wine cooked from —  
αὐτῶν. Δὲ αἱ αἵται βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων,  
them. But the same dates of-the palms,  
οἵας μὲν ἔστιν οἴδειν ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν  
such-as indeed are | to-see [to be seen] in — Greece  
ἀπέκειντο τοῖς οἰκέταις, δὲ αἱ ἀποκείμεναι  
are-put-by for-the servants, but — (those) put-away  
τοῖς δεσπόταις ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσιαι τὸ  
for-the masters were choice-ones, admirable for —  
κάλλος καὶ τὸ μέγεδος, δὲ ἡ ὄψις  
(their) beauty and — size, and — (their) appearance  
διέφερε οὐδὲν ἥλεκτρον. Δὲ ξηραίνοντες τὰς  
differed nothing from-amber. And drying —  
τινας ἀπειδεσαν τραγήματα. Καὶ  
some (of these) they-put (them) 'up for-sweetmeats. And  
ἥν καὶ ἥδὺ μὲν παρὰ πότον, δὲ κεφαλαλγὲς.  
(they) were also pleasant indeed with drink, but causing-headache  
Ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται πρῶτον ἔφαγον τὸν  
Here also the soldiers first eat | the  
ἔγχέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ  
brains of-the palm-tree, [the cabbage of the palm-tree], and

οἱ πολλοὶ ἐδαύμασαν τε τὸ εἶδος καὶ  
the multitude were astonished not-only — 'at (its) 'appearance but-also  
τὴν ἴδιότητα τῆς ὥδοντος. Καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ἦν  
at-the peculiarity — 'of (its) sweetness. And this also was  
σφόδρα κεφαλαλγές. Δέ ὁ φοῖνιξ ὅδε  
exceedingly (apt at) causing-headache. But the palm-tree whence  
ὅ ἐγκέφαλος ἐξαιρεθείη αὐδίνετο ὅλος.  
the cabbage may-have-been-taken, withered entirely.

'Ενταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ Τισσαφέρνης  
Here they-remained three days; and Tissaphernes  
ῆκε παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως, καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς  
came from (the) great king, and the brother  
τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως, καὶ τρεῖς ἄλλοι  
of-the wife 'of (the) 'king, and (also) three other  
Πέρσαι, δὲ πολλοὶ δοῦλοι εἴποντο. 'Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ  
Persians, and many slaves attended. After indeed the  
στρατηγοί τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς,  
generals of-the Greeks went-to-meet them,  
Τισσαφέρνης ἐλεγε πρῶτος δὶ' ἔρμηνέως τοιάδε·  
Tissaphernes spoke first through (an) interpreter thus:  
'Ἐγώ, δέ Ἑλληνες ἄνδρες, οἵκῳ γείτων τῇ Ἑλλάδι,  
I, O Grecian men, dwell-neighbouring — Greece,  
καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ὑμᾶς ἐμπεπτωκότας εἰς πολλὰ  
and when I-saw you having-fallen into many  
κακά, καὶ ἀμήχανα, ἐποιησάμην  
evils, and inextricably-great (difficulties), | I-made-it-for-myself  
εὑρημα  
a-piece-of-good-luck [I considered it a most fortunate affair for me]  
εἰ πως δυναίμην αἰτήσασθαι  
if I-were in-any-manner 'able to-entreat (and obtain)  
παρὰ βασιλέως δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι  
from (the) king to-have-given me (permission) to-save  
ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Γάρ οἶμαι  
you (and restore you) to — Greece. For I-think  
ἄν οὐκ ἔξειν ἀχαρίστως μοι  
|(that) 'it would not 'have (itself) ungrateful to-me [that there

οὐτε πρὸς ὑμῶν, οὐτε  
 will be no want of gratitude towards me] either from you, or  
 πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. Δέ γνούς ταῦτα  
 from — all Greece. And knowing these (things)  
 ἥτούμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ, ὅτι  
 I-made-my-request 'to (the) king, saying to-him, that  
 ἀν δικαίως χαρίζοιτο μοι, ὅτι τε πρῶτος  
 he might justly 'gratify me, (as) that 'I not-only first  
 ἤγγειλα αὐτῷ Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα,  
 announced to-him (that) Cyrus was-marching-against (him),  
 καὶ ἀφικόμην ἀμα τῇ ἄγγελίᾳ ἔχων  
 but-also I-came at-the-same-time with-the message having  
 βοήθειαν, καὶ μόνος τῶν τεταγ-  
 assistance (in auxilary troops), and 'I alone of — (those) having-  
 μένων κατὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας οὐκ ἔφυγον,  
 been-drawn-up against the Greeks 'did not 'flee  
 ἀλλὰ διῆλασα, καὶ συνέμιξα  
 but charged (through their ranks), and joined (the)  
 βασιλεὶ ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ, ἐνδα  
 king in — your-own camp, whither (the)  
 βασιλεὺς αφίκετο ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτεινε Κῦρον, καὶ  
 king came after he-had-killed Cyrus, and  
 ἐδίωξα τοὺς βαρβάρους ξὺν Κύρῳ σὺν τοῖς δε  
 I-pursued — (those) barbarians with Cyrus with these,  
 τοῖς νῦν παροῦσι μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵτερ εἰσ  
 (namely) these now present with us, who are  
 πιστότατοι αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν ἵπεσχετό  
 the-most faithful to-him. And indeed 'he [the king] 'promised  
 μοι βουλεύσασθαι περὶ τοῦτων, δὲ ἐκέλευσε  
 me to-deliberate about these (affairs), and commanded  
 με ἐλθόντα ἐρεσθαι ὑμᾶς ἐνεκεν τίνος ἐστρατεύσατε  
 me having-gone to-ask you by-reason-of-what you-took-the-field  
 ἐπ' αὐτόν. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν ἀποκρίνασθαι  
 against him. And I-counsel you to-reply  
 μετρίως, ἵνα γῇ εὐπρακτότερον μοι, εἴα  
 moderately, that it-may-be easier for-me, if

δύνωμαι διαπράξασθαι τι ἀγαθὸν οὐν  
I-am-able to-effect any-thing good (or advantageous) for-you  
παρ' αὐτοῦ.  
with him.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες μεταστάντες ἐβούλευ-  
ατο, καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο· Κλέαρχος δὲ  
rated, and gave (their) 'answer; Clearchus indeed  
ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλδομεν ὡς  
spoke (for them): We neither assembled-together for-the-purpose-of  
πολεμῆσοντες βασιλεῖ οὐτ' ἐπορευόμεδα  
hereafter-making-war 'against (the) 'king nor did-we-set-out  
ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ Κῦρος εὗρισκε πολλὰς  
against (the) king, but Cyrus invented many  
προφάσεις, καὶ ὡς σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα τε  
pretexts, and as you well know, that not-only  
λάβοι ὑμᾶς ἀπαρασκευάστους, καὶ ἀναγάγοι  
he-might-take you unprepared, but-also lead  
ἡμᾶς ἐνδάδε. Ἡδη μέντοι ἐπεὶ ἐωρῶμεν αὐτὸν  
us thither. Now however when we-saw him  
οὗτα ἐν δεινῷ γῆσχίνδημεν καὶ θεοὺς  
being in danger we-were-made-to-be-ashamed both (before) gods  
καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν, παρέχοντες  
and men to-have-betrayed him, we-allowing (him)  
ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ποιεῖν εὖ  
in the former time | to-do well \*to [to confer favours  
ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τεθνηκεν,  
on] us ourselves Since indeed Cyrus is-dead, 'we  
οὔτε ἀντιποιούμεδα βασιλεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς,  
neither contend with (the) 'king for-the kingdom,  
οὐτ' ἔστιν ἔνεκα δτού ἀν βουλοίμεδα  
nor is-there (any thing) on-account-of which 'we might 'desire  
ποιεῖν κακῶς τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, οὐδ'  
to-do harm (to) the country 'of (the) 'king, nor  
ἀν ἔθέλοιμεν ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτὸν, δέ αὐτοῦ  
would we-wish to-kill him, but we would

πορευόμεδα οἴκαδε, εἰ τις μὴ λυπάντης ἡμᾶς·  
 'proceed homeward, if any-one 'would not 'molest us,  
 μέντοι ἀδικοῦντα πειρασόμεδα σὺν  
 'those however 'injuring (us) we-will-endeavour with (the aid of)  
 τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· εὖλον μέντοι τις  
 the gods to-avenge (ourselves on); if however any-one  
 καὶ ὑπάρχῃ ποιῶν εὖ ἡμᾶς, καὶ τούτου  
 even begin doing good to-us, and-even to-this-one we 'will:  
 οὐχ ἡττησόμεδα ποιοῦντες εὖ γε εἰς  
 not 'be-inferior doing good at-least to (the best of our)  
 δύναμιν. Οὕτως μὲν δέ εἶπεν.  
 power. Thus indeed 'did — (Clearachus) 'speak.

'Ακούσας δέ ὁ Τισσαφέρης ἔφη· Ταῦτα  
 Hearing (this) — — Tissaphernes said: These (things)  
 ἥγω ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ, καὶ πάλιν  
 will-announce to (the) king, and (will bring) back  
 ὑμῖν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· δέ μέχρι  
 to-you | the (things) from him; [his answer]; and until  
 ἔγὼ ἀνήκω αἱ σπονδαὶ μενόντων, δέ  
 I may come let the truce 'remain-in-force, and  
 ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν ἀγορὰν. Καὶ μὲν εἰς τὴν  
 we will-provide (a) market (for you.) And indeed on the  
 ὕστεραίαν οὐχ ἦκεν· ὅσδε οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 following-day he-did not 'come; so-that the Greeks  
 ἐφρόντιζον. Δέ τῇ τρίτῃ ἦκων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι  
 began-to-be-anxious. But on-the third (day) coming he-said, that  
 ἦκοι διαπεπραγμένος παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι  
 he-came having-obtained from (the) king to-be-allowed  
 αὐτῷ σώζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πάνυ πολλῶν  
 to-himself to-save the Greeks, although a-great many  
 ἀντιλεγόντων, ὡς οὐκ εἴη ἄξιον  
 speaking-against (and opposing it), so-that it-'might not 'be becoming  
 βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς στρατευσαμένους  
 'for (the) king to-let-go — (those) making-war  
 ἐφ' ἔαυτὸν. Δέ τέλος εἶπε· καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν  
 against himself. And in-conclusion he-said: and now it-is-allowed

ὑμῖν λαβεῖν πιστὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, ἢ μὴν τὴν χώραν  
 you to-take assurances from us, that truly the country  
 παρέξειν φιλίαν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν  
 will-be-kept friendly to-you, and without-treachery hereafter-to-lead  
 εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, παρέχοντας  
 (you) back to — Greece, (you) obtaining 'a)  
 ἀγοράν· δ' ὅπου ἀν ἢ μή  
 market (for provisions); but where (indeed there) may be not (any  
 πρίασθαι ἔάσομεν ὑμᾶς λαμβάνειν τὰ  
 thing) to-purchase we-will-allow you to-take the  
 ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Δ' αὐτὸν  
 necessities (of life) from the country. But on-the-other-hand  
 δεήσει ὑμᾶς ὁμόσαι ὑμῖν, ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι  
 it-will-be-necessary for-you to-swear to-us, truly to-march  
 ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἀστινῶς, λαμβάνοντας  
 as through (a) friendly (country) without-doing-harm, taking  
 σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ, ὅπόταν μὴ παρέχωνεν  
 provisions and drink, whenever we-do not provide (a)  
 ἀγοράν· ἢν δὲ παρέχωμεν ὁμοράν,  
 market (for you); if indeed we-provide (you a) market,  
 ὀνομένους ξέειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ταῦτα  
 you-purchasing will-have the necessities-of-life. These (things)  
 ἔδοξε, καὶ ὕμοσαν καὶ Τισ-  
 seemed (good, and were assented to), and they-took-the-oaths, and Tis-  
 σαφέρνης καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς  
 saphernes, and the brother of-the wife 'of (the)  
 βασιλέως ἔδοσαν δεξιὰς τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ  
 king gave (their) right-hands to-the generals and  
 λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ ἔλαβον  
 captains of-the Greeks, and took (the same)  
 παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δέ μετὰ ταῦτα Τισσα-  
 from the Greeks. And after this Tissa-  
 φέρνης εἶπε· Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἀπειμι ὡς  
 phernes said: Now indeed — 'I (will) 'go-back to (the)  
 βασιλέα· ἐπειδὴν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἀ δέομαι,  
 king; after indeed I-shall-accomplish (that) which I-desire.

συσκευασάμενος, ἦξω ὡς  
having-collected-and-packed-up-my-baggage, I-will-return as (about)  
απάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ αὐτὸς  
'leading you back to — Greece, and myself  
ἀπιών ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν ἐμαυτοῦ.  
returning to | the government of-myself [my own government].

---

## CHAPTER IV.

Μετὰ ταῦτα τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ  
AFTER these (things) not-only the Greeks but-also  
Ἄριαῖος ἐστρατοπεδεύμενοι ἐγγίς ἀλλήλων  
Ariæus being-encamped near to-one-another  
περιέμενον Τισσαφέρνην πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν ἡμέρας.  
waited for-Tissaphernes more than thirty days.  
Ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἄριαῖον  
During — these (days) there-came to Ariæus  
καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι,  
as-well — (his) brother as — (his) other relations,  
καὶ τινες Περσῶν πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ,  
and some Persians to those (men) with him,  
τε παρεδάρσυνον, καὶ ἐφερον δεξιὰς  
they not-only encouraged (them), but-also brought | right-hands  
ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως, βασιλέα  
[assurances] to-some from (the) king, (that the) king  
μὴ μνησικακήσειν τῆς ἐπιστρατείας  
would not remember-in-evil (the injuries) of-the expeditions  
σὺν Κύρῳ αὐτοῖς, μηδὲ μηδενὸς ἄλλου  
under Cyrus (received) from-them, | neither no other [or  
τῶν παρωχημένων. Δέ τούτων  
any thing else] of-the (affairs) gone-by. But these  
γιγνομένων, οἱ περὶ Ἄριαῖον  
things while) occurring, | the about Ariæus [the followers  
ἥσαν ἐνδῆλοι προσέχοντες  
of Ariæus] were evidently (not so attentive to, and) applying

τὸν νοῦν ἡττον τοῖς Ἑλλησι· ὅστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο  
 the mind less to-the Greeks; so-that also through this  
 μὲν τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἡρεσκον,  
 indeed — many of-the Greeks were not pleased.  
 ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 but going-to — Clearchus and the other  
 στρατηγοῖς ἔλεγον· Τί μένομεν; ή οὐκ  
 generals they-said: Why do-we-remain? or 'do-we not  
 ἐπιστάμεδα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἀν ποιήσαιτο περὶ<sup>'believe,</sup> | that (the) king would make-it-to-himself above  
 παντὸς ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς,  
 all-things to-destroy us, [the king would above all things wish  
 ἵνα καὶ εἴη φόβος τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 to destroy us], in-order-that also there-might-be fear to-the other  
 Ἑλλησι στρατεύειν ἐπὶ μέγαν βασιλέα; καὶ  
 Greeks to-war against (the) great king? and  
 νῦν μὲν ὑπάγεται ἡμᾶς μένειν, διὰ τὸ  
 now indeed he-deceitfully-leads us to-stay, | on-account-of the  
 διεσπάρδαι αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα·  
 to-have-dispersed to-him the army; [on account of the dis-  
 persed state of his army]; | but (when) the army again  
 ἐπήν αλισθῆ αὐτῷ,  
 was-there (and) may-have-been-taken (or re-assembled) by-him, [but when  
 οὐκ ἔστιν  
 his army is again collected together by him], it-will not be  
 ἵπας οὐκ ἐπιδήσεται ἡμῖν. Ἰσως δὲ  
 that he-will not attack us. Perhaps indeed he-is  
 η ἀποσκάπτει τι, η ἀποτειχίζει,  
 either 'digging-out' some (trench), or building-a-wall-against (us),  
 ως η ὁδός η ἀπορος. Γὰρ οὐκ ἔκών  
 so-that the road may-be impassable. For he-will not willingly  
 γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
 at-least consent for-us going-back to -- Greece  
 ἀπαγγεῖλαι, ως ἡμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοίδε, ἐνικῶμεν  
 to-relate. that we, being so-few, | defeated

τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ,  
the king at the gates of him, [defeated the  
king at his palace], and καταγελάσαντες ἀπήλ-  
δομεν.  
parted (home).

Δέ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέ-  
γοντιν· Εγὼ μὲν καὶ ἐνδυμοῦμαι πάντα  
dressing (him). I indeed also am-thinking-about all  
ταῦτα· δ' ἐννοῶ, ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἀπιμεν δόξομεν  
this; but I-think, that if 'we now 'go-away we-will-seem  
ἀπιέναι ἐπὶ πολέμῳ, καὶ ποιεῖν παρὰ τὰς σπουδὰς.  
to-go-away for war, and to-act contrary to-the truce.

\*Ἐπειτα πρῶτων μὲν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν ἀγορὰν,  
Next-then first indeed no-one will-provide us (a) market,  
οὐδὲ δεν ἐπισιτιούμεδα· αὖδις  
nor (will there be a place) whence we-would-procure-provisions; again

δέ ἔσται οὐδεὶς δὲ τὴν ἡγησόμενος·  
in the second place) — | there-will-be no-one — hereafter-guiding-us;

καὶ ἄμα ἡμῶν ποιούντων  
[we will have no guides]; and at-the-same-time we are-doing

ταῦτα Ἀριαῖος εὐθὺς ἀφεστήξει· ὅστε  
this Ariæus will immediately 'separate (from us); so-that

οὐδεὶς λελείψεται φίλος ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ  
no-one will-be-left (a) friend to-us, but also — (those)

πρόσδεν ὄντες ἔσονται πολέμοι οὐδὲν. Δ'  
formerly being (our friends) will-become hostile to-us. But

ἄρα μὲν εἰ ἔστι τις ἄλλος ποταμὸς καὶ  
whether indeed — there-is any other river also

διαβατέος οὐδὲν, οἶδα οὐκ. δὲ οὐν οἴσμεν  
necessary-to-pass-over by-us, I-know not: but therefore-then we-know

ὅτι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ἀδύματον πολεμίων  
that to-have-crossed the Euphrates (is) impossible (the) enemy

κωλυόντων. Δή μὲν ἀν οὐ δέη γε  
prohibiting (us). Truly indeed 'it might not 'be-proper (for us) at-least

μάχεσθαι, ξύμμαχοι ἵππεῖς εἰσιν ἡμῖν·  
to-night, (for) auxiliary cavalry is to-us (nowhere)

δὲ ἵππεῖς τῶν πολεμίων εἰσιν οἱ πλεῖστοι καὶ  
but (the) cavalry of-the enemy is — numerous and

ἄξιοι πλεῖστου· ὅστε νικῶντες τίνα μὲν  
|worthy of-much; [efficient]; so-that conquering how-many indeed

ἂν ἀποκτείναμεν; δὲ ἡττωμένων οἵον τε  
might we-kill? but being-defeated (it would be) possible

σωθῆναι οὐδένα. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν  
to-save none. I indeed therefore (as respects the)

βασιλέα ω̄ ἐστι οὗτῳ πολλά τὰ σύμμαχα,  
king to-whom there-are so many — auxiliaries,

εἴπερ προδούμειται ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς, οὐκ  
if he-desires to-destroy us, 'I (I say) 'do not

οἶδα ὃ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὁμόσαι, καὶ δοῦναι  
'know what need (there was that) he swore, and gave

δεξιὰν, καὶ ἐπιορκῆσαι θεους, καὶ  
(the) right-hand, and perjured-himself 'before (the) 'gods, and

ποιῆσαι τὰ πιστὰ ἔαυτοῦ ἀπιστα τε  
made the pledges of-himself faithless (even) not-only

"Ελλησι καὶ βαρβάροις. Ἐλεγε πολλὰ  
'to (the) 'Greeks but-also 'to (the) 'barbarians. He-said much

τοιαῦτα.  
thus.

Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ Τισσαφέρνης ἦκε, ἔχων τὴν  
But during this (time) Tissaphernes came, | having the

δύναμιν ἔαυτοῦ, ὡς ἀπιών οἰκον,  
forces of-himself, [having his army with him], as-if returning home,

καὶ Ὁρόντας τὴν δύναμιν ἔαυτοῦ·  
and-also Orontas (came having) the forces of-himself;

ἥγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα βασιλέως  
'he (Orontas) 'brought — also the daughter 'of (the) 'king

τὴν ἐπὶ γάμῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν ἥδη δὲ ἐπο-  
the (one) on marriage. Hence 'they now indeed 'pro-

ρεύοντο Τισσαφέρνους ἥγονμένου  
seeded (on their march), Tissaphernes guiding (them).

καὶ παρέχοντος ἀγορὰν Δὲ καὶ  
and providing (them a) market (for provisions). And also

<sup>7</sup>Αριάεος ἔχων τὸ βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα  
Ariæus having (and commanding) the barbarian army

Κύρου ἐπορεύετο, ἂμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὁρόντᾳ,  
of-Cyrus marched, together-with Tissaphernes and Orotas,

καὶ ξυνεστρατοποδεύετο σύν ἐκείνοις. Δὲ οἱ  
and-also he-encamped-together with them. But the

<sup>7</sup>Ελληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους, αὐτοὶ<sup>7</sup>  
Greeks suspecting these-men, they [the Greeks]

ἔχώροιν ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας.  
went by themselves having guides (of their own).

Δὲ ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἑκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλή-  
And they-encamped each-time being-distant from-one-

λων παρασάγγην καὶ μεῖον. Δὲ ἀμφότεροι  
another(a) parasang (or) even less. But both

ἐφυλάττοντο ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους,  
(parties) guarded-themselves as-if enemies to-one-another

καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο παρείχεν ὑποφίαν.  
and immediately this excited (and increased) mistrust (and

<sup>7</sup>Ἐνίστε δέ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ  
suspicion). Sometimes — also (when) gathering-wood from the

αὐτοῦ, καὶ ξυλλέγοντες χόρτον καὶ  
same (place), and were (also) collecting grass and

ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐνέτεινον πληγὰς ἀλλήλοις.  
other such (things), | they-stretched-out blows to-one-another;

ὅστε  
[they stretched out their arms threatening, or giving blows]. so-that

τοῦτο καὶ παρείχε ἔχθραν. Δὲ διελ-  
this also caused-more animosity (between them). And having

δόντες τρεῖς σταδιοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ τείχος  
gone-through three days'-march they-arrived at the wall

καλούμενον Μηδίας, καὶ παρῆλθον εἰσω  
called (the wall of) Media, and they-passed-through within

αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἦν ὁ κοδομημένον ὄπταις.  
it And (this wall) was built-of burnt

πλίνθοις, κειμέναις ἀσφάλτῳ, εὗρος  
 bricks, laid in-bitumen, (the) breadth (of this wall was)  
 εἴκοσι ποδῶν, δὲ ὑψος ἑκατὸν· δὲ μῆκος  
 twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred-feet; and (the) length  
 ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασάγγων· δὲ οὐ  
 was-sand to-be twenty parasangs; and it-was not  
 πολὺ ἀπέχει Βαβυλῶνος. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν  
 much distant from-Babylon. Hence — they-proceeded  
 δύο σταδίους ὁκτώ παρασάγγας, καὶ διέ-  
 two days'-march (making) eight parasangs, and they-  
 βησαν δύο διώρυχας, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 crossed two canals, the (one) indeed on (a permanent)  
 γεφύρας, δὲ τὴν  
 bridge, but the (other they crossed on a temporary bridge) 'having  
 ἐζευγμένην ἐπτά πλοίοις. δὲ αὗται  
 (its banks) joined-together by-seven boats; and these (canals)  
 ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος. δὲ καὶ  
 were (conducted) from the river Tigris; and also  
 τάφροι κατετέμηντο ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν,  
 hitches had-been-cut from them over the country,  
 αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, δὲ ἔπειτα ἐλάττους,  
 which indeed first (were) large, but afterwards less,  
 δὲ καὶ τέλος μικροὶ ὄχετοι διέπερ ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 and also at-last (only) small drains (or streams) as in  
 τὰς μελίνας ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦται  
 the panic (fields) in — Greece. And (then) they-arrived  
 ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα· πρὸς ὃ τὴν  
 at the river Tigris; near to-which there-was (a)  
 μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος πόλις ὄνομα τῇ  
 large and populous city (the) name to-which  
 Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ πεντεκαίδεκα  
 (was) Sittace, being-distant from-the river fifteen  
 σταδίους. Οὖν μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνωσαν πάρ'  
 stadia. Therefore indeed the Greeks encamped near  
 αὐτὴν, ἐγγὺς μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ περιβολοῦ  
 it. (and) close to (a) large and beautiful περιβολοῦ

καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων· δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι,  
and thick with-all-kind of-trees; but the barbarians,  
διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα· ἦσαν οὐ μέντοι  
having-crossed the (river) Tigris; they-were not however  
καταφανεῖς.  
visible

Μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν  
After — — supper Proxenus and Xenophon  
ἔτυχον ὅντες ἐν περιπάτῳ πρὸ<sup>πρὸ</sup>  
[happened being in walking [happened to be walking] before  
τῶν ὅπλων· καὶ τις ἄνδρωπος προσελθὼν  
the (place) of-arms; and a man approaching  
ἡρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας πού ἀν ἴδοι Πρόξενον  
inquired of-the sentinels where 'he might 'see Proxenus  
ἢ Κλέαρχον· δὲ οὐκ ἔζητει Μένωνα, καὶ  
or Clearchus; but he-did not 'inquire for-Menon, and  
ταῦτα ὡν παρ' Ἀριαίου, τοῦ ξένου Μένωνος.  
this being from Ariæus, the guest-friend of-Menon.  
Ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι εἰμι αὐτός ὁν ζητεῖς,  
Then indeed Proxenus said (that) I-am he whom you-seek  
ὅ ἄνδρωπος εἶπε τάδε· Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος  
the man (then) spoke thus: Ariæus and Artaozus  
ὅντες πιστοὶ Κύρῳ καὶ εὖνοι ὑμῖν,  
being faithful (friends) to-Cyrus and well-disposed towards-you  
καὶ κελεύονται φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι  
— exhort-you to-be-on-your-guard, lest the barbarians  
ἐπιδῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς· δὲ ἔστι πολὺ στράτευμα  
fall-upon-you in-the night; for there-is (a) numerous army  
ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. Καὶ κελεύονται  
in the neighbouring park. They also 'request-you  
πέμψαι φυλακήν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ  
to-send (a) guard to the bridge of-the river  
Τίγρητος, ὡς Τισσαφέρνης διανοεῖται λῦσαι αὐτὴν  
Tigris, as Tissaphernes designed to-'break it  
τῆς νυκτὸς, ἐὰν δύνηται, ὡς μὴ  
town in-the night, if he-can, so-that you-can not

διαβῆτε, ἀλλ' ἀποληφθῆτε ἐν μέσῳ  
 'cross, but (will be) intercepted in middle (space between)  
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. Ἀκούσαντες  
 the river and the canal. Hearing  
 ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον,  
 these (things) they-lead him to — Clearchus,  
 καὶ φράζουσιν ἀ λέγει. Δέ ὁ Κλέαρχος  
 and told (him) what he-said. But — Clearchus  
 ἀκούσας σφόδρα ἐταράχθη καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο.  
 hearing (this) 'was greatly 'agitated and alarmed.  
 Δέ τις νεανίσκος τῶν παρόντων ἐνυοήσας  
 But a-certain young-man of-those present having-reflected (thereon)  
 εἶπεν, ὡς τε τὸ ἐπιδήσεσθαι, καὶ τὸ λύσειν  
 said, that not-only the making-an-attack, but-also the breaking  
 τὴν γέφυραν εἴη οὐκ ἀκόλουθα. Γάρ δῆλον  
 the bridge were not consistent. For (it is) evident  
 ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους δεήσει ή νικᾶν ή  
 that attacking (us) it-will-be-necessary either to-conquer or  
 ἥττασθαι. Ἐὰν οὖν μὲν νικῶσι, τί<sup>τ</sup>  
 to-be-conquered. If therefore indeed they-should-conquer, what  
 δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν γέφυραν; γάρ οὐδὲ  
 is-the-necessity for-them to-break-down the bridge? for neither  
 ἂν ὕσιν πολλαὶ γέφυραι, ἂν ἔχοιμεν ὅποι  
 if there-were many bridges, would we-have where  
 φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθεῖμεν. Δέ ἐὰν ἡμεῖς  
 fleeing we might-save (ourselves). But if we  
 νικῶμεν τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης οὐχ  
 conquer the bridge having-been-destroyed, they-'would not  
 ἔξουσιν ὅποι ἔκεινοι φύγωσιν. οὐδὲ μὲν  
 'have where they might-flee; | neither indeed [nor]  
 οὐδεὶς πέραν  
 | 'will none [will any] (of their friends) on-the-other-side (of the river)  
 διντων πολλῶν δυνήσεται βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς  
 being (ever so) many 'be-able to-assist them.  
 τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης.  
 the bridge being-destroyed.

Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἤρετο  
 — Clearchus having-heard — these (things) asked  
 τὸν ἄγγελον τις πόση εἴη χώρα  
 the messenger how much might-be (the) country (in extent) which  
 ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς  
 (is situated) (in the-middle) (between) the Tigris and the  
 διώρυχος. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι πολλὴ,  
 canal. And who said, that (it was) great (in extent),  
 καὶ ἔνεισι κῶμαι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ  
 and there-were-in-it villages and towns many and  
 μεγάλαι. Καὶ τότε δὴ ἐγνώσθη, ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι  
 large. And then truly they-perceived, that the barbarians  
 ὑποπέμψαντες τὸν ἀνδρωπόν ὀκνοῦντες, μὴ οἱ  
 covertly-sent — (this) man fearing, lest the  
 Ἑλληνες, διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν, μένοιεν ἐν τῇ  
 Greeks, taking-to-pieces the bridge, might-remain in the  
 νήσῳ ἔχοντες ἐρύματα ἐνδεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα,  
 island having as-defences on-this (side) indeed the Tigris,  
 δὲ ἐνδεν τὴν διώρυχα, δ' ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτή-  
 οut on-the-other the canal, and they-might-have the necessa-  
 δεια ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐν μέσῳ,  
 ries-of-life from the country | in (the) middle, [from the countr-  
 ούσης πολλῆς  
 intervening between the river and canal], being great (in extent)  
 καὶ ἀγαθῆς, καὶ ἐνόρτων τῶν  
 and of-good (quality of soil), and there-being-on-it — (those)  
 ἐργασομένων. δὲ καὶ εἰτα γένοιτο ἀπο-  
 capable-of-cultivating-it; and also afterwards might-become (a) place-  
 στροφὴ, εἰ τις βούλοιτο ποιεῖν κακῶς  
 of-refuge, if any-one might-wish to-do evil 'to (the)  
 βασιλέα. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· μεντοι  
 king. After this they-went-to-rest; however they  
 δμως ἐπεμψαν φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν· καὶ  
 likewise <sup>sent</sup> (a) guard to the bridge; and  
 οὔτε οὐδεὶς ἐπέδετο οὐδαμόδεν, οὔτε  
 neither 'did (no-one) (any one) 'attack-them from-any-quarter, nor

οὐδεὶς τῶν πολεμίων ἦλθε πρὸς τὴν  
— (any one) of-the enemy 'go to the  
γέφυραν, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον.  
bridge, as — (those) guarding-it reported  
Δέ ἐπειδὴ ἐγένετο ἦως, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν,  
And when it-became day-light, they-crossed the bridge,  
ἔζευγμένην τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτά πλοίους,  
joined-together by (or formed of) thirty and seven boats,  
ὡς πεφυλαγμένως οἴον τε μάλιστα.  
as cautiously as indeed most (could be); [with

γὰρ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ  
.the greatest caution]; for some of-the Greeks from  
Γισσαφέρνους ἔξηγγελλον, ὡς μέλλοιεν  
Gissaphernes announced, that 'they (the enemy) intended  
ιππήσεσθαι διαβαινόντων. Ἀλλὰ μὲν  
o-attack (them) crossing (the bridge). But even  
ταῦτα ἦν ψευδῆ· διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς  
his was false; crossing-over however — Glus  
πεφάγῃ μετ' ἄλλων, σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν  
appeared with others, observing if they-crossed  
τὸν ποταμὸν· δέ ἐπειδὴ εἶδεν, ἀπελαύνων  
the river; but when he-saw (that they did) riding-away  
ὤχετο.  
he-hastened.

\*Απὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας  
From — the Tigris they-proceeded four  
σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν  
days'-march, (making) twenty parasangs, to the  
ποταμόν Φύσκον, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου·  
river Physcus, the breadth (thereof being) a-pilethrum;  
ἐπῆν δέ γέφυρα. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα  
on (which) 'there-was — (a) bridge. And here  
ὤχειτο μεγάλη πόλις, ἡ ὅνομα Ωπις·  
was-situated (a) large town, to-which (the) name (was) Opis;  
πρὸς ἣν τὸν αὐλικὸς Κίρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου,  
near which (a) natural rather of-Cyrus and Artaxerxes.

δέ ἄγων πολλὴν στρατιὰν ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ  
who was-leading (a) numerous army from Susa and

Ἐκβατάνων, ὡς Βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ, ἀπήντησε  
Ecbatana, as assisting (the) king, met

τοῖς Ἑλλησι· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ στράτευμα  
the Greeks; and having-halted | the army

ἔαντοῦ ἐδεώρει τοὺς Ἑλληνας παρερχομένους  
of-himself [his army] he-viewed the Greeks passing-by

Ο δὲ Κλέαρχος ἤγειτο μὲν εἰς δύο,  
— But Clearchus led — (his men) by two (abreast)

δὲ ἀλλοτε ἐπορεύετο καὶ ἀλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος.  
but at-one-time he-marched-forward and at-another halting.

Δε ὅσον χρόνον ἐπιστήσειε τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ  
And as-long (a) time (as) he-might-halt the van of-the

στρατεύματος, τοσοῦτον χρόνον ἦν ἀνάγκη  
army, so-long (a) time it-was necessarily

τὴν ἐπίστασιν γίγνεσθαι δι' ὅλου τοῦ  
(that a) — halt should-take-place through the-whole of-the

στρατεύματος· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ τοῖς  
army; so-that the army even to-the

Ἑλλησι αὐτοῖς δόξαι εἶναι πάμπολν, καὶ τοὺς  
Greeks themselves seemed to-be very-large, and the

Πέρσην θεωροῦντα ἐκπεπλῆχθαι.  
Persian (general) viewing (them) was-amazed.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας ἔξ  
Hence — they-proceeded through — Media | six

ἔρημους σταδιούς,  
desert stations, [six days' march through a desert], (making,

τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς τὰς κώμας Παρυ-  
thirty parasangs, to the villages of-Pary-

σάτιδος, τῆς μητρὸς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως.  
satis, the mother of-Cyrus and 'of (the) king.

Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεγγελῶν Κύρῳ ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς  
Tissaphernes (as) insulting Cyrus permitted the

Ἑλλησι διαρπάσαι ταύτας, πλὴν  
Greeks to-plunder these (villages), except (the)

ἀνδραπόδων.      Ἐντὸν δὲ πολὺς σῖτος, καὶ  
slaves.      There-was-in-them indeed much corn, also  
πρόβατα, καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα.      Ἐντεῦσεν δέ  
sheep, and other things.      Hence —  
ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας ἔρημους σταδίους,  
they-proceeded | four desert stations, [four days'  
εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, ἔχοντες  
march in the desert], (making) twenty parasangs, having  
τὸν ποταμὸν Τίγρητα ἐν ἀριστερᾷ.      Ἐν  
the river Tigris on (their) left.      In (the  
δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταδίῳ, πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ,  
end of) — the first days'-march, beyond the river,  
ῳκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων πόλις,  
there-was-situated (a) large and opulent town, (the)  
ὄνομας Καιναί, ἐξ οὓς οἱ βάρβαροι  
name (of which was) Cænæ, from which the barbarians  
διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίαις ἀρτούς,  
brought-over, on rafts (made of) skins, bread.  
τυρούς, οἶνον.  
cheese, wine.

---

## CHAPTER V.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν  
AFTER these (things) they-arrived at the river  
Ζάπατον, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων.  
Zapata, (it having) the breadth of-four plethra.  
Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας.      ἐν δὲ  
And here they-remained three days; during —  
ταῦταις οἵσαν μὲν ὑποψίαι, δὲ  
these (days) there-were indeed (the same) suspicions, but  
οὐδεμία φανερὰ ἐπιβούλη ἐφαίνετο.      Ἐδοξεν  
no manifest plot appeared.      It-seemed  
οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσα-  
therefore (good) — to-Clearchus to-have-a conference — with-Tissa-

φέρνει, καὶ εἰ πως δύναιτο, παῦσαι τὰς  
 phernes, and if in-any-manner he-could, to-put-an-end to — (these,  
 ὑποψίας, πρὶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι ἐξ αὐτῶν· καὶ  
 suspicions, before war should-arise from them; and  
 ἐπειμψέ τινα ἔροῦντα, δτι χρήζοι ξυγγενέσθαι  
 ne-sent some-one saying, that he-desired to-confer  
 αὐτῷ. Δὲ ὁ ἑτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἦκειν. Ἐπειδὴ<sup>ν</sup>  
 with-him. And who promptly requested (him) to-come. When  
 δὲ ξυνηλθον, ὁ Κλέαρχος λέγει τάδε· Ἔγώ, ὡ<sup>ν</sup>  
 indeed they-met, — Clearchus spoke thus: I, O  
 Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ὄρκους γεγενημένους  
 Tissaphernes, know indeed (that) oaths have-been-taken  
 ἦμιν, καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας, μὴ ἀδικήσειν  
 between-us, and right-hands given, not to-injure  
 ἀλλήλους· δὲ ὅρῳ σέ τε φυλαττόμενον ὡς  
 one-another; but I-see you not-only guarding-yourselves as-if  
 ἥμας πολεμίους, καὶ ἥμεις, ὄρῶντες ταῦτα,  
 we (were) enemies, but-also we, perceiving these  
 ἀντιφυλαττόμεδα. Ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν  
 (things), are-on-our-guard-against (you). After indeed considering  
 οὐ δύναμαι αἰσθεσθαι οὔτε σὲ  
 (attentively), I-am not able to-perceive (neither) you  
 πειρώμενον ποιεῖν ἥμας κακῶς, ἐγώ τε σαφῶς  
 striving to-do us ill, I indeed clearly  
 οἶδα δτι ἥμεις γε οὐδ' ἐπινοοῦμεν οὐδέν  
 know that we at-least neither intend (nothing) (any thing)  
 τοιοῦτον, ἔδοξέ μοι ἐλθεῖν εἰς λόγους  
 of-this-sort(toward you), it-seemed to-me (best) to-come to (a) conference  
 σοι, ὅπως εἰ δυναίμεδα ἐξέλοιμεν τὴν ἀπιστίαν  
 with-you, so-that if we-can we-may-remove the mistrust  
 ἀλλήλων. Γάρ καὶ ἥδη οἶδα ἀνθρώπους,  
 if-one-another. For indeed I now know men,  
 τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς, δὲ καὶ τοὺς  
 — (some) indeed from direct-accusation, but also — (others)  
 ξ ὑποψίας, οἱ φοβήθεντες ἀλλήλους βουλόμενοι,  
 from suspicion, who having-feared one-another (and) wishing

φέύσαι πρὶν παθεῖν  
 to-have-anticipated before suffering (any)  
 ἔποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλ-  
 have-done irremediable evils to — (those) neither intend  
 λοντας οὐτ' αὖ βουλομένους οὐδέν  
 ing nor moreover wishing (nothing) (anything) <sup>1</sup>of (the)  
 τοιοῦτον. Νομίζων οὖν τὰς τοιαύτας  
 'kind. Thinking therefore (that) — such-kinds-of  
 ἀγνωμοσύνας ἀν παίεσθαι μάλιστα συνονσίαις,  
 misunderstandings may be-made-to-cease most-of-all by-meeting-together,  
 ἦκω. καὶ βούλομαι διδάσκειν σε, ὡς σὺ  
 I-come (then), and am-desirous to-inform you, that you 'do  
 οὐκ ὄρθως ἀπιστεῖς ἥμιν. Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον καὶ  
 not rightly 'mistrust us. For indeed first and  
 μέγιστον, οἱ ὅρκοι θεῶν κολύονται  
 principally, the oaths (taken in the name) <sup>1</sup>of (the) <sup>1</sup>gods forbid  
 ἥμας εἶναι πολεμίους ἀλλήλοις. δστις δὲ τούτων  
 us to-be enemies to-one-another; whoever indeed of-these  
 σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς, τοῦτον  
 is-conscious to-himself (of) having-disregarded (these things), this-one  
 ἐγὼ ἀν οὐποτ' εὐδαιμονίσαμι. Γὰρ τὸν  
 I could never (esteem) happy. For (from) the  
 πόλεμον θεῶν οἶδα οὐκ, οὐτ' ἀπὸ ποίου  
 hostility <sup>1</sup>of (the) <sup>1</sup>gods I-know not, neither | from [with] what-degree  
 ἀν τάχους οὔτε δποι τις φεύγων ἀν ἀποφύγοι,  
 — of-speed nor where any-one fleeing may escape,  
 οὐτ' εἰς ποιον σκότος ἀν ἀποδραίν, οὐδ' ὅπως  
 neither into what darkness 'he might 'flee-away, nor how  
 ἀν ἀποσταίν εἰς ἔχυρὸν χωρίον,  
~~he~~ could 'retreat into (a) fortified place (and escape from  
 γὰρ πάντη πάντα ὑποχα τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ  
 them), for everywhere all (is) subject to-the gods, and  
 οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι πανταχῆ πάντων ἵσον. Οὕτω  
 the gods rule everywhere over-all-things alike. Thus  
 γιγνώσκω δὴ μὲν περὶ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ  
 do-I-'hink truly indeed respecting the gods, and also

τῶν δόρκων, παρ' οἷς ἡμεῖς, συνθέμενοι,  
 — (respecting) oaths, with whom we, having-concurred  
 κατεθέμεδα τὴν φιλίαν· δὲ τῶν  
 (with one another), have-deposited — (our) friendship; but —  
 ἀνθρωπίνων ἐγώ νομίζω σὲ ἐν τῷ παρόντι  
 of-all-human-things I consider you at the present (time)  
 είναι μέγιστον ἀγαθὸν ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν σὺν σοὶ<sup>to-be</sup>  
 to-be the-greatest good to-us. For indeed with you  
 πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὔπορος, δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς  
 every — road (is) easy, and every river  
 διαβατός, οὐκ ἀπορία τε τῶν ἐπιτιχδείων·  
 passable, (there is) no want indeed of-the necessities-of-life;  
 δὲ ἄνευ σοῦ πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός μὲν διὰ σκότους  
 but without you (our) entire — route — (will be) through darkness  
 (γὰρ ἐπιστάμεδα οὐδὲν αὐτῆς), δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς  
 'for we-know nothing of-it), and every river  
 δύσπορος, δὲ πᾶς δχλος  
 (would be) difficult-in-crossing, also every multitude-of-men (would be)  
 φοβερός, δὲ ἔρημία φοβερώτατον· γὰρ  
 terrible, but solitude (would be) the-most-terrible (thing); for  
 ἔστι μεστὴ πολλῆς ἀπορίας. Δεὶ εἰ  
 it-is full of-every want (and difficulty). But if  
 δὴ καὶ μανέντες κατακτείναμεν σε, ἀν γ  
 truly 'having even 'become-mad we-should-kill you, would  
 τι ἄλλο κατακτείναντες τὸν εὐερ-  
 any-thing else (happen) having-slain — (our) bene.  
 γέτην ἀγωνιζούμεδα πρὸς βασιλέα  
 factor, (but that) we-should-have-to-contend with (the) king  
 τὸν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον; δσων καὶ δὲ δὴ οἵων  
 the greatest avenger? of-how-many, and indeed truly how-great  
 ἔλπίδων ἀν στερήσαιμι ἐμαυτὸν, εἰ ἐπιχειρήσαιμι  
 expectations 'I should 'deprive myself, if I-should-attempt  
 ποιεῖν σέ τι κακὸν, ταῦτα λέξω. Ἔγώ  
 to-do you any harm, this I-will-tell (you). I  
 γὰρ ἐπεδύμησά Κύρον γενέσθαι φίλον μοι  
 therefore desired Cyrus to-become (a) friend to-me

νομίζων τῶν τότε εἶναι ἴκανώτατον  
thinking (him) of-the (men) at-that-time to-be the-most-apt  
ποιεῖν εἰδί δν βούλοιτο· δέ νῦν ὄρῳ  
to-do good to-whom he-wished (to do so); but 'I now 'see  
σὲ ἔχοντα τε τὴν δύναμιν καὶ χώραν Κύρου,  
you having not-only the power and territory of-Cyrus,  
καὶ σώζοντα τὴν ἀρχὴν σεαυτοῦ, δέ τὴν  
but-also retaining the government of-yourself. but the  
δύναμιν βασιλέως, ἦ Κύρος ἐχρῆτο  
power 'of (the) 'king, which Cyrus experienced (as)  
πολεμίᾳ, ταύτην οὖσαν ξύμμαχον σοι.  
hostile, this (power) being (now an) ally to-you.

Δέ τούτων ὄντων τοιούτων, τίς  
But these (things) being in-this-manner, (is there) any-one (who)  
οὖτω μαίνεται, ὅστις οὐ βούλεται εἶναι  
is so 'mad, who 'would not 'wish to-be (a)  
φίλος σοι; Ἀλλὰ μήν (γὰρ ἐρῷ καὶ ταῦτα  
friend to-you? But truly (for I-will-mention also those  
ἔξ δν ἔχω ἐλπίδας, καὶ σε βούλη-  
(things) from which I-have hopes, (that) even you will-  
σεσθαι εἶναι φίλον ἡμῖν), γὰρ μὲν οἴδα  
desire to-be (a) friend of-us), for indeed I-know 'of (the)  
Μυσοὺς ὄντας λυπηροὺς ὑμῖν, οὓς νομίζω  
'Mysians being troublesome to-you, whom, I-am-of-opinion (that)  
σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ἀν παρασχεῖν  
with the present (Grecian) force, 'I could 'render  
ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν. δέ καὶ οἴδα Πισίδας.  
submissive to-you; so also I-know (that the) Pisidians (annoy  
δέ καὶ ἀκούω εἶναι πολλὰ ἀλλα ἔδη  
you); and also I-hear (that) there-are many other nations  
τοιαῦτα ἀ οἴμαι ἀν παῦσαι ἀει  
like-these (two mentioned) whom I-think (that) 'I might 'prevent ever  
ἐνοχλοῦντα τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Δέ  
disturbing — your happiness. But (as respects the)  
αἰγυπτίους, οἷς νῦν γιγνώσκω ὑμᾶς  
Egyptians, against-whom 'I now 'know (that) you

μάλιστα τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὅρῳ ποιᾳ  
 have-'been very-much excited, I-do not see what  
 συμμάχῳ δυνάμει μᾶλλον χρησάμενοι  
 auxiliary force (which) having-'been rather used,  
 ἀν κολάσεσθε τῆς  
 'you might 'punish (them better than) — (with the force)  
 οὗσης νῦν σὺν ἐμοὶ. Ἀλλὰ μήν ἐν τοῖς γε  
 being now with me. But truly among — (those) at-least  
 οἴκοῦσι πέριξ σύ, εἰ μὲν βούλοιο εἰναι  
 (who) dwell round-about you, if indeed you-desired to-be (a)  
 φίλος τῷ, ὡς ἀν εἰνης μέγιστος.  
 friend —(to-any), that 'you might 'be (the) greatest (possible)  
 δὲ εἰ τις λυτοίη σε, ἀναστρέφοιο ὡς  
 but if any-one offend you, you-might-deal (with them) as (a)  
 δεσπότης, ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἵ ἀν  
 master, having us for-assistants, — (for) 'we would  
 ὑπηρετοῦμεν σοι οὐκ ἐνεκα τοῦ μισθοῦ  
 'serve you not on-account-of — (our) pay  
 μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἦς.  
 alone, but also (on account of) the gratitude, which,  
 σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἀν δικαίως ἔχομεν σοι  
 having-been-saved by you, 'we might justly 'have to-you.  
 Ἐμοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐνθυμουμένῳ πάντα ταῦτα  
 I indeed — considering all these (things),  
 τὸ σὲ ἀπιστεῖν ἡμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι.  
 |the you to-distrust us [your distrusting us] seems to-be  
 οὕτω θαυμαστὸν, ὥστε ἀν ἥδιστ' καὶ ἀκούσαιμι  
 so wonderful, that 'I would most-gladly even 'have-heard  
 τὸ ὄνομα τίς ἐστὶ οὕτω δεινὸς λέγειν,  
 the name (of him) — [who] is so skilled to-speak  
 ἔστε λέγων πεῖσαι σε ὡς ἡμεῖς ἐπιθουλεύομεν  
 that speaking to-have-persuaded you that we are-conspiring  
 σοι. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν εἶπε τοσαῦτα·  
 against-you. Clearchus indeed therefore spoke in-this-manner·  
 δέ Τισσαφέρης ἀπημείφθη ὕδε·  
 but Tissaphernes replied thus (as follows):

Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὁ Κλέαρχε, ἥδομαι ἀκούων  
 But indeed, O Clearchus, I-am-delighted hearing (the);  
 φρονίμους λόγους σου· γάρ γιγνώσκων ταῦτα,  
 judicious discourse of-you; for knowing these  
 εἰς Βουλεύοις τι κακὸν ἔμοι,  
 (your sentiments), if you-were-to-plan any-thing evil against-me,  
 ἄφεα ἀν δοκεῖς μοι καὶ εἶναι κακόνους  
 at-the-same-time 'you would 'appear to-me even to-be evil-minded  
 σαντῷ. Δ' ὡς ἀν μάδης, ὅτι ὑμεῖς ἀν οὐδὲ  
 w-yourself. But that 'you may 'learn, that you 'do not  
 δικαίως ἀπιστοίητε οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἔμοι,  
 justly 'mistrust either (the) king or me,  
 ἀντάκοντον. Γάρ εἰ ἐβούλομεθα ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς  
 li-ten-in-turn. For if we-wished to-destroy you  
 πότερα δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν πλῆθος ἵππεων  
 whether do-we-seem to-you to-want (the) multitude of-cavalry,  
 ή πεζῶν ή ὁπλίσεως ἐν ή ἀν εἴημεν ἴκανο.  
 or of-infantry or warhke-equipments by which 'we might 'be able  
 μὲν βλάπτειν ὑμᾶς, δέ οὖδεις κίνδυνος,  
 indeed to-injure you, and (there would be) no danger  
 ἀντιπάσχειν; Ἀλλὰ ἀν δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν  
 to-undergo-in-return? But might we-seem to-you (as) wanting  
 χωρίων ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιτίθεσθαι ὑμῖν; μὲν  
 places suitable to-attack you? (are there not) indeed  
 τοσαῦτα πεδία ἃ οὐ δύτα φίλια ὑμεῖς διαπορεύεσθε  
 so-many pisins, which not being friendly you pass-through  
 σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ, δέ ὁρᾶτε τοσαῦτα  
 with much labour (and difficulty) and do-you-see the-many  
 ὅρη δύτα πορευτέα ὑμῖν,  
 mountains | being to-be-crossed by-you, [that are to be crossed by you],  
 ἃ ἔξεστι ὑμῖν προκαταλαβοῦσι  
 which it-is-allowed us after-having-previously-taken-possession (of them)  
 παρέχειν ἀπορα ὑμῖν, δ' εἰσὶ τοσοῦτοι ποταμοί.  
 to-render impassable to-you, and are-there (not) so-many rivers  
 ἐθ' ὅν ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ταμεύεσθαι  
 at which it-is-allowed us to-regulate (and determine)

ὅπλοις ὑμῶν ἀν βουλώμεδα μάχεσθαι; δέ  
with-how-many of-you 'we might 'wish to-fight? and

εἰσὶ αὐτῶν οὖς ἀν οὐδὲ διαβαίητε  
are-there (not some) of-these (rivers) which 'you could not 'cross

παντάπασι, εἰ ἡμεῖς μὴ διαπορεύομεν ὑμᾶς.  
at-all, if we 'did not 'cross you 'ever

Δ' εἰ ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττώμεδα, ἀλλὰ  
But if in all these (things) we-should-fail, but (then)

γέ τοι τό πῦρ ἔστι χρείττον τοῦ καρποῦ.  
at-least — — | fire is better (than) the fruit  
κατα-

(of the earth); [fire is master over the produce of the soil]; (for) burn-  
καύσαντες δὲν ἡμεῖς ἀν δυναίμεδ' ἀντιτάξαι λιμὸν  
ing which we would be-able to-oppose famine

ὑμῖν, ω̄ ὑμεῖς, οὐδὲ εἰ εἴητε πάνυ ἀγαδοὶ,  
to-you, against-which you, neither if you-were ever-so brave.

ἀν δύναισθε μάχεσθαι. Πῶς οὖν ἀν, ἔχοντες  
could you-be-able to-contend How-then therefore if, having

τοσούτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν ὑμῖν  
so-many means | for the to-wage-war with-you, [for

καὶ μηδένα τούτων ἐπικίνδυνον  
waging war with you], and none of-these dangerous

ἡμῖν, ἔπειτα ἀν ἐκ παντων τούτων ἐξελοίμεδα  
to-us, now-that 'we should of all these 'select

τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον, δέ μὲν μόνος ἀσεβῆς  
this — manner, which indeed alone (is) impious

πρὸς θεῶν, δέ μόνος αἰσχρός πρὸς ἀνδράπων;  
before (the) gods, and alone (is) disgraceful before men?

Δέ ἔστι παντάπασιν ἀπόρων  
But it-is altogether (the part of men) perplexed-by-difficulties,

καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἔχομένων ἀνάγκη, καὶ  
and destitute-of-means, and held by-necessity, and

τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐδέλουσι  
these (being) wicked (by nature), who desire

πράττειν τι τε δι' ἐπιορκίας πρὸς θεούς,  
to-effect any-thing no only by perjurv to (the) gods

καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους. Ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε,  
but-also perfidy to men. We, O Clearchus,

ἐσμέν οὐχ οὔτε οὕτως ἀλογιστοι οὔτε ἥλιδιοι.  
are not (neither) (either) so inconsiderate (nor) (or) foolish.

Αλλὰ τί δὴ, ἔξօν ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς,  
But why truly, it-being-allowed (us) to-have-destroyed you, | did-we

οικῇ ἥλιδομεν ἐπὶ τοῦτο: οἴδη  
not 'go to this? [why did we not attempt it]? know

εὖ, ὅτι ὁ αἴτιος τούτου ἔμος ἔρως, ἔμε  
well, that the cause of-this (was) my desire, | me

τὸ γενέσθαι πιστὸν τοῖς Ἑλλησι,  
the to-become [for becoming] (a) faithful (friend) to-the Greeks

καὶ ὡς ξενικῷ Κῦρος ἀνέβη πιστεύων  
and with-which foreign (force) Cyrus went-up trusting (them)

διὰ μισθοδοσίας, τούτῳ  
on-account-of (the) pay-given (them), with-this (force) (it is for)

ἔμε καταβῆαι ἵσχυρόν δι' εὐεργεσίας.  
me to-go-down strengthen on-account-of benefits (bestowed

Δέ δσα ὑμεῖς ἔστε  
on them). But (as respects) how-many-things (in which) you are

χρήσιμοι μοι σὺ μὲν καὶ εἶπας τὰ,  
useful to-me you 'have indeed even 'mentioned — (some of them),

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· γάρ μὲν ἔξεστι  
but the greatest (of all) I-myself know; for indeed it-is-allowed

μόνῳ βασιλεῖ ἔχειν τὴν τιάραν ὄρθην ἐπὶ<sup>o</sup>  
alone 'to (the) 'king to-have the tiara upright on

τὴν κεφαλὴν, δ' οἰστος, τὴν ἐπὶ τὴν καρδία,  
the head, but perhaps, — (that) on the heart,

ὑμῶν παρόντων, καὶ ἔτερος ἀν εὐπετῶς  
you being-present (and assisting), even another may easily

ἔχοι.  
have (so.)

Εἶπὼν ταῦτα ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ λέγει  
Saying these (things) he-seemed to — Clearchus to-speak  
ἀληθῆ· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν, εἴφη,  
the-truth; and he-said · (Are) not (those) therefore, he-said

οἵτινες, τοιούτων εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων  
 who, such-great (inducements) to friendship existing

ἡμῖν, διαβάλλοντες πειρῶνται ποιῆσαι ἡμας πολε-  
 to-us, calumniating endeavour to-make us ini-  
 μίους εἰσι ἀξιοι παθεῖν τὰ  
 mical (to one another) are (they not) worthy to-suffer the  
 ἔσχατα; Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε ἔφη ὁ  
 extreme (of punishment)? And I indeed at-least said —

Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ  
 Tissaphernes, if 'you as-also the generals and the  
 λοχαγοὶ βούλεσθε ἐλθεῖν μοι ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ,  
 captains will come to-me in — (a) public

λέξω τοὺς λέγοντας πρὸς ἐμὲ, ὡς  
 (manner), I-will-mention — (those) telling — me, that  
 σὺ ἐπιβούλεύεις ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ σὺν ἐμοὶ.  
 you are-conspiring-against me, and the army with me.

Δέ ἐγὼ, ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἀξω πάντας,  
 And I, said — Clearchus, will-bring (them) all,  
 καὶ αὐτὸν δηλώσω σοὶ, διδεν ἐγὼ ἀκούω  
 and 'I in-return 'will-declare to-you, whence I hear (reports)  
 περὶ σοῦ. Ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσα-  
 about you. After these — — speeches — Tissa-  
 φέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε τε  
 pheunes treating-him-in-a-friendly-and-courteous-manner, then not-only  
 μὲν ἐκέλευσε αὐτὸν μένειν, καὶ ἐποιήσατο  
 indeed requested him to-remain, but-also made-him (a)  
 σύνδειπνον. Δέ τῇ ὑστερίᾳ ὁ Κλέαρχος,  
 companion-at-supper. But on-the following-day — Clearchus,  
 ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἦν δῆλός τ'  
 going to the camp, was evidently not-only  
 οἴόμενος τὸν Τισσαφέρνην ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς  
 thinking (that) — Tissaphernes was very kindly  
 διακεῖσθαι, καὶ ἀπήγγελλεν ὃ ἐκεῖνος  
 affected (towards him), but-also announced what he  
 ἐλεγεν· ἔφη τε χρῆναι ιέναι παρὰ  
 said-mentioned; he-said (that) not-only (those) ought to-go to

Τισσαφέρνην, οὓς ἐκέλευσε, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
Tissaphernes, whom he-called, but-also (those) of-the Greeks.

οἱ ἀν ἐλεγχόσι διαβάλλοντες,  
who might be-convicted (as) calumniating (their countrymen).

αὐτοὺς τιμωρηθῆναι ὡς ὄντας προδότας καὶ  
(that) those are-to-be-punished as being traitors and

κακόνους τοῖς Ἑλλησι. Δὲ ὑπώπτευε Μένων  
evil-disposed to-the Greeks. For he-suspected (that) Menon

εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα, καὶ εἰδὼς αὐτὸν  
was the calumniator, even having-known him (as)

συγγεγενημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου,  
having-been-with Tissaphernes (in company) with Ariæus,

καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιθυμεύοντα,  
both (as) forming-a-party against-himself, and (as) intriguing,

ὅπως λαβὼν τὸ ἄπαν στράτευμα πρὸς ἔαντὸν  
so-that having-secured the entire army for himself

ἢ φίλος Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Κλέ-  
he-might-be (a) friend to-Tissaphernes. But also — Cle-

αρχος ἐθεούλετο τὸ ἄπαν στράτευμα ἔχειν τὴν  
archus wished the entire army to-have —

γυνώμην πρὸς ἔαντὸν, καὶ τοὺς παραλυ-  
(their) minds for him, and — (those) molest-

ποῦντας εἶναι ἐκποδῶν. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν  
ing to-be removed-away. But some of-the soldiers

ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ, πάντας τοὺς λοχα-  
spoke-in-opposition to-him, [Clearachus], (that) all the cap-

γοὺς καὶ στρατηγούς μὴ ἰέναι, μηδὲ  
tains and generals 'should not 'go, (and that) neither

πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος κατέτεινεν  
should+hey-trust Tissaphernes. But — Clearachus contended

ἰσχυρῶς ἔστε διεπράξατο μὲν πέντε στρατηγούς  
vehemently until he-obtained indeed five generals

δὲ εἴκοσι λοχαγούς ἰέναι. δὲ καὶ τῶν  
and twenty captains o-go (with him), and also (some) of-the

ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι συνηκολούθησαν  
other soldiers about two-hundred followed

ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν.  
as-if (going) to market.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσα-  
When indeed they-were at the gates of — Tissa-

φέροντος, οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω,  
phernes, the generals indeed were-invited within,

Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος, Μένων Θετταλὸς,  
(these were) Proxenus (the) Boeotian, Menon (the) Thessalian,

Αγιας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σω-  
Agias (the) Arcadian, Clearchus (the) Lacedaemonian, (and) So-

κράτης Ἀχαιός. δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐπὶ  
crates (the) Achæan; but the captains remained at

ταῖς θύραις. Οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον, ἀπὸ τοῦ  
the gates. Not long indeed after, at the

χώτου σημείου, τ' οἱ ἔνδον ἔνυελαμβάνοντο  
same signal, not-only — (those) within were-seized,

καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα  
but-also — (those) without were-killed. And after this

τινὲς τῶν ἵππεων βαρβάρων, ἐλαύνοντες διὰ  
some of-the cavalry 'of (the) 'barbarians, riding through

τοῦ πεδίου. ὅτινι Ἑλληνι ἐντυγχάνοιεν, ή  
the plain; whatever Greek they-might-meet, either

δούλῳ ή ἐλευθέρῳ ἔκτεινον πάντας. Δὲ οἱ  
slave or freeman they-killed (them) all. But the

Ἑλληνες ὄρῶντες ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τὴν  
Greeks observing from the camp — (this)

ἵππασίαν αὐτῶν τε ἐθαύμαζον, καὶ ἡμφιγνόουν  
riding-about of-them 'were not-only 'astonished, but-also doubted

δ τι ἐποίουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκάς ἦν φεύγων,  
what they-were-doing, until Nicarchus (an) Arcadian came fleeing.

τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ ἔχων τὰ  
being-pierced in the belly, | and having the

ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ,  
intestines in — (his) hands, [and holding back the intestines with his

καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. Ἐκ τούτο  
 [ands], and related all — (that) had-occurred. Upon this  
 δὴ οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα πάντες  
 indeed the Greeks ran to — (their) arms all  
 ἐκπεπληγμένοι, καὶ νομίζοντες  
 being-struck (with consternation), and thinking (that)  
 αὐτοὺς αὐτίκα ἥξειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.  
 they will immediately 'come against the camp.  
 Οἱ πάντες δὲ οὐκ ἦλθον, δὲ Ἀριαῖος καὶ  
 — All indeed 'did not 'go, but (only) Ariæus and  
 Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν πιστότατοι  
 Artaozus and Mithradates, who were the-most-faithful  
 Κύρῳ. δὲ ὁ ἑρμηνεὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔφη καὶ  
 to-Cyrus; but the interpreter of-the Greeks said (that) also  
 ὅρāν τὸν ἀδελφὸν Τισσαφέροντος σὺν αὐτοῖς,  
 he-saw the brother of-Tissaphernes with them,  
 καὶ γιγνώσκειν· δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν  
 and (that) he-knew (him); and also others 'of (the) Persians  
 εἰς τριακοσίους τεθωρακισμένοι ξυνηκο-  
 to-the-number-of three-hundred equipped-with-corselets accom-  
 λούθουν. Οὗτοι, ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευνον, εἰ  
 panied-them. These, when they-were near, requested, if  
 εἴη ἡ τις στρατηγὸς ἡ λοχαγὸς τῶν  
 there-were either any general or captain of-the  
 Ἑλλήνων, προσελθεῖν, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλωσι  
 Greeks, (them) to-come-forth, that they-may-deliver-a-message  
 τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. Μετὰ ταῦτα στρατηγοὶ  
 — from (the) king. After this (the) generals  
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων μέν Κλεάνωρ Ὁρχομένιος καὶ  
 of-the Greeks, namely Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and  
 Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ἔξηλծον φυλαττόμενοι,  
 Sophænetus (the) Stymphalian, went-forth guarded  
 Ξενοφῶν Ἀδηναῖος δὲ ξὺν  
 (and with precaution), Xenophon (the) Athenian (went) also with  
 αὐτοῖς, ὅπως μάδοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου·  
 that he-might-learn — (something) about Proxenus

(Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐτύγχανεν ἀπών  
 (Cheirisophus — | happened being-absent [was absent] at a  
 κώμη ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτίζόμενος.) Δέ ἐπει  
 village with others seeking-for-provisions.) But when  
 ἐστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, Ἄριαλος εἶπε τάδε·  
 they stood in hearing (distance) Ariæus spoke thus:  
 Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἀνδρες Ἑλληνες, ἐπει τε  
 Clearchus indeed, O men Greeks, since 'he not-only  
 ἐφάνη ἐπιορκῶν, καὶ λύων τὰς σπουδὰς  
 'appeared committing-perjury, but-also breaking the truce,  
 ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθυηκε· δὲ  
 has-received — (his) just-punishment, and died; but  
 Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγειλαν τὴν  
 Proxenus and Menon, because they-denounced the  
 ἐπιβούλην, εἰσιν ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς  
 plot, are in great honour. And the king  
 ἀπαιτεῖ οὐμᾶς τὰ ὅπλα· γάρ φησίν εἶναι  
 demands of-you — (your) arms; for says-he | to-be  
 αἵτοῦ ἐπείπερ ἦσαν Κύρου  
 of-him [they are his] | because they-were of-Cyrus [because they be  
 τοῦ δούλου ἐκείνου.  
 longed to Cyrus] the slave (and subject) of-himself.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀπεκρίναντο (δὲ  
 To this the Greeks answer (for  
 Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὁρχομένιος ἔλεγε). Ὡς Ἄριαλε  
 Cleanor the Orchomenian spoke) (for them): O Ariæus,  
 κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἡτε φίλοι  
 most-wicked of-men, and the others as-many-as were friends  
 Κύρου οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς  
 of-Cyrus, do-not you not respect (neither) (either) (the) gods  
 οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὅμοσαντες νομεῖν τοὺς  
 (nor) (or) men, who having-sworn to-consider —  
 αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς ἥμιν,  
 those friends and enemies to-us (to be the same to you),  
 προδόντες οὐμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἀδεωτάτῳ  
 betraying us with Tissaphernes the most-godless

τε καὶ πανουργοτάτω, ἀπολωλέκατε τε τοὺς  
 and also most-crafty, you-have-destroyed not-only the  
 αὐτούς ἄνδρας, οἵς ὅμνυτε, καὶ προδεδω-  
 very-same men, to-whom you-swore, but-also deserting-and-be-  
 κότες ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔρχεσθε  
 traying | us the other [us, who are left] have-come  
 ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις; Δέ ὁ Ἀριαῖος  
 against us with — (our) enemies? But — Ariæus  
 εἶπε. Γὰρ Κλέαρχος φανερὸς ἐγένετο πρόσθεν  
 said. For Clearchus evidently was before  
 ἐπιβούλευών Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὁρόντα καὶ  
 plotting-against Tissaphernes and also Orontes and  
 ἡμῖν πᾶσιν ξὺν τοῖς τούτοις. Ἐπὶ τοίτοις  
 against-us all with — these. After this  
 Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε. Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν, εἰ  
 Xenophon spoke thus. Clearchus indeed therefore, if  
 ἔλυε τὰς σπονδάς παρὰ τοὺς δρκούς ἔχει  
 he-has-broken the truce contrary to — (his) oaths he-has  
 τὴν δίκην· γὰρ δίκαιον ἀπόλλυσθαι  
 — (his) just-punishment; for it-is-just to-destroy  
 τοὺς ἐπιορκοῦντας· δέ Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων  
 — (those) perjuring-themselves, but Proxenus and-also Menon  
 ἐπείπερ εἰσὶν μὲν ὑμέτεροι εὑεργέται, δέ ὑμέτεροι  
 since they-are indeed your benefactors, and our  
 στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· γὰρ δῆλον,  
 generals, send them hither; for (it is) clear,  
 δτι, δυτες γε φίλοι ἀμφοτέροις, πειράσονται  
 that, being at-least friends to-both (parties), they-will-endeavour  
 ξυμβούλευειν τὰ βέλτιστα καὶ ἡμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν.  
 to-advise the best both for-you and for-us.  
 Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Βάρβαροι διαλεχθέντες πολὺν  
 After this the barbarians, having-conversed for-a-long  
 χρόνον ἀλλήλοις ἀπῆλθον ἀποκρινάμενοι οὐδὲν.  
 time with-one-another, departed, having-answered nothing.

## CHAPTER VI.

Οι στρατηγοί μὲν δὴ, οὕτω ληφθέντες,  
 The generals indeed, thus taken (prisoners),  
 ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα, καὶ τάς  
 were-taken-up to (the) king, and 'having — (their)  
 κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες ἐτελεύτησαν. εἰς μὲν  
 heads cut-off died; one indeed  
 αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος διμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν  
 of-them Clearchus by-general-account of all —  
 ἔχόντων ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ, δόξας  
 (those) having experimentally (a knowledge) of-him, | having-appeared  
 γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ ἐσχάτως πολεμικὸς  
 to-be [seemed to be] (a) man both extremely addicted-to-war  
 καὶ φιλοπόλεμος. Γάρ καὶ δὴ<sup>1</sup>  
 and fond-of-military (affairs and enterprises). For also truly  
 ἐώς μὲν ἦν πόλεμος τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις  
 as-long-as indeed there-was war with-the Lacedæmonians  
 πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενε.  
 against the Athenians, he-remained (with the Lacedæmonians).  
 Δέ ἐπεῑ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο πείσας τὴν πόλιν  
 But when peace took-place | having-persuaded the city  
 αὐτοῦ ὡς οἱ Θρᾷκες  
 of-himself [having persuaded Sparta, his city,] that the Thracians  
 ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἑλληνας, καὶ διαπραξάμενος  
 were-committing-injuries on-the Greeks, and having-obtained  
 ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν Ἔφόρων  
 as-well-as he-could from the Ephori (the means to carry  
 ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμήσων τοῖς Θρᾳξίν  
 on the war) he-sailed as about-making-war against-the Thracians  
 ὑπὲρ Χερσόνησου καὶ Περίνθου. Δέ ἐπεῑ οἱ  
 above (the) Chersonesus and Perinthus. But when the  
 Ἔφοροι πως μεταγνόντες, αὐτοῦ δυτος  
 Ephori 'having some-how 'changed-their-minds, he being

ἦδη ἔξω, ἐπειρῶντο ἀποστέφειν αὐτὸν  
 now without (their jurisdiction), they-endenoured to-'turn him  
 ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείσεται,  
 back from (the) Isthmus, there he-'did not-any-longer 'obey.  
 ἀλλ' πλέων ὤχετο εἰς Ἐλλήσποντον·  
 but sailing (away) he-proceeded to (the) Hellespont  
 Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν τελῶν  
 And for this he-was-condemned-to-death by the magistrates  
 ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ, ὡς ἀπειδῶν. Δέ ων ἦδη  
 in — Sparta, as being-disobedient. But being now (an)  
 φυγάς, ἐρχεται πρὸς Κύρον, καὶ μὲν ὅποιοις  
 exile, he-goes to Cyrus, and indeed by-what  
 λόγοις  
 discourses (and means) he-persuaded Cyrus has-been-written  
 ἀλληλη. δὲ Κύρος δίδωσι αἰτῷ μυρίους  
 in-another-place; and Cyrus gave him ten-thousand  
 δαρεικούς. Δέ ὁ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐτράπετε  
 daries. And who taking (this sum) 'did not 'turn-himself  
 ἐπὶ ῥᾳδυμίαν, ἀλλ' συλλέξας στράτευμα ἀπὸ  
 to idleness, but having-collected (an) army with  
 τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί,  
 this-same — money, he-made-war with-the Thracians,  
 καὶ τε ἐνίκησε μάχῃ, καὶ δὴ ἐφερε καὶ  
 and not-only conquered (them) in-battle, but-also — took-away and  
 ἦγε ἀπὸ τοίτου τούτους, καὶ διεγένετο  
 ied-away from this (country) all-things, and he-continued  
 πολεμῶν, μέχρι Κύρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος·  
 fighting, until Cyrus needed — (his) army:  
 δὲ τότε ἀπῆλθεν ὡς αὖ πολε-  
 and then departed (to go to him) that (he might be) again making-  
 μῆσων ξὺν ἔκείνω.  
 war with him.

Δοκεῖ μοι ταῦτα οὖν εἶναι ἔργα  
 It-seems to-me (that) these therefore were (the) occupations  
 φιλοπολέμουν, διστις ἔξον μὲν ἔχειν  
 of-one-fond-of-war. who when-it-was-allowed-him indeed to-have

εἰρήνην ἀνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης, αἱρεῖται  
 peace without shame and detriment, he-chose  
 πολεμεῖν, δὲ ἐξὸν ῥᾳδυμεῖν,  
 to-make-war, and when-it-was-allowed-him to-lead-a-life-of-indolence,  
 βούλεται πονεῖν δέστε πολεμεῖν,  
 he-wished to-undergo-severe-labour so-as to-be-engaged-in-war (with its  
 δὲ ἐξὸν ἔχειν χρήματα  
 toils and adventures), und when-it-was-allowed-him to-have riches  
 ἀκινδύνως, αἱρεῖται πολεμῶν ποιεῖν ταῦτα  
 without-danger, he-chose making-war to-make these (riches)  
 μείονα. Δέ ἐκεῖνος ἡδελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον  
 less. But he desired to-spend-his-money in war  
 ὅσπερ εἰς παιδικὰ ή εἰς τινὰ  
 as (he might have spent it) on (a) beloved-object, or on any  
 ἄλλην ἡδονὴν· οὕτω μὲν ήν φιλοπόλεμος.  
 other pleasure; so 'fond indeed was-he 'of-war.  
 Δέ αὖ ἐδόκει εἶναι πολεμικὸς ταύτῃ, ὅτι  
 And again he-appeared to-be fitted-for-war in-this, that  
 τε ήν φιλοκίνδυνος, καὶ ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 not-only he-was fond-of-danger, | but-also marching against the  
 πολεμίους,  
 enemy, [but was always ready to lead his army against the enemy],  
 καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς, καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς  
 both by-day and night, and in — danger (was)  
 φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες  
 prudent-and-self-possessed, as — (those) being-present (with him)  
 πανταχοῦ πάντες ὁμολόγουν. Καὶ δὲ λεγέτο  
 in-any-place all confessed. And also he-was-said  
 εἶναι ἀρχικὸς ὡς δύνατὸν ἐκ τοῖς  
 to-be qualified-for-commanding in-as-much-as he-could-be from —  
 τοιούτον τρόπου, οἷον κάκεῖνος εἰχεν. Γὰρ  
 such (a) disposition, as even-he had. For  
 μὲν ήν ἴκανὸς, ὡς καὶ τις ἄλλος, φροντίζειν,  
 indeed he-was capable, (more) than even any other, to-take-care  
 ὅπως ή στρατιὰ ἔξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αἰτῷ, καὶ  
 below the army would have provisions for-itself, and

παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα· δὲ καὶ ἵκανὸς ἐμποιῶ.  
to-procure the-same; and also (he was) capable to-im.  
ῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν, ὡς Κλεάρχῳ εἶη πειστέον.  
press on — (those) present, that Clearchus was to-be-obeyed  
Δέ τοῦτο ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ εἰναι χαλεπός·  
And | this he-effected from — (that) to-be severe;  
γὰρ καὶ ὅραν ἦ  
[this he effected by his severity]; for even to-look-at he-was  
στυγνὸς, καὶ τῷ φωνῇ τραχὺς· τε  
gloomy-and-stern, and in — (his) voice harsh; 'he not-only  
δέι ἐκόλαζέ ισχυρῶς, καὶ ἐνίοτε ὀργῇ, ὡς  
always punished severely, but-also sometimes in-anger, so (that)  
καὶ ἔσθ' ὅτε μεταμέλειν αὐτῷ. Καὶ δὲ ἐκόλαζε  
even 'he sometimes repented himself And also he-punished

Γνώμη· γὰρ ἤγειτο ἀκολάστου  
according-to-rule (or on principle); for he-thought an-undisciplined  
στρατεύματος εἰναι οὐδὲν ἄφελος. Ἀλλὰ καὶ  
army to-be (of) no use. But even  
ἔφασαν αὐτὸν λέγειν, ὡς δέοι τὸν  
they-said (that) he (used) to-say, that it-becomes the  
στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι τὸν ἄρχοντα μᾶλλον  
soldier to-fear — (his) commander more  
ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλάξειν  
than the enemy, if he-'would either 'keep  
φυλακὰς, ἢ ἀφέξεσθαι φίλων, ἢ  
guard 'well, or abstain-from (doing injury to) friends, or  
ἴεναι ἀπροφασίστως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. Μὲν  
go without-hesitation against the enemy. Indeed  
οὖν ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς  
therefore in — dangerous-and-frightful-circumstances (the soldiers)  
σφόδρα ἥθελον ἀκούειν αὐτοῦ, καὶ  
'were exceedingly 'willing to-listen-to (and obey) him, and  
οἱ στρατιῶται οἷς ἤροῦντο ἄλλον·  
the soldiers 'did not 'wish-for another (commander),  
γὰρ καὶ ἔφασαν τότε τὸ στρυγὸν ἐν τοι,  
for indeed they-said (that) then the gloomy-sternness in the

προσώπωις αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι φαιδρὸν, καὶ  
 countenance of-him appeared cheerful-and-animated, and  
 τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐρῆμένον πρός  
 — (his) severity seemed to-be what-was-strong-in-courage against  
 τοὺς πολεμίους. ὅτε εἴρητο  
 the enemy so-that (his countenance) appeared (indicative or !)  
 σωτήριον, καὶ οὐκέτι χαλεπόν. Δ' ὅτε  
 saving-and-protecting, and no-longer severe. But when  
 γένοιτο ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ, καὶ  
 they-were out-of — danger, and it-might-be-allowed-them  
 ἀπιέναι πρὸς ἄλλους ἀρχομένους  
 to-go to others | as-persons-having-been-commanded, [as  
 πολλοὶ ἀπέλειπον αὐτὸν. γάρ εἶχεν οὐκ  
 soldiers], many left him; for he-had no  
 τὸ ἐπίχαρι, ἀλλ' ἦν ἀεὶ χαλεπός  
 agreeableness (or manners), but he-was always stern  
 καὶ ὡμός. ὅτε οἱ στρατιῶται διέκειτο πρὸς  
 and unfeeling; so-that the soldiers were-affected towards  
 αὐτὸν ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. Καὶ  
 him as boys towards (their) teacher. And  
 γάρ οὖν οὐδέποτε εἶχεν ἐπομένους  
 — therefore 'he never had (those) following (him)  
 φιλίᾳ καὶ μὲν εὔνοίᾳ. δὲ  
 through-friendship (or) even indeed being-well-disposed-towards-him; but  
 οἵτινες ἦσαν τεταγμένοι  
 those-who either had-been-ordered (to the service) by (the) state,  
 ἦσαν κατεχόμενοι ὑπὸ τοῦ δεισθαι, ἦσαν τινὶ ἄλλῳ  
 or being-compelled by — want, or any other  
 ἀνάγκῃ παρείησαν αὐτῷ ἐχρῆτο  
 necessity, might-be-with him, he-made-use-of (as) being  
 σφόδρα πειδομένοις. Δέ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο νικᾶν  
 extremely 'obedient. And when they-began to-conquer  
 ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἦδη ἦσαν τὰ ποιοῦντα  
 under him the enemy, | now were the doing  
 μεγάλα  
 great [the opportunities were then great] 'for the τοὺς στρατιώτας  
 'soldiers

*σὺν αὐτῷ εἶναι χρησίμους· γὰρ τε τὸ ἔχειν  
with him to-be useful-and-good; | for not-only the to-have  
θαρρότατος πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους παρῆν,  
confidently against the enemy was-present (to them),*

[for they had a perfect feeling of confidence, in their minds, against the  
*καὶ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι τὴν τιμωρίαν  
enemy], but-also | the to-fear [the fear of] — punishment  
παρ' ἔκείνου ἐποίει αὐτοὺς εὐτάξιους. Τοιοῦτος  
from him made them well-disciplined. Such  
αὲν δὴ ἦν ἀρχων· δὲ ἐλέγετο οἰκεῖον ἐδέλειν  
truly — was-he commanding; but he-was-said not to-wish  
μάλα ἀρχεῖσθαι ἄλλων. Δέ τοι, δέτε  
much to-be-commanded by-others. And he-was, when he  
 λεύτα, ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.  
died, about — fifty (years of) age.*

*Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιωτιος ὅν εὐδὺς μὲν  
Proxenus indeed the Boeotian (when) being just indeed (only a)  
μειράκιον, ἐπεδύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ ἴκανός  
youth, desired to-become (a) man capable  
πράττειν τὰ μεγάλα· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν  
to-perform — great-thing; and through this-same —  
ἐπιδυμίαν ἔδωκε ἀργύριον Γοργίᾳ τῷ Λεοντίνῳ.  
desire he-gave money to-Gorgias the Leontinian*

*Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἔκείνω,  
(for instruction). When indeed he-had-been-with him (some time),  
νομίσας εἶναι ἦδη ἴκανός καὶ ἀρχεῖν,  
having-thought (himself) to-be now qualified both to-command,  
καὶ ὅν φίλος τοῖς πρώτοις  
and, being (a) friend to-the first (or chief men, that) he-might  
μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὑεργετῶν, ἥλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς  
not 'be-inferior in-conferring-benefits, he-went on these-same —  
πράξεις σὺν Κύρῳ· καὶ ὠετω κτήσεοσθα.  
|doings (expeditions) with Cyrus; and thought to-acquire  
ἐκ τούτων μέγα δόνομα, καὶ μεγάλην δύναμιν,  
from this (a) great name, and great power,*

καὶ πολλά χρήματα. Δ' ἐπιθυμῶν τοσούτων  
 and much money. But desiring these-same (things)  
 σφόδρα, καὶ αὖ εἰχεν ἔνδηλον, ὅτι  
 vehemently, 'he also on-the-other-hand 'had (this) evident, that 'he  
 ἀν Σέλοι κτᾶσθαι οὐδὲν τούτων μετὰ ἀδίκιας,  
 might wish to-acquire nothing of-these (things) by unjust-means,  
 ἀλλὰ ὤετο τούτων δεῖν τυγχάνειν σὺν  
 but he-thought (that) such-things ought to-be-acquired by  
 τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ, δὲ ἀνευ τούτων  
 — just and honourable (means), but without these  
 μὴ. Ἡν δὲ δυνατὸς ἀρχειν καλῶν μὲν  
 not (at all). He-was indeed competent to-command orderly —  
 καὶ ἀγαθῶν· μέντοι οὐχ ἴκανος ἐμποῆσαι τοῖς  
 and good (men); however not capable to-impress the  
 στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτ'  
 soldiers of-himself (neither) (either) with-respect (nor) (or)  
 φόβον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον ἡσχύνετω τοὺς  
 fear, but he-was even more in-awe (of) — (his)  
 στρατιώτας, ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι  
 soldiers, than those under (his) 'command (were of)  
 ἐκείνον· καὶ ἦν φανερὸς μᾶλλον φοβούμενος  
 him; and he-was evidently more fearing  
 τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις,  
 [the to-be-hated — (by his) soldiers, [the hatred  
 ἢ οἱ στρατιώται τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ.  
 of his soldiers], than the soldiers the to-disobey him

Δὲ ὤετο ἀρκεῖν  
 [than his soldiers were to disobey him]. And he-thought (it) to-be-sufficient  
 πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν καὶ δοκεῖν εἶναι ἐπαινεῖν  
 for — commanding, and to-seem to-be (so) to-praise  
 μὲν τὸν ποιοῦντα καλῶς, δὲ μὴ ἐπαινεῖν  
 indeed — (him) acting well, but not to-praise  
 τὸν ἀδικοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν μὲν τῶν  
 — (him) acting-improperly. Therefore indeed of — (those)  
 πινόντων οἱ μὲν καλοί τε καγαθοὶ ἥσαν  
 with-him — (such) indeed (as were) orderly and also-good were

εῦνοι αὐτῷ, δὲ οἱ ἀδικοὶ ἐπεθούλενον  
attached to-him, but — (such as were) wicked plotted-against (him)  
ώς ὅντι εὑμεταχειρίστῳ. Δὲ ὅτε ἀπέθησκεν ἦν  
as being easily-managed. And when he-died he-was  
ώς τριάκοντα ἔτῶν.  
about thirty years (of age).

Δὲ Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦν δῆλος μὲν ἐπιθυμῶν  
But Menon the Thessalian was evidently indeed desiring  
ἰσχυρῶς πλουτεῖν, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν ἀρχειν ὅπως  
vehemently to-become-rich, and desiring to-command so-that  
λαμβάνοι πλείω, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν τιμᾶσθαι ἵνα  
he-might-take more, and desiring to-be-honoured in-order-that  
κερδαίνοι πλείω· ἔβούλετο τε μέγιστα εἶναι φίλος  
he-might-gain more; he-wished — most-of-all to-be (a) friend  
τοῖς δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ  
to-the powerful, in-order-that acting-unjustly | he-'might not  
δίδοι δίκην. Ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ  
'give justice [he might not be punished]. | Towards indeed the  
κατεργάζεσθαι δν ἐπιθυμοίη, ώετο  
to-accomplish [for a-complishing] of-what he-might-desire, he-thought  
συντομωτάτην ὄδον εἶναι τε διὰ τοῦ ἐπιορκεῖν,  
the-shortest way to-be not-only through |the to-perjure,  
καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἔξαπατᾶν·  
[perjury], but-also | to-lie [falsehood] and | to-deceive [deceit],  
δ' ἐνόμιζε τὸ ἀπλοὺν καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς εἶναι τὸ  
but he-considered — sincerity and — truth to-be the  
αὐτὸ τῷ ἥλιδίῳ. Δὲ μὲν ἦν φανερὸς στέργων  
same with — folly. And indeed he-was evidently having-affection  
οὐδένα, δτῷ δὲ φαίνη εἶναι φίλος, τούτῳ  
for-no-one, to-whom indeed he-seemed to-be (a) friend, against-this-one  
ἐγίγνετο ἐνδηλος ἐπιθουλεύων. Καὶ μὲν  
he-was evident (as) plotting (mischief). And indeed  
κατεγέλα οὐδενὸς πολεμίου, δὲ ἀεὶ διελέγετο  
he-derided no enemy, but 'he always 'conversed  
τῶν πάντωι συνόντων ὡς κατα-  
— with-all (those) | being-about-him [his associates] as-if ridi

γελῶν. Καὶ μὲν τοῖς κτήμασιν τῶν  
 culling (them). And indeed against-the property of — (his)  
 πολεμιῶν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε, γὰρ ὤετο  
 enemies he-formed no designs, for he-thought (it)  
 εἶναι χαλεπὸν λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν φυλατ-  
 to-be difficult to-take the (property) of — (those) guard-  
 τομένων. δέ μόνος ὤετο εἰδέναι ὅν  
 ing (it); | but (he) alone he-thought to-know (it) being  
 ἁστον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἀφύλακτα.  
 easy to-take the unguarded [but he thought that

he alone knew that it was easy to take the unguarded property of friends].

Καὶ δοῦς μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους  
 And as-many-as indeed he-might-perceive perjured and unjust  
 ἐφοβεῖτο ὡς εὖ ὠπλισμένους, δέ τοῖς  
 he-feared as well armed (against him), but the  
 δόσιοις καὶ ἀσκούσιν ἀληθειαν ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι  
 pious and those-practising truth he-endeavoured to-make-use-of  
 ὡς ἀνάνδροις. Δέ οὗτοι τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ<sup>on</sup>  
 as weak-persons. And as any-one prides-himself on  
 θεοσεβείᾳ, καὶ ἀληθείᾳ, καὶ δικαιότητι, οὕτω  
 religion, and truth, and justice, so  
 Μένων ἦγάλλετο δύνασθαι τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν, τῷ  
 Menon prided-himself to-be-able — to-deceive, —  
 πλάσασθαι ψευδῆ, τῷ διαγελᾶν φίλους. δέ  
 to-devise falsehoods, — to-sneer-at friends; and (that)  
 τὸν μὴ πανοῦργον  
 — (he who was) not ready-to-do-any-thing (of a villainous nature for his  
 ἀεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι τῶν ἀπαι-  
 own advantage) 'he always considered to-be of-the un-  
 δεύτερων.  
 Καὶ πάρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει  
 taught (and ignorant). And with whom indeed he-endeavoured  
 πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ, τούτους ὤετο  
 to-have-the-first-place 'in (their) friendship, these-same he-thought  
 δεῖν κτήσασθαι διαβάλλων τοὺς  
 't to-become-him to-gain-over (through) plotting-against —

*πρώτους.* Δὲ τὸ παρέ-  
those who had been first (in their favour). And | the to-  
*χεσδαι* τοὺς στρατιώτας πειδομένους  
sleep [the keeping of] — (his) soldiers obedient  
ἐμπυχαῖτο ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς.  
he-effected | from the to-do-wrong with-them [by participating

Δὲ ἥξιον τιμᾶσδαι καὶ θεραπεύεσδαι,  
in their evil deeds]. Also he-claimed to-be-honoured and courted,  
ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι ἀν δύναιτο καὶ ἔθελε.  
showing that 'he might 'be-able and might-wish  
ἀδικεῖν πλείστα. Δὲ κατέλεγεν εὐεργεσίαν,  
to-injure the-most. And he-called-it (a) favour  
ὅπότε τις ἀφίστατο αὐτοῦ, ὅτι χρώ-  
(on his part), when any-one deserted him, that (while) making-  
μενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν.  
use of-him he-did not 'destroy him.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ ἔξεστι περὶ τὰ  
And indeed truly (were) it-allowed (to speak) respecting the  
ἀφανῆ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσδαι, δὲ ἀ  
private (affairs) of-him one-might-say-what-is-not-true, but what  
πάντες ισασι ἐστί τάδ. Ὡν ἔτι ὡραῖος  
all know is this. Being yet in-the-prime-of-youth  
διεπράζατο παρὰ Ἀριστίππῳ μὲν στρατηγεῖν  
he-obtained from Aristippus — to-command (of,  
τῶν ξένων. δὲ ἐγένετο, ὃν ἔτι ὡραῖος,  
the foreign-mercenaries; and he-became, being yet in-the-bloom-of-youth,  
οἰκειότατος Ἀριαίῳ, ὅντι βαρβάρῳ, δτι  
most-intimate with-Ariæus, he-being (a) barbarian, for 'he  
ἡδετο καλοῖς μειρακίοις. δὲ αὐτὸς εἶχε  
(Ariæus) 'delighted in-beautiful youths; and he-himself had  
Θαρύπαν παιδικὰ, ἀγένειος ὃν  
Tharypas (a) favourite, (a) beardless-youth — (having one)  
γενεῶντα. Δὲ τῶν συστρατηγῶν ἀποδημο-  
having-a-beard. But — (his) fellow-officers being-put-  
κόντων, δτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν  
to-death, because they-fought against (the) king with

Κύρως πεποιηκως ταῦτα οὐκ ἀπέδανε·  
 Cyrus (though) he-having-done the-same 'did not <sup>'die,</sup>  
 δὲ μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν  
 but after the death of-the other generals  
 τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέδανεν, οὐχ  
 having-been-punished by (the) king he-died, no  
 ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί  
 like Clearchus, and the other generals, <sup>'having</sup>  
 τὰς κεφαλάς ἀποτμηθέντες, (ὥσπερ δοκεῖ εἶναι  
 — (their) heads cut-off, which seems to-be  
 τάχιστος θάνατος,) ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς  
 (the) speediest death,) but living having-been-tortured  
 ἐνιαυτόν ὡς πονηρός, λέγεται  
 (during a) year as (a) malefactor, he-is-said <sup>'to (have)</sup>  
 τυχεῖν τῆς τελευτῆς.  
 met — (with his) end.

Δέ Αγιας ὁ Ἀρκάς, καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιός,  
 But Agias the Arcadian, and Socrates the Achæan,  
 καὶ τούτω ἀπεδανέτην. Δέ οὔτ' οὐδεὶς  
 also these-two died. But neither 'did (no-one) (any-one)  
 κατεγέλα τούτων ὡς κακῶν ἐν πολέμῳ, οὔτ'  
 'deride these as cowards in battle, or  
 ἔμεμφετο αὐτοὺς εἰς φιλίαν. Δέ ἄμφω  
 reproached them (in regard) to friendship. And both  
 ἦστην ἀμφὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα τὰ ἔτη  
 were about five and thirty — years  
 ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.  
 from (their) birth.

## BOOK III.

## CHAPTER I.

Οσα μὲν δὴ, οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἐπράξαν, ἐν τῷ  
 What indeed truly, the Greeks did, in —  
 ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,  
 (their) upward-march — with Cyrus until the battle  
 καὶ δοσα ἐγένετο ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε, τῶν  
 and what took-place after Cyrus died, the  
 Ἑλλήνων, ἀπίστων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει, ἐν  
 Greeks, departing with Tissaphernes, (confiding) in  
 ταῖς σπουδαῖς, δεδήλωται, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.  
 the truce, has-been-shown, in the preceding discourse.  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν,  
 After indeed not-only the generals had-been-seized,  
 καὶ οἱ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν  
 but-also — (those) of-the captains and of-the soldiers  
 συνεπόμενοι ἀπολώλεσαν, οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἦσαν  
 accompanying (them) had-perished, the Greeks were  
 δὴ ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ, ἐννοούμενοι μὲν, δῆτι  
 truly in much perplexity, reflecting indeed, that  
 ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις βασιλέως, δὲ κύκλῳ  
 they-were at the gates 'of (the) 'king, and 'in (a) 'circle  
 αὐτοῖς ἦσαν πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔδη  
 (around) them there-were everywhere (a great) many both nations  
 καὶ πόλεις πολέμιαι, δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἔμελλε  
 and towns hostile (to them), and no-one hereafter would  
 παρέξειν ἀγοράν, δὲ ἀπεῖχον τῆς  
 provide (a) market (for them), and they-were-distant from —  
 Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, δὲ  
 Greece not less than ten-thousand stadia, and

ἥν οὐδεὶς ἡγεμὼν τῆς ὁδοῦ, δὲ ἀδιάβατος  
there-was no guide (for) the road, and impassable  
ποταμοὶ διεῖργον ἐν μέσῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε,  
rivers intervened in (the) midst of — (their) road homeward,  
δὲ καὶ οἱ Βάρβαροι ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ προύδε-  
nd also the barbarians having-come-up with Cyrus had-aban-  
δώκεσαν αὐτοὺς, δὲ καταλελειμένοι ἦσαν μόνοι,  
done them, and they-were-left alone.

οὐδὲ ἔχοντες οὐδένα ἵππεα σύμμαχον·  
(nor-indeed) (and indeed) having no cavalry (as) auxiliary;

ὅςτε ἥν εὑδηλον, δτι νικῶντες ἀν  
so-that it-was very-evident, that defeating (the enemy) 'they would  
μὲν κατακάνοιεν οὐδένα, δὲ αὐτῶν ἤττηδέντων  
indeed 'kill no-one, but they being-defeated,

οὐδεὶς ἀν λειφθείη. Ἐννοούμενοι  
not-one (of their number) would be-left (alive). Reflecting

ταῖτα, καὶ ἔχοντες ἀδύμως,  
on-these (things), | and having (themselves) dejectedly, [and be-  
οὐλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐγεύσαντο σίτου  
ing disheartened], few indeed of-them tasted food

εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν, δὲ οὐλίγοι ἀνέκαυσαν  
— (for) — (that) evening, and few kindled (a)

πῦρ, δὲ πολλοὶ οὐκ ἥλσον ἐπὶ τὰ  
fire, and many 'did not 'go to the (place of)

ἢπλα ταίτην τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἀνεπαίνοντο  
arms (during) that-same — night, and they-went-to-rest

ὅπου ἔκαστος ἐτύγχανεν, οὐ δυνάμενοι κα-  
where each happened (to be), not being-able to-

δεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων.  
sleep for sorrow and (the) desire (for) country,

γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς ἐνδυμίζον οὔποτε  
parents, wives, children, whom they-thought never

διέσθαι ἔτι. Οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες  
to-see more. Thus indeed — disposed 'they all  
ἀνεπαίνοντο.  
'went-to-rest.

Ἡν δὲ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ τις Ξενοφῶν  
 There-was — in the army a-certain Xenophon (an)  
 Αθηναῖος, ὃς ὅν οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λο-  
 Athenian, who being neither (a) general nor (a) cap-  
 χαγός, οὔτε στρατιώτης, συνηκολούθει,  
 tain, nor (a private) soldier, accompanied (the  
 ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος μετεπέμψατο αὐτὸν  
 expedition), but Proxenus sent-for him  
 οἴκοδεν, ὃν ἄρχαιος ξένος· δὲ ὑπωσχνείτο  
 from-home, he-being (an) old guest-friend; and he-promised  
 αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, ποιήσειν αὐτὸν φίλον Κύρω,  
 him, if he-should-come, to-make him (a) friend to-Cyrus,  
 ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη νομίζειν κρείττω ἑαυτῷ  
 whom he said (that) he-considered better to-himself (than)  
 τῆς πατρίδος. Ο Ξένοφῶν μέντοι ἀναγνούς  
 — (his) country. — Xenophon indeed having-read  
 τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθη-  
 the letter, consults Socrates the Athe-  
 ναῖοι περὶ τῆς πορείας. Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπ-  
 nian about the journey. And — Socrates having-  
 τεύσας μὴ οἱ ἐπαίτιον τι  
 feared lest — 'they (might) 'criminate (him) in-some (manner)  
 πρὸς τῆς πόλεως εἴη γενέσδαι φίλον  
 with — (his) government if-he-were to-become (a) friend  
 Κύρω, δτι ὁ Κύρος ἐδόκει προδύμως συμπολεμῆσαι  
 to-Cyrus, because — Cyrus seemed zealously to-have-assisted  
 τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθηναῖς, συμβουλεύει  
 the Lacedæmonians against the Athenians, he-advised  
 τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, ἔλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς, ἀνακοι-  
 — Xenophon, (that) having-gone to Delphos, to-con-  
 νῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν  
 consulted the gods about the journey. And — Xenophon  
 ἔλθὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω, τίνι θεῶν  
 going inquired-of — Apollo, to-which 'of (the) 'gods  
 θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος  
 [sacrificing and praying [he should sacrifice and pray] ||(that) 'he

ἀντὶ λαδοῖ τὴν ὁδὸν,  
might go the road, [that he might perform the journey], which  
ἐπινοεῖ, κάλλιστα καὶ ἀριστα, καὶ πράξας  
he-intends, most-honourably and most-successfully, and having-performed

καλῶς σωθείη.

ἢ

(it) successfully | might-be-saved [might return in safety]. And

ὅτι Ἀπόλλων ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ θύειν  
— Apollo | unfolded to-him [answered him] to-sacrifice 'to (the)

θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθε πάλιν,  
gods to-whom it-was-proper. When indeed he-had-gone back

λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. Δ'  
to Athens), he-tells the oracle to — Socrates. And

ὅτι ἀκούσας γῆτιάτο αὐτόν, ὅτι οὐ πρῶτον  
who hearing (it) blamed him, that he-did not first

ἡρώτα τοῦτο, πότερον εἰη λῶν αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι  
'inquire this, whether it-were better for-him to-go-forth

ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας εἶναι ἵτεον,  
or to-remain, but himself having-decided | (that) it-is to-be-gone,

ἐπινηδάνετο τοῦτ' ὅπως ἀν  
[that he would go], he-inquired this how 'he might

πορευθείν κάλλιστα.  
'proceed to-the-best-advantage. — Since however, said-he

ἥρουν οὕτως, χρή ποιεῖν ταῦτ'  
you-have-inquired thus, it-becomes (you) to-do those (things)

ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσε. Οὐ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ  
as the god directed (you). — Xenophon indeed —

οὖτω, θυσάμενος οἷς ὁ θεός ἀνεῖλεν,  
therefore, having-sacrificed (to the gods) that the god told-him-in-reply,

ἔξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον  
set-sail, and finds Proxenus and Cyrus

ἐν Σάρδεσι, ἥδη μέλλοντας ὀρμᾶν τὴν ὁδὸν  
in Sardis, 'being now 'about starting on-the way

ἀνω. καὶ συνεστάθη Κύρω. Δέ τοῦ Προξένου  
upward, and he-was-presented to-Cyrus. And — Proxenus

προσθυμούμενον, καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμπροΐδυμείτο αὐτόν  
ing-very-desirous, and — Cyrus joined in the-desire for-him

μεῖναι. Δέ εἰπε δτι, ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία  
to-remain. And he-said that, as-soon as the expedition

λήξη  
may-be-ended (that) he-'would directly εὑδὺς ἀποπέμψειν αὐτόν.  
send him 'back.

Δέ ἐλέγετο ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς  
It also was-said (that) the expedition (was intended) to-be against (the)

### Πισίδας.

Pisidians.

Μὲν δὴ ἐστρατεύετο οὖτως ἔξαπατηθεὶς  
'He indeed truly 'joined-the-expedition 'being thus 'deceived,  
οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου (γάρ οὐ ηδει τὴν  
not by Proxenus (for he-'did not 'know, (that) the  
ὄρμην ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδὲ ἄλλος  
movement (was) against (the) king, nor (any) other  
οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἐλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου). ἐπεὶ  
(no-one) (one) of-the Greeks except Clearchus); when  
μέντοι ἥλιδον εἰς Κιλικίαν, ἐδόκει ηδη εἶναι  
however they-had-gone to Cilicia, it-seemed now to-be  
σαφές πᾶσιν, δτι ὁ στόλος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα.  
manifest to-all, that the expedition was against (the) king.

Δέ φοβούμενοι τὴν ὁδὸν, καὶ δμας  
But fearing the (length of the) road, and likewise  
ἀκοντεῖς οἱ πολλοὶ δι'  
unwilling (to proceed farther, yet) the greater-part (of them) through  
αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνη-  
shame both (as respects) one-another and Cyrus accom-  
κελούθησαν. καὶ εἰς ὅν Ξενοφῶν ην.  
panied (him); and one of-whom Xenophon was.

Δέ ἐπεὶ ην ἀπορίᾳ, ἐλυπεῖτο  
But when (all) was perplexity-and-anxiety, he-was-troubled-and-grieved  
μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἀλλοις, καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο  
indeed with the rest, and he-'was not 'able

καθεύδειν. δέ λαχὼν μικρὸν ὑπνου εἶδεν  
to-sleep; but having-got (a) little sleep | he-saw (a)

δναρ. Ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ, βροντῆς  
vision [he had a dream]. It-seemed to-him, (a) thunder , storm)

γενομένης, σκηνήτος πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πα-  
having-occurred, (that a) thunder-bolt fell on — (his) pa-  
τρώαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου πᾶσαν λάμ-  
ternal house, and from this it-was all 'lighted.  
πεσδαι. Δὲ περίφοβος εὐθὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ  
up. And frightened 'he immediately 'awoke, and  
τὸ ὄναρ μὲν ἔκρινε πῆ ἀγαθόν, (ὅτι ὅν ἐν  
the dream indeed he-judged somewhat favourable, (because being in  
πόνοις καὶ κινδύνοις, ἔδοξε ἴδεῖν μέγα<sup>(a)</sup>  
trouble and danger, he-seemed to-have-seen (a) great  
φῶς ἐκ Διὸς). δὲ καὶ πῆ ἐφοβεῖτο (ὅτι  
light from Jupiter); but also he-was somewhat 'alarmed (because  
τὸ ὄναρ ἔδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν  
the dream appeared to-him to-be from Jupiter (who was) indeed  
βασιλέως, δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἔδόκει λάμπεσθαι κύκλῳ,<sup>(a)</sup>  
(a) king, and the fire seemed to-shine all-around,)  
μὴ οὐ δύνατο ἔξελθεῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας  
lest he-'should not 'be-able to-depart from the territory  
τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπό<sup>(a)</sup>  
of-the king, but should-be-hemmed-in on-all-sides by  
τινῶν ἀποριῶν.  
some (great) difficulties.

Οποίον τι ἐστὶ μέντοι ἴδεῖν τὸ τοιοῦτον  
What-kind-of thing it-is indeed to-see — such (a)  
ὄναρ, ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων  
dream, it-is-allowed to-perceive from the (things) occurring  
μετα τὸ ὄναρ. Γὰρ γίγνεται τάδε. Εὐθὺς  
after the dream. For it-happened thus. Immediately  
ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη ἔννοια πρῶτον μὲν ἐμπίπτει  
after he-was-aroused (this) thought first indeed occurs  
αὐτῷ· τί κατάκειμαι; ἢ οὐδὲ δέ προβαίνει·  
to-him: why am-I-lying-down? the night indeed is-passing-away;  
δὲ ἀμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς  
and at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day (it is) probable (that)  
τοὺς πολεμίους ἦξειν. Εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα  
the enemy will-come. If indeed we shall-get

ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχὶ<sup>οὐχὶ</sup>  
 into (the power of the) king, | what prevents lest no.  
 ἀποδανεῖν οὐχὶζομένους,  
 to-die [what prevents us to die] being-treated-insultingly (and  
 ἐπιδόντας μὲν πάντα τὰ χαλεπώτατα,  
 ignominiously), after-beholding indeed all the most-grievous-things.  
 δέ παθόντας πάντα τὰ δεινότατα; Δ' ὅπως  
 and suffering all the most-dreadful-things? But how  
 ἀμυνούμεδα οἱδεὶς παρασκενάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμε-  
 we-shall-defend-ourselves no-one provides nor takes-  
 λεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεδα ὅσπερ ἔξὸν ἄγειν  
 care, but we-repose as-if it-were-allowed-us | to-act  
 ἡσυχίαν. Οὖν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως ἐγώ  
 [to enjoy] tranquillity. Therefore from what city 'do I  
 προσδοκῶ τὸν στρατηγὸν πράξειν ταῦτα; δέ  
 'expect the general to-do these-things? and  
 ποίαν ἡλικίαν ἀναμένω ἐλθεῖν ἐμαυτῷ; γάρ  
 what age am-I-waiting-for to-come to-myself? for  
 ἐγώγ' οὐκ ἔσομαι ἔτι πρεσβύτερος, ἐὰν τήμεροι  
 I-at-least 'will not 'be yet older, if to-day  
 προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. Ἐξ τούτου  
 I-give myself 'up to-the enemy. After this  
 ἀνίσταται, καὶ πρῶτον συγκαλεῖ τοὺς λοχαγούς  
 he-arose, and first called-together the captains  
 Προξένου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν. Ἔγώ, ὁ  
 of-Proxenus. And when they-assembled, he-said; I, O  
 ἀνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε δύναμαι καθεύδειν (ὅσπερ  
 men captains, 'am neither 'able to-sleep (as  
 οἴμαι οὐδὲ θύμεις), οὔτε ἔτι κατακεισθαί, ὅρων  
 I-think neither (are) you, nor yet to-be-still, seeing  
 ἐν οἷοις ἐσμέν. Γάρ μὲν δῆλον ὅτι  
 in what (circumstances) we-are. For indeed (it is) plain that  
 οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ πρότερον ἔξέφηναν τὸν πόλεμον  
 the enemy 'did not first 'declare the war  
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν ἐνόμισαν παρασκειάσασθαί<sup>they had-arrange-</sup>  
 against us, before they-thought (that)

τὰ ἔαυτῶν καλῶς· δὸς οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν οὐδὲν  
 the (things) of-themselves well: but no-one of-us 'takes' (not)  
 ἀντεπιμελεῖται, δπως ἀγωνιούμεδα ώς  
 (any) 'heed-in-return', how we-may-contend (with them); as  
 κάλλιστα. Kai εἰ μὲν  
 most-beautiful [in the best possible manner]. And if indeed  
 ὑφεσόμεδα, καὶ γενησόμεδα ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 we-shall-be-remiss, and shall-get into (the power of the)  
 βασιλεῖ, τί οἴμεδα πείσεσθαι;  
 king, what 'may-we (not)' expect to-suffer (from him)?  
 δος ἀποτεμῶν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χείρα ἀδελφοῦ,  
 who cutting-off the head and the hand of-his-brother,  
 καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου καὶ ὁμοπατρίου, καὶ ήδη  
 both of-the same-mother and of-the-same-father, and (he) already  
 τεθνηκότος, ἀνεσταύρωσε. δὲ ἡμᾶς, οἷς  
 lead, fixed-them-on-a-stake; but (as respects) us, to-whom  
 μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστι κηδεμῶν,  
 indeed (there is) no-one present (as a) protector (and supporter),  
 δὲ ἐστρατεύσαμεν ἐπ' αὐτὸν, ώς ποιήσοντες  
 and (who) had-marched against him, as (if) making  
 δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως,  
 (a subject and) slave (of him, who) before (was a) king,  
 καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεδα, τὶ<sup>2</sup>  
 ana 'putting' (him) 'to-death, if we-were-able, what  
 οἴμεδα ἀν παθεῖν; Ἄρ' ἀν οὐκ ἔλθοι  
 do-we-think (that) 'we might 'suffer'? Would 'he not 'resort  
 ἐπὶ πᾶν, ώς αἰκισάμενος ἡμᾶς τὰ ἐσχάτα  
 to every-thing, that having-punished us to-the utmost  
 παράσχοι πᾶσιν ἀνδρώποις φόβον  
 (of severity) he-might-inspire all men (with) fear  
 ποτε τοῦ στρατεῦσαι ἐπ' αὐτὸν; Ἀλλὰ  
 of-ever |of-the to-have-marched [marching] against him? But  
 πάντα ποιητέτον δπως τοι μὴ γενησόμεδα  
 every-thing is-to-be-done that — we-may not 'get  
 ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ. Ἐγὼ μέν οὖν, ἔγτε μὲν  
 into his (power). I indeed therefore, as-long-as indeed

αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὕπωτε ἐπαυόμεν μὲν  
 the truce was (in existence) never ceased —  
 οἰκτείρων ἡμᾶς, δὲ μακαρίζων βασιλέα καὶ  
 putting ourselves, but considering-as-happy (the) king and  
 τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, διαδεώμενος μὲν ὅσην  
 — (those) with him, having-gone-through indeed so-great (a)  
 χώραν αὐτῶν, καὶ οἵαν ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ τὰ  
 territory of-them, and what they-might-have, as indeed the  
 ἄφθονα ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας,  
 copious provisions, so-great (a number) indeed (of) servants,  
 δὲ ὅσα κτήνη, δὲ χρυσὸν, δὲ  
 and how-great (a number of) cattle, and (quantity of) gold, and (of)  
 ἐσθῆτα. Δέ αὖ ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην τὰ  
 raiments. But on-the-other-hand when I-reflect on-the  
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὅτι μετείη ἡμῖν  
 (condition) of-the soldiers, that there-was-a-share to-us  
 μὲν οὐδενός πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν, εἰ  
 indeed of-nothing of-all — (these) good (things), —  
 οὐκ πριαίμεδα, δὲ ἤδειν ὀλίγους  
 unless we-bought (them), and (when that) I-knew (only) few  
 ἔχοντας ἔτι οὔτου ὠνησόμεδα, δὲ  
 (of us) having yet wherewith we-might-buy, and (that our)  
 δρόκους ἥδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι τὰ  
 oaths now restraining us to-procure —  
 ἐπιτήδεια ἀλλως πως η̄ ὠνομένους· οὖν  
 provisions (in) any-other manner than buying; therefore  
 λογιζόμενος ταῦτ', ἐνίοτε ἐφοβούμην τὰς  
 considering these (things), 'I sometimes feared the  
 σπονδὰς μᾶλλον η̄ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον.  
 truce more than (I) now (do) the war.  
 Ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἔκεινοι ἐλυσαν τὰς σπονδὰς, δοκεῖ  
 Since however they have-broken the truce, it-seems  
 μοὶ καὶ η̄ ὑδρίς ἔκεινων καὶ η̄ ἡμετέρα  
 to-me (that) both the insolence of-themselves and — our  
 ὑποψία λελύσθαι. Γάρ ἐν μέσῳ κείται  
 mistrust is-ended. | For in (the) middle [for between us] lie

ἥδη ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ, ἄσλα,  
 now those — good-things (I have mentioned), (as) prizes,  
 ὅπότεροι ἡμῶν ἀν ὕσιν ἀμείνονες ἀνδρες· δ'  
 (for) whoever of-us may be the-better men; and  
 οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν ἀγωνοθέται, οἱ, ὡς τὸ εἰκός,  
 the gods are judges-of-the-contest, who, as (is) — proper (and just)  
 ἔσοντα σὺν ἡμῖν. Γάρ μὲν οὗτοι  
 will-be with us. For indeed these (our enemies)  
 ἐπιωρκήκασιν αὐτοὺς· δὲ ἡμεῖς ὄρῶντες  
 have-committed-perjury against-them (the gods); and we seeing  
 πολλὰ ἀγαθά, στερρόως ἀπειχόμεδα αὐτῶν,  
 many good (things). firmly abstained from-them,  
 διὰ τοὺς δρκους τῶν θεῶν· ὅցτε δοκεῖ  
 on-account-of — (our) oath (to) the gods; so-that it-seems  
 μοι ἔξειναι ιέναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα σὺν  
 to-me (that) it-has-been-allowed-us to-go to the contest with  
 πολὺ μείζονι φρονήματι ἢ τούτοις. Δ' ἔτι  
 much greater confidence than these. And moreover  
 ἔχομεν σώματα ἵκανώτερα τούτων φέρειν καὶ  
 we-have bodies better-able (than) theirs to-bear —  
 ψύχη, καὶ θάλπη, καὶ πόνους· δὲ καὶ ἔχομεν  
 cold, and heat, and labour; and also we-have  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας ψυχὰς· δὲ  
 with (the help of) the gods better minds; and  
 οἱ ἀνδρες καὶ μᾶλλον τρωτοὶ καὶ θητ-  
 — (these) men (being) both more vulnerable and exposed-  
 τοι ἡμῶν ἦν οἱ θεοί, δισπερ τὸ πρόσθεν,  
 to-death (than) we (are) if the gods, as — before,  
 διδῶσιν ἡμῖν νίκην. Ἄλλὰ γὰρ ἄλλοι καὶ  
 should-grant us victory. But therefore others even  
 ἴσως ἐνδυμοῦνται ταῦτα, πρὸς τῶν  
 perhaps meditate-on these-same (things), for (the sake) of-the  
 θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐλαθεῖν ἐφ'  
 gods 'let-us not wait (for) others to-come to  
 ἡμᾶς, παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα,  
 us exhorting (us to — (these) most-noble deeds

Ιλλ' ὑμεῖς ἀρξωμεν τοῦ ἔξορμῆσαι καὶ  
but we will-begin | the to-impel [to excite] even  
τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετήν. Φάνητε ἄριστοι  
— others to — valour. Show-yourselves the-best  
τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν  
(and bravest) of-the captains, and of-the commanders  
ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι. Δέ καὶ εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς  
the-most-worthy-to-command. And also-I, if indeed you  
ἐδέλεστε ἔξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, Βούλομαι  
will give-the-start to these (things), am-willing  
ἔπεσθαι ὑμὸν. δ' εἰ ὑμεῖς τάττετέ με ὑγείσθαι,  
to-follow you; but if you appoint me to-lead,  
οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ  
· I (will) not give-as-an-excuse — (my) age, but  
καὶ ὑγοῦμαι ἀκμάζειν ἐρύκειν τὰ κακά ἀπ'  
even think-myself to-be-of-sufficient-age to-keep-off — harm from  
ἐμαυτοῦ.  
myself.

Ταῦτα μὲν ὁ ἔλεξε· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ,  
These (things) indeed — (Xenophon) spoke; but the captains,  
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πάντες ἐκέλευν  
hearing these (things), all requested (him)  
ὑγείσθαι. πλὴν ἦν τις Ἀπολλωνίδης,  
to-be-their-commander; except there-was a-certain Apollonides,  
τῇ φωνῇ Βοιωτιάζων. δ' οὗτος εἶπεν,  
in — (his) speech resembling-a-Bœotian; and this (person) said,  
ὅτι φλυαροίη, διτις λέγει ἀν τυχεῖν  
that he-speaks-nonsense, who says (that) 'he might obtain  
σωτηρίας ἄλλως πως, ἢ πείσας  
safety by-any-other means, than having-persuaded (the)  
βασιλέα, εἰ δύνατο· καὶ ἄμα ἤρχετο  
king, if he could, (to grant it); and at-the-same-time he-begar  
λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ὑπο-  
to-talk (of) the difficulties. Xenophon however having  
λαβὼν μεταξὺ ἔλεξεν δέ· Ω θαυ-  
taken-him-up in-the-midst (of his speech) spoke thr. O most

μασιώτατε ἀνθρωπε, σὺ δέ γε οὐδὲ ὅρῶν γιγνώ  
 wonderful man, you indeed — neither seeing under  
 σκεις, οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. Μέντοι γε ἦσθα  
 stand, nor hearing have-remembered. However at-least you were  
 ἐν ταῦτῷ τούτοις δτε βασιλεύς,  
 in the-same (place) with-these (here present), when (the) king,  
 πεὶ Κῦρος ἀπέδανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 after Cyrus died, 'being greatly 'elevated-in-mind at  
 τούτῳ, πέμπων ἔκέλευε τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι.  
 this, sending he-ordered the arms to-be-given-up.  
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ᾽ ἐξοπλισάμενοι,  
 But when we not giving-them-up, but being-armed,  
 ἔλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ  
 going-forth encamped-opposite him, what did-he not  
 ἐποίησε, πέμπων πρέσβεις, καὶ αἰτῶν σπουδάς,  
 'do, sending ambassadors, and requesting (a) truce,  
 καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε ἔτυχεν σπουδῶν;  
 and supplying the provisions, until he-obtained (a) truce'  
 Δ' ἐπεὶ αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί,  
 And when on-the-other-hand the generals and captains,  
 ὥσπερ σὺ δὴ κελεύεις, ἤλθον εἰς λόγους  
 as you indeed (now) advise, went to (a) conference  
 αὐτοῖς ἀνευ ὅπλων, πιστεύσαντες ταῖς  
 with-them without (their) arms, trusting to-the  
 σπουδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι,  
 truce, 'are not now they 'beaten. goaded,  
 ὑβριζόμενοι, οὐδὲ δύνανται οἱ τλήμονες ἀποδανεῖν,  
 insulted, not able the wretched-men to-die,  
 καὶ οἷμαι μάλ' ἐρῶντες τούτου; Πάντα ᾧ σὺ  
 and I-think greatly desiring it? All which you  
 εἰδὼς φήσ τοὺς μὲν κελεύοντας  
 having-known (yet) you-say (that) — (those) indeed exhorting (us)  
 ἀμίνεσσαι φλυαρεῖν, δὲ κελεύεις ιόντας  
 to-defend-ourselves talk-foolishly, and do-you-request (us) going  
 παλιν πείσειν; Ἐμοὶ δὲ, ω ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ  
 again to-trv.-persuasion? To-me indeed, O men, it-seems

μῆτε προσίεσθαι τοῦτον τὸν ἄιδρωπον  
 (that we ought) neither to-admit this — man  
 εἰς ταῦτο ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, τε ἀφελομένους  
 into the-same (place) with-us ourselves, but taking-from (him,  
 τὴν λοχαγίαν, ἀναδέντας σκεύη, χρῆσθαι  
 — (his) captaincy (and) lying-on (him) baggage, use-him  
 ὡς τοιούτῳ. Γὰρ οὗτος καταισχύνει καὶ τὴν  
 as such. For this-man disgraces both — (his)  
 πατρίδα, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, δτι ὅν Ἑλλην,  
 country, and all — Greece, that being (a) Greek,  
 ἐστι τοιοῦτος.  
 he-is such (a character).

Ἐντεῦθεν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος ὑπολαβὼν  
 Thence Agasias (the) Stymphalian having-taken-up  
 εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὐδὲν παν-  
 (the discourse) said: But to-this-man at-least nothing at-  
 τάπασι προσήκει οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας, οὔτε τῆς  
 all belongs either of — Boeotia, or of —  
 Ἑλλάδος, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ εἴδον τὰ ὤτα  
 Greece, since I perceived (that) — (his) ears  
 τετρυπημένον ὅσπερ Λυδόν. Καὶ εἰχεν  
 were-bored as (a) Lydian. | And it-had (itself)  
 οὗτως Οὖν μὲν ἀπῆλασαν τοῦτον.  
 so [and it was so]. Therefore indeed they-drove him 'away.  
 Δέ οἱ ἄλλοι ιόντες παρὰ τὰς τάξεις,  
 But the others going to the (different) ranks (and  
 δπον μὲν εἰη στρατηγὸς  
 divisions of the army), where indeed there-might-be (a) general  
 σῶος, παρεκάλουν τὸν στρατηγὸν. δέ ὁπόδει  
 saved, they-called-up the general; but where  
 οἰχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστρατηγόν. δ' δπον αὖ  
 he-had-perished, the lieutenant-general; but where again  
 εἰη λοχαγὸς, τὸν λοχαγόν. Ἐπεὶ δέ  
 there-might-be (a) captain, the captain. When indeed  
 πάντες συνῆλθον ἔκαθεζοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσθει  
 all came-together they-seated-themselves in the front

τῶν ὅπλων· καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λεχαγοὶ  
of-the (place) of-arms; and the generals and captains

συνελθόντες ἐγένοντο τοὺς ἀμφὶ εκιστόν.  
assembling were — (in all) about a-hundred.

<sup>¶</sup>Οτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, ήσαν σχεδὸν  
|When indeed this was, [when this occurred], it-was near

μέσαι νύκτες. Ἐνταῦθα Ἱερώνυμος Ἡλεῖος,  
mid night There Hieronymus (the) Elian,

ὅν πρεσβύτατος τῶν λοχαγῶν Προξένου, ἥρχετο  
being the-oldest of-the captains of-Proxenus, commenced

λέγειν ὡδε· Ὡ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί καὶ λοχαγοί,  
to-speak thus: O men generals and captains

ἔδοξε ἡμῖν ὄρωσι τὰ παρόντα  
it-seemed (proper) to-us seeing the present (state of our affairs)

καὶ συνελθεῖν αὐτοῖς, καὶ παρακαλέσαι ὑμᾶς.  
both to-assemble-together ourselves, and to-call-on you

ὅπως βούλευσάιμεδα εἴ δυναίμεδα  
(to join us) in-order-that we-may-determine if we-can

τι ἀγαθόν. Δ', ἔφη  
on-something good (and advantageous to ourselves). But, said-he

σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, λέξον ἀπέρ καὶ  
'do you, O Xenophon, relate what (you have) even (said  
πρὸς ἡμῖν. to us.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν λέγει τάδε· Ἀλλὰ δή  
On this Xenophon speaks thus: But truly

μὲν πάντες ἐπιστάμεδα ταῦτα, δτι βασιλεῖν  
indeed 'we all 'know this, that (the) kin,

καὶ Τισσαφέρνης συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν οὓς μὲν  
and Tissaphernes have-seized-upon (all) of-us whom indee-

ἐδινήθησαν· δὲ δῆλον δτι ἐπιβούλευόνσι  
they-could; and (it is) evident that they-are-plottin-

τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὡς ἀπολέσωσιν, ἣν δύνωνται  
against-the rest (of us), that they-may-put-us-to-death, if they-can

Δὲ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ἡμῖν, ὡς  
But at-least I-think every (thing) is-to-be-done by-us, that we-may

αήποτε γενώμεδα ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις,  
never get into (the power of) the barbarians.

ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἔκεινοι, ἢν δυνώμεδα  
but rather (that) they, if we-are-able (to accomplish it)

ἐφ' ὑμῖν. Ἐπίστασθε  
(may fall) into us [may fall into our hands]. Know

εἰ τοίνυν, δτι ὑμεῖς, ὅντες τοσοῦτοι δσοι νῦν  
well therefore, that you, being so-many as now

συνεληγύδατε, ἔχετε μέγιστον καιρόν.  
have-come-together (of you), have the-greatest opportunity

Γὰρ πάντες οἱ οὐτοι στρα-  
(of distinguishing yourselves). For all — these sol-

τιῶται βλέπουσι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, κἄν μὲν δρῶσιν  
diers look to you, and-if indeed they-see

ὑμᾶς ἀδύμος, πάντες ἔσονται κακοί· δὲ εἰ τε  
you dispirited, all will-be cowards; but if not-only

ὑμεῖς αὐτοί φανεροὶ παρασκεναζόμενοι ἥτε ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
you yourselves appearing prepared go against

τοὺς πολεμίους, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε τοὺς ἄλλους  
the enemy, and-also exhort the others

ἴστε εὖ δτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν, καὶ πειρά-  
(to the same) know well that they-will-follow you, and will-en-

σονται μιμεῖσθαι. Δὲ τοι ἴσως ἔστι καὶ  
deavour to-imitate (you). And — perhaps it-is even

δίκαιοις ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων.  
right (that) we should-differ somewhat from-these (soldiers).

Γὰρ ὑμεῖς ἔστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξιαρχοί<sup>2</sup>  
For you are generals, you (are) taxarchs

καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ δτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε  
and captains; and when peace was, you had-a-greater-portion

τούτων καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς· καὶ νῦν  
(than) these both of-riches and honours; and now

τοίνυν, ἐπεὶ ἔστι πόλεμος, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀξιοῦν  
therefore, when there-is war, it-is-proper (that) you exce.

αῖτοις εἶναι ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους,  
these, (and that you) be superior not-only to-the mu titude

καὶ προβούλεύειν καὶ προπονεῖν τούτων  
 but-also to-plan-and-devise and to-labour-and-exert-yourselves for-these,  
 ἦν που δέη. Καὶ νῦν μὲν πρῶτον  
 if any-where it-may-be-needed. And now indeed in-the-first (place)  
 οἴμαι ὑμᾶς ἀν μέγα ὄντσαι τὸ στράτευμα,  
 I-think (that) you may greatly benefit the army,  
 ἵ ἐπιμεληθείητε, ὅπως στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 if you-take-care, that generals and captains  
 ἀντικατασταθῶσιν ὡς τάχιστα ἀντὶ τῶν  
 be-chosen as speedily-as-possible in-place-of — (those)  
 ἀπολωλότων. Γὰρ ἀνευ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν οὔτε  
 we-are-deprived-of. For without commanders nothing either  
 καλὸν οὔτε ἄγαδὸν ἀν γένοιτο, ὡς μὲν εἰπεῖν  
 honourable or good can happen, as indeed to-speak  
 συνελόντι, οὐδαμοῦ, δὲ δὴ ἐν τοῖς πολε-  
 in-comprehensive (language), no-where, but truly in — warlike-  
 μικοῖς παντάπασι. Γὰρ μὲν ἡ σύνταξία δοκεῖ  
 affairs not-at-all. For indeed — order appears  
 σώζειν, δὲ ἡ ἀταξία ἥδη ἀπολώλεκε  
 to-preserve (armies), but — want-of-order 'has already destroyed  
 πολλοὺς. Δὲ ἐπειδὴν καταστήσοντε τοὺς ἀρ-  
 many. And after you-have-appointed the com-  
 χοντας, δσους δεῖ, καὶ ἦν συλλέγητε  
 manders, as-many-as it-is-proper (to appoint), and if you-assembled  
 καὶ παραδορρύνητε τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας, οἵμαι  
 and encouraged the other soldiers, I-think  
 ἀν ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ. Γὰρ  
 that you will-have-acted very-much in season-and-to-the-purpose. For  
 νῦν μὲν ἵσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε, ὡς ἀδύμως  
 now indeed likewise even you perceive, how dispiritedly  
 μὲν ἥλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ ἀδύμως  
 indeed they-went to the (place of) arms, and (also how) dejectedly  
 πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς, ὕστε, ἔχόντων  
 (they went, on — guard, | so-that, having (themselves)  
 οὕτω γ', οὐκ οἶδα  
 so at-least, [while they are in this state of mind], I-do not 'know

ο τι τις ἀν χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, τι  
 for what any-one might use them, 'should any-thing  
 δέοι εἴτε νυκτὸς εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. Δέ τι  
 'be-required either by-night or even by-day. But if  
 τις τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας αὐτῶν, ὡς μὴ  
 any-one should-turn the thoughts of-them, that they-'may not  
 μόνον ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί<sup>1</sup>  
 alone 'contemplate, what they-will-suffer, but also what  
 ποιήσουσι, ἔσονται πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι. Γάρ δὴ<sup>2</sup>  
 they-will-do, they-will-be much more-inspirited. For truly  
 ἐπίστασθε, δτι ἔστιν οὔτε πλῆθος οὔτε ἴσχὺς  
 you-are-aware, that it-is neither multitude nor strength  
 ἢ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ποιοῦσα νίκας.  
 which in — war | are-making victories; [produce victories];  
 ἀλλ' ὁπότεροι, σὺν τοῖς δεοῖς ἀν  
 but which-ever, with the (assistance of the) gods being  
 ἐρρωμενέστεροι ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἵωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 more-resolute — in-mind may-go against the  
 πολεμίους, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἐναντίοι  
 enemy, (as) for the most-part the adverse (enemy)  
 οὐ δέχονται τούτους.  
 | 'can not receive them [can not sustain their attack].  
 Δ' ἔγωγε, ω̄ ἀνδρες, ἐντεδύμημαι, καὶ τοῦτο,  
 But I-at-least, O men, have-considered, also this,  
 δτι ὁπόσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου  
 that those-who indeed desire to-live | by all means  
 ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὐτοὶ μὲν ὡς ἐπὶ<sup>3</sup>  
 [at any rate] in — warlike-affairs, these indeed (as) for  
 τὸ πολὺ ἀποδνήσκουσι κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς  
 the most-part die wretchedly and also dishonourably  
 δέ ὁπόσοι μὲν ἐγνώκασι θάνατον εἶναι κοινὸν  
 bu. those-who indeed have-known death to-be common  
 πᾶσι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις, ἀγωνίζονται δέ  
 to-all, and inevitable to-men, contend-in-battle —  
 περὶ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποδνήσκειν,  
 'for the honourably to-die. [for an honourable death]

ὅρῶ τούτους μᾶλλον πως ἀφικνουμένους εἰς το—  
 I-perceive these rather somehow arriving at —  
 γῆρας, καὶ, ὡς ἀν ζῶσιν διάγοντας  
 old-age, and, as-long-as 'they may 'live passing (their time)  
 ἐνδαιμονέστερον. Καὶ ἀ καταμαθόντας  
 more-happily. And which (things) having-understood  
 νῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς (γάρ ἐσμεν ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ,  
 it now 'becomes us (as we-are in such (a) state)  
 εἶναι τε ἀγαδοὺς ἀρδεας αὐτούς καὶ  
 (that) we-be not-only brave men ourselves but-also  
 παρακαλεῖν τοὺς ἄλλους. Ο μὲν εἰπὼν  
 exhort the others (to be so). Who indeed saying  
 ταῦτ' ἐπαύσατο.  
 this ceased (speaking).

Δέ μετὰ τοῦτον Χειρίσοφος εἶπε. Ἀλλὰ μὲν,  
 But after this Cheriaisophus said: But indeed,  
 ὁ Ξενοφῶν, πρόσθεν ἐγίγνωσκον σε μόνον  
 Xenophon, before-this I-knew you only  
 τοσοῦτον, ὅσον ἤκουον εἶναι Ἀθηναῖον. δέ  
 so-much, as-that I-heard you-were (an) Athenian; but  
 νῦν καὶ επαινῶ σε τε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις καὶ  
 now 'I even 'praise you not-only for what you-say but-also  
 πράτεις, καὶ ἀν βούλοιμην ὅτι εἶναι  
 (for what) you-perform, and could wish that there-were  
 πλείστους τοιούτους. γάρ ἀν εἴη τὸ κοινὸν  
 many such; for 'it would 'be — (a) general  
 ἀγαθόν. Καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὁ  
 good. And now, said-he, let-'us not 'delay, ο  
 ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' οἱ δεόμενοι ἀρχοντες ἀπελθόντες  
 men, but — (those) wanting commanders having-retired  
 ἥδη αἵρεισθε, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἥκετε  
 now to-choose (them), and having-elected (them) 'let (them) 'come  
 εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου, καὶ ἀγετε τοὺς  
 to the middle of-the camp, and bring —  
 αἵρεθέντας. ἐπειτα συγκαλοῦμεν ἐκεὶ τοὺς  
 (those) chosen; afterwards we-will-call-together there the

ἄλλονσ στρατώτας. Δ', ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ  
other soldiers. But, said-he, 'let also Tolmides the  
χῆρος παρέστω ἡμῖν. Καὶ ἀμα εἰπὼν ταῦτ'  
herald 'be-present with-us. And at-the-time he-was-saying this  
ἀνέστη, ὡς τὰ δέοντα μὴ μέλλοιτο,  
he-rose-up, that the (things) necessary 'might not 'be-delayed,  
ἄλλὰ περαινοίτο. Ἐκ τούτου ἡρέδησαν ἄρχον-  
but be-executed. On this they-chose (as) coman-  
τες, ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς,  
lers, in-place-of — Klearchus Timasion (the) Dardanian,  
δὲ ἀντὶ Σωκράτους Ξαντικλῆς Ἀχαιός, δὲ  
and in-place-of Socrates Xanticles (the) Achaean, and  
ἀντὶ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ὁρχομένιος, δὲ ἀντὶ<sup>m</sup>  
in-place-of Agias Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and in-place-of  
Μένωνος Φιλήσιος Ἀχαιός, δὲ ἀντὶ Πωοξένου  
Menon Philesius (the) Achæan, and in-place-of Proxenus  
Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.  
Xenophon (the) Athenian.

---

## CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἥρηντο, τε ἡμέρα  
WHEN indeed (the officers) were-chosen, not-only 'was (the) day  
τχεδὸν ἵπέφαινε, καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες ἦκον εἰς τὸ  
just 'dawning, but-also the commanders had-come to the  
μέσον, καὶ ἐδοξεν αὐτοῖς, προφύ-  
middle (of the camp), and it-seemed (necessary) to-them, senti-  
λακας καταστήσαντας, συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρα-  
nels being-placed, to-call-together the sol-  
τιώτας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται  
diers. When indeed also the other soldiers  
συνῆλθον, Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος πρῶτον  
came-together, Cherasophus the Lacedæmonian first  
μὲν ἀνέστη, καὶ ἐλεξεν ὅδε. Ω ἄνδρες στρα-  
Indeed rose-up, and spoke thus: O men sol-

τῶται, τα παρόντα μὲν χαλεπῖ,  
 diers, — (our) present-affairs indeed are-fraught-with-difficulties,  
 δόποτε στερόμεδα τοιούτω ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν,  
 since we-are-deprived of-such men (our) generals,  
 καὶ λοχαγῶν, καὶ στρατιωτῶν· δέ καὶ  
 and (also) 'of (our) captains, and soldiers; and also  
 πρὸς ἔτι οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαίου, οἱ  
 of (those) moreover (namely) — (those) with Ariæus, who  
 ἔντες πρόσδεν σύμμαχοι, προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς.  
 being formerly (our) allies, have-deserted us.  
 Δέ δμως δεῖ τε ἐλθεῖν ἐξ τῶν παρόντων  
 But likewise it-becomes (us) not-only to-get-out of — (our) pre-  
 τῶν ἀγαδούς ἀνδρας, καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσ-  
 sent (difficulties) (like) brave men, but-also not to-give-  
 Σαί, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι δυνας, ἢν μὲν δυνώμεδα,  
 sp. but to-endeavour that, if indeed we-can,  
 νικῶντες καλῶς, σωζόμεδα. δέ εἰ μή;  
 conquering honourably, we-may-save-ourselves, but if not,  
 ἀλλὰ γε ἀποδυήσκωμεν καλῶς, δέ μηδέποτε  
 yet at-least let-us-die honourably, and never  
 γενώμεθα ζῶντες ιποχείριοι  
 | we-being living [while we live] putting-ourselves-in-the-hands-of  
 τοῖς πολεμίοις. Γάρ οἷομαι ἀν ἡμᾶς παθεῖν  
 the enemy. For I-think that we would-suffer  
 τοιαῦτα, οἵα οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν τοὺς  
 such-things, as 'may the gods do to — (our)  
 ἐχθροὺς. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ Ὁρχομένιος  
 enemies. After this-one Cleanor (the) Orchomenian  
 ἀνέστη καὶ ἐλεξεν ὅδε. Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὦ ἀνδρες,  
 rose-up and spoke as-follows: But indeed, O men,  
 ὅρᾶτε τὴν ἐπιορκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν βασιλέως,  
 you-see the perjury and impiety 'of (the) 'king,  
 δέ ὅρᾶτε τὴν ἀπιστίαν Τισσαφέρνους, δοτις λέγων  
 and you-see the faithlessness of-Tissaphernes, who saying  
 ὃς εἴη τε γείτων τῆς Ἑλλάδος, καὶ δι  
 that he-was not-only (a) neighbour of-the Greeks, but-also would

ποιήσαιτο περὶ πλείστου σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ  
 make-it of much (account) to-have-saved us, and  
 αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς  
 he-himself having-sworn to these (things) to-us, he  
 δούς δεξιὰς, αὐτός ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε  
 having-given (the) right-hand, he having-deceived (us) took  
 τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ γῆδέσθη  
 (prisoners) — (our) generals, and neither has-he-respected  
 Δία ξένιον, ἀλλὰ γενόμενος καὶ  
 Jupiter (the god of) hospitality, but having-become also (a)  
 διμοτράπεζος Κλεάρχῳ, αὐτοῖς τούτοις  
 table-companion to-Clearchus, by-these same (means)  
 ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. Ἄριαλος  
 having-deceived — men he-destroyed (them). Ariæus  
 δὲ, ὃν ἡμεῖς γέδελομεν καδιστάναι βασιλέα, καὶ  
 also, whom we wished to-have-constituted king, and  
 ἔδωκαμεν καὶ ἐλάθομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν  
 we-gave and received pledges not to-betray  
 ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος, οὔτε δείσας τοὺς θεοὺς  
 one-another, (yet) even this-one, neither having-feared the gods  
 οὔτε αἰδεσθείς τεθνηκότα Κύρου, τιμώμενος  
 or having-respected (the) departed Cyrus, (though) honoured  
 μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν  
 in-the-highest-degree by Cyrus (while) living, having now  
 ἀποστὰς πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθρίστους ἐκείνου,  
 'gone-over to the bitterest-enemies 'of (Cyrus) 'himself.  
 πειρᾶται ποιεῖν κακῶς ἡμᾶς τοὺς φίλους Κύρου.  
 we-endeavours to-do ill to-us the friends of-Cyrua.  
 Ἀλλὰ μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσαιντο τούτους.  
 But indeed 'may the gods 'repay these (men);  
 δέ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ὄρωντας ταῦτα μήποτε ἔτ  
 but it-becomes us seeing these (things) never more  
 ἐξαπατηθῆναι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ, μαχομένοις  
 to-be-deceived by these (men), but, fighting

κράτιστα ὡς ἀν δυνώμεδα, πάσχειν  
in-the-bravest (manner) that 'we may 'be-able, to-bear  
τοῦτο δ τι ἀν δοκῆ τοῖς θεοῖς.  
that which may seem (proper) to-the gods.

\*Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται, ἐσταλμένος ἐπι:  
After this Xenophon stood-up, equipped fo.  
πόλεμον ὡς κάλλιστα ἔδύνατο, νομίζων, εἴτε  
war as handsomely (as) he-was-able, thinking, that-if  
οἱ θεοὶ διδοῖεν νίκην τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον  
the gods should-grant victory (that) the most-beautiful ornaments  
πρέπειν τῷ νικᾶν, εἴτε δέοι  
became | to-the to-conquer [victory], (or) that-if it-might-be-so (that he  
τελευτᾶν, ἔχειν ὄρθως,  
was) to-die, | to-have (itself) properly, [it would be well] (that  
εἴντον αξιώσαντα τῶν καλλίστων  
he should think) himself as-having-been-worthy of-the most-beautiful  
ἐν τούτοις τυγχάνειν τῆς τελευτῆς.  
(equipments, and) in these to-meet — (his) end  
δὲ τοῦ λόγου ἥρχετο ὁδε· Μὲν τε τὴν ἐπιορκίαν  
but — (his) speech he-began thus: Indeed not-only the perjury  
καὶ ἀπιστίαν τῶν βαρβάρων Κλεάνωρ μὲν  
but-also (the) perfidy of-the barbarians Cleanor indeed  
λέγει, δὲ οἵμαι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐπίστασθε  
'has (just now) 'mentioned, and I-think you also are-aware-of-it  
Εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλευόμεδα πάλιν λέναι διὰ  
If indeed therefore we-deliberate | again to-go through  
φιλίας αὐτοῖς  
friendship with-them [of again coming to terms of friendship with them]  
ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς ἔχειν πολλὴν ἀδυμίαν,  
(it is of) necessity (that) we (must) have much mistrust,  
καὶ ὄρωντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἷα  
"having also 'seen — (our) generals, what (they)  
πεπόνθασιν, οἱ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἔιντον  
suffered, who through faith in-them 'put themselves  
ἐνεχείρισαν· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεδα σὺν τοῖς  
'int.-their-hands; if however we-intend with — (our)

ὅπλοις τε ἐπιδεῖναι δίκην αὐτοῖς  
 arms not-only | to-impose justice on-them [to inflict punishment]

ὃν πεποιήκασι, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν  
 ὅντες (for that) which they-have-done, but-also (for) the future

ἔναιι διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς, σὺν  
 to-go through all (kinds) of-warfare with-them, with (the help of)

τοῖς θεοῖς εἰσὶ πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐπίδεις σωτηρίας.  
 the gods there-are many and fair hopes of-safety

Δέ αὐτοῦ λέγοντος τοῦτο τις πτάρυνται. δ'  
 But he saying this some-one sneezes; and

οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες πάντες μιᾶς ὅρμη  
 the soldiers hearing (it) all with-one impulse

προεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν· καὶ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·  
 who-shipped the god; and Xenophon said (As)

Ἐπεὶ ἡμῶν λεγόντων περὶ σωτηρίας, οἴωνδες  
 while we were-speaking about safety, (an) omen

τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, δοκεῖ μοι, ὁ ἄνδρες,  
 of — Jupiter the Preserver appeared, it-seems to-me, O men,

εὑξασθαι τῷ τούτῳ θεῷ θύσειν σωτήρια,  
 (that) we-vow to — that god to-sacrifice (the) offerings-of-

ὅπου πρῶτον ἀφικώμεδα εἰς φιλίαν χῶραν,  
 safety, when first we-arrive in (a) friendly country,

δὲ καὶ συνεπεύξασθαι θύσειν τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 and also (that) we-vow-together to-sacrifice-hereafter to-the other

θεοῖς κατὰ δύναμιν. Καὶ ἔφη, δέτε,  
 gods according-to (our) ability. And he-said, to-whomsoever

ταῦτα δοκεῖ ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Καὶ  
 this seems (right) hold-up — (your) hand And

ἄπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Ἐξ τούτου εὗξαντο  
 all held-up (their hands). Upon this they-'made

καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. Δέ εἶπεὶ τὰ  
 (their) 'vows and sang-a-pean. | And when the (things)

τῶν θεῶν εἶχεν καλῶς,  
 of-the gods had (themselves) well, [and when the religious

ἔρχετο πάλιν ὕδε·  
 ceremonies were duly performed |, he-commenced again thus.

Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι εἰεν πολλαι καὶ  
 I-happened (to be) saying that there-were many and  
 καλαι ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν σωτηρίας. Γάρ πρῶτον μὲν  
 fair hopes to-us of-safety. For first indeed  
 ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς δρκους τὰς θεῶν,  
 we 'have truly 'observed | the oaths of-the gods,  
 δέ οἱ πολέμιοι τε  
 [our oaths made to the gods], but the enemy 'have not-only  
 ἐπιωρκήκασι, καὶ λελύκασι τὰς σπονδὰς  
 'perjured (themselves), but-also have-broken the truce  
 καὶ τοὺς δρκους. Δ' ἔχόντων  
 and — (their) oaths. But (things) having (themselves),  
 οὖτω, εἰκὸς μὲν τοὺς θεούς εἰναι ἐναντίους  
 thus, it-is-proper indeed (for) the gods to-be against  
 τοῖς πολεμίοις, δέ συμμάχους ἡμῖν, οἵπερ εἰσὶ<sup>—</sup>  
 (our) enemies, but auxiliaries to-us, who are  
 ἵκανοι, ὅταν βούλωνται καὶ ταχὺ ποιεῖν τοὺς  
 competent, when they-will both speedily to-make the  
 μεγάλους μικροὺς, καὶ εὐπετῶς σῶζειν τοὺς μικρούς.  
 great little, and easily to-save the little,  
 καν ὥστε ἐν δεινοῖς. Δέ ἔπειτα,  
 although they-may-be in dangers. But (next) after (this),  
 (γάρ ἀναμνήσω ἴμᾶς καὶ τοὺς κινδύνους τῶν  
 (for I-shall-remind you even (of) the dangers of —  
 ἡμετέρων τῶν προγόνων, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὡς  
 our — ancestors, in-order-that you-may-perceive that  
 τε προσήκει ὑμῖν εἰναι ἀγαδοῖς, τε σὺν  
 — it-becomes you to-be brave, and-that with (the help of)  
 τοῖς θεοῖς οἱ ἀγαδοί σώζονται καὶ ἐκ πάν  
 the gods the brave are-saved even from the greatest  
 δεινῶν.) γάρ μὲν Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν  
 dangers;) for indeed (the) Persians and — (those) with  
 αὐτοῖς ἐλδόντων παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ, ὡς  
 them coming 'with (a) 'numerous host, as 'making  
 τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀφανιούντων αὖθις, Ἀθηναῖοι  
 — Athens 'disappearing again, (but the) Athenian

τολμήσαντες ὑποστῆναι αὐτοῖς ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς.  
 daring to-withstand them conquered them

Καὶ εὑξάμενοι τὴν Ἀρτέμιδι ὅπόσους τῶν  
 And having-vowed to Diana (that) as-many of-the

πολεμίων ἀν κατακάνοιεν τοσαύτος χιμαίρας  
 enemy 'as 'they might kill so-many she-giants

καταδύσειν τὴν θεῶ, ἐπεὶ εἶχον οὐκ  
 they-would-sacrifice to-the goddess, (but) when | they-had not (a)

ἵκανας εὑρεῖν,  
 sufficient-number to-find, [they could not find a sufficient number],

ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς θύειν πεντακοσίας κατ'  
 it-seemed (good) to-them to-sacrifice five-hundred every

ἐνιαυτὸν, καὶ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἀποδύουσιν. Ἐπειτα  
 year, and also even now they-sacrifice (them). (Afterwards),

ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον, ἀγείρας τὴν ἄναριδ-  
 when Xerxes after-this, having-collected — (that) innumer-

μητον στρατιάν, ἦλθεν ἐπὶ την Ἑλλάδα, καὶ  
 able army, went against the Greeks, and

τότε οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι ἐνίκων τοὺς προγόνους  
 then — our ancestors conquered the ancestors

τούτων, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.  
 of-these (barbarians), both by land and by sea.

Τεκμήρια μὲν ὡν ἔστι τὰ τρόπαια ὁρᾶν,  
 (The) proofs indeed of-which are the trophies | to-see,

δὲ μέγιστον μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία των  
 [to be seen], but the-greatest witness (is) the liberty of-the

πόλεων, ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε·  
 states. in which you were-born and brea.

γὰρ προσκυνεῖτε οὐδένα ἀνδρῶπον δεσπότην,  
 for you-worship no man (as) master,

ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς Τοιούτων προγόνων μὲν  
 but the gods (only). Of-such ancestors indeed

ἔστε. Μὲν δὴ γε οὐκ ἔρω τοῦτο,  
 are-you. 'I indeed certainly at-least 'will not 'say this,

ὃς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὕπω πολλαὶ  
 that you disgrace them; but not-yet many

ἡμέραι, ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξά<sup>ται</sup>  
days, | from which [since] having-been-drawn-up-in-order-of-battle  
μενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκγόνοις ἐκείνων, αὐτῶν πολλαπλασίους  
against these — descendants of-those (barbarians)  
ἐνικᾶτε αὐτῶν πολλαπλασίους  
you-conquered (a force) of-them many-times-more-numerous (than)  
ὑμῶν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ τότε μὲν  
yourselves with (the assistance of) the gods. And then --  
δὴ ἦτε ἄγαδοι ἄνδρες περὶ τῆς βασιλείας  
truly you-were brave men | (contending) about the kingdom  
Κύρου. δὲ νῦν ὁπότε  
of-Cyrus; [contending to elevate Cyrus to the throne]; but now when  
ὁ ἄγων ἔστι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας, δήπου  
the contest is about — your-own safety, 'it certainly  
προσήκει ὑμᾶς πολὺ, καὶ εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ  
'becomes you much, both to-be more (brave) and  
προδυμοτέρους. Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ νῦν πρέπει  
more-daring. But certainly 'it even now becomes  
εἶναι θαρράλεωτέρους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.  
you) to-be more-confident-and-daring against the enemy  
Γάρ μὲν τότε δύντες ἀπειροι αἰτῶν, τε δρῶντες  
For indeed then being inexperienced of-them, and seeing  
τὸ ἄμετρον πλῆθος, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ  
the immense multitude, however you-dared with the  
φρονήματι πατρίω iέναι εἰς αὐτούς. δὲ  
spirit derived-from-your-ancestors to-go against them; but  
νῦν, ὁπότε καὶ ἥδη ἔχετε πειραν αἰτῶν, δτι  
now, when 'you even already 'have experience of-them, that  
θέλουσι καὶ διτες πολλαπλάσιοι  
they-wish even (though) being many-times (more numerous)  
μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι  
than you) not to-receive you (attacking them), how the  
προσήκει ὑμῖν φοβεῖσθαι τούτους; Μηδὲ μέντοι  
does-it-become you to-fear these (men)? | Nor indeed  
δόξητε ἔχειν τοῦτο μείον,  
think to-have this less, [nor think this to be a disadvantage],

ἢ οἱ Κυρεῖοι, πρόσθεν ταττόμενοι σὺν ἡμῖν,  
if the followers-of-Cyrus, formerly drawn-up with us,

νῦν ἀφεστήκασι. Γὰρ ἔτι οὗτοι εἰσι  
(have) now deserted (us). For also these (men) are  
κακίονες τῶν ἡττημένων ὑφ' ἡμῶν.  
more-cowardly (than) — (those) defeated by us.

Γοῦν ἔφευγον πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς.  
For-indeed they-fled to them deserting us.

Δέ πολὺ κρείττον ὄρāν τοὺς θέλοντας  
And (it is) much better to-see — (those) wishing  
ἀρχειν φυγῆς ταττομένους σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις,  
to-commence flight arranged with the enemy,  
ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει. Δέ εὶς τις ὑκῶν  
than in — our ranks. But if any-one of-you

ἀδυμεῖ, ὅτι μὲν εἰσὶν οὐκ ἵππεῖς ἡμῖν,  
is-disheartened, that indeed there-are no horsemen to-us, [that

δέ πολλοὶ πάρεισι τοῖς πολεμίοις,  
we have no cavalry], but (that) many are-present to-the enemy,

ἐνδυμάθητε ὅτι  
[but that the enemy have a large force of cavalry], consider that  
οἱ μύριοι ἵππεῖς εἰσὶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι  
— ten-thousand horsemen are nothing else than ten-thousand  
ἄνδρωποι. γὰρ μὲν οὐδεὶς πώποτε ἀπέδανεν ἐν  
men; for indeed no-one ever died in

μάχῃ οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ὑπὸ<sup>τοῦ</sup>  
battle (neither) (either) bitten — (or) kicked by

ἵππου, δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὁ τι  
(a) horse, but the men are (those) who do whatever

ἄν γίγνηται ἐν ταῖς μάχαις. Οὐκοῦν ἡμεῖς ἐσμεῖς  
may happen in — battles. Therefore we are

ἐπ' πολὺ ἀσφαλεστέρου ὁχήματος γε τῶν ἵππεων.  
on (a) much safer vehicle (than) at-least the cavalry;

γὰρ μὲν οἱ κρέμανται ἐφ' ἵππων, φοβούμενοι  
for indeed — (those) hang on horses, fearing

οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν.  
not as alone, but also [the to-have-fallen; {falling}]

δέ ἡμεῖς βεβηκότες ἐπὶ γῆς  
 |but we having-gone on (the) ground [but we marching on the  
 παίσομεν μὲν πολὺ ἵσχυρότερον τὸν τὸς  
 ground] shall-strike indeed much more-violently if any-one  
 προσίη, ἡὲ πολὺ μᾶλιν τεντόμεδα δτον βουλώ-  
 approach, and much more shall-we-attain-the-aim which we-de-  
 μεδε. Δὲ ἐνὶ μόγῳ οἱ ἵππεις προέχουσιν  
 sired. But in-one (thing) alone the cavalry have-the-advantage-of  
 ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν ἐστιν ἀσφαλέστερον αὐτοῖς ἢ ἡμῖν.  
 us. to-flee is safer for-them than for-us.

Εἰ δὲ δὴ θαρρεῖτε μὲν τὰς μάχας,  
 If indeed truly you-are-confident-and-courageous — for — battle,  
 δὲ ἄχαρεσθε τοῦτο, δτι Τισσαφέρνης οὐκέτι  
 but you-are-troubled at-this, that Tissaphernes 'will no-longer  
 ἥγησεται ἡμῖν, οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς παρέξει  
 'guide you, nor 'will (the) king 'provide (you a)  
 ἀγορὰν, σκέψασθε πότερον κρείττον ἔχειν Τισσα-  
 market consider whether (it is) better to-have Tissa-  
 φέρνην ἥγεμόνα, ὃς ἐστι φανερός ἐπιβούλευων  
 phernes (as) guide, who is evidently plotting-against  
 ἡμῖν, ἢ ἄνδρας οὓς ἡμεῖς λαβόντες ἀν-  
 us, or (the) men whom, we having-seized-them, may  
 κελεύωμεν ἥγεισθαι, οἱ εἰσονται δτι, ἢν ἀμαρ-  
 order to-guide (us), who will-know that, if they  
 τάνωσι περὶ ἡμᾶς, ἀμαρτάνουσι περὶ τὰς  
 err with-respect-to us, they-err with-respect-to the  
 ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ τὰ  
 lives and bodies of-themselves. But (as respects) —  
 ἐπιτήδεια πότερον κρείττον ὀνεισθαι ἐξ τῆς  
 provisions whether (it is) better to-purchase from the  
 ἀγορᾶς, ἢς οὗτοι παρεῖχον, μικρὰ μέτρα  
 market, which these (people) provide, small measures  
 πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ ἔτι ἔχοντας τοῦτο,  
 for-much money, neither yet having this (money),  
 ἢ, ἢνπερ κρατῶμεν, λαμβάνειν αὐτοὺς, χρωμένους  
 ur. if we-are-victorious, to-take them, using

ὅποςδε μέτρῳ ἕκαστος ἀν βούληται. Εἰ δέ  
 such measure (as) each might wish. If however  
 μὲν γιγνώσκετε τὰντα  
 indeed you-know these (things respecting guides and provisions)  
 ὅτι κρείττονα, δὲ νομίζετε τοὺς ποταμοὺς  
 that (it would now be) better, but think the rivers  
 εἶναι ἄπορον, καὶ ἡγεισθε  
 to-be (a thing) impassable, and think (yourselves) to-be  
 μεγάλως ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε  
 greatly 'misled crossing (them), consider  
 εἰ ἄρα οἱ Βάρβαροι καὶ πεποιήκασι  
 whether the barbarians 'have (not) even 'done (a)  
 μωρότατον. Γὰρ μὲν πάντες οἱ ποταμοί,  
 most-foolish (thing). For indeed all the rivers,  
 εἰ καὶ ὥστι ἄποροι πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν,  
 if even they-may-be impassable at-a-distance-from — (their sources),  
 προιοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς γίγνονται διαβατοί,  
 (but) going to the sources they-become passable,  
 οὐδὲ βρέχοντες τὸ γόνυ. Εἰ δὲ μήδοι οἱ ποταμοὶ  
 not-even wetting the knee. If indeed neither the rivers  
 διοίσουσι, τε μεδεῖς ἡγεμῶν φανεῖται  
 should-differ (in their breadth), and no guide appear  
 ἡμῖν, οὐδὲ ὡς ἀδυμητέον ἡμῖν γε. Γὰρ  
 to-us, nor thus is-there-to-be-discouragement to-us at-least. For  
 ἐπιστάμεδα Μυσοὺς, οὓς ἀν οὐκ φαίημεν  
 we-know (that the) Mysians, whom 'we should not 'assert  
 εἶναι βελτίους ἡμῶν, οἵ, βασιλέως  
 to-be braver (than) ourselves, who, (the) king (being)  
 ἀκοντος, οίκοῦσι πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ  
 unwilling, inhabit many also both rich and  
 μεγάλας πόλεις ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ βασιλέως.  
 large cities in the country 'of (the) 'king  
 ἐπιστάμεδα δέ Πισίδας ὡςαύτιως.  
 we-know also (that the) Pisidians (have acted) in-like-manner  
 δέ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἴδομεν Λυκάονας, ὅτι  
 and also we-'have ourselves 'seen (the) Lycaonians, that

καταλαβόντες τὰ ἔρυμνὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις καρ-  
 σείσιν the fortified-places in the plains they-en-  
 ποῦνται τὴν χώραν τούτου. Καὶ ἄ-  
 joy-the-fruits (in) the territory of-this (king). And indeed  
 γωγε ἀν ἔφην ἡμᾶς χρῆναι μήτω εἶναι  
 -at-least would have-said (that) we ought not-yet to-be  
 φανεροὺς ὠρμημένους οἴκαδε, ἀλλὰ κατασκευ-  
 appearing (as) having-started for-home, but to-be-getting.  
 ἀλεσδαι ὡς οἰκήσοντας πον αὐτοῦ.  
 ourselves-ready as (if) about-taking-up-our-abode some-where here.  
 Γαρ οἴδα ὅτι καὶ Βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀν δοῖ πολλοὺς  
 For I-know that even (the) king indeed would give many  
 ἡγεμόνας Μυσοῖς, δ' ἀν πολλοὺς ὁμήρους  
 guides 'to (the) 'Mysians, and would (give) many hostages  
 τοῦ ἐκπέμψειν ἀδόλως καὶ  
 (to them) |of-the to-send-away [to send them away] without-treachery and  
 γ' ἀν ὁδοποιήσειε αὐτοῖς, καὶ εἰ Βούλοιντο  
 also would make-roads for-them, even if they-wished  
 ἀπιέναι σὺν τεθρίπποις. Καὶ οἰδ' ὅτι γ' ἀν  
 to-depart with four-horse-chariots. And I-know that 'he also would  
 ἐποίει ταῦτα τρισάσμενος ἡμῖν, εἰ ἔώρα  
 'do these (things) most-willingly for-us, if he-saw  
 ἡμᾶς παρασκεναζομένους μένειν. Ἀλλὰ γάρ  
 us making-preparations to-remain. But (not so) for  
 δέδοικα, μή, ἀν ἀπαξ μάδωμεν ζῆν ἀργοὶ,  
 I-fear, lest 'we may once 'have-learned to-live idle,  
 καὶ βιοτεύειν ἐν ἀφθόνοις, καὶ ὅμιλεῖν  
 and to-pass-our-lives in plenty, and to-associate 'with (the)  
 καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρδένοις  
 'handsome and large women and virgins 'of (the)  
 Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν, μή, ὥσπερ οἱ  
 Medes and also 'of (the) 'Persians, (that) lest, like the  
 λωτοφάγοι, ἐπιλαδώμεδα τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε. Δοκεῖ  
 lotus-eaters, we-might-forget the road homewards. It-seems  
 οὖν μοι εἶναι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον πρῶτον  
 therefore to-me to-be proper and just first

πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ προς  
 to-attempt to-return to — Greece and to  
 τοῖς οἰκείους, καὶ ἐπιδεῖξαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν,  
 the members-of-our-families, and to-show the Greeks.  
 ὅτι ἔκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν  
 that voluntarily they-are-poor, when-it-is-allowed them to-see  
 κομισαμένους ἐνδάδε πλουσιούς, τοὺς  
 those) having-come hither rich, (but) — (those)  
 νῦν οἴκοι πολιτεύοντας ἔκει σκληρῶς. Ἀλλὰ,  
 now at-home living there with-difficulty. But (why  
 γὰρ, ὃ ἀνδρες, ἐστί δῆλον ὅτι, πάντα ταῦτα  
 more), for, O men, it-is evident that, all these  
 τάγαδα τῶν κρατούντων. Δῆν  
 good (things belong to) the conquerors. 'It certainly  
 δεῖ λέγειν ταῦτο, πῶς ἀν πορευόμεδά τε  
 'is-proper to-mention this, how 'we may 'proceed not-only  
 ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ δέοι μάχεσθαι, ὡς  
 as safely-as-possible, but-also if it-be-necessary to-fight, that  
 μαχούμεδα κράτιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν,  
 we-may-fight (to the) best-advantage. First indeed therefore  
 ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξias,  
 said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-burn the carriages,  
 ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν μή  
 which we-have, in-order-that the cattle of-us 'may not  
 στρατηγῷ,  
 'be-the-leader-of-the-army, [in order that our baggage may not influence  
 ἀλλὰ πορευώμεδα ὅπῃ  
 the movements of our army], but (that) we-may-march whithersoever  
 ἀν συμφέρῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἔπειτα καὶ  
 'it may 'be-convenient for-the army (to march); afterwards also  
 συγκατακαῦσαι τὰς σκηνὰς. Γὰρ αὗται  
 to-'burn the tents 'with (them). For these  
 αὖ μὲν παρέχουσιν δχλον ἄγειν, δὲ συνωφε-  
 (tents) again — give trouble to-carry, |and contri-  
 θοῦσι οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι  
 οὐδε nothing — (either) to the to-fight [and are of the

οὐτ' εἰς τὸ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.  
 use in battle] | or to the to-have — provisions [or in pro-

τέτηρα τῶν ἀλλων σκευῶν, πλὴν ὅσα  
 curing provisions]. Moreover — also let-us-get-rid-of the  
 περιττὰ τῶν ἀλλων σκευῶν, πλὴν ὅσα  
 superfluous (things) of — (our) other furniture, except what  
 ἔχουμεν ἐνεκεν πολέμου, ἢ σίτου ἢ ποτῶν, ἵνα  
 we-have for-the-purpose of-war, or of-food, or of-drink, in-order-that  
 ὡς πλεῖστοι ἡμῶν ὥσιν ἐν τοῖς διπλοῖς δὲ ὡς  
 as many-as-possible of-us may-be under — arms and as  
 ἐλάχιστα σκευοφορῶσι. Γὰρ μὲν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι  
 few-as-possible may-carry-baggage. For indeed you-know that  
 πάντα κρατουμένων ἀλλότρια·  
 all (things) 'of (the) 'conquered (become the) property-of-others;  
 δὲ ἦν κρατῶμεν δεῖ νομίζειν καὶ τοὺς  
 and if we-conquer it-becomes (you) to-think (that) even the  
 πολεμίους ἡμετέρους σκευοφόρους. Λοιπόν  
 enemy (are to be) our baggage-carriers. (It) remains  
 μοι εἰπεῖν διπέρ καὶ νομίζω εἶναι μέγιστον.  
 for-me to-mention what 'I even 'consider to-be (of the) greatest

Γὰρ ὅρατε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅτι  
 importance). For you-see even the enemy, that

οὐ ἐτόλμησαν πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν  
 'they-did not 'dare first to-bring-on (the)

πόλεμον πρὸς ἡμᾶς, πρὶν συνέλαβον τοὺς στρα-  
 war against us, before they-had-seized the gene-

τῆγοις ἡμῶν, νομίζοντες μὲν ὅντων  
 rals of-us, thinking (that) 'we indeed ('being) (having)

τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ ἡμῶν πειθομένων  
 - commanders, and we being-obedient (to them, that)

ἡμᾶς εἶναι ἴκανοὺς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ·  
 we were competent to-conquer in — battle;

δε λαβόντες τοὺς ἀρχοντας ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς  
 but taking — (our) commanders they-thought (that) we

ἀν ἀπολέσθαι ἀναρχίᾳ καὶ ἀταξίᾳ. Οὖτις  
 would perish in-anarchy and confusion. Therefore

ἦει μὲν τοὺς ἀρχοντας τοὺς νῦν  
 it-is-proper — (that) the commanders — (our) present (commanders)  
 γενέσθαι πολὺ ἐπιμελεστέρους τῶν  
 be much more-vigilant (than) — (those who)  
 πρόσδεν,  
 before (were commanders), and (that) the commanded (should be)  
 πολὺ μᾶλλον εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειδομένους τοῖς  
 much more orderly and obedient to-the  
 ἀρχοντι νῦν οὐ πρόσδεν. Δεὶς ην τις ἀπει-  
 commanders now than formerly. And if any-one might-be-disobe-  
 δῆ, ην ψηφίσοντες τὸν ὑμῶν ἀεὶ ἐντυγ-  
 dient, if you-decree (that) — (he) of-you at-any-time meet-  
 χάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἀρχοντι κολάζειν,  
 ing (such a one, is to assist) with the commander to-punish  
 οὗτως οἱ πολέμιοι ἔσονται πλειστον εψευσ-  
 (him), thus the enemy will-be very-much de-  
 μένοι. γὰρ τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὅψονται  
 ceived (in what they expected); for in-that — day they-will-see  
 μυρίους Κλεάρχους ἀνδ' ἐνὸς, τοὺς ἐπιτρέ-  
 ten-thousand Clearchuses in-place-of one, — (who) will-per-  
 ψοντας οἰδενὶ εἶναι κακῷ. <sup>Ἄλλα</sup> But  
 mit no-one to-be bad (disobedient or cowardly). But  
 γὰρ καὶ ἥδη ὥρα περαίνειν. γὰρ οἱ  
 (enough), for (it is) even now time to-finish; for the  
 πολέμιοι ἵσως αὐτίκα παρέσονται. <sup>Οτώ</sup> To-whom  
 enemy will perhaps immediately be-present.  
 οὖν δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἔχειν  
 therefore it-may-seem | (that) these (things) hold (themselves)  
 καλῶς <sup>ἐπικυρωσάτω</sup>  
 well [that what I have said is just and reasonable] let-them-approve  
 ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα περαίνηται  
 (them) as speedily-as-possible, in-order-that they-may-be-accomplishe  
 ἔργῳ. Δεὶς εἰ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον οὐ ταύτῃ.  
 in-fact. But if any-thing else (is) better than this,  
 καὶ οἱ ἴδιωτης τολμάτω  
 let-him (thought) even — (a) private (soldier) <sup>be-bold</sup> (enough)

διδάσκειν. γέρ πάντες δεόμεδα κοινῆς  
to-instruct (us); for we all seek (a) common  
σωτηρίας.  
safety.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν. Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν  
After this Cheirisophus said: But if indeed  
δεῖ τινος ἄλλου πρὸς τούτοις, οἷς  
it-is-needed of-any-thing else for these (affairs), which  
Ξενοφῶν λέγει, καὶ αὐτίκα ἔξεσται ποιεῖν.  
Xenophon mentions, it<sup>-1</sup> will even speedily <sup>be-allowed-us</sup> to-do (it);  
δὲ ᾧ νῦν εἴρηκε, δοκεῖ μοι  
and what he<sup>-1</sup> has now <sup>said</sup>, it-seems to-me (that we ought)  
ψηφίσασθαι ως τάχιστα εἶναι ἄριστον. καὶ  
to-vote as speedily-as-possible to-be the-best, and  
ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἀνατεινάτῳ τὴν  
to-whom it-seems these (things to be right) let-him-hold-up —  
Χειρα. Ἀπαντεῖς ἀνέτειναν. Δέ  
(his) hand. All held-up (their hands). But  
Ξενοφῶν πάλιν ἀναστὰς εἶπε. Ω ἀνδρες,  
Xenophon again rising said: O men,  
ἀκούσατε ὡν δοκεῖ μοι προ-  
hear (me respecting that) which seems to-me to-be-necessary.  
δεῖν. Δῆλον δτι δεῖ ἥμας πορεύ-  
in-addition. (It is) evident that it-is-proper (that) we march-  
εσθαι δπον ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. δὲ ἀκούω  
to where we-shall-have — provisions; and I-hear (that)  
είναι καλὰς κώμας, οὐ πλεῖον  
there-are (some) considerable villages, "being not more (than)  
εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. Ἀν οὐκ οὖν δαν-  
twenty stadia <sup>distant</sup> I would not therefore <sup>won-</sup>  
μάζοιμ, εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὅπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες,  
der, if the enemy, like — cowardly dogs,  
μὲν τε διώκουν τοὺς παριόντας καὶ  
indeed not-only follow — (those) passing-by but-also  
δάκρουσιν, ἦν δύνωνται, δὲ φεύγουσι τοὺς  
uite (them), if they-can, but flee-from — (those)

διώκοντας, καὶ εἰ αὐτοὶ<sup>a</sup>  
 following (theim), and (I would not be surprised) if they  
 ἐπακολουθοίεν ἡμῖν ἀπιοῦσιν. Ἰσως οὖν  
 follow us departing. Perhaps therefore (it will be)  
 ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι ποιησαμένους  
 safer for-us to-march-forth having-formed (a hollow)  
 πλαίσιον τῶν ὅπλων, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα  
 square of-the heavy-armed-men, in-order-that the baggage,  
 καὶ ὁ πολὺς δχλος εἴη ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ.  
 and the many camp-followers may-be in the-greatest-safety (within it).  
 Εἰ νῦν οὖν ἀποδειχθεῖη, τίνα χρὴ ἡγείσθαι  
 If now therefore it-should-be-designed, whom it-becomes to-lead  
 τοῦ πλαισίου, καὶ κοσμεῖν τὰ πρόσθεν,  
 the square, and to-regulate-and-arrange the front,  
 καὶ τίνας εἰναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἑκατέρων πλευρῶν,  
 and who (are) to-be on — each flank,  
 δὲ τίνας ὄπισθοφυλακεῖν, ἀν οὐ δέοι,  
 and who are-to-take-charge-of-the-rear, 'it may not 'be-necessary, (that)  
 ἡμᾶς βούλεύεσθαι ὅποτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν,  
 we deliberate (about this) when the enemy may-come,  
 ἀλλὰ ἀν εὑδὺς χρώμεδα τοῖς τεταγ-  
 but 'we might immediately 'make-use-of the (things) ar-  
 μένοις. Εἰ οὖν μὲν τις ἀλλος ὄρα  
 ranged. If therefore indeed any-one else sees (something)  
 βέλτιον, ἐχέτω ἀλλως. Δέ  
 better, | let-it-have-itself otherwise [let it be arranged otherwise]. Παὶ  
 εἰ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείσθω, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐστ.  
 if not, 'let Cheirisophus indeed 'lead, since also he-is  
 Λακεδαιμόνιος. δὲ δύο στρατηγὸς τῶν πρεσ-  
 (a) Lacedæmonian; but 'let two generals of-the old-  
 βυτάτων ἐπιμελείσθων ἑκατερῶν τῶν πλευρῶν·  
 est (generals) 'take-charge of-each of-the flanks,  
 δὲ ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτεροι, τε ἐγώ καὶ Τιμασίων,  
 and 'let us the younger, namely I and Timasius,  
 ὄπισθοφυλακῶμεν, τὸ νῦν εἶναι. Δέ  
 'take-command-of-the-rear, | the now to-be [for the present]. And 'for'

πὸ λοιπόν, πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως, ἀεὶ<sup>—</sup>  
the rest, having-tried this — arrangement, always

Βούλευσόμεθα ὅτι ἀν δοκή εἶναι  
(or at any time) we-can-consider what may seem to-be (the)  
κράτιστον. Εἰ δὲ τις ὄρα ἄλλο  
best. If indeed any-one perceives (any thing) else

βέλτιον, λεξάτω. Δέ ἐπεὶ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,  
better, let-him-mention (it). But when no-one objected,

εἶπε. Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνα-  
he-said: To-whom it-seems (that) these (things are right), let-him-  
τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἐδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν  
hold-up — (his) hand. He-approved these (things). Now

τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπιόντας δεῖ ποιεῖν τὰ  
therefore, said-he, departing it-becomes (you) to-perform — (things)

δέδογμένα· καὶ δοτις τε  
that) have-seemed-good (and been determined on); and whoever —

νῦν δέπιδυμει ἰδεῖν τοὺς οἰκείους, μεμ-  
οφ-you desires to-see — (their) homes-and-families, let-him-  
νήσθω εἶναι ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ· γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ τυχεῖν  
remember to-be (a) brave man; for it-is not to-obtain

τούτου ἄλλως·  
of-this otherwise; [for in no other manner can this be obtained];

δοτις τε δέπιδυμει ζῆν, πειράσθω νικᾶν· γὰρ μὲν  
whoever — desires to-live, let-him-strive to-conquer; for indeed

τὸ κατακαίνειν ἔστι τῶν νικώντων, δὲ  
|the to-kill [killing] is (the part) of-the conquering, but

τὸ ἀποδηνήσκειν τῶν ἡττωμένων· δέ  
|the to-die [dying] (is the part) of-the conquered; and

καὶ εἴ τις δέπιδυμει χρημάτων πειράσθω κρατεῖν·  
also if any-one desires property let-him-strive to-vanquish;

γὰρ ἔστι τῶν νικώντων καὶ σώζειν  
for it-is (the part) of — (those) conquering also to-save

τὰ ξαντῷν, καὶ λαμβάνειν τὰ  
the (property belonging) to-themselves, and to-take the (property)

τῶν ἡττωμένων.  
of-the conquered.

## CHAPTER III.

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν, καὶ  
 THESE (things) having-been-spoken they-rose-up, and  
 ἵπελθόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς·  
 departing they-burned the carriages and the tents;  
 δὲ μὲν τῶν περιττῶν ὅτουν τις δέοιτο,  
 and indeed of-the superfluous-things of-which any-one might-want,  
 μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, δὲ τὰ ἄλλα ερφίπτουν  
 they-distributed-among one-another, but the rest they-threw  
 εἰς τὸ πῦρ. Ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἥριστοποι-  
 into the fire. Having-done these (things) they-break-  
 οῦντο. Δέ ἀριστοποιουμένων Μιδραδάτης  
 fasted. But (while) breakfasting Mithradates  
 ἔρχεται σὺν ὡς τριάκοντα ἵπευσι, καὶ καλε-  
 came with about thirty horsemen, and having-  
 σάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει  
 called the generals to (a) place-of-hearing he-speaks  
 ὃδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἑλληνες ἄνδρες, ἦν καὶ πιστὸς  
 thus. I, O Grecian men, was even faithful  
 Κύρῳ, ὃς ἴμεις ἐπίστασθε, καὶ νῦν εὖνους  
 to-Cyrus, as you know, and (am) now well-disposed  
 ὑμῖν· καὶ εἰμὶ ἐνθάδε διάγων σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ.  
 to-you; and I-am here living with much fear.  
 Εἰ οὖν ὁρώην ὑμᾶς βουλευομένους τι  
 If therefore I-perceive (that) you are-concerting any-thing  
 σωτήριον, ἀν ἔλθοιμι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ἔχων  
 salutary, 'I might 'go to you, having (with me)  
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς θεράποντας. Οὖν λέξατε  
 also all — (my) followers. Therefore tell  
 αε τί ἔχετε ἐν νῷ ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνους  
 ne what you-have in min<sup>3</sup> as 'to (a) friend and also well-disposed

καὶ βουλόμενον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν στόλον  
 (to you), and wishing to-make the march  
 κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευομένοις  
 in-common with you. The generals consulting-together  
 ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ Χειρίσοφας  
 it-seemed (best) to-have-answered thus; and Cheirisophus  
 ἔλεγε· Δοκεῖ ὑμῖν, εἰ τις ἐᾶ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι  
 spoke: It-seems (good) to-us, if any-one allows us to-depart  
 οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἀσινέστατα  
 for-home, to-proceed-through the country as harmlessly-as  
 ἀν δυνώμεδα· δὲ ἦν τις ἀποκωλύη ἡμᾶς  
 'we may 'be-able; but if any-one prohibit us  
 τῆς ὁδοῦ, διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ ὡς  
 the road, to-'fight (our way) 'against this-one as  
 κράτιστα ἀν δυνώμεδα. Ἐκ τούτου Μιθραδάτης  
 bravely-as 'we may 'be-able. On this Mithradates  
 ἐπειρᾶτο διδάσκειν ὡς ἀπορον εἰη σωθῆναι.  
 endeavoured to-instruct (them) how impossible it-would-be to-be-saved.  
 βασιλέως ἀκοντος. Ἐνδα δὴ ἐγιγ-  
 (the) king (being) unwilling. Hereupon indeed it-was-  
 νώσκετο δτι εἰη ὑπόπειρπτος· γὰρ καὶ τις  
 perceived that he-might-be insidiously-sent; for also some-one  
 τῶν οἰκείων Τισσαφέρνους παρηκολούθει ἐνεκα  
 of-the followers of-Tissaphernes attended for-the-sake-of  
 πίστεως. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἔδόκει τοῖς  
 (securing his) fidelity. And from this it-seemed to-the  
 στρατηγοῖς εἶναι βέλτιον ποιήσασθαι δόγμα,  
 commanders to-be best to-make (a) decree, (that)  
 ἔτε' εἰεν ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ τὸν  
 as-long-as they-might-be in the territory-of-the-enemy, (that) the  
 πόλεμον εἶναι ἀχήρυκτον. Γὰρ προς-  
 war (was) to-be without-heralds (and implacable). For coming-  
 ιόντες διέφθειρον τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ  
 to (them) they-were-corrupting the soldiers, and  
 διέφθειραν γε ἕνα λοχαγὸν Νίκαρχον  
 they-corrupted at-least one captain (namely) Nicarchus (the)

Αρκάδα· καὶ ὤχετο ἀπιὼν μυκτὸς  
Arcadian; | and he-went-away departing [and he went off] by-nigh  
σὺν ὡς εἴκοσι ἀνδρώποις.  
with about thirty men.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες, καὶ διαβάντες  
After this having-taken-their-first-meal, and having-crossed  
τὸν ποταμόν Ζαπάταν, ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι  
the river Zapata, they-marched-forth drawn-up-in-order,  
ἔχοντες τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ.  
having the baggage-cattle and the camp-followers in (the) middle

Δὲ αὐτῶν οὐ προεληυθότων πολὺ,  
(of the square). But they not having-gone far,  
ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν ἐπιφαίνεται ἔχων ὡς δια-  
— Mithradates again appeared having about two-  
κοσίους ἵππεας, καὶ ὡς τετρακοσίους τοξότας καὶ  
hundred horsemen, and about four-hundred archers and  
σφενδονήτας, μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους· καὶ  
slingers, very light and active; and  
προσῆλι μὲν ὡς ὅν φίλος πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλληνας.  
approached indeed as being (a) friend to the Greeks.

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν  
But when he-was near, suddenly —(those) indeed  
αὐτῶν καὶ ἵππεις καὶ πεζοὶ ἐτόξευον,  
of-them both horse and foot commenced-discharging-arrows,  
δ' οἱ ἐσφενδόνων, καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. Δὲ  
and — (others) sling-stones, and wounded (our men). But  
οἱ ὄπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπασχον μὲν  
the rear-guard of-the Greeks suffered indeed  
κακῶς, δ' ἀντεποίουν οὐδέν. Γάρ  
badly, and could-'do nothing 'against (the enemy). For

τε οἵ Κρῆτες ἐτόξευον βραχύτερα  
not-only 'did the Cretans 'shoot (their) 'arrows a-shorter-distance  
τῶν Περσῶν, καὶ ἄμα ὅντες φιλοὶ  
(than) the Persians, but-also at-the-same-time being light-armed  
κατεκέκλευτο εἰσω τῶν ὅπλων· οἱ ἀκοντισταὶ  
they-were-included within the heavy-armed-men; the javelin-men

τε ἡκόντιζον βραχύτερα ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθα.  
 indeed 'threw (their) javelins shorter than so-as to-reach  
 τῶν σφενδονητῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει Ξενοφῶντι  
 the slingers. Upon this it-seemed to-Xenophon  
 εἶναι διωκτέον· καὶ οἱ τῶν δριτῶν  
 to-be necessary-to-pursue; and —(those)of-the heavy-armed-men  
 καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ  
 and of-the targeteers (who) happened (to be) with him  
 ὅπισθοφυλακοῦντες ἐδίκον· δὲ διώκοντες κατε-  
 guarding-the-rear pursued, but pursuing they-  
 λάμβανον οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων. Γὰρ οὔτε ἦσαν  
 overtook no-one of-the enemy. For neither were-there  
 ἵππεις τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, οὔτε ἐδύναντο οἱ πεζοὶ  
 horsemen to-the Greeks, nor could — (our) infantry  
 καταλαμβάνειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ, τοὺς πεζοὺς  
 overtake, in (a) small space, the infantry  
 φεύγοντας ἐξ πολλοῦ· γάρ  
 (of the enemy) fleeing from (a) (much) (distance); for  
 ἦν οὐχ οἷόν τε διώκειν πολὺ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου  
 it-was not possible to-follow far from the rest (of the)  
 στρατεύματος. Δέ τι βάρβαροι ἵππεις καὶ ἄμα  
 army. And the barbarian cavalry even while  
 φεύγοντες ἐτίτρωσκον τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ  
 fleeing wounded (our men) shooting-their-arrows from  
 τῶν ἵππων εἰς τούπισθεν· δὲ ὥποσον οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 the horses backwards; and as-much-as the Greeks  
 προδιώξειαν τοσοῦτον ἐδει πάλιν ἐπαναχω-  
 advanced-in-pursuit so-much it-was-necessary again to-re-  
 φεῖν μαχομένους. Ὡςτε τῆς ὅλης ἡμέρας  
 treat fighting. So-that (during) the entire day  
 οὐ διῆλθον πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι  
 they-did not 'pass-through more (than) five and twenty  
 σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δείλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς  
 stadia, but late-in-the-afternoon they-arrived at the  
 κώμας. Ἔνδα δὴ ἦν πάλιν ἀδυμία. Καὶ  
 villages. Here truly there-was a-gain dejection-of-mind. Καὶ

Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν  
 Chirisophus and the oldest of-the generals  
 ἤτιώντο Ξενοφάντα, δτι ἐδίωκεν  
 blamed Xenophon, that he-pursued (the enemy), (departing)  
 ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ τε αὐτός ἐκινδύνευε  
 from the phalanx, and so-indeed he endangered  
 καὶ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατα βλάπτειν  
 (himself) and 'was none the-more 'able to-injure  
 τοὺς πολεμίους. Δέ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ἔλεγεν  
 the enemy. But Xenophon having-heard (this) said  
 δτι ἤτιώντο ὅρθως, καὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτὸδ  
 that they-blamed (him) justly, and (that) the act itself  
 μαρτυροίν αὐτοῖς. Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ἐφη,  
 (in its results) bore-testimony for-them. But I, said-he,  
 ἀναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς μὲν  
 was-forced to-pursue, after I-saw (that) we indeec  
 ἐν τῷ μένειν πάσ-  
 | in the to-remain [in keeping our stations in the hollow square] were-  
 χοντας κακῶς, δὲ οὐ δυναμένους ἀντιποιεῖν. Δέ  
 suffering badly, and not being-able to-retaliate. But  
 ἐπειδὴ ἐδίωκομεν, ἐφη, ἀληθῆ ίμεῖς  
 when we-pursued, said-he, (the things were) true (as) you  
 λέγετε· γὰρ μὲν ἐδυνάμεδα ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον  
 say, for indeed we-were-able to-do not-any more  
 κακῶς τοὺς πολεμίους, δὲ ἀνεχωροῦμεν πάνυ  
 injury (to) the enemy, but we-returned very  
 χαλεπῶς. Χάρις οὖν τοῖς θεοῖς δτι οὐκ  
 difficultly. Thanks therefore to-the gods, that they-did not  
 ἥλδον σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὄλιγοις,  
 'come with (a) great force but (only) with (a) few  
 δέτε μὲν μὴ βλάψαι μεγάλα, δὲ  
 (troops), so-as indeed not to-have-injured (us) much, and (yet  
 δηλῶσαι ὃν δεόμεδα. Γὰρ νῦν μὲν οἱ  
 to-have-shown (us) what we-needed. For now indeed the  
 πολέμιοι τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν  
 enemy 'shoot (their) 'arrows and sling-stones

δσον οὐτε οἱ Κρῆτες δύνανται ἀντιτοξεύειν;  
 'so (far) 'as (that) neither the Cretans are-able to-shoot-back,  
 οὐτε οἱ βάλλοντες ἐκ χειρὸς ἔξινεῖσθαι,  
 nor — (those) throwing from (the) hand (are able) to-reach,  
 δὲ δταν διώκωμεν αὐτοὺς, μὲν οὐχ οἶον τε  
 and when we-pursue them, (it is) indeed not proper —  
 διώκειν πολὺ χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος,  
 to-follow (a) great distance from the army,  
 δὲ οὐδ' ἐν ὀλίγῳ, εἰ ταχὺς πεζός  
 but neither in (a) small (space), if (ever so) swift (the) foot-soldier  
 εἴη, ἀν διώκων καταλάβοι πεζὸν  
 might-be, could 'he pursuing 'overtake (a) foot-soldier | (he be-  
 ἐκ δύματος τόξου.  
 ing distant) from (the) drawing 'of (a) 'bow [starting from the  
 Εἰ οὖν ἡμεῖς μέλλομεν  
 distance of a bow-shot from him]. If therefore we intend  
 εἰργειν τούτους, ὁστε μὴ δύνασθαι  
 to-keep-off these (our enemies), so-as not to-be-able  
 βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, δεῖ τὴν τα-  
 to-hurt us marching-forth, it-is-necessary — as.  
 χίστην τε σφενδονητῶν καὶ ἵππεων.  
 speedily-as-possible (to procure) not-only slingers but-also cavalry.  
 Ἀκοίω δ' εἰναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν  
 I-hear indeed (that) there-are in the army of-us  
 Ποδίους, φασιν τοὺς πολλούς ὅν ἐπίστασθαι  
 Rhodians, they-say (that) the great-part-of-them know  
 σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ  
 (how) to-use-the-sling, and (that) the weapon of-them also  
 φέρεσθαι διπλάσιον τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν.  
 carries double (the distance) of-the Persian slings  
 Γάρ ἐκεῖναι διὰ σφενδονᾶν τοῖς λίθοις  
 For these (Persian slings) on-account-of slinging — stones  
 χειροπληθέσι ἔξινοῦνται ἐπὶ βραχὺ·  
 filling-the-hands reach (only) to (a) short (distance).  
 δὲ γε οἱ Ρόδιοι καὶ ἐπιστανται χρῆσθαι  
 but — the Rhodiars even know (how) to-use

μολυβδίσιν. Ἡν οὖν ἐπισκεψώμεδα τίνες αὐτῶν  
leaden-bullets. If then we-ascertain which-ones of-them  
πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ μὲν δῶμεν ἀργύριον  
have-acquired slings, and (that) indeed we-give money  
τούτῳ αὐτῷ, δέ τῷ ἐδέλοντι πλέκειν  
to-that-one for-them. and — (to him) willing to-plait  
ἄλλας τελῶμεν ἄλλο ἀργύριον, καὶ τῷ  
other (slings) we-might-give other money, and — (for him)  
ἐδέλοντι σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ  
willing to-use-the-sling in the rank-or-place-assigned-to (him)  
εὑρίσκωμεν τινὰ ἄλλην ἀτέλειαν, ἵσως τινὲς  
we-may-find some other privileges, probably some  
ἰκανοὶ ὡφελεῖν ἡμᾶς φανοῦνται.  
capable to-aid us will-appear (and offer their services).

Δέ καὶ ὅρῶ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι,  
And also I-see horses (being) in the army,  
τοὺς τινας μὲν παρ' ἐμοὶ δέ τοὺς  
— some indeed (are) with me and — (others)  
καταλελειμμένους τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, δέ καὶ πολλοὺς  
left by — Clearchus, and also many  
ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. Ἄν  
others taken-from-the-enemy (used in) carrying-baggage. If

οὖν ἐκλέξαντες πάντας τούτους, μὲν  
therefore, collecting all these (horses), we indeed  
ἀντιδῶμεν σκευοφόρα, δέ κατασκευάσωμεν  
give-in-place (of them) ordinary-baggage-cattle. and equip

τοὺς ἵππους εἰς ἵππεας, ἵσως καὶ οὗτοι ἀνιάσοντι  
the horses for cavalry, perhaps even these will-annoy

τι τοὺς φεύγοντας. Ταῦτα  
somewhat the (enemy) fleeing. | (Respecting) these (things)  
ἔδοξε. Καὶ τῆς ταύτης  
it-seemed-right. [These things were approved of] And the same

νυκτὸς μὲν ἐγένοντο σφενδονῆται εἰς  
night indeed there-became slingers to (the number of)  
διακοσίους, δέ καὶ τῇ ἴστεραιᾳ ἵπποι δέ καὶ  
two-hundred, and also on-the next-day horses and also

ἱππεῖς εἰς πεντήκοντα ἐδοκιμάσθησαν,  
horsemen to (the number of) fifty were-judged-fit  
 καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες ἐπορίσθησαν  
(for service), and leatheren-jackets and breastplates were-provided  
 αὐτοῖς· καὶ Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος  
for-them and Lycius the son-of-Polystratus (the) Athenian  
 δέ ἐπεστάθη ἵππαρχος.  
 was also 'appointed (their) commander.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ μείναντες τὴν ταύτην ἡμέραν, τῇ ἀλλῇ  
 AND halting for — that-same day, on-the next  
 ἀναστάντες πρωΐαίτερον ἐπορεύονται·  
 (day) rising-up earlier-in-the-morning (than usual) they-marched-forth;  
 γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι χαρά-  
 for it-was-necessary (that) they should-cross (a) ravine-formed-  
 δραν, ἐφ' ᾧ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι  
 by-a torrent, at which they-were-afraid lest the enemy  
 ἐπιδοίντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσι. Δὲ αὐτοῖς διαβε-  
 might-attack them crossing-over. But they having-  
 βηκόσιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν φαίνεται ἔχων  
 crossed-over — Mithradates again appeared having (a)  
 χιλίους ἵππεας δὲ καὶ τοξότας σφενδονήτας  
 thousand horsemen and also archers (and) slingers  
 εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· γὰρ ἥτησε Τισσα-  
 to (the number of) four-thousand; for he-solicited Tissa-  
 φέρινην τοσούτους, καὶ ἔλαβεν, ὑποσχόμενος  
 phernes (for) so-many, and obtained (them), promising  
 ἀν λάβῃ τούτους, παραδώσειν τοὺς Ελληνας  
 if-'he should receive these, to-deliver the Greeks  
 αὐτῷ, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι, ἐν τῇ πρόσδεν  
 to-him, having-despised (them), because, in the former  
 προσβολῇ ἔχων ὄλιγους ἐπαδε μὲν οὐδέν,  
 attack having (only) few (men) he-suffered indeed no (loss).

δὲ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι πολλὰ κακὰ  
and thought (that) he-had-occasioned (them) much annoyance

**Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες διαβεβηκότες**  
When indeed the Greeks having (now) crossed (the ra-

άπειχον τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτὼ στα-  
vine, and were-distant from-the ravine about eight sta-  
δίους, καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης διέβαινεν ἔχων τὴν  
dia, also — Mithradates crossed-over having the  
δύναμιν. Δὲ παρήγγελτο τε  
force (above mentioned). And instructions-had-been-given not-only  
τῶν πελταστῶν, καὶ τῶν ὄπλιτῶν,  
(to those) of-the targeteers, but-also (to those) of-the heavy-armed-men,  
οἵς ἔδει διώκειν, καὶ εἰρητο τοῖς ἵππεῦσι  
whom it-became to-pursue, and-also it-was-told to-the horsemen  
διώκειν θαρροῦσι, ὡς ἵκανης δυνάμεως ἐφε-  
to-pursue being-confident-and-bold, as (a) sufficient force would  
ψομένης. **Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει**  
be-following (them). When indeed — Mithradates had-over-taken  
καὶ ἥδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα  
(them), and already (the) slings and arrows  
ἐξικοῦντο ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἑλλησι  
began-to-reach (them) (then) the-signal-was-given to-the Greeks  
τῇ σάλπιγgi, καὶ εὐδὺς, οἷς εἰρητο,  
with-the trumpet, and directly 'they, of-whom it-was-requested,  
ἔδεον ὁμόσε, καὶ οἱ ἵππεις ἥλαυνον·  
'ran there (to meet the enemy), and the cavalry charged;  
δὲ οἱ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο ἀλλ' ἐφευγον  
but the (enemy) 'did not receive (them) but fled  
ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. **Ἐν τῇ ταύτῃ διώξει τε**  
to the ravine. In — this pursuit not-only  
πολλοί τῶν πεζῶν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀπέδανον,  
many of-the foot-soldiers (of) the barbarians died,  
καὶ ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ἐλήφθησαν ζωὶς  
but-also in the ravine were-taken alive to (the number of)  
ὀκτωκαιδεκα τῶν ἵππεων. Οἱ Ἑλληνες δὲ  
eig-teen of-the horsemen. The Greeks indeed

αὐτοκέλευστοι ἥκισαντο τοὺς ἀποθανόντας, ὡς  
of-their-own-account mutilated the dying, se

ὅτι εἴη φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄραν.  
that it-might-be most-frightful for-the enemy to-see.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι πράξαντες οὕτω ἀπῆλθον·  
And indeed the enemy having-fared thus departed;

δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες πορευόμενοι ἀσφαλῶς τὸ λοιπὸν  
but the Greeks proceeding safely (for) the rest  
τῆς ἡμέρας, ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα.  
of-the day, arrived at the river Tigris.

Ενταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη ἐρήμη πόλις, δ'  
Here there-was (a) large deserted city, and (the)  
ὄνομα αἰτή ἦν Λάρισσα· δέ Μῆδοι τὸ παλαιὸν  
name to-it was Larissa; and (the) Medes — formerly  
ῷκουν αὐτὴν. Τὸ εὖρος δὲ τοῦ τείχους αὐτῆς  
inhabited it. The breadth indeed of-the wall of-it  
ἦν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, δ' ὑψος ἑκατόν·  
was five and twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred;  
ἡ περίοδος δὲ τοῦ κύκλου δύο παρασάγγαι·  
the circuit indeed of-the enclosure (was) two parasangs:

ῳκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμίαις· δ' ὑπὸν  
it-was-built — of-bricks made-of-clay; and there-was-under (it)  
λιδίνη χρηπὶς τὸ ὑψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν.  
(a) stone foundation the height (of it being) twenty feet.

Ο βασιλεὺς Περσῶν, ὅτε Πέρσαι ἐλάμβανον  
The king 'of (the) Persians, when (the) Persians were-wrestling  
τὴν ἀρχὴν παρὰ Μῆδων, πολιορκῶν ταύτην,  
the empire from (the) Medes, besieging this (city),  
ἔδύνατο οὐδενὶ πρόπω ἐλεῖν· δὲ νεφέλη  
could in-no manner take (it); but (a) cloud  
προκαλύψασα ἥλιον ἥφαντε, μέχρι οἱ ἀνδρῶποι  
having-covered (the) sun made-it-disappear, until the people  
ἐξέλιπον, καὶ οὕτως ἔάλω. Παρὰ ταύτην  
deserted (it), and so it-was-taken. Near this  
τὴν πόλιν ἦν λιδίνη πυραμίς, τὸ εὖρος  
— city there-was (a) stone pyramid, the breadth

μὲν ἐνὸς πλέθρου, δὲ τὸ ὑψος δύο πλέθρων.  
indeed (of it was) of-one plethra, and the height of-two plethra.

\*Ἐπὶ ταύτης ἦσαν πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων  
On this (pyramid) there were many of-the barbarians  
ἀποπεφευγότες ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν πλησίον. \*Ἐντεῦθει  
having-fled from the villages near. Hence

ἐπορεύθησαν ἔνα σταδιὸν, ἔξ παρασάγγας,  
they-proceeded one day's-march, (making) six parasangs,

πρὸς μέγα ἔρημον τεῖχος, κείμενον πρὸς τὴν  
to (a) large deserted fortress, situated near — (a)

πόλει· δὲ ὄνομα τῇ πόλει ἦν Μέσπιλα·  
city; and (the) name (to-the) (of the) city was Mespila;

δὲ Μῆδοι ποτε ὥκουν αὐτήν. Δὲ ἡ κρηπὶς  
and (the) Medes formerly inhabited it. And the foundation

μὲν ἦν ξεστοῦ λίθου κονχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος  
indeed was of-polished stone (full of) shells, the breadth

πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ ὑψος  
(thereof was) fifty feet, and the height

πεντήκοντα. \*Ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπωκοδόμητο  
fifty (feet). On — this was-constructed (a)

πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ εὖρος μὲν πεντήκοντα  
brick wall, the breadth indeed (thereof being) fifty

ποδῶν, δὲ τὸ ὑψος ἑκατόν· δὲ ἡ περίοδος τοῦ  
feet, and the height a-hundred; and the circuit of-the

κύκλου ἔξ παρασάγγαι. \*Ἐντεῦθεν Μῆδια  
enclosure (was) six parasangs. Hence Media (the)

γυνὴ βασιλέως ἐλέγετο καταφυγή (ν ὅτε Μῆδοι  
wife 'of (the) 'king it-is-said took-refuge when (the) Medes

ἀπώλεσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περιῶν. Δὲ ὁ  
were-deprived (of) the empire by (the) Persia. But the

βασιλεὺς Περσῶν πολιορκῶν ταύτην πάλιν  
king 'of (the) 'Persians besieging this city 'was

οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν οὔτε χρόνῳ, οὔτε βίᾳ·  
not 'able to-take (it) either by-length-of-time, or by-force

ἢ Ζεὺς ποιεῖ τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἐμβροντήτους,  
but Jupiter made the inhabitants (as it were) thunder-struck.

καὶ οὕτως ἔάλω.  
and so (the place) was-taken

\*Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἔνα σταδιὸν,  
Hence — they-proceeded one day's-march, (making  
τέτταρας παρασάγγας. Εἰς δὲ τοῦτον τὸν  
four parasangs. In — this —

σταδιὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνε, ἔχων τε  
day's-march Tissaphernes appeared, having not-only (the,  
ἵππεας οὓς αὐτὸς ἦλθε, καὶ τὴν δύναμιν  
cavalry (with) which he came, but also the force

\*Ορόντου τοῦ ἔχοντος τὴν θυγατέρα  
of-Orontes — (he) having (with him) the daughter  
βασιλέως, καὶ ἔχων βαρβάρους  
'of (the) 'king (in marriage), and having (the) barbarians

οὓς Κύρος ἀνέβη, καὶ ἔχων οὓς ὁ  
whom Cyrus went-up (with), and having (the troops) which the  
ἀδελφὸς βασιλέως ἐβοήθει βασιλεῖ, καὶ,  
brother 'of (the) 'king assisted (the) king (with), and,

πρὸς τούτοις, ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ·  
besides these, as-many-as (the) king had-given him;

ἵστε τὸ στράτευμα ἐφάνη πάμπολυ. Δ'  
so-that the army appeared exceeding y (large). But

ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἔγγυς, μὲν καταστήσας τὰς  
when he-came near, (then) indeed having-placed — (some)

τῶν τάξεων ὅπισθεν εἶχε, δὲ παρ-  
of — (his) ranks in-the-rear he-kept (them there), but lead-

γαγών τὰς ἐμβάλλειν εἰς τὰ  
ing — (others) (obliquely) to-throw (them) to the

πλάγια. μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ'  
flanks, (though) indeed he-did not dare (to attack) not

ἐθούλετο διακινδυνεῖσιν. δὲ παρήγγειλε  
did-he-wish to-risk (any thing); but he-ordered

σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. \*Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ  
his men) to-use-their-slings and bows. When indeed the

Πόδιοι διαταχθέντες ἐσφευδόνησαν, καὶ οἱ Σκύ-  
Ριδιανοὶ dispe-sed-along-the-ranks used-their-slings, and the Scy-  
ριoi τοξόται ἐπόξευσαν, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν  
thian archers used-their-bows, | and no-one failed <sup>of (a)</sup>  
ἀνδρός, (γὰρ οὐδὲ εἰ  
·man, [no one failed to hit a man], (for neither if he-had  
πάνυ προδυμοῖτο ἦν δάρδιον,) καὶ ὁ Τις  
very-much desired (to do so) was-it easy,) and — Tis-  
σαφέρηντς μάλα ταχέως ἀπεχώρει ἔξω βελῶν,  
saphernes very speedily retreated beyond (the) missiles,  
καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν.  
and the other divisions (of the Persians) (also) retreated.

Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύ-  
And the rest of-the day the (Greeks) indeed continued  
οντο, δ' οἱ εἶποντο· καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι  
their-march, and the (enemy) followed, and the barbarians  
οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο τότε τῇ ἀκροβολίσει·  
no-longer harassed (them) then with — (their) skirmishing  
γὰρ οἱ Πόδιοι ἐσφευδόνων μακρότερον τῶν  
for the Rhodians threw-stones farther (than) the  
Περσῶν καὶ πλείστων τοξοτῶν. Δὲ καὶ τὰ  
Persians, and the-most of-the-bowmen. And also the  
τόξα, τὰ Περσικά, ἔστι μεγάλα· ὅςτε ὄπόσα  
bows, (namely) the Persian, are large; so-that as-many  
τῶν τοξευμάτων ἀλίσκοιτο ἦν χρήσιμα τοῖς  
of-the arrows as-were-taken (up) were useful to-the  
Κρητῶν· καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τοξεύμασι  
Cretans, and they-continued using <sup>the</sup> arrows  
τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἀνω ἴεντες  
of-the enemy, | and they-practised shooting upwards going  
μακράν.  
far [and they practised shooting these arrows high into the air]

Δὲ καὶ εὑρίσκετο πολλὰ νεῦρα ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,  
And also they-found many bow-strings in the villages  
καὶ μόλυβδος, ὅςτε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφειδόμας.  
<sup>lead.</sup> so-as to-be-used for the <sup>the</sup> slings

Καὶ μὲν ταύτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 And indeed on-that — day, when the Greeks  
 ἐπιτυχόντες κώμαις κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο, οἱ  
 arriving at (the) villages encamped, the  
 βάρβαροι ἀπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τότε μείον ἐν τῇ  
 barbarians departed, having then the-worst in the  
 περιοδίσει· δὲ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 skirmish; but on-the following day the Greeks  
 ἔμειναν, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· γὰρ ἦν πολὺς σῖτος  
 remained, and collected-provisions; for there-was much corn  
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο  
 in the villages. But on-the next-day they-marched  
 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνας εἶπετο ἀκροβο-  
 through the plain, and Tissaphernes followed throwing-  
 λιζόμενος. Ενδα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν,  
 at-them-from-a-distance. Here indeed the Greeks perceived  
 δτι πλαισίου ἴσοπλευρον εἴη πονήρα τάξις,  
 that (a) column of-equal-sides was (a) bad arrangement  
 πολεμίων ἐπομένων. Γάρ ἦν μὲν τὰ κέρατα  
 the) enemy following For if indeed the wings  
 τοῦ πλαισίου συγκύπτῃ, ἢ ὁδοῦ οὖσης  
 (or flanks) of-the square close-together, or (the) road being  
 στενωτέρας, ἢ ὄρέων ἀναγκαζόντων, ἢ γεφύρας,  
 narrow, or mountains forcing, or (a) bridge  
 ἐο τιν ἀνάγκη τοὺς ὀπλίτας  
 to be passed), it s a-necessity (that) the heavy-armed-men  
 ἐκθλίβεσθαι, καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως,  
 be-pushed-out-of-their places, and march with-difficulty.  
 ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, δὲ καὶ ἅμα  
 at-the-same-time indeed (being) pressed-upon, and also at-the-same-time  
 ταρατομένους· ὥστε ἐνάγκη εἰναι  
 thrown-into-confusion so-that (from) necessity (they were) to-be  
 διεχρήστους, δοτας ἀτάκτους. Δ' αὖ δταν τὰ  
 useless, being in-confusion. And again when the  
 κέρατα διασχῆ. ἀνάγκη τότε τοὺς ἐκθλι-  
 wings divide. It is-necessary then (that) — (those) pushed

βομένους διασπᾶσθαι, καὶ τὸ μέσον  
out-of-their-places 'be (now) 'drawn-asunder, and the middle  
(between) τῶν κεράτων γίνεσθαι κενὸν, καὶ τοὺς  
the wings becomes empty, and —  
(those) ταῦτα πάσχοντας ἀδυμεῖν, τῶν  
'being thus 'affected must-become-dispirited, the  
πολεμίων ἐπομένων. Καὶ ὅπότε δέοι  
enemy following (them). And whenever it-might-be-necessary  
διαβαίνειν γέφυραν ἢ τινὰ ἄλλην διάβασιν,  
to-go-over (a) bridge or any other crossing-place,  
ἕκαστος ἔσπενδε βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος·  
each-one hastened desiring to-have-arrived the-first;  
καὶ ἦν ἐνταῦθα εὐεπίδετον τοῖς πολεμίοις.  
and there-was here a-fine-opportunity-of-attack for-the enemy.

Δ' ἐπεὶ οἱ στρατηγοί ἔγνωσαν ταῦτα, ἐποίησαν  
But when the generals knew this, they-formed  
ἕξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ ἐπέστησαν  
six companies each-of a-hundred men, and they-appointed  
λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἄλλους πεντη-  
captains (over these) and (they appointed) others command-  
κοντῆρας, καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχας.  
ing-fifty (men), and others commanding-five-and-twenty (men).

Οὗτοι λοχαγοί δὲ πορευόμενοι,  
These captains indeed (with their companies) on-the-march,  
ὅπότε μὲν τὰ κέρατα συγκύπτοι,  
whenever indeed the wings (or flanks of the square) closed,  
ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι, δέστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι,  
remained behind, so-as not to-disturb the flanks,  
δὲ τότε παρῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων.  
and then | they-led-on [defiled] outside the flanks.

Δέ ὅπότε αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου διάσχοιεν  
But whenever the flanks of-the square might-open  
ἀνεξεπίμπλασαν τὸ μέσον, εἰ μὲν τὸ διέχον εἴη  
they-filled-up the middle, if indeed the separating was  
στενώτερον κατὰ λόχους. δὲ εἰ πλατύτερον κατὰ  
narrow by companies; but if somewhat-wide by

πεντηκοστῶς, δὲ εἰ πάιν πλατύ καὶ ἐναμοτικές  
fifties, and if very wide by twenty-fives.

Ὥστε τὸ μέσον ἀεὶ εἶναι ἔκπλεων. Εἰ δὲ καὶ  
so-as (for) the middle always to-be full. If indeed also  
δέοι διαβαίνειν τιὰ διάβασιν ἢ  
it-might be-necessary to-go-through any passage-or-crossing or (over a)

έφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' οἱ λοχαγοί  
bridge, they-were not 'thrown-into-confusion, but the captains

διέβαινον ἐν τῷ μέρει· καὶ εἰ  
(with their companies) went-over in — succession; and if

τι δέοι που τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗτοι  
any-thing was-wanted any-where (in) the phalanx, these

ἐπιπαρῆσαν. Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν  
were-at-hand. In-this — order they-proceeded

τέτταρας σταδιοῦς. Δὲ ἡτίκα ἐπορεύοντο τὸι  
four days'-march. But when they-were-proceeding on-the

πέμπτον, εἶδον τι Βασίλειον, καὶ περὶ  
fifth (day's march), they-saw a-kind-of palace, and around

αὐτὸ πολλάς κώμας, δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν πρὸς  
it (there were) many villages, and the road to

τὸ τοῦτο χωρίον γιγνομένην διὰ ἵκηλῶν γηλόφων,  
— this place lying over high hills,

οἱ καδῆκον ἀπὸ ὅρους ὑφ' ὃ ἦν ἥ  
which reached-down from (a) mountain at (the foot of); which was the

κώμη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀσμενοι εἶδον τοὺς  
village. And indeed the Greeks rejoicing saw the

γηλόφους, ὡς εἰκός, τῶν πολεμίων  
hills, as (was) natural, (the forces) of-the enemy

ὄντων ἴππεων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ  
being cavalry. When indeed proceeding from the

πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν τρῶτον γήλοφον, καὶ  
plain they-ascended on-to the first hill, and (then)

κατέβαινον ὡς ἀναβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸν ἔτερον.  
they-commenced-descending so-as to-ascend on-to the next

Ἐνταῦθα οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπίγιγνονται, καὶ ἀπὸ  
Here the barbarians came-upon (them), and from

τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ ἔβαλλον εἰς τὸ πκυνές,  
 the high (ground) they-threw to the places-below, (and)  
 ἐσφενδύνων ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων. Καὶ  
 used-their-slings (and) shot-their-arrows, under (the) lash. And  
 ἐτίτρωσκον πολλοὺς καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν γυμ-  
 they-wounded many, and they-had-the-advantage of-the light-  
 νήτων Ἐλλήνων, καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἰσα  
 armed Greeks, and 'shut them 'up within  
 τῶν δπλων, ὥστε ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ  
 the heavy-armed-men, so-that on-that — (same) day both  
 οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἦσαν παντάπασι  
 the slingers and the archers were entirely  
 ἀχρηστοι, ὅντες ἐν τῷ ὅχλῳ. Δὲ  
 useless, being among the crowd (of camp-followers). But  
 ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἐλλῆνες πιεζόμενοι ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν  
 when the Greeks hard-pressed attempted to-pursue  
 μὲν ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον σχολῆ, ὅντες  
 indeed they-arrived at the summit (but) slowly, being  
 ὅπλιται, δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. Δὲ  
 heavy-armed, but the enemy speedily sprang-down. And  
 πάλιν, ὅπότε ἀ-τίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα,  
 again, when they-went-back to the rest (of the) army,  
 ἔπασχον ταύτα· καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου  
 they-suffered the-same; and at the second hill  
 ταύτα ἐγίγνετο· ὥστε ἐδοξεῖν αὐτοῖς μὴ  
 the-same-things occurred; so-that it-seemed (proper) to-them no  
 κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου,  
 to-move the soldiers from the third hill.  
 πρὶν ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς  
 before they-had-led-up targeteers from the right flank  
 τοῦ πλαισίου πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Ἔπει δὲ οὗτοι  
 of-the square on-to the mountain. When indeed these  
 εγένοιτο ἵπερ τῶν ἐπιμένων πολεμίων, οἱ πολέμιοι  
 had-got above the pursuing enemy, the enemy  
 οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο τοῖς καταβαίνωσι, δεδοι-  
 no-longer attacked the (Greeks) descending, having

κότες μὴ ἀποτυπθείσαν, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι  
feared lest they-might-be-cut-off, and the enemy [the Greeks]  
γένοιντο αὐτῶν ἀμφορέωδεν. Πορει-  
might-be-on them [the Persians] from-both-sides. March.  
όμενοι οὖτα τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας, οἱ μὲν  
ng thus for-the rest of-the day, — (some) indeed  
τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ  
on-the road over the hills, — (others) however  
ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὸ ὄρος, ἀφίκοντο εἰς  
marching-along (them) over the mountain, they-arrived at  
τὰς χώμας, καὶ κατέστησαν ὅκτω ἰατροὺς· γὰρ  
the villages, and they-appointed eight surgeons; for  
ἥσαν πολλοὶ τετρωμένοι.  
there-were many wounded.

\*Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐνεκά<sup>ρια</sup>  
Here they-remained three days, both on-account  
τῶν τετρωμένων, καὶ εἶχον ἄμα<sup>τε</sup>  
of-the wounded, and (because) they-had at-the-same-time  
πολλὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀλεύρα, οἶνον, καὶ πολλάς  
much provisions, (namely) wheat-flour, wine, and much  
χριδὰς συμβεβλημένας ἵπποις. Δὲ ταῦτα  
barley having-been-laid-up for-horses. For this (barley)  
ἥν συνενηγμένα τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς  
was collected for-the (person) being-satrap of-the  
χώρας. Δὲ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταβαίνοντι εἰς  
country. But on-the-fourth day they-went-down to  
τὸ πεδίον. \*Ἐπειδὲ Τισσαφέρνης κατέλαβεν  
the plain. When however Tissaphernes overtook  
αὐτοὺς σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἣ ἀνάγκη ἐδίδαξεν  
them with — (his) force, — necessity taught  
αὐτοὺς κατασκηνῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην,  
them to-encamp where first they-saw (a) village,  
καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· γὰρ ἥσαν  
and not to-march-on still fighting; for there-were  
πολλοὶ ἀπόμαχοι, οἱ τετρωμένοι, καὶ  
many unfit-for-action, (namely) — (those) wounded,

οἱ φέροντες ἐκείνους καὶ οἱ δεξά-  
 — (those) carrying those (wounded), and — (those) having-re-  
 μενοι τα ὅπλα τῶν φερόντων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 received the arms of — (those) carrying. When indeed  
 κατεσκήνησαν, καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι προσιόντες πρὸς  
 they-encamped, and the barbarians coming-up to  
 τὴν κώμην ἐπεχείρησαν ἀκροβολίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,  
 the village attempted to-skirmish with-them,  
 οἱ Ἑλληνες πολὺ περιῆσαν· γὰρ διέφερε  
 the Greeks had greatly 'the-advantage; for it-differed  
 πολὺ ὁρμῶντες ἐκ χώρας ἀλέξασθαι,  
 much (that) rushing from (their own) ground they-repelled  
 ἡ πορευόμενοι μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολε-  
 (an attack), or (that) marching-along they-fought the ene-  
 μίοις ἐπιοῦσι. Ἡνίκα δὲ ἦν ἤδη δεί-  
 my coming-upon (them). When indeed it-was now late-in-the  
 λη, ἦν ὥρα τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπιέναι· γὰρ οἱ  
 afternoon, it-was time for-the enemy to-depart; for the  
 βάρβαροι οὔποτε ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο μείον  
 barbarians never encamped at-a-less (distance  
 τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἔξηκοντα σταδίων, φοβού-  
 from-the Grecian (camp) (than) sixty stadia, fear-  
 μενοι μὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπιδῶνται αὐτοῖς τῆς  
 ing lest the Greeks might-attack them (in) the  
 νυκτὸς. Γὰρ Περσικόν στράτευμα ἐστι πονηρὸν  
 night. For (a) Persian army is (a) miserable  
 νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς  
 (thing) at-night; for not-only 'are — (their) horses —  
 δέδενται, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι  
 'tied, but-also (as) for the most (part) have-been-tied-by-  
 εἰσὶ ἐνεκα τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν  
 the-feet | on-account the not to-run-away [to prevent them running  
 εἰ λυδείησαν· ἐάν τέ τις θόρυbos γίγηνται,  
 away] if they-were-let-loose, if also any alarm should-occur,  
 δεῖ Πέρσῃ ἀνδρί ἐπισάξαι  
 it-becomes-necessary 'for (the) 'Persian man to-put-the-housings

τὸν ἵππον, καὶ δεῖ χαλινῶσαι, καὶ  
 on-the horse, and it-is-necessary to-bridle (him), and  
 θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Δε  
 having-put-on-armour to-mount on the horse. But  
 πάντα ταῦτα χαλεπὰ ποιεῖν νύκτωρ,  
 all these (things) (are) difficult to-perform by-night,  
 καὶ δυτος θορύβου. Ἔνεκα  
 |and there-being (an) alarm [when there is an alarm]. On-account  
 τούτου ἀπεσκήνουν πόρρω τῶν Ἑλλήνων.  
 of-this they-encamped-at-a-distance far-from the Greeks.  
 Δὲ ἐπεί οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοὺς  
 But when the Greeks knew (that) they  
 βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους,  
 were-desiring to-depart and announcing (the same),  
 ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἑλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι, τῶν  
 it-was-proclaimed to-the Greeks to-collect-their-baggage, the  
 πολεμίων ἀχούντων. Καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν  
 enemy hearing (it). And the barbarians indeed  
 τινα χρόνον ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας· δὲ ἐπειδὴ  
 for-some time retarded the march; but when  
 ἐγίγνετο ὅψε ἀπήγεσαν. Γάρ οὐ ἔδόκει  
 it-became late they-went-away. For it-did not seem  
 λνσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι, καὶ κατάγεσθαι  
 to-be-expedient to-them to-march, and arrive  
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ  
 at the camp by-night. When indeed the  
 Ἑλληνες ἤδη ἐώρων σαφῶς ἀπιόντας, καὶ  
 Greeks now saw (them) evidently departing, also  
 αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες, καὶ διῆλθον ὅσοι  
 they-themselves having-decamped, even passed-over as-much-as  
 ἔξηκοντα σταδίους. Καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον  
 sixty stadia. And there-became such (an)  
 μεταξύ τῶν στρατευμάτων, ὥστε τῇ ὑστε-  
 interval (between) the armies, that on-the next  
 φαίᾳ οἱ πολέμοι οὐκ ἐφάνησαν, οὐδὲ τῇ  
 day the enemy did not appear, nor on-the

τρίτη· δὲ τῇ τετάρτῃ οἱ βάρβαροι προελθόντες  
 third, but on-the fourth the barbarians having-gone-forward  
 νυκτὸς καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον,  
 in-the-night occupied (a) place above-on-the-right,  
 ἦ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἔμελον παριέναι ἀκρωνυχίον  
 by-which the Greeks had to-pass on-the-brow  
 ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἣν ἡ κατάβασις εἰς  
 'of (the) 'mountain, beneath which was the descent to  
 τὸ πεδίον. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ Χειρίσοφος ἔώρα τὴν  
 the plain. But when Cheirisophus saw the  
 ἀκρωνυχίαν προκατειλημμένην, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα  
 eminence pre-occupied, he-calls-for Xenophon  
 ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς, καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς  
 from the rear, and orders (him that) taking the  
 πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. Ο δὲ  
 targeteers to-advance to the front. — But  
 Ξενοφῶν μὲν οὐκ ἤγε τοὺς πελταστὰς, (γάρ  
 Xenophon indeed 'did not bring the targeteers, (for  
 ἔώρα Τισσαφέρνην ἐπιφαινόμενον, καὶ πᾶν τὸ  
 he-saw Tissaphernes appearing, and all — (his)  
 στράτευμα,) αὐτὸς δὲ προελάσας ἥρωτα· Τί<sup>τ</sup>  
 army,) he-himself indeed having-ridden-up inquired: Why  
 καλεῖς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει αὐτῷ· Ἐξεστιν  
 do-you-call (me)? But — (Cheirisophus) said to-him: You-may  
 ὅραν· γάρ ὁ λόφος ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως προκα-  
 see; for the eminence above the descent has-been-  
 τείληπται ἡμῖν, καὶ ἔστι οὐ παρελθεῖν,  
 pre-occupied against-us, and it-is not (possible) to-pass ('t),  
 εἰ μὴ ἀποκόψομεν τούτους · Αλλὰ τί<sup>τ</sup>  
 — unless we-cut-off those (on it). But why did-'you  
 οὐκ ἤγε τοὺς πελταστάς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει,  
 not 'bring the targeteers? But — (Xenophon) replies,  
 ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὅπισθεν  
 that it-did not 'seem-right to-him to-leave the rear  
 ἔρημα, πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Αλλὰ  
 destitute (of defence), (the<sup>1</sup>) enemy appearing. But

μεν ἔφη δρα γε βουλεύεσθαι πῶς τις  
indeed said-he (it is) time at-least to-consider how some

ἀπελά̄ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου  
(of us) will-drive — (these) men from the hill.

\*Ἐταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τὴν κορυφὴν τοῦ  
Here Xenophon perceives the summit of-the  
ὄρους οὖσαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος  
mountain (as) being above the army (cf the Per-

έαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον  
themselves, and from this (place) (there was) (an) approach  
ἐν τὸν λόφον, ἐνδα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν, καὶ λέγει·  
to the hill, where the enemy were, and he-says:

Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἵεσθαι ὡς  
(It is) best, O Cheirisophus, for-us to-go as

τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· γὰρ ἢν  
quick-s-possible on-to the summit (of the mountain); for if

λάβωμεν τοῦτο, οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ οὐ  
we-take this, — (those) above the road will not  
διηκόσιονται μένειν. \*Αλλά, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ<sup>be-able</sup>  
to-remain. But, if you-wish, remain with

τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐδέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ  
the army, I indeed wish to-go-forward; if

δέ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, δὲ ἐγὼ  
indeed you-want-it, proceed on-to the mountain, and I

μενῶ αὐτοῦ. \*Αλλὰ δίδωμι σοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρί-  
will-remain here. But I-allow you, said — Cheiri-

σοφος, ἐλέσθαι ὁπότερον βούλει. \*Ο Ξενοφῶν  
sophus, to-choose which-of-the-two you-wish. — Xenophon

εἰπών δτι ἐστιν νεώτερος αἱρεῖται πορεύεσθαι,  
replying that (as) he-is the-younger it-becomes (him) to-proceed,

δὲ κελεύει συμπέμψαι οἱ ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ  
and he-requests to-have-sent (with himself) — men from the

στόματος· γὰρ ἢν μακρὸν λαβεῖν ἀπὸ<sup>front;</sup>  
for it-was (a) long (way) to-take (them) from

τῆς οὐρᾶς. Καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς  
the rear. And — Cheirisophus sends-with (him) the

πελταστάς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος· ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς  
targeteers from the front; he-took also the  
κατὰ μέσον τοῦ πλαισίου. Δ' ἐκέλευσε  
(targeteers) in (the) middle of-the square And he-ordered  
καὶ συνέπεσθαι αὐτῷ τοὺς τριακοσίους, οὓς  
also te-follow him the three hundred, (men) whom  
αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ  
he-himself had of-the picked-men in the front of-the  
πλαισίου  
square

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύναντο.  
Hence they-marched-forward as speedily-as they-could.  
Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου, ὡς ἐνόησαν τὴν  
But the enemy on the eminence, when they-perceived the  
πορείαν αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὑδὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ  
match of-these towards the summit, directly also they  
ὅρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα  
rushed to-contend for the summit And here  
ἥν μὲν πολλὴ κραυγὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύ-  
was indeed (a) great shout from-the Grecian ar-  
ματος, διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, δὲ  
my, cheering-on — (those) of-their-men, and  
πολλὴ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην  
much shouting [from — (those) about Tissaphernes [from the  
διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν.  
army of Tissaphernes] cheering-on — (those) of-their-men.  
Δέ Ξενοφῶν παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρε-  
But Xenophon riding-along on — (a) horse en-  
κελεύετο· Νομίζετε, Ἀνδρες, νῦν  
courage (his men): Consider, O men, (that) now (you are)  
ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς  
to-contend for — Greece, now for — (your)  
παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναικας, νῦν πονήσαντες  
children and — (your); wives, now having-laboured  
ὅλιγον πορευσόμεδα τὴν λοιπὴν ἀμαχεῖ.  
a-little we-shall-march the rest (of the way) without-fighting

Δέ Σωτηρίδης ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Ἐσμέν οὐκ ἔξι  
 But Soterides the Sicyonian said: We are not on  
 ἵσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν· γάρ σὺ μὲν ὅχει ἐφ'  
 an-equality, O Xenophon; for you indeed are-carried on (a)  
 ἵππου, ἐγὼ δὲ κάμινο χαλεπῶς, φέρων τὴν  
 horse, I however labour grievously, carrying — (my,  
 ἀσπίδα Καὶ ὅς, ἀκούσας ταῦτα, καταπηδήσας  
 shield. And who, hearing this, having-leaped  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὥθειται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως,  
 from — (his) horse, pushed him from the ranks,  
 καὶ ἀφελόμενος τὴν ἀσπίδα, ἐπορεύετο ἔχων  
 and taking — (his) shield, he-proceeded, having (it),  
 ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύνατο. Ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ ἔχων  
 as speedily-as he-was-able. He-happened — also having (a)  
 θώρακα τὸν ἵππικόν· ὥστε  
 corslet (on) (namely, that peculiar to) the cavalry; so-that  
 ἐπιέζετο. Καὶ μὲν παρεκελεύετο τοῖς  
 he-was-pressed. Yet however he-continued-to-exhort — (those)  
 ἐμπροσθεν ἵπαγειν, δὲ τοῖς ὄπισθεν, ἐπο-  
 in-front to-lead-on-gently, and — (those) in-the-rear, fol-  
 μένοις μόλις παριέναι. Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται  
 lowing with-difficulty to-come-up. But the other soldiers  
 παίουσι, καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτη-  
 beat, and throw-at and revile — Sote-  
 ρίδην, ἕστε ἡνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα  
 rides, until they-obliged (him) taking — (his) shield  
 πορεύεσθαι. Δέ ὁ ἀναβάς ἔως  
 to-march-forward. But — (Xenophon) having-remounted as-long-as  
 μὲν ἦν βάσιμα ἦγεν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου,  
 indeed it-was passable (for a horse) led-the-way on horse-back,  
 δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἀβατα, καταλιπούν τὸν ἵππον  
 but when it-was impassable, leaving — (his) horse  
 ἐσπευδε πεζῇ. Καὶ γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ  
 he-hastened-along on-foot. And having-got on to-the summit  
 φθάνουσι τοὺς πολεμίους.  
 they-occupy (it) (before) the enemy

## CHAPTER V.

Ἐνδα δὴ μὲν οἱ βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον  
 THEN truly indeed the barbarians having-turned fled  
 ἦ ἔκαστος ἐδύνατο, δ' οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 (by the way) which each-one could, and the Greeks  
 εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισ-  
 held the summit. | — (Those) indeed about [the armies of] Tis-  
 σαφέρινη καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ὤχοντο  
 saphernes and Ariaeus having-turned-aside went-off  
 ἄλλην ὁδὸν. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον κατα-  
 another way. — (Those) indeed about Cheirisophus de-  
 βάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ  
 scending encamped in (a) village filled (with)  
 πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δὲ καὶ ἥσαν ἄλλαι  
 many good (things). And also there-were other  
 κῶμαι, ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν ποταμό:  
 villages in this — plain along the river  
 Τίγρητα, πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δ' ἦνίκα  
 Tigris, full of-many good (things). But, when  
 ἦν δείλη οἱ πολέμοι ἐξατίνης ἐπιφαί-  
 it-was late-in-the-afternoon, the enemy suddenly ap-  
 νονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ κατέκοψαν τινας τῶν  
 pear in the plain, and cut-off some of-the  
 Ἑλλήνων ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καδ' ἀρπα-  
 Greeks dispersed in the plain for plun-  
 γήν. γὰρ καὶ πολλαὶ νομαὶ βοσκημάτων  
 der; for also many herds of-cattle  
 κατελήφθησαν διαβιβάζομεναι εἰς τὸ  
 were-seized (that were about) to-have-been-transported to the  
 πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. Ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρινης  
 opposite-side of-the river. Here Tissaphernes

**καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπεχείρησαν καίειν τὰς**  
and — (those) with him attempted to-burn the  
**κώμας.** **Καὶ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἥδυ**  
villages. And some of-the Greeks were much 'dis-  
**μησαν, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ, εἰ καίοιεν**  
heartened, being-apprehensive lest, if they-burned (the villages) they-  
**οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὅπόδεν λαμβάνοιεν τὰ**  
would not have (a place) whence they-might-procure —  
**ἐπιτήδεια.** **Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφος**  
provisions. | And — (those) indeed about Cheirisophus  
**ἀπήσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας**  
[Cheirisophus and his men] returned from (giving) — assistance;  
**οὐ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς**  
but Xenophon, when he-came-down, riding-past the  
**τάξεις, ἦνικα οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀπήντησαν ἀπὸ**  
ranks, when the Greeks came-back from (giving)  
**τῆς βοηθείας, ἔλεγεν· Ὁράτε, ὁ Ἑλληνες ἄνδρες,**  
— assistance, said: You-see, O Grecian men,  
**ὑφιέντας τὴν χώραν εἶναι ἥδη**  
(the enemy) conceding (that) the country is now  
**ἡμετέραν· γὰρ ἀ, ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο, διεπράτ-**  
ours, for that-which, when they-made-the-truce, they-stipu-  
**τοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, νῦν**  
lated-for, not to-burn the country 'of (the) king. now  
**αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν.**  
they-themselves burn (it) as (if it belonged to) another.  
**Ἄλλ' ἔάν γε ποι καταλίπωσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια**  
But if at-least any-where they-leave — provisions  
**χύτοις ὕψουται καὶ ἡμᾶς πορευομένους ἐνταῦθα.**  
for-themselves they-will-see even us proceeding thither  
**Ἄλλ', ὁ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι**  
But O Cheirisophus, said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought  
**βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας, ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς**  
to-give-assistance against — (those) burning, as for — (our)  
**ἡμετέρας.** **Οὐ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖτε**  
— But Cheirisophus said. It-does not therefore

δοκε  
seem (so) to-me-at-least;      ἔμοιγε·      ἀλλὰ,      ἐφη,      ἡμεῖς καίωμεν,  
but, said-he, 'let us      <sup>burn,</sup>

καὶ οὕτω      θᾶττον παύσονται.  
and so they-will the-sooner      'cease.

Δέ ἐπει ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς οἱ  
But when they-went-away to — (their) tents the  
ἄλλοι      ἥσαν μὲν  
rest (of the army, being the private soldiers,) were indeed(occupied)  
περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, δέ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ<sup>1</sup>  
about the provisions, but (the) generals and (the) captains  
συνῆλθον.      Καὶ ἦν πολλὴ ἀπορία  
convened-together (in council). And there-was much perplexity  
ἐνταῦθα.      Γὰρ μὲν ἐνδεν ἦν ὅρη ὑπερί-  
here.      For indeed from-here there-were mountains exceeding-

ψηλα, δέ ἐνδεν ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος τὸ  
high, but from-there — (a) river (having) so-great — (a)  
βάθος, ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν  
depth, so-that not-even the spears were-above (the water)  
πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους.      Δέ τις ἀνὴρ  
(to those) making-trial of-the depth.      But a-certain man

Ῥόδιος προσελθών αὐτοῖς ἀπορουμένοις εἶπεν.  
(a) Rhodian coming-to them (thus) perplexed said:  
Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὁ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ  
I will, O men, have-crossed you 'ever 'by  
τετρακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας,      ἀν ὑπορετήσητε  
four-thousand heavy-armed-men 'at-a-time, if you-will-supply

ἔμοι ὕν δέομαι, καὶ πορίσητε τάλαντον  
me with-what I-want, and will-furnish (me) (a) talent (as a)  
μισθὸν.      Δέ ἐρωτῶμενος δτου δέοιτο.      Δεήσομαι,  
recompense. But being-asked what he-might-require: I-shall-want,  
ἐφη, διεκχιλίων ἀσκῶν.      δ ὄρῳ πολλὰ πρόβατα  
said-he, two-thousand hides-for-bags; and I-see many sheep  
καὶ αἴγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἀ, ἀποδαρέντα  
and goats and oxen and asses, which, having-been-skinned  
καὶ φυσηδέντα, ἀν ῥαδίως παρέχοι τὴν  
and blown-out, might easily furnish the (means of '

διάβασιν. Δὲ καὶ δεήσομαι τῶν θεσμῶν, οἵς  
 crossing. And also I-shall-want the cords, which  
 χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ἵποζύγια· τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς  
 you-use about the baggage-cattle; with-these having-joined the  
 ἀσκοὺς πρὸς ἄλληλους, ὅρμίσας ἔκαστον ἀσκὸν  
 bags to one-another, having-stretched each bag,  
 θέσους ἀρτήσας, καὶ ἀφεῖς  
 stones (having-been-suspended (from it), and having-'let (them) 'down  
 ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ θύρω, διαγαγών  
 like anchors into the water, having-'extended (the bags) 'across  
 καὶ δήσας ἀμφοτέρωδεν, ἐπιβαλῶ  
 and having-secured (them) to-both (banks), I-will-'put  
 ὑλὴν, καὶ ἐπιφορήσω γῆν. Ὅτι  
 wood 'on (them), and will-'throw earth 'over (the wood). That  
 οὖν μὲν οὐ καταδύσεσθε, μάλα  
 therefore indeed you-'will not 'be-sunk, | (as) you-'will much  
 αὐτίκα εἰσεσθε. γὰρ πᾶς  
 immediately 'see; [as you will at once perceive;] for every  
 ἀσκός ἔξει δύο ἄνδρας τοῦ μὴ καταδύναι·  
 skin | will-keep two men from-the not to-be-sunk; [will  
 δὲ ἡ ὑλὴ καὶ ἡ γῆ  
 keep two men from sinking,] and the wood and the earth  
 σχήσει ὥστε μὴ ὀλισθάνειν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,  
 will-keep (them) so-as not to-fall-off. To-the generals,  
 ἀκούσασι ταῦτα, τὸ ἐνδύμημα μὲν ἐδόκει εἶναι  
 having-heard this, the contrivance indeed seemed to-be  
 χάριεν, δὲ τὸ ἔργον ἀδύνατον· γὰρ ἦσαν πέ-  
 ingenuous, but the execution impossible; for there-were on-the  
 παν πολλοὶ ἵππεις οἱ κωλύσοντες,  
 other-side many horsemen —(those) would-be-disputing (their pa-  
 οἱ εὑδὺς ἀν ἐπέτρεπον τοῖς πρώτοις  
 \*ge), (and) who immediately would permit the first (or  
 ποιεῖν οὐδὲν τούτων. Ἐταῖδα μὲν  
 (foremost) to-do none of-these (things). Thence indeed  
 τὴν ὑστεραίαν ἵπανεχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν.  
 in-the next-day they-slowly-began-to-retreat — back-again

τῇ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα, εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους  
 by-the (road) towards Babylon, to the unburnt  
 κώμας, κατακαύσαντες ἐνδεν ἔξηγεσαν· ὅπε  
 villages, having-burnt (those) whence they-departed; so-that  
 οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσέλαυνον, ἀλλὰ ἐδε-  
 the enemy did not come-up (to them), but continued-  
 ὄντο. καὶ ἡσαν δομοιοι θαυμάζειν  
 observing (them), and they-were like to-wonder [and they won-  
 δποι ποτὲ οἱ Ἑλλῆνες πρέψονται, καὶ  
 dered] where at-any-time the Greeks would-turn-themselves, and  
 τί ἔχοιεν ἐν νῷ. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι  
 what they-might-have in (their) mind. There indeed the rest  
 στρατιῶται ἡσαν ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·  
 (of the) soldiers were (occupied) about — provisions,  
 δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον,  
 but the generals and the captains again assembled  
 καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἑαλωκότας,  
 (in council), and having-brought-together — (those) taken-prisoners,  
 ἥλεγχον πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν κύκλῳ,  
 they-questioned (them about) all the country in-a-circle (round  
 τίς ἐκάστη εἴη. Δέ οἱ ἔλεγον,  
 about them) that each (part) might-be. And — (they) said,  
 δτι τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν εἴη τῆς  
 that the (I . ts) indeed towards (the) south were — (those  
 ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα καὶ Μηδίαν δι' ἤσπερ  
 towards Babylon and Media through which 'they (the Greeks)  
 ἤκοιεν· δὲ ἡ πρὸς ἕω φέροι ἐπὶ Σοῦσα  
 'had-come; and — (that) towards (the) east led to Susa  
 τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα ἐνδα βασιλεῖς λέγεται  
 — and Ecbatana where (the) king is-said  
 θερίζειν καὶ ἔαρίζειν· δὲ ἡ διαβάντι τὸν  
 to-spend-the-summer and spring; and the (road) going-across the  
 ποταμὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν φέροι ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ  
 river towards (the) west led to Lydia and  
 Ἰωνίαν δέ δτι ἡ διὰ τῶν ὄρέων καὶ τετραμμένη  
 Ionia; and that the (road) over the mountains and winding

πρὸς ἄρκτον ἄγοι εἰς Καρδούχους. Δέ ἔφασαν  
 to (the) north might-lead to (the) Carduchi. And they-said  
 τούτους οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὅρη,  
 (that) these (people) dwell (scattered) over the mountains.  
 καὶ εἰναι πολεμικοὺς, καὶ οὐκ ἀκούειν  
 and are warlike, and do not obey (the)  
 βασιλέως. ἀλλὰ καὶ ποτε βασιλικὴν  
 king, but (that) even once (a) royal  
 στρατιάν, δώδεκα μυριάδας, ἐμβαλεῖν  
 army, (of) twelve ten-thousand [120,000] (men), attacked  
 εἰς αὐτοὺς. δὲ οὐδένα τούτων ἀπονοστῆσαι  
 — them; but (that) not-one of-them returned  
 διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. Οπότε μέντοι  
 on-account-of the difficulties-of-the-country. When however  
 σπείσαιντο πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν ἐν  
 they-made-a-treaty with the satrap — (he who dwelt) in  
 τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ σφῶν ἐπιμιγνύναι  
 the plain, (that) also some-of-those (of the plain) had-intercourse  
 τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων  
 — with those (mountaineers) and some-of-these (mountaineers)  
 πρὸς ἑαυτούς.  
 with those (of the plain).

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκάθισαν  
 The generals having-heard these (things) placed  
 χωρὶς τοὺς φάσκοντας εἰδέναι  
 apart — (those) saying (that) they-knew (the road)  
 ἐκασταχόσε, ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν δῆλον, δποι ἐμελλον  
 in-each-direction, making no-one certain, whither they-intended  
 πορεύεσθαι. Ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι  
 to-proceed. It-seemed however to-the generals to-be  
 ἀναγκαῖον ἐμβάλλειν διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς  
 necessary to-force-their-way over the mountains into (the coun-

Καρδούχους. γάρ ἔφασαν διελθόντας  
 try of the) Carduchi; for they-said (that) having-passed-through  
 τούτους ἥξειν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν πολλῆς  
 these (that) they-would-come into Armenia (it being) large

καὶ εὐδαίμονος, ἦς Ὁρόντας ἡρχε. Δ' ἐντεῦθεν  
 and rich, (and) which Orites governed. And whence  
 ἔφασαν εἶναι εὔπορον πορεύεσθαι  
 they-said (that it would) be an-easy-thing (for-them) to-proceed  
 τις ὅποι ἐδέλοι Ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐδύ<sup>ν</sup>  
 any where they-might-wish. With-reference to-these (things) they-  
 ταντο, ὅπως ὀπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τὴς  
 sacrificed, in-order-that when it-might even seem (to be) the  
 ὁρας ποιοῦντο τὴν πορείαν (γὰρ  
 time they-might (begin to) make the march (for  
 ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὄρεων  
 they-feared lest the passage-over the mountains  
 προκαταληφθείη) καὶ παρήγγειλαν  
 might-be-pre-occupied) (by the enemy); and they-announced (that)  
 ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν πάντας συνεσκευ-  
 when (the soldiers) had-supped (that) all having-packed-  
 ασμένους ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἐπεσθαι  
 up-their-baggage are-to-go-to-rest, and to-follow 'their leaders;  
 ἥνικα τις ἀν παραγγείλῃ.  
 when any 'signal might be-given.

## BOOK IV.

## CHAPTER I.

Οσα μὲν δὴ ἐγένετο ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει  
 what indeed really happened in the expedition-up-the-country  
 μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην  
 till the battle, and what (occurred) after the battle  
 ἐν ταῖς σπουδαῖς, ἃς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 during the truce, which (the) king and the Greeks  
 ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα,  
 going-up with Cyrus made, and what, (the)  
 βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους παραβάντος τας  
 king and Tissaphernes having-broken the  
 σπουδαῖς, ἐπολεμήση πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλληνας, τοὺς  
 truce, war-was-waged against the Greeks, the  
 Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπακολουθοῦντος  
 Persian army pursuing (them),  
 δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.  
 has-been-related in the preceding discourse.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο, ἐνδα μὲν ὁ ποταμὸς Τίγρης  
 But when they-arrived, where indeed the river Tigris  
 ἦν παντάπασιν ἄπορος διὰ τὸ βάθος  
 is altogether impassable on-account-of — (its great) depth  
 καὶ μέγεδος, δὲ ἦν οὐ πάροδος  
 and size, and there-was no passage (along the banks),  
 ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχια ὅρη ἐκρέματο ἀπότομα  
 as-indeed the Carduchian mountains hung steep  
 ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς  
 over this — river, it-seemed truly (therefore) to-the

στρατηγοῖς εἶναι πορευτέον διὰ τῶν ὄρέων.  
generals to-be necessary-to-march over the mountains.

Γάρ οὖκον τῶν ἀλισκομένων, ὅτι, εἰ  
For they-had-heard — (from those) made-prisoners, that, if  
δέλλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχια ὅρη, διαβήσονται τὰς  
they-should-cross the Carduchian mountains, they-might-ford the  
πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ,  
sources of-the river Tigris in — Armenia,  
ἥν μὲν Βούλωνται, δὲ ἥν Βούλωνται μὴ,  
if indeed they-wished (to do so), but if they-wished not  
περιίσσου.

Kai τε ἐλέγετο  
(to do so), 'they (might) 'go-round (them). And also it-was-said

τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Εὐφράτου εἶναι οὐ πρόσω  
(that) the sources of-the Euphrates were not far  
τοῦ Τίγρητος, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον.  
from-the Tigris, | and 11-18 so having [and it is

Δέ ποιοῦνται ἐμβολήν εἰς τοὺς  
really so]. And they-make (the) irruption into the (terri-

Καρδούχους ὡδε, πειρώμενοι ἄμα  
tory of the Carduchi in-this-manner, endeavouring at-the-same-time

μὲν λαθεῖν δὲ ἄμα φθα-  
indeed to-have-concealed (their march) and-also at-the-same-time to-anti-

σαι τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν καταλαθεῖν τὰ  
enlarge the enemy before (that) they-have-occupied the

ἄκρα. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἥν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν  
heights. When indeed it-was about the last

φυλακὴν, καὶ ἐλείπετο ὅσον τῆς νυκτὸς  
watch, and there-was-left as-much of-the night (as)

διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον σκοταίους, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάν-  
to-pass-over the plain in-the-dark, then rising-

τες, ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικ  
up, (and) at the-word-of-command marching-forth they

νοῦνται ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς  
arrived at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day

τὸ ὅρος.  
the mountain.

Ἐνδα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤγειτο τοὶ<sup>ν</sup>  
 Here indeed Cheirisophus — took-the-lead of-the  
 στρατεύματος, λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν  
 army, taking (with him) — (those) about him  
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς γυμνῆτας. δέ Ξενοφῶν  
 and all the light-armed-men, but Xenophon  
 εἶπετο σὺν τοῖς ὁπλίταις ὅπισθοφύλαξιν, ἔχων  
 followed with the heavy-armed rear-guard, having  
 ὕδενα γυμνῆτα· γὰρ ἐδόκει εἶναι οὐδεὶς  
 not-one light-armed-man; for there-seemed to-be no  
 κίνδυνος, μή τις ἐπισποιτο ἐκ τοῦ ὅπισθεν,  
 fear, lest any-one might-pursue from — behind,  
 πορευομένων ἀνω. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν  
 (they) marching upwards. And Cheirisophus indeed  
 ἀναβαίνει ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, πρὶν τινα τῷ  
 went-up on-to the summit, before (that) any-one of-the  
 πολεμίων αἰσθέσθαι. Δ' ἐπειτα ὑφηγεῖτο·  
 enemy perceived (him). But then led-forward-slowly:  
 δὲ τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἀεὶ ὑπερ-  
 and the (part) of-the army from-time-to-time passing-  
 βάλλον ἐφείπετο, εἰς τὰς κώμας  
 over (the summit) continued-following (him), into the villages  
 τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσι τε καὶ μυχοῖς  
 (namely) — (those) in the narrow-valleys and also 'in (the) 'recesses  
 τῷν ὄρέων.  
 of-the mountains.

Ἐνδα δὴ μὲν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ἐκλιπόντες τὰς  
 Then truly indeed the Carduchi, having-left —  
 οἰκίας, καὶ ἔχοντες γυναικας καὶ παῖδας,  
 (their) dwellings, and having (their) wives and children.  
 ἐφενγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. Ἡν δὲ πολλὰ τὰ  
 fled on to the mountains. There-was indeed much —  
 ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνειν· δὲ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι ἦσαν  
 provisions to-take; and also — (their) dwellings were  
 κατεσκευασμέναι παμπόλλοις χαλκώμασι, ὃν οἱ  
 furnished with-a-great-many brazen-utensils. of-which the

Ἐλληνες ἔφερον οὐδὲν, οὐδὲ ἐδίωκον τοὺς  
 Greeks took-away none, nor did-they-pursue the  
 ἀνδρώπους, ὑπορειδόμενοι, εἰ οἱ  
 people, sparing (them), as-if (to try whether) the  
 Καρδοῦχοι ἐδελήσειαν πως αὐτοὺς διεέναι  
 Carduchi 'would by-any-means let them pass-through  
 ως διὰ τῆς φιλίας χώρας ἐπείπερ ἦσαν  
 as through — (a) friendly country in-as-much-as they-were  
 πολέμιοι βασιλεῖ. Μέντοι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,  
 enemies 'to (the) 'king. However the provisions,  
 ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι, [to-which any-one might-arrive, [which any one might obtain,]  
 ἐλάμβανον· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη. Δέ οἱ  
 they-took; for it-was (a) necessity (to do so). But the  
 Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε ὑπήκοον, καλούντων, οὔτε ἐποί-  
 Carduchi neither listened, being-called-on, nor did-they-  
 ουν οὐδὲν ἄλλο φιλικὸν. Δέ ἐπει οἱ  
 make any-one other friendly (demonstration). But when the  
 τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἐλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας  
 rear of-the Greeks were-descending into the villages  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἥδη σκοταῖοι (γὰρ διὰ  
 from the eminence (it being) now somewhat-dark (for on-account-of  
 τὴν ὁδὸν τὸ εἶναι στενὴν ἡ ἀνάβασις καὶ κατάβασις  
 the road — being narrow, the ascent and descent  
 εἰς τὰς κώμας ἐγένετο αὐτοῖς  
 to the villages happened for-them (to be the occupation of)  
 τὴν ὅλην ἡμέραν) · τότε δὴ τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων  
 the entire day), then indeed some of-the Carduchi  
 συλλεγέντες ἐπέδεντο τοῖς τελευταῖοις, καὶ  
 collecting-together attacked the hindmost, and  
 ἀπέκτεινάν τινας, καὶ κατέτρωσαν λίθοις  
 they-killed some, and worried (them with) stones  
 καὶ τοξεύμασι, οὗτες ὅλιγοι, γὰρ  
 and arrows, (they, the Carduchi,) being few, for  
 τὸ Ἐλληνικόν ἐπέπεσε ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτοις.  
 the Grecian (army) had-come-on (them) — suddenly

Εἰ μέντοι τότε συνελέγησαν πλείους  
 If however then they-had-assembled more (numerous, y) (a)  
 πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐκινδύνευσεν ἄν  
 great (part) of-the army would-have-been-in-danger —  
 διαφθαρῆναι. Καὶ οὕτω μὲν τὴν νύκτα  
 to-have-been-destroyed And so indeed — (that) night  
 ηὐλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· δὲ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι  
 they-lodged in the villages; and the Carduchi  
 ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὄρέων, καὶ  
 burned many fires in-a-circle on the mountains, and  
 συνεώρων ἀλλήλους. Ἄμα δὲ  
 observed (the position of) one-another. At-the-same-time indeed  
 τῇ ήμέρᾳ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ  
 with-the (break of) day it-seemed (best) to-the generals and  
 λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνελάδοῦσι,  
 captains of-the Greeks having-assembled-in-council,  
 πορεύεσθαι ἔχοντας τε τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ  
 to-march-forth having also (only) the necessary and  
 δυνατώτατα τῶν ὑποζυγιῶν, καταλιπόντας τὰλλα,  
 strongest of-the baggage-cattle, leaving-behind the-rest,  
 καὶ ὅποσα ἀνδράποδα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα  
 and as-many slaves (as) were recently captured,  
 ἀφεῖναι πάντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. Γὰρ τὰ  
 to-dismiss all (these) in the army. For the  
 ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα ὅντα πολλὰ  
 baggage-cattle and — (those) captured being many  
 ἐποίουν τὴν πορείαν σχολαίαν· δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ<sup>οἱ</sup>  
 made the march slow; and the many (men)  
 ὅντες ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι, ἔδει  
 being (in charge) over these were unfit-for-action, it-was-necessary  
 τε διπλάσια ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι  
 also (that) double (the quantity of) provisions be-procured  
 καὶ φέρεσθαι, τῶν ἀνδρώπων ὅντων πολλῶν. Δ'  
 and carried, the men being many. And  
 ἔόξαν ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν ποιεῖν οὕτω.  
 they-approved these (things), (and) proclaimed to-do so

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο,  
When indeed having-breakfasted they-proceeded (on their march),  
 καὶ στρατηγοὶ ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ,  
the generals standing-secretly in — (a) narrow (part of the  
 εἰς εὑρίσκοιεν τι τῶν εἰρημένων μή  
road) if they-found any-thing of-the (things) mentioned not  
 ἔχειμένον, ἀφηροῦντο· οἵ δὲ  
left, they-took (them) away, the (men) indeed  
 ἐπείδοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλεψε τι, οἷον οὐδὲ  
obeyed, unless if any-one was-smitten-with any-thing, as if  
 ἐπιθυμήσας παιδὸς ή γυναικὸς τῶν εὐτρεπῶν.  
having-desired (a) boy or woman of-the handsome-ones.

Καὶ μὲν ἐπορεύθησαν οὕτω ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν,  
And indeed they-proceeded thus that — day,  
 τὰ μὲν μαχόμενοι τι, δὲ καὶ τὰ  
— (sometimes) indeed fighting somewhat, and also — (sometimes)  
 ἀναπαυόμενοι. Δέ εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν πολύς  
resting. But on the next-day (a) great  
 χειμῶν γίγνεται, δ' ήν ἀναγκαῖον πορεύεσθαι·  
storm happened, but (yet) it-was necessary to-proceed;  
 γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ήν οὐ ἴκανα. Καὶ μὲν  
 for the provisions were not sufficient. And indeed  
 Χειρίσοφος ἥγειτο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκει.  
Cheirisophus continued-to-lead and Xenophon brought-up-the-rear.

Καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπετίθεντο ἵσχυρῶς καὶ  
 And the enemy pressed greatly 'on (them) and  
 τῶν χωρίων ὅντων στενῶν, προσιόντες  
 the places being narrow, (the enemy) coming-up  
 ἐγγὺς ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ὅστε οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 near they-shot-arrows and slung-stones; so-that the Greeks  
 ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες ἠναγκάζοντο  
 pursuing and again retreating were-compelled  
 πορεύεσθαι σχολῇ· καὶ θαυμαῖ δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
 to-march slowly; and frequently — Xenophon  
 παρῆγελλεν ὑπομένειν, δτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπικέοιντο  
 passed-the-word to-halt, when the enemy might-'press

Ισχυρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ὅτε  
hard      on (them).      Then — Cheirisophus when

παρεγγυῶτο ἀλλοτε μὲν ὑπέμενε, δὲ τότε  
the-word-was-passed at-other-times indeed halted, but once he-did

οὐκ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως, καὶ παρηγύνα  
not      'halt,      but led-on rapidly, and ordered

(them)      ἔπεισδαι. ὅγετε ἦν δῆλον ὅτι εἴη τι  
to-follow;      so-that it-was evident that there-was some

πρᾶγμα. δ' ἦν οὐκ σχολὴ  
thing (to do); but there-was not leisure 'for (a person)

παρελθόντι ἵδειν τὸ αἴτιον τῆς  
moving-along (to the front) to-have-ascertained the cause of-the

σπουδῆς. Ὅγετε ἡ πορεία ἐγίγνετο ὁμοία φυγῇ  
haste;      so-that the march became like 'to (a) 'flight

τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ  
for-the rear-guard. And here (a) brave man

Κλεώνυμος Λακωνικὸς ἀποδνήσκει, τοξευθεὶς  
Cleonymus (a) Lacedæmonian died, being-shot-with-an-arrow

διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς στολάδος εἰς τὰς  
through the shield and the corslet on the

πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκάς διαπερέεις εἰς  
side, and-also Basias (an) Arcadian (shot) right-through —

τὴν κεφαλήν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταδιόν,  
the head. When indeed they-arrived at (the) station

οἱ Ξενοφῶν εὑδὺς ἐλθὼν Ὅγεπερ  
(or place of encampment) — Xenophon immediately having-gone | as

εἶχε πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον  
he-had (himself) [just as he was] to — Cheirisophus

ἥτιατο αἴτον, ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμεινεν ἀλλ'  
he-blamed him, that he-did not 'halt but (that)

φεύγοντες ἤναγκάζοντο ἄμα μάχεσδαι.  
fleeing they-were-compelled at-the-same-time to-fight

Καὶ νῦν δύο καλώ τε κἀγαθῷ ἀνδρες τέθνατο,  
And now two honourable and also-brave men have-died,

καὶ ἐδυνάμεδα οὔτε ἀνελέσδαι οὔτε  
and we-could neither Harry-away (their bodies) nor

θάται. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀποκρίνεται πρὸς ταῦτα·  
buoy (them). — Cheirisophus answered to these

βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, καὶ ἵδε  
(things), Look, said-he, at — (these) mountains, and see  
ὅς ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· δὲ αὐτη μία ὁδός,  
how impassable (they) all are; and this one (only) road.  
ἥν ὄρας, ὄρδια, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἔξεστι σοι  
which you-see, (is) steep, and on this it-is-allowed to-you  
ὄραν τοσοῦτον δχλον ἀνδρῶπων οἱ κατει-  
to-see how-great (a) multitude of-men (there are) who having-  
ληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. Ταῦτ'  
occupied guard the pass. For-these (reasons)  
ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐχ ὑπέμενον  
I hastened-on, and for this I-did not wait-for  
σε, εἰ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι τὴν  
you, (but strove) if by-chance I-could reach the  
ὑπερβολὴν πρὶν κατειλῆθαι·  
passage-over (the mountain) before it-had-been-occupied (by the enemy);  
δ' οἱ ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν, φασιν εἶναι οὐκ  
for the guides whom we-have, say (that) there-is no  
ἄλλην ὁδόν. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ  
other road. — But Xenophon says: But I  
ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. Γὰρ ἐπει παρεῖχον  
have two men. | For when (the enemy) presented  
πράγματα ἡμῖν, ἐνηδρεύ-  
things to-us, [for when the enemy annoyed us,] we-placed-an-  
σαμεν, (ὅπερ καὶ ἐποίησε ἡμᾶς ἀναπνεῦσαι,) [and  
ambush, | (which also made us breathe,) and  
καὶ ἀπεκτείναμέν τινας  
which gave us time to breathe,] and we-killed some  
αὐτῶν, καὶ προύδυμαὶδημεν λαβεῖν ζῶντας,  
of-them, and we-were-eager to-take (them) alive,  
ἔνεκεν αὐτοῦ τούτου ὅπως χρησαίμεδα  
on-account-of this very-same (thing) that we-might-use (them as)  
ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν.  
guides knowing the country.

Kai εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνδρώπους, διὰλα  
And immediately leading-forward the men, having.  
 βόντες ηλεγχον, εἰ εἶδεῖεν τινα  
taken (them) 'apart they-questioned (them), if they-knew any  
 ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. Ο  
other road than the (one) apparent (before them). The (one)  
 μὲν οὖν ἔφη οὐκ ἔτερος, καὶ μάλα  
indeed — said (that there was) not another, and very  
 πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων. δέ ἐπει ἔλεγεν  
many fearful-threats were-brought-forward; but when he-said  
 οὐδὲν ὀφέλιμον, κατεσφάγη, τοῦ ἔτέρου ὅρωντος.  
nothing useful he-was-put-to-death, the other-one seeing (it).  
 Δεὶς ὁ λοιπός ἔλεξεν δτι οὗτος μὲν  
But the (one) remaining said that this (other one) indeed 'would  
 οὐ φαίνει εἰδέναι διὰ ταῦτα  
not 'say (any thing about another road) | to-appear through this  
 δτι θυγάτηρ τυγχάνει αὐτῷ  
[for the reason] that (a) daughter happens (to be) to-him  
 ἔκει παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἔκδεδομένη. δ  
there with (a) man having-been-given (to him in marriage); but  
 αὐτὸς ἔφη ἡγήσεσθαι ὁδὸν δυνατὴν  
he said (that) he-would-lead (them) 'by (a) 'road possible  
 πορεύεσθαι καὶ ὑποζυγίοις. Δ' ἐρωτώμενος, εἰ  
to-be-passed-through even by-beasts-of-burden. But being-asked, if  
 εἴη τι χωρίον ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον, ἔφη  
there-were any place in it difficult-to-pass, he-said (that)  
 είναι ἄκρον, δ εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψοιτο  
there-was (a) height, which — unless some-one should-'take-possession-of  
 ἔσεσθαι ἀδύνατοι παρελθεῖν Ἐνταῦθα  
(it) 'beforehand it-would-be impossible to-pass-over (it). Then  
 ἔδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς καὶ  
it-seemed-proper having-called-together (the) captains (being) also  
 πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, τε λέγειν  
targeteers, and (those) of-the heavy-armed-men, | and to-tell  
 τα παρόντα,  
(them) the (things) being-present, [and inform them of the state of affairs,]

*καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἰ ἔστι τις αὐτῶν, δοξτις ἀν ἐδέλοι  
and to-inquire if there-is any-one of-them, who might wish*

*γενέσθαι ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ, καὶ  
(to prove himself) to-be (a) courageous man, and*

*ὑποστὰς πορεύεσθαι  
having-engaged (himself) to-go-on (this expedition as a)*

*ἐδελοτής. Τῶν ὅπλιτῶν μὲν Ἀριστώνυμος  
volunteer. Of-the heavy-armed-men indeed Aristonymus (of)*

*Μεδυδριεὺς Ἀρκάς ὑφίσταται, καὶ Ἄγασιας  
Methydrium (an) Arcadian offered-himself, and (also) Agasias*

*Στυμφάλιος Ἀρκάς δὲ Καλλίμαχος Παρ-  
(of) Stymphalus (an) Arcadian; but Callimachus (of) Par-*

*ράσιος, Ἀρκάς, ἀντιστασιάζων αὐτοῖς,  
rhasia, (an) Arcadian, 'contesting (the honour) 'with them,*

*ἔφη οὗτος ἐδελεῖν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν  
said (that) he-himself wished to-go taking (with him)*

*ἐδελοντάς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος. Γάρ  
volunteers from all the army. For*

*ἐγὼ, ἔφη, οἶδα δότι πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἔψονται,  
I, said-he, know that many of-the young-men will-follow,*

*ἔμοι ἥγουμένου. Ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσι, εἴ τις καὶ  
I leading. After this they-inquired, if any also*

*τῶν γυμνήτῶν ταξιαρχῶν ἐδέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι.  
of-the light-armed taxarchs might-wish to-go-with*

*Ἀριστέας Χίος ὑφίσταται, δις  
(the volunteers). Aristeas (of) Chios offers-himself, (a man) who*

*πολλαχοῦ ἐγένετο ἄξιος πολλοῦ τῇ στρατιῇ  
often had-been worthy of-much in-the army*

*εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα.  
on (occasions) — like-these.*

## CHAPTER II.

**Kai** ἦν ἡδη μεν δείλη, δ' εἰ  
AND it-was now indeed late-in-the-afternoon, and the (generals,  
ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας  
Theirisophus and Xenophon,) ordered them having-eaten-something  
πορεύεσθαι. **Kai** δῆσαντες τὸν ἥγεμόνα παρ-  
to-march-forth. And having-bound the guide they-  
διδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται ἦν  
delivered (him) to-them, and they-arrange-with (them) if  
λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, φυλάττειν τὸ  
they-should-take (possession of) the summit, to-guard the  
χωρίον μὲν τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἀμα τῇ  
place (during) indeed the night, but at-the-same-time with-the  
ἡμέρᾳ σημαίνειν σάλπιγγι· καὶ  
(dawn of) day to-give-the-signal 'with (the) 'trumpet; and (that,  
μὲν τοὺς ὄντας ἀνω ἵέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς  
indeed — (those) being above to-go against — (those)  
κατέχοντας τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν, δὲ αὐτοὶ<sup>1</sup>  
having-possession-of the apparent egress. and they (the  
ἔκβαινοντες συμβοηθήσειν ὡς  
generals) coming-forth (from below) altogether-to-assist (them) 'as  
τάχιστα δύνωνται. Συνδέμενοι ταῦτα οἱ  
speedily 'as they-could. They-having-arranged these (things) the  
μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς δισ-  
(detachment) indeed proceeded (being a) multitude-of about two-  
χίλιοι· καὶ ἦν πολὺ ὕδωρ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ.  
thousand; | and there-was much water from heaven [and there  
Δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς  
was a heavy rain at the time]. And Xenophon, having the  
όπισθοφύλακας, ἥγειτο πρὸς τὴν φανερὰν  
war-guard, led (them) to the apparent

ἔκβασιν, ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν  
 egress, so-that the enemy might-direct — (their) mind  
 ταύτη τὴν ὁδῷ, καὶ ὡς οἱ περιόντες  
 to-that — road, and so (that) — (those) going-round-about  
 μάλιστα λάδοιεν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες  
 'might the-best 'escape-notice. But when the rear-guard  
 ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ, ἦν ἔδει δια-  
 were at (the) ravine, | which it-was-necessary they-having-  
 δάντες ἔκβαίνειν πρὸς τὸ ὄρδιον,  
 passed through (it) to-come-out on the acclivity, [which they  
 τηνικαῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι  
 had to cross to ascend the acclivity,] then the barbarians  
 ἔκβαίνοντες ὀλοιτρόχους ἀμαξιάίους καὶ  
 rolled (down) round-stones large-enough-to-load-a-wagon, and  
 μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι  
 (other stones also) greater and smaller, which being-borne-along  
 πταίοντες πρὸς τὰς πέτρας διεσφενδονῶντο ·  
 (and) striking against the rocks were-slung-about,  
 καὶ παντάπασιν ἦν οὐδὲ οἶον τε πελάσαι  
 and altogether it-was not-even possible to-have-approached  
 τὴν εἰσόδῳ. Ενιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν εἰ  
 the entrance (of the pass). Some indeed of-the captains, as  
 μὴ δύναιντο ταύτην ἐπειρῶντο  
 the -could not 'effect (a passage) in-this (way) endeavoured  
 ἄλλῃ· καὶ ἐποίουν ταῦτα μέχρι  
 (to approach) in-another; and they-did these (things) until  
 ἐγένετο σκότος· δὲ ἐπεὶ ὤντο ἀπιόντες εἶναι  
 it- became dark, but when they-thought(that) retiring to-be  
 ἀκανεῖς, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· καὶ  
 un observed, then they-went-away to — (their) supper; for  
 δι εἴτε γάρ τις ὅντες ἀνάριστοι οἱ  
 ineed they-happened being dinnerless, — (those, namely,)  
 αὗτῶν ὀπισθοφύλακήσαντες. Οἱ πολέμιοι μέντοι  
 of them guarding-the-rear. The enemy however  
 δηλονότι φοβούμενοι, οὐδὲν ἐπαίσαντες  
 evidently fearing (something), 'did not cease

δι' τῆς ὅλης νυκτὸς κυλινδῦντες τοὺς ἄβοντας  
through the whole night rolling (down) — stones.

δ' ἦν τεκμαίρεσθαι τῷ ψόφῳ. Δ' οἱ  
as it-was (easy) to-be-conjectured by-the noise. But — (those,

ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα περιιόντες κύκλῳ,  
having the guide | going-around in-a-circle, [taking a

καταλαμβάνοντι τοὺς φύλακας καθη-  
[reuitous route,] surprise the guard sit

μένους ἀμφὶ πῦρ· καὶ μὲν κατακανόντες τοὺς,  
ting round (a) fire; and indeed having-killed — (some),

δὲ καταδιξαντες τοὺς, αὐτοι  
and having-followed-after — (others) (in their flight), they

ἔμενον ἐνταῦθ' ὡς κατέχοντες τὸ ἄκρον. Δ' οἱ  
remained there as-if occupying the summit. But —

οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν  
they-did not 'occupy (the summit), but (a) knoll was  
ὑπέρ αὐτῶν, παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ αὕτη στενὴ ὁδός,  
above them, by which was the same narrow road,

ἐφ' ᾧ οἱ φύλακες ἐκάθηντο. Μέντοι ἦν  
at which the guard were-seated. However there-was (an)

ἐφοδος αἰτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οἱ  
approach thence to the enemy, — (those namely)

ἐκάθηντο ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ.  
stationed on the open way.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα· δέ  
And here indeed they-passed the night; but

ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπέφαινε συντεταγμένοι  
when (the) day was-beginning-to-dawn (they) drawn-up-in-order

ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γάρ καὶ  
proceeded in-silence against the enemy; for —

ἔγενετο δύιχλη, ὥστε προελθόντες ἔγγὺς  
there-was (a) mist, so-that advancing near

Ἑλαδον. Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, καὶ  
they-escaped-observation. But when they saw one-another, and

τε ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐπεφθέγξατο, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες  
· the trumpet sounded-the-attack, and the Greek

αλαλάξαντες      ἵεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδρώπους, δε οἱ  
raising-the-shout-of-battle rushed against the men, but the

οὐκ ἀδέξαντο,      ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν  
(enemy) 'did not receive (them), but leaving the  
ὅδον, ὄλιγοι      φεύγοντες ἀπέθνησκον. γὰρ  
road, (a) few (only) fleeing died; | for  
ἡσαν εὗξωνοι.      Δὲ

they-were well-girt [for they were active in their movements]. But

οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος,  
—(those) with Chirisophus, hearing the trumpet,

εὐθὺς ἵεντο ἀνω κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν· ἀλλοι  
immediately rushed up along the open road; others

δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν      ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ  
indeed of-the generals (with their men) proceeded by

ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς ἥ ἔκαστοι ἔτυχον ὅντες, καὶ  
untrodden paths wherever each happened (as) being, and

ἀναβάντες ὡς      ἐδύναντο, ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους  
ascending as (well as) they-could, drew-up one-another

τοῖς δόρασι. Καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμιξαν  
with — (their) spears. And these first-ones joined

τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
— (those) having-secured the place. But Xenophon

ἔχων τοὺς ἡμίσεις τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, ἐπορεύετο  
having the half of-the rear-guard, proceeded

ἥ οἱ ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα.  
(by the road) in-which — (those) having the guide (did);

(γὰρ ἦν εἰδωτάτη τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις.) δὲ τοὺς  
(for it-was the-most-practicable for-the baggage-cattle;) but the

ἡμίσεις ἔταξε      ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑπο-  
(other) half he-ordered (to be stationed) behind the baggage-

ζυγίων      Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐντυγχάνοντι λόφῳ  
cattle. And proceeding-forward they-happened-to-find (a) hill

ὑπέρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν  
(hanging) over the road occupied by the

πολεμίων, οὓς ἦν ἀνάγκη ἦν ἀποκόψαι ἦ  
enemy. whom it-was (a) necessity either to-have-dislodged or

**διεζεῦχθαι** ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ  
to have-been-separated from the other Greeks. And

**αὐτοὶ μὲν ἀν** ἐπορεύθησαν  
(the men) themselves indeed might have-proceeded (in the same  
ἡ οἱ ἄλλοι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἡν οὐκ  
road) in-which the others (did), but (for) the baggage-cattle it-was not

**ἐκβῆναι** ἄλλῃ ἢ ταύτῃ.  
(possible) to-go-from (the valley) in-any-other (way) than thus

**\*Ενδα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἄλληλοις, προσβάλ-**  
Then indeed having-encouraged one-another, they-make-an-

**λούσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον τοῖς ὁρδίοις λόχοις,** [in  
attack against the hill | in-the straight companies, [in

**οἵ κύκλῳ, ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες**  
columns of companies,] not 'in (a) 'circle, but leaving

**ἀφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλοιντο φεύγειν.**  
(a) way-of-escape for-the enemy, if they-wished to-flee.

**Καὶ τέως μὲν, αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας** ὅπῃ  
And for-a-while indeed, they ascending in-whatever-manner

**ἔκαστος ἐδύναντο, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ**  
each could, the barbarians shot-arrows and

**ἔβαλλον, δ' οὐ προσίεντο ἐγγὺς, ἀλλὰ**  
threw-stones, but they-did not 'let-them-come near, but

**φυγὴ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. Καὶ τε οἱ Ἑλληνες**  
in-flight they-leave the place. And — the Greeks

**παρεληλύθεσαν τοῦτον, καὶ ὁρῶσιν ἔτερον**  
having-passed-over this (hill), — they-see another

**λόφον ἐμπροσθεν κατεχόμενον.**  
hill before (them) occupied (by the enemy)

**\*Ἐδόκει αὖθις πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτον.**  
It-seemed (necessary) again to-proceed against this.

**Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐννοήσας, μή, εἰ κατα-**  
But — Xenophon having-been-apprehensive, lest, if he-should-

**λείποι τὸν ἥλωκότα λόφον ἔρημον, καὶ**  
leave the captured hill destitute (of troops), and

**οἱ πολέμιοι πάλιν λαβόντες ἐπιδοῖντο τοῖς**  
the enemy again taking (it) might-attack the

ἐποζυγίοις παριοῦσι, (δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἦν ἐπὶ πολὺ<sup>τό</sup>  
baggage-cattle passing-by, (for the baggage-cattle) were on much

ἄτε πορευόμενα διὰ τῆς στενῆς  
[formed a long train] as-when proceeding through the narrow

όδοῦ,) καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου  
(defiles 'of (the) 'road,) he-leaves on the hill (the)

λοχαγοὺς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος,  
captains Cephisodorus (the son) of-Cephisophon, (an)

\*Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ \*Αμφικράτην \*Αμφιδήμου,  
Athenian, and Amphicrates (the son) of-Amphidemus, (an)

\*Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ \*Αρχαγόραν, φυγάδα \*Αργεῖον.  
Athenian, and Archagoras, (an) exile (from) Argos;

αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν  
himself indeed with the rest marched against the

δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ αἴροντι τοῦτον καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ  
second hill, and they-capture this-one even in-the same

τρόπῳ. \*Ἐτι δὲ ἦν τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς  
manner. Still however there-was (a) third hill remaining

αὐτοῖς, πολὺ ὄρδιώτατος, ὁ ὑπέρ τῆς φυλακῆς  
for-them, much the-steepest, that above (where) the guard

ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης τῆς νυκτὸς  
at the fire was-taken (by surprise) — at-night

ὑπὸ τῶν ἐδελοντῶν. \*Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ \*Ελλῆνες  
by the volunteers. When indeed the Greeks

ἔγενοντο ἐγγὺς οἱ βάρβαροι λείποντι τὸν μαστόν  
got near the barbarians leave the hill

ἀμαχητὶ, ὥστε γενέσθαι θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι, καὶ  
without-fighting, so-as to-be wonderful to-all, and

ὑπώπτευον δείσαντες αὐτούς ἀπολιπεῖν,  
they-suspected (that) having-been-in-fear (that) they left

μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῖντο. Δ' ἀρά<sup>τό</sup>  
(the place), lest being-surrounded they-might-be-besieged. But indeed

οἱ καδορῶντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου τὰ  
— (they) looking-down from the height (upon) the (things)

γιγνομενα ὅπισθεν, πάντες ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ τοὺς  
occurring behind, all went-off against the  
ὅπισθοφύλακας.  
rear-guard.

Kai Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν  
And Xenophon indeed with the youngest-men ascended  
ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ἵπαγειν,  
on-to the summit, and the rest he-ordered to-march-slowly,  
ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμίξειαν καὶ  
so-that the rear companies might-come-up-with (them) and  
εἰπε προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν θέσθαι  
he-told (them) having-advanced along the road to-halt  
τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὅμαλῷ. Kai ἐν τῷ τούτῳ  
under-arms on the level (ground). And at the same  
χρόνῳ Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος ἦλθε πεφευγώς,  
time Archagoras the Argive came having-fled,  
καὶ λέγει ως ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου λόφου,  
and says that they-had-been-cut-off from the first hill,  
καὶ ὅτι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης τεθνᾶσι,  
and that Cephisodorus and Amphicrates were-dead,  
καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι μὴ ἀλλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς  
and-also how-many others (who) not having-leaped down the  
πέτρας ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τοὺς ὅπισθοφύλακας  
rocks (and) arrived at the rear-guard  
Οἱ βάρβαροι δὲ διαπράξαμενοι ταῦτα  
The barbarians indeed having-accomplished these (things),  
ῆκον ἐπὶ λόφον ἀντίπορον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ  
came on (a) hill opposite the knoll; and  
Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἔρμηνέως  
Xenophon commenced-treating with-them through (an) interpreter  
περὶ σπονδῶν, καὶ ἀπήτει τοὺς νεκροὺς. Οἱ  
about (a) truce, and demanded the dead. — (They)  
δέ εἶφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ὧ  
indeed said (that) they-would-give-them-up on — (this con-  
dition), (that) he-would not 'burn the villages. —

Εενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα. Δὲ ἐν ᾧ  
 Xenophon agreed-to this. | But in which [but while]  
 μὲν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα παρήει,  
 indeed the remaining (part of the) army was-passing along  
 δὲ οἱ διελέγοντο ταῦτα, πάντες οἱ  
 and — they-were-discussing these (things), all — (those)  
 ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνερήνησαν. Ἐνταῦθα  
 from that (part of) the country flocked-together. There  
 οἱ πολέμιοι ἴσταντο· καὶ ἐπεὶ  
 the enemy made-a-stand; and when 'they (the Greeks with  
 ἥρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ  
 Xenophon) began to-descend from the knoll  
 πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, ἐνδὰ τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειντο,  
 towards the others, | where the arms lay, [where  
 οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ ἤεντο  
 the heavy armed men were drawn up,] the enemy truly hurried-on  
 πολλῷ πλῆθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ  
 in-great multitude and 'with (much) 'noise-and-tumult; and  
 ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ, ἀφ'  
 when they-got on the vertex of-the knoll, from  
 οὗ Εενοφῶν κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδοντες πέτρας·  
 which Xenophon was-descending, they-commenced-rolling (down) stones;  
 καὶ μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος ἐνὸς, δὲ ὁ  
 and indeed broke the leg of-one (man), and the  
 ἵπασπιστής ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπε  
 shield-bearer having the shield (of Xenophon) deserted  
 Εενοφῶντα. δὲ Εὐρύλοχος Ἀρχὰς Λουσιεὺς  
 Xenophon; but Eurylochus (an) Arcadian of-Lusia (a)  
 ὅπλίτης προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ, καὶ προθεβλημένος  
 heavy-armed-soldier ran-to him, and having-thrown  
 πρὸ ἀμφοῖν ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον  
 before both (his shield) they-departed, and the others went  
 πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους.  
 to — (those) drawn-up (on the level ground).

\*Ἐκ τούτου δὲ τὸ πᾶν Ἑλληνικόν ἐγένετο  
 From this indeed the entire Grecian (force) got

ὅμοῦ, καὶ ἐσκήνωσαν αὐτοῖς  
 alike-together (on the level ground), and they-encamped there  
 ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ δαψιλέσι  
 among many and fine houses and abundant  
 ἐπιτηδείοις. γὰρ καὶ ἦν πολὺς οἶνος, ὥστε  
 provisions; for also there-was much wine, so-that  
 εἶχον ἐν κονιατοῖς λάκκοις. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ  
 they-kept(it) in plastered cisterns. Xenophon and also  
 Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο, ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς  
 Cheirisophus effected (this), that having-taken the  
 νεκρούς ἀπέδοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα·  
 dead (from the enemy) they-would-deliver-up the guide,  
 καὶ ἐποίησαν πάντα ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν  
 and they-performed all (things) in — (their) power  
 τοῖς ἀποδανοῦσιν, ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀγαδοῖς  
 for — (those) having-died, such-as is-usual-and-appropriate for-brave  
 ἀνδράσι. Δέ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο ἄνευ  
 men. And on-the next-day they-proceeded without (a)  
 ἡγεμόνος· δ' οἱ πολέμιοι μαχόμενοι, καὶ δῆπε  
 guide; but the enemy fighting, and where  
 εἴη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες  
 there-might-be (a) narrow place pre-occupying (it)  
 ἐκώλυνον τὰς παρόδους. Οπότε οὖν μὲν κωλύ-  
 obstructed the passes. When therefore indeed they-im-  
 οιει τοὺς πρώτους, Ξενοφῶν ἐκβαίνων  
 peded | — (those) first, [the front,] Xenophon going-from  
 ὅπισθεν πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς  
 behind to the mountain, opened the obstructions of-the  
 παρόδου τοῖς πρῶτοις πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι  
 passes for-the front endeavouring to-get  
 ἐνωτέρῳ τῶν κωλυόντων· δέ ὅπότε ἐπι-  
 higher (than) — (those) obstructing; but when they-  
 δοῦντο τοῖς ὅπισθεν, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων  
 attacked — (those) behind, Cheirisophus departing  
 καὶ πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι ἀνωτέρῳ  
 (from his plane) and endeavouring to-get higher than

εῶν καλινόντων, ἤλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς  
 — (those) obstructing, opened the obstruction of-the  
 παρόδου τοῖς ὅπισθεν· καὶ οὕτως ἀεὶ ἔβοήδουν  
 passes for — (those) behind; and thus always they-assisted  
 ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἵσχυρῶς ἐπεμέλουντο ἀλλήλων. Δὲ  
 each-other, and strenuously took-care of-each-other. And  
 καὶ ὅποτε ἦν οἱ βάρβαροι παρεῖχον πολλὰ  
 also sometimes it-was (that) the barbarians | exhibited many  
 πράγματα τοῖς  
 things to — (those) [annoyed very much those] having-ascended  
 πάλιν καταβαίνοντι· γάρ ήσαν ἐλαφροὶ  
 (when) again descending; for they-were nimble  
 ὥστε ἀποφεύγειν καὶ φεύγοντες ἐγγύδεν, γάρ  
 so-as to-escape even fleeing from-near, for  
 εἶχον οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. Δὲ  
 they-had nothing else than bows and slings. And  
 καὶ ήσαν ἀριστοὶ τοξόται· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγύς  
 also they-were the-best archers; they-had indeed bows nearly  
 τριπήχη, δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη·  
 three-cubits (long), and the arrows more than two-cubits;  
 εἷλκον δὲ τὰς νευράς, ὅποτε τοξεύοιεν προβαί-  
 they-drew indeed the strings, when they-shot stepping-  
 νούντες τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ πρὸς τὸ κάτω τὸν  
 forward with-the left foot against the lower (part) of-the  
 τόξου. Δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα ἔχωρει διὰ τῶν  
 bow. And the arrows went through the  
 ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. Δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες,  
 shields and through the corslets. But the Greeks,  
 ἐπεὶ λάθοιεν, ἔχρωντο αὐτοῖς ἀκοντίους,  
 after they-took (them up), made-use-of them for-javelins,  
 ἔναγκυλῶντες. Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς  
 having-fitted-a-poise-to-the-middle-like-a-javelin. In these —  
 χωρίους οἱ Κρῆτες ἐγένοντο χρησιμώτατοι. Δὲ  
 places the Cretans were the-most-useful. And  
 Στρατοκλῆς Κρής ἦρχε αὐτῶν  
 Stratocles (a) Cretan commanded them

## CHAPTER III

Δέ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν αὐτὸν ηὐλίσθησαν  
 And this — day likewise (the Greeks) were-lodge  
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ταῖς ὑπερ τοῦ πεδίου  
 in the villages (namely) — (those) above the plain  
 τοῦ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν Κεντρίτην,  
 — (that is situated) along the river Centrites, (the)  
 ἐνδρος ὡς δίπλεδρον, ὃς ὁρίζει τὴν  
 breadth (thereof is) about two-hundred-feet, which (river) bounds —  
 Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν χώραν τῶν Καρδούχων. Καὶ  
 Armenia and the country of-the Carduchi. And  
 οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀνεπάύσαντο ἐνταῦθα ἀσμενοι  
 the Greeks rested here rejoiced (at)  
 ἰδόντες πεδίον· δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς ἀπείχε τῶν  
 seeing (a) plain; and the river was-distant from-the  
 ὅρέων τῶν Καρδούχων ἕξ ή ἑπτὰ στάδια.  
 mountains of-the Carduchi six or seven stadia.  
 Τότε μὲν οὖν ηὐλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως,  
 ! Then indeed therefore they-were-lodged very pleasantly, [here  
 εχοντες καὶ τάπι-  
 they stayed with great pleasure,] having also (plenty of) pro-  
 τήδεια καὶ μνημονεύοντες πολλὰ τῶν  
 visions and were-reflecting much — (on their)  
 παρεληλυθότων πόνων. Γάρ ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας  
 past labours. For (during) seven days  
 ὅσας περ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρ-  
 δούχων, μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν πάσας, καὶ  
 duchi, fighting they-passed (them) all, and  
 ἔπαδον κακά ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα  
 suffered evils so-many-that not 'all — (those) together

ὑπο βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέριους.  
 (received) from (the) king and Tissaphernes (would

‘Ως οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων  
 equal them). So—that therefore freed from-these (dangers)  
 ἥδεως ἐκοιμήθησαν.  
 ‘they gladly were-made-to-take-repose.

“Αμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρῶσιν  
 At-the-same-time indeed with-the (break of) day they-perceive  
 ἔξωπλισμένους ἵππεας πον πέραν τοῦ  
 completely-armed horsemen some-where on-the-other-side of-the  
 ποταμοῦ, ὡς κωλύσοντας διαβάι-  
 river, so-as (that) they-would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-  
 νειν, δέ πεζοὺς παρατεταγμένους  
 over, and (also they perceived) foot-soldiers drawn-up-in-order-of-battle  
 ἐπὶ ταῖς ὅχθαις ἄνω τῶν ἵππεων, ὡς κωλύ-  
 on the high-banks above the horsemen, so-as (that) they-  
 σοντας ἐκβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν.  
 would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-over into — Armenia.

Δ’ οὗτοι ἦσαν Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι  
 And these were Armenians and Mardians and Chaldaeans  
 μισθοφόροι Ὁρόντου καὶ Ἀρτούχου. Δὲ οἱ Χαλ-  
 mercenaries of-Orontes and Artuchus. And the Chal-  
 δαῖοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἀλκιμοί·  
 Iæans were-said to-be (a) free and also (a) brave

δε εἶχον ὅπλα μακρὰ γέρρα καὶ  
 (people); and they-had (for) arms long shields and  
 λόγχας. Δὲ αἱ αὗται ὅχθαι, ἐφ' ὅν οὗτοι  
 spears. But the same elevated-banks, on which these  
 ἦσαν παρατεταγμένοι, ἀπειχον ἀπὸ  
 (foot-soldiers) were drawn-up-in-order-of-battle, were-distant from  
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα·  
 the river three or four plethra (the plethora

δὲ μία ὁδὸς ἢ ὁρωμένη  
 being about a hundred feet); and (the) one (only) road which was-visible  
 ἢν ἀγονσα ἄνω, δεσπερ χειροποίητος· οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 was (one) leading upwards, as-if made-by-hand; the Greeks

ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν ταύτην.      Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ  
 endeavoured to-cross in-this (place). When indeed the  
 τε ὕδωρ ἔφαίνετο ὑπέρ τῶν μαστῶν πειρωμένοις  
 — water appeared above the breasts to-those-making-trial  
 καὶ ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν τραχὺς μεγάλοις  
 (to cross over) and the river was rough with-large  
 καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς λίδοις, καὶ οὐτ' ἦν ἔχειν  
 and slippery rocks, and neither was-it (possible) to-have  
 τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὕδατι. δὲ εἰ μή ὁ ποταμός  
 — (their) arms in the water; | but if not [or else] the river  
 ἤρπαζεν.      εἰ τις φέροι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπὶ<sup>o</sup>  
 swept (them) away; if any-one carried — (his) arms on  
 τε τῆς κεφαλῆς ἐγίγνοντο γυμνοὶ πρὸς τὰ  
 — — (his) head he-became bare-and-exposed to the  
 τοξεύματα καὶ τἄλλα βέλη.      οὖν  
 arrows and the-other missiles (of the enemy); therefore  
 ἀνεχώρησαν, καὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο αὐτοῦ παρὰ  
 they-retreated, and encamped there along  
 τὸν ποταμόν.      Ενδα δὲ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν  
 the river.      There indeed (where) they-themselves had-been  
 τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα, ἐπὶ τοὺς ὄρους, ἐώρων τοὺς  
 on-the previous night, on the mountain, they-saw the  
 Καρδούχους συνειλεγμένους πολλοὺς ἐν τοῖς  
 Carduchi assembled-together (in) great-numbers in —  
 ὅπλοις.      Ενταῦθα δὴ ἦν πολλὴ ἀδυμία τοῖς  
 arms.      Here truly there-was great despondency to-the  
 Ἑλλησιν ὄρῶσι μὲν τὴν δυσπορίαν τοῦ  
 Greeks (as) they-perceive indeed the difficult-passage of-the  
 ποταμοῦ, δὲ ὄρῶσι τοὺς  
 river, and (as) they-perceive — (those on the other side of the  
 καλύσσοντας διαβαίνειν, δὲ ὄρῶσι τοὺς  
 river) opposed to-crossing-over, and (as) they-perceive the  
 Καρδούχους ἐπικεισομένους ὄπισθεν τοῖς  
 Carduchi hanging-on (the) rear (of) — (those,  
 διαβαίνοντας. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ  
 crossing-over. Therefore indeed on-that-same — day and

τὴν νύκτα ἔμειναν δντες ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ      Δὲ  
 — night they-remained, being in great perplexity      | But  
**Ξενοφῶν εἶδεν δναρ.**      ξδοξε  
 Xenophon saw (a) dream [but Xenophon had a dream]: he-seemed  
 δεδέσθαι ἐν πέδαις, δὲ αῦται περιόρυ-  
 to-have-been-bound in fetters, but these (seemed) to-have-  
 ἦναι αὐτῷ αὐτόμαται, ὅςτε λυθῆ-  
 dropped-off from-him of-their-own-accord, so-that (he seemed) to-have  
 ναι, καὶ διαβαίνειν, ὅπόσον ἔθούλετο.  
 been-loosened, and (able) to-stride-about, as-much-as he-pleased.  
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὅρθρος, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρί-  
 But when it-was near-the-dawn-of-day, he-went to — Cheiri-  
 σοφον, καὶ λέγει, ὅτι ἔχει ἐλπίδας      ἔσεσθαι  
 sophus, and says, that he-has hopes (that all) will-be  
 καλῶς, καὶ διηγεῖται αὐτῷ τὸ δναρ.      'Ο  
 well, and relates to-him — (his) dream. — (He)  
 δὲ ἥδετό τε, καὶ ως τάχιστα      ἔως ὑπέ-  
 indeed was-delighted, — and, as speedily-as (the) dawn began-  
 φαινε πάντες οἱ στρατηγοί πορόντες ἐδύοντο·  
 to-appear, all the generals being-present sacrificed;  
 καὶ τὰ ιερὰ ἦν καλὰ εὐδὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου.  
 and the victims were favourable immediately from the first.  
 Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν  
 And the generals and captains going-away from the  
 ιερῶν παρήγγελλον τὴ στρατιᾶ      ἀριστο-  
 sacrifices gave-orders in-the army (for the troops) to-break-  
 ποιεῖσθαι. Καὶ δύο νεανίσκω προσέτρεχον τῷ  
 fast.      And two young-men came-running to —  
**Ξενοφῶντι ἀριστῶντι.** γὰρ πάντες ἤδεσαν  
 Xenophon (while) breakfasting; for all knew  
 ὅτι ἔξειν προσελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ  
 that it-might-be-allowed (to them) to-approach him even  
 ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι, καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι,  
 breakfasting and supping, and (also) if he-were-asleep,  
 ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἰ τις ἔχοι τι  
 having-been-awakened to-speak (to him), if any-one might-have any-th'ng

τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον.  
 of — (these things) (relating) to the war (to say)

Καὶ τότε ἔλεγον, δτι τυγχάνοιεν συλλέγοντες  
 And then they-said, | that they-might-happen gathering

φρύγανα ως ἐπὶ πῦρ,  
 sticks as for (the) fire, [that as they were gathering stick

κἀπειτα κατίδοιεν, ἐν τῷ πέραν  
 for the fire,] (and then) they-saw, on the other-side (of the river)

ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν  
 on (the) rocks reaching-down to the river

αὐτὸν, γέροντά τε καὶ γυναικας καὶ παιδίσκας,  
 itself, an-old-man and also women and girls,

ὥσπερ κατατίθεμένους μαρσίπους ἴματίων ἐν  
 as-if depositing bags of-clothes in (a)

ἀντρώδει πέτρᾳ. Δὲ δόξαι σφισι ἰδοῦσι  
 cavernous rock. And (that) it-appeared to-them seeing

εἶναι ἀσφαλές διαβῆναι· γὰρ οὐδὲ εἶναι  
 (this) to-be safe to-cross-over; for (that) neither was-it

πρόσβατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἵπτεῦσι κατὰ τοῦτο.  
 accessible for-the hostile cavalry at this (place)

Δ' ἔφασαν ἐκδύντες ἔχοντες τὰ  
 And they-said, (that) having-undressed (and) having — (their)

ἔγχειρίδια διαβαίνειν γυμνοὶ ως νευσούμενοι, δὲ  
 daggers they-crossed-over naked as being-about-to-swim, and

πορευόμενοι πρόσδεν διαβῆναι πρὶν  
 proceeding forwards (that) they-crossed-over before (that)

βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα, καὶ διαβάντες καὶ λαβόντες  
 they-wetted the middle, and crossing-over and taking

τὰ ἴματα ἤκειν πάλιν.  
 the clothes (that) they-came (back) again.

'Ο Ξενοφῶν αὐτός οὖν τε εὐθὺς  
 — Xenophon himself therefore not-only immediately

ἔσπενδε καὶ ἔκέλευε τοῖς νεανίσκοις  
 'made (a) libation, but-also ordered the young-men

ἔγχεῖν.  
 to-pour-in (wine into the cups to make a libation themselves), and

ἐγχεσθαι τοῖς θεοῖς φήνασι τε τὰ ὄνειρατα  
 to-pray to-the gods having-shown not-only the dreams  
 καὶ τὸν πόρον, καὶ ἐπιτελέσαι τὰ ἀγαδὰ  
 but-also the passage, even (that) they-would-complete the good-things  
 λοιπὰ. Δὲ σπείσας εὐθὺς ἥγε τοὺς  
 remaining. And (the) libations-made 'he immediately 'led the  
 νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦντα  
 young-men to — Chirisophus, and relates  
 ταῦτα. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀκούσας  
 these-same (things). And also — Cheirisophus having-heard (them)  
 ἐποίει σπονδὰς. Δὲ μὲν σπείσαντες  
 made (a) libation. And indeed having-made-the-libations  
 παρήγελλον ἄλλοις  
 they-ordered | the-others [the soldiers] to-collect-their-baggage-together;  
 αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς  
 they-themselves indeed calling-together the generals  
 ἔβοιλενοντο ὡπῶς ἀν διαβαίεν  
 consulted-with (them) how 'they might 'cross (the river)  
 κάλλιστα, καὶ τε νικῶν τοὺς  
 to-the-best-advantage, and not-only (that) they-might-conquer —  
 ἐμπροσθεν, καὶ πάσχοιεν μηδὲν κακόν  
 (those) in-front-of (them), but-also suffer no evil  
 ὑπὸ τῶν δπισθεν. Καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς  
 from — (those) 'in (their) rear. And it-seemed to-them  
 Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἥγεισθαι, καὶ διαβά-  
 good) (that) Cheirisophus indeed should-take-the-lead, and to-cross-  
 νειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ  
 ever having the half of-the army, and  
 ἔτι τὸ ἥμισυ ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενο-  
 moreover (that) the (other) half should-remain-behind with Xenon-  
 φώντι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὅχλον  
 phon, and (that) the baggage-cattle and the crowd (of camp-  
 διαβαίνειν ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.  
 (followers) to-cross-over in (the) middle of-these (two divisions).

Ἐπει δὲ ταῦτα εἰχε καλῶς,  
 When indeed these things had (themselves) well

ἐπορεύοντο· δὲ οἱ νεανίσκαι  
 (and in good order), they-proceeded-forward; and the young-men  
 ἤγοῦντο ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ  
 guided (them) having the river on (the) left,  
 δὲ ὄδός ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ἦν ὡς τέτταρες  
 and (the) way to the ford was about four  
 στάδιοι. Δὲ, αὐτῶν πορευομένων, αἱ τάξεις τῶν  
 stadia. But, they proceeding, the lines of-the  
 ἵππεων ἀντιπαρήσαν. Δὲ  
 cavalry passed-along-opposite (them, on the other side of the river). And  
 ἐπειδὴ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὁχδας  
 when they-were at the ford and the shores  
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ δπλα, καὶ Χειρίσοφος  
 of-the river, they-stacked — (their) arms, and Cherasophus  
 αὐτὸς πρῶτος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς  
 himself first having-crowned-himself and taking-off-his-clothes  
 ἐλάμβανε τὰ δπλα, καὶ παρήγελε πᾶσι  
 he-took — (his) arms, and he-ordered all  
 τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς λοχαγοὺς  
 the rest (to do the same), and he-ordered the captains  
 ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὁρδίους, τοὺς μὲν  
 to-lead the companies drawn-up-in-columns, — (some) indeed  
 ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, δὲ τοὺς  
 (of these columns being) on (the) left-hand, and — (others)  
 ἐν δεξιᾳ ἔσαυτοῦ. Καὶ οἱ μάντεις μὲν ἐσφα-  
 on (the) right-hand of-himself. And the augurs indeed sacri-  
 γιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ  
 ficed-victims (so that the blood flowed) into the river; the  
 πολέμιοι δὲ ἐτόξευόν τε καὶ  
 enemy indeed (at the same time) kept-shooting-arrows and also  
 ἐσφευδόνων· ἀλλ' οὔτω ἐξικνοῦντο.  
 kept-slinging-stones; but they-did (not) as-yet reach (the Greeks).  
 'Επεὶ δὲ τὰ σφάγια ἦν καλὰ πάντες οἱ στρα-  
 When indeed the victims were favourable all the sol-  
 τιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, δὲ καὶ ἀπασι αἱ γυναικες  
 diers even raised-the-war-cry, and also all the women

συνωλόλυζον.

cried-out-and-shouted-with (them). For there-were many mistresses

ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε  
in the army And Cherasophus indeed entered

καὶ οἱ σὺν ἔκεινῷ· δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν  
(the river), and —(those) with him (also); but — Xenophon,

λαβὼν τοὺς εὑζωνοτάτους τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων,  
taking the most-active of-the rear-guard,

ἔδει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον  
ran at (the) utmost (speed) back to the fora,

τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ  
— (to that) opposite the outlet — (that led) to the

ὄρη τῶν Ἀρμενίων, προσποιούμενος διαβὰς  
mountains of — Armenia, making-a-feint (as) crossing

ταύτη ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς ἵππεis παρὰ τὸν  
in-that (place) to-cut-off the cavalry along the

ποταμὸν. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι μὲν ὄρῶντες τοὺς  
river. But the enemy indeed seeing — (those)

ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς περῶντας τὸ ὑδώρ,  
with Cherasophus easily crossing-over the water,

ὄρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας  
seeing likewise — (those) with Xenophon | running

εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ ἀποκλεισθεῖ-  
to the-contrary [running back,] fearing lest they-might-be-in-

ησαν, φεύγονταν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς  
tercepted, they-flee at (their utmost) power as-if to

τὴν ἔκβασιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀνω. Ἐπεὶ δὲ  
the outlet from the river upwards. When indeed

ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔτεινον ἀνω πρὸς  
they-got to the road (or outlet) they-stretched upwards to

τὸ ὅρος. Λύκιος δὲ, ὁ ἔχων τὴν  
the mountain. Lycius indeed, who having (the command of) the

τάξιν τῶν ἵππεων, καὶ Αἰσχίνης, ὁ ἔχων  
body of — cavalry, and  $\text{Æ}$ schines, who having (the

τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν  
command of) the body of — targeteers (name'y) — (those)

ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἔώρων, φεύγοντας  
 with Cheirisophus, when they-saw (the enemy) fleeing  
 ἀνὰ κράτος εἶποντο· οἱ στρατιῶται  
 at (their utmost) power commenced-pursuing; the soldiers  
 δὲ ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ  
 also called-out (that they should) not be-left-behind, but  
 συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Δ'  
 to-go-through-with (the pursing cavalry) to the mountain. But  
 αὐτὸς Χειρίσοφος ἐπεὶ διέβη, οὐ μὲν  
 on-the-contrary Cheirisophus when he-crossed-over, 'did not indeed  
 ἐδίωκε τοὺς ἵππεας, δε εὐδὺς ἐξέβαινεν ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 'follow the cavalry, but immediately went-forth against  
 τοὺς πολεμίους ἀνω κατὰ τὰς ὁχδας προσ-  
 the enemy above (stationed) along the banks extend-  
 ηκούσας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. Δε οἱ ἀνω  
 ing-down to the river. But —(those) above (on these  
 ὅρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἵππεας ἑαυτῶν φεύγοντας,  
 nigh banks) seeing indeed the cavalry of-themselves fleeing,  
 δ' ὅρῶντες ὄπλιτας ἐπιόντας σφίσιν  
 and seeing (the) heavy-armed-soldiers advancing-against themselves  
 ἐκλείποντι τὰ ἄκρα ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.  
 they-abandon the heights above the river.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἐπεὶ ἔώρα τὰ πέραν γιγνό-  
 Xenophon indeed when he-saw (things) on-the other-side be-  
 μενα καλῶς ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην  
 coming prosperous-and-well departed (with) the greatest-speed  
 πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· (γάρ καὶ οἱ Καρ-  
 to the crossing army; (for also the Car-  
 δοῦχοι ἦσαν ἦδη φανεροὶ καταβαίνοντες εἰς τὸ  
 duchi were now evidently descending to the  
 πεδίον ὡς ἐπιδησόμενοι τοῖς τελευτάσις.)  
 plain as-if about-attacking — (those) behind.)  
 Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν κατεῖχε τὰ ἀνω,  
 And Cheirisophus indeed (now) occupied the (place) above,  
 δὲ Λύκιος, σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπι-  
 and Lycius, with (his) few 'men) having-undertaken to

διώξαι, ἔλαβε τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα τῶν σκευο-  
 pursue, captured the (portions) left-behind of-the bag  
 φόρων, καὶ μετὰ τούτων τε καλὴν ἐσδῆτα  
 gage, and among these not-only fine garments  
 καὶ ἔκπωματα. Καὶ μὲν τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν  
 but-also drinking-cups. And — the baggage of-the  
 Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὅχλος ἀκμὴν διέ  
 Greeks and the crowd (of camp-followers) <sup>weie yet</sup> 'pass-  
 βαίνε, δὲ Ξενοφῶν στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχοις,  
 ing, and Xenophon having-turned towards the Carduchi,  
 ἔσθετο ἀντία τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ παρήγειλε  
 halted over-against (them) under-arms; and he-ordered  
 τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποιῆσασθαι ἔκαστον τὸν λόχον  
 the captains to-form each — company  
 ἐκατοῦ κατ' ἐνωμοτίας, παραγαγόντας  
 of-theirs into divisions-of-five-and-twenty-men, having-wheeled  
 τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν παρ' ἀσπίδας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος·  
 the division-of-twenty-five-men by the-left into line  
 καὶ μὲν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἐνωμοτάρχας  
 and (he ordered) — the captains and (the) commanders-of  
 ἵέναι πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων, δὲ  
 (these) 'divisions to-go against the Carduchi, and (the)  
 οὐραγοὺς καταστῆσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ.  
 commanders-of-the-rear to-halt at the river.  
 Δ' οἱ Καρδούχοι, ὡς ἔώρων τοὺς ὄπισθοφύλακας  
 But the Carduchi, as they-perceived the rear-guard  
 τοῦ ὅχλου ψιλουμένους, καὶ ἥδη φαινου-  
 of-the crowd (of camp-followers) diminished, and now ap-  
 μένους ὀλίγους, δὴ ἐπήεσαν θᾶττον ᾖδοντες  
 peared few, <sup>'they indeed</sup> 'advanced more-quickly singing  
 τινας ψέματα. Οἱ Χειρίσοφοι δὲ, ἐπεὶ εἶχε τὰ  
 certain songs. — Cheirisophus indeed, when he-had the  
 παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς, πέμπει τοὺς πελταστὰς  
 (things) about himself safe, sends the targeteers  
 καὶ σφενδονῆτας καὶ τοξότας παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα,  
 and slingers and archers to Xenophon

καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὁ τι ἀν παραγγέλλῃ  
and he-commanded (them) to-do whatever he might <sup>order</sup>

Δ' ὁ Ξενοχῶν ιδὼν αὐτοὺς διαβάίνοντας πέμψας  
But — Xenophon having-seen them crossing having-sen'

ἄγγελον κελεύει μεῖναι αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ  
a) messenger to-request (them) to-remain there at the

ποταμοῦ, μὴ διαβάντας. Ὅταν δ' αὗτοί<sup>[Xenophon]</sup>  
river, not having-crossed. When indeed they

ἀρξῶνται διαβάίνειν ἐμβαίνειν  
and his men] begin to-cross (that they should) enter

ἐναντίους ἐνδεν καὶ ἐνδεν σφῶν ὡς  
(the river) opposite on-this-side and on-that-side of-them as-if

διαβησομένους, τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς διηγκυλωμέ-  
about-to-cross, the javelin-men holding-the-javelin-by-the-

νους, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιθεβλημένους.  
poise, and the archers having-placed (their) arrows-on-

δὲ μὴ προβαίνειν πρόσω τοῦ ποταμοῦ.  
the-string; but not to-advance far-into the river.

Παρήγγειλε δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἑαυτῷ  
||He-ordered — — (those) about himself [he ordered his

ἐπειδὰν σφενδόνη ἔξικνῆται,  
own men] (that) when (a stone from a) sling shall-reach

καὶ ἀσπὶς ψοφῇ παιανίσαντας  
(them), and (a) shield resounded (that) having-sung-the-paeon

θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους. δὲ ἐπειδὰν οἱ  
they-should-rush on the enemy; and when the

πολέμιοι ἀναστρέψωσι, καὶ ὁ σαλπιγκτῆς σημή-  
enemy should-turn-to-flee, and the trumpeter should-sound-the-

νη τὸ πολεμικόν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τοὺς  
signal the warlike-one (of attack) from the river, (that)

οὐραγούς μὲν ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ  
leaders-of-the-rear — having-turned to (the) right

πγεῖσθαι, δὲ πάντας θεῖν, καὶ διαβάίνειν ὅτι  
to-take-the-lead, and all to-run, and to-cross-over as

τάχιστα, ἥ ἔκαστος εἶχεν τὴν τάξιν  
fast-as-possible. where each-one had — (his) file

άς μη ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἔσοιτο  
so-as not to-impede one-another, (and) that that-one would-be  
ἀριστος ὃς ἀν πρώτος γένηται ἐν τῷ  
the-best (man) who might first get on the  
πέραν.  
other-side.

Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ὄρῶντες τοὺς λοιπούς  
But the Carduchi seeing — (those) remaining  
ἡδη ὄλιγους, (γάρ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τεταγμένων  
now few, (for also many of — (those) ordered  
μένειν ψήχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ὑποξυ-  
to-remain departed taking-care, — (some indeed of-the-baggage-  
γίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, δ' οἱ  
attle, — (some) also 'of (their) 'utensils (and baggage), and — (others)  
ἐταιρῶν,) ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως,  
of (their) 'mistresses,) here indeed 'pressed boldly 'on,  
καὶ ἡρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν.  
and began to-'use (their) 'slings and bows.

Δ' οἱ Ἑλληνες παιανίσαντες ὠρμησαν δρόμῳ  
But the Greeks having-sung-the-pæan started-forward 'in (a) 'run  
ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο·  
upon them; — 'they indeed 'did not 'receive (the 'charge  
γάρ καὶ ἡσαν ὠπλισμένοι, ὡς μὲν ἐν  
of the Greeks); for though they-were armed, as indeed in  
τοῖς ὅρεσιν, ἵκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ  
— (their) mountains, fit for — attacking and  
φεύγειν, δὲ πρὸς δέχεσθαι τὸ εἰς χεῖρας  
fleeing, but for receiving (any enemy) | the to hand  
οὐκ ἵκανῶς. Ἐν τούτῳ  
[hand to hand] (they were) not fit. At this (time)  
ὁ σαλπιγκτής σημαίνει· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι  
the trumpeter sounds; and the — enemy  
ἔφευγον ἔτι πολὺ θάττον, δ' οἱ Ἑλληνες στρέ-  
fled yet much faster, but the Greeks having  
ψαντες τάνατία ἔφευγον ὅτι τάχιστα διὰ τοῦ  
turned to-the-contrary fled as fast-as-possible over the

ποταμοῦ Οἱ τινες δὲ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων, αἰσθό-  
river. — Some however of-the enemy, per-  
μενοι ἔδραμον πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν, καὶ  
ceiving (this) ran back to the river, and  
τοξεύοντες ἐτρωσαν ὀλίγους,  
using (their) 'bows wounded (a) few (of our men;  
δ' οἱ πολλοὶ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὄντων  
but the greater (number of them), even the Greeks being  
πέραν, ἔτι ἡσαν φανεροὶ φεύγοντες Δ' αἱ  
on-the-other-side, yet were evidently fleeing. But —  
ἵπαντήσαντες, ἀνδριζό-  
(those who) had-come-to-meet (them), priding-themselves-on-their-man-  
μενοι καὶ προϊόντες προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ,  
hood-and-courage, and advancing farther (than) — proper,  
πάλιν διέβησαν ὑστερον τῶν μετὰ  
again crossed (the river) behind — (those) with  
Ξενοχῶντος· καὶ ἐτρώδησαν καὶ  
Xenophon; and 'they (the Carduchi) 'wounded even  
τινες τούτων.  
some of-those.

## CHAPTER IV

Ἐπεὶ δέ διέβησαν, συντάξα  
 WHEN indeed they-had-crossed, (and) having-drawn-themselves-up  
 μενοι ἀμφὶ μέσου ήμέρας, ἐπορεύθησαν,  
 in-order about (the) middle 'of (the) 'day, they-proceeded,  
 οὐ μείον ἦ πέντε παρασάγγας, διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας,  
 not less than five parasangs, through — Armenia.  
 ἀπαν πεδίον καὶ γηλόφους λείους.  
 (it being) altogether (a) plain, and (having) hills of-gentle-ascent;  
 γὰρ οὐκ οὐ κῶμαι ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ διὰ  
 for there-were not villages near the river on-account of

τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους  
the wars (namely) — (those) with the Carduchi.

Δεῖ εἰς ἦν κώμην ἀφίκοντο ἦν τε μεγάλη.  
But (the village) at which village they-arrived was not-only large,

καὶ εἶχε βασίλειον τῷ σατραπῇ, καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς  
but-also had (a) palace for-the satrap, and on the  
πλείσταις οἰκίαις ἐπῆσαν τύρσεις· ἐπιτήδεια δὲ  
most houses there-were towers; provisions indeed

ἦν δαψιλῆ. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν δύο  
were abundant. Thence — they-proceeded two  
σταδμὸς, δέκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι ὑπερῆλ-  
days'-march, (making) ten parasangs, until they-passed-

Σον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος. Ἐντεῦθεν  
beyond the sources of-the river Tigris. Thence

δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν τρεῖς σταδμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα  
— they-proceeded three days'-march (making) fifteen  
παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τηλεβόαν. Οὗτος  
parasangs to the river Teleboas. This

δὲ ἦν μὲν καλὸς, δὲ οὐ μέγας· δὲ ἦσαν  
(river) — was indeed beautiful, but not large; and there-were  
πολλαὶ κῶμαι περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. Δεῖ οὖτος  
many villages along — (this) river. And — this

τόπος ἐκαλεῖτο Ἀρμενία ἥ πρὸς  
place was-called Armenia (that namely) which (was) towards (the)  
ἐσπέραν. Δέ οὐπαρχος αὐτῆς ἦν Τηρίβαζος,  
west. And (the) lieutenant-governor of-it was Teribazus,

ὁ καὶ γενόμενος φίλος βασιλεῖ (καὶ ὅποτε  
who even had-become (a) friend to (the) king (and when  
παρείν οὐδεὶς ἄλλος ἀνέβαλλε βασιλέα  
he-might-be-present no-one else put (the) king

ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Οὗτος προσῆλασεν ἔχων  
on — (his) horse. This (person) came-forward having

ἵππεας, καὶ προπέμψας ἔρμηνέα εἶπεν,  
cavalry (with him), and having-sent-forward (an) interpreter to-say,

ὅτι βούλοιτο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. Ἔδοξε  
that he-wished to-have-spoken-with the commanders. It-seemed

δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀκοῦσαι. Καὶ προς·  
 indeed (good) to-the generals to-hear (him). And ad  
 ελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἡρώτων τί θέλοι.  
 vancing within hearing (distance) they-inquired what he-might-wish.  
 Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, ὅτι Βούλοιτο σπείσασθαι,  
 Who — (then) said, that he-desired to-make-a-treaty (with them),  
 ἐφ' ὧ μῆτε αὐτὸς ἀδικεῖν τοὺς  
 |on which [on the condition] (that) neither he-himself should-injure the  
 Ἑλληνας, μῆτε ἔκείνους καίσιν τὰς  
 Greeks, nor (that) they (the Greeks) should-burn the  
 οἰκίας, τε λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 houses, also (that they might) take — provisions  
 ὅσων δέοιντο. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε  
 (of)-as-much-as they-wanted. These (proposals) seemed (good)  
 τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.  
 to-the generals, and they-made-a-treaty on these (terms).

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου τρεῖς  
 Thence indeed they-proceeded through (the) plain three  
 σταδιοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας· καὶ  
 days'-march (making) fifteen parasangs; and

Τηρίβαζος παρηκολούθει, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ,  
 Teribazus followed, | having the force of-himself,

ἀπέχων ὡς δέκα σταδίους·  
 [having his own troops,] (and) being-distant about ten stadia;

καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς Βασίλεια, καὶ πολλὰς  
 and they-arrived at (a) palace, (there being) also many

κώμας πέριξ μεστάς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.  
 villages round-about (it) filled-with much — provisions

Δ' αὐτῶν στρατοπεδεύομένων γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς  
 But they having-encamped there-happened in-the night

πολλή χώρη· καὶ ἔωδεν ἔδοξε διασκη-  
 much snow; and in-the-morning it-seemed-best to-distribute-in

μῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς  
 quarters the troops and the generals among the

κώμας· γὰρ οὐ ἐώρων οὐδένα πολέμιον,  
 villages; for they-did not 'see (no) (any) πολέμιον, enemix

καὶ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς  
and it-seemed to-be safe on-account-of the quantity of —  
χιόνος. Ἐνταῦδα εἰχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἔστιν  
snow. Here they-had — provisions such-as are  
ἀγαδά, οἱερεῖα, σῖτον, εὐώδεις  
good, (namely) | victims, [animals used for food,] corn, fragrant  
παλαιοὺς οἴνους, ἀσταφίδας, παντοδαπά ὅσπρια.  
old wines, dried-grapes, all-kinds (of) pulse.  
Τινὲς δὲ τῶν ἀποσκεδαννυμένων ἀπὸ τοῦ  
Some — of -- (those) scattered-about from the  
στρατοπέδου ἐλεγον, ὅτι κατίδοιεν στράτευμα,  
camp said, that they-saw (an) army,  
καὶ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοιτο νύκτωρ. Ἐδόκει  
and (that) many fires appeared during-the-night. It-seemed  
δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διασκη-  
indeed to-the generals not to-be safe to-quarter  
νοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν πάλιν τὸ  
dispersed, but (that they ought) to-bring-together again the  
στράτευμα. Ἐντεῦδεν συνῆλθον· γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ  
army. Thereupon they-assembled; for it-seemed even  
συναιδριάζειν. Δ' αὐτῶν νυκτερευόντων ἐνταῦδα  
to-be-clearing-up. But they passing-the-night here  
ἀπλετος χιὼν ἐπιπίπτει, διςτε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ  
(a) vast-quantity (of) snow falls, so-that it-covered both  
τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνδρώποντος κατακειμένους  
the arms and the men lying  
καὶ ἡ χιὼν συνεπόδισε τὰ ὑποζύγια·  
(on the ground); and the snow benumbed the baggage-cattle;  
καὶ ἦν πολὺς ὀξνος ἀνίστασθαι· γὰρ ἡ χιὼν  
and there-was much sluggishness to-rise-up; for the snow  
ἐπιπεπτωκύia κατακειμένων ἦν ἀλεεινὸν,  
having-fallen-on (them) lying down was warm (to them),  
μὴ παραρρίσουείν ὅτω. Επεὶ δέ  
(provided) it-did not fall-off from-them. When however  
Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε ἀναστὰς γυμνὸς  
Xenophon | dared having-risen-up naked | dared to rise up

σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἀν και  
lived of his outer garments] to-split wood, speedily — also  
τις ἄλλος ἀναστάς ἀφελόμενος ἔκείνου  
some other-one having-risen-up (and) having-taken (the wood) from-him  
ἔσχιζεν. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες  
split (it). After thus — also the others having-risen-up  
ἔκαιον πῦρ καὶ ἐχρίοντο. Γὰρ εὑρίσκετο  
lit (the) fire and anointed-themselves. For they-found  
πολὺ χρῖσμα ἐνταῦθα, ὃ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἔλαιον,  
much ointment there, which they-used in-place-of oil,  
σύειον, καὶ σησάμιον, καὶ ἀμυγδάλιον  
(it being made of) hog's-lard, and sesame, and almonds  
ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν, καὶ τερεβίνθιον. Δέ  
of the bitter (kind), and turpentine. And  
ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον  
of the self same (substances) also an-odoriferous-unguent  
εὑρίσκετο.  
was-found.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν εἶναι διασκη-  
After this it-seemed again to-be necessary-to-be-dis-  
νητέον εἰς τὰς κώμας εἰς στέγας. Ἔνδα δὴ  
persed-in-quarters in the villages under shelter. Here indeed  
οἱ στρατιῶται ἥεσαν σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ  
the soldiers went with much shouting and  
ἡδονῇ ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·  
delight to the shelter-under-roofs, and (to) — provisions,  
δὲ ὅσοι, ὅτε πρότερον ἀπῆσαν,  
but as-many-as, when before they-departed (from the villages),  
ἐνέπρησαν τὰς οἰκίας ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας ἐδίδοσαν  
set-fire-to the houses through folly gave  
δίκην σκηνοῦντες κακῶς.  
justice [suffered punishment] (by) encamping uncomfortably (in the  
“Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην  
open air). Thence they-sent at-night Democrats (oi)  
Τεμενίτην, δόντες ἄνδρας, ἐπὶ τὰ  
Temenos, giving (him a detachment of) men, to the

ὅρη, ἐνδα οἱ ἀποσκεδανύμειοι  
 mountains, where — (those) having-straggled (from the camp)

ἔφασαν καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· γάρ οὗτος  
 said (that) they-saw the fires; for this (man)

ἐδόκει καὶ ἥδη πρότερον ἀληθεῦσαι πολλὰ  
 seemed also already before to-have-truly-reported many

τοιαῦτα, τε τὰ δῆτα ὡς δῆτα, καὶ  
 such (things), not-only the (things) being as being, but-also

τὰ μὴ δῆτα ὡς οὐκ δῆτα. Δὲ πορευθεὶς,  
 the (things) not being as not being. And having-gone-forth,

ἔφη μὲν οὐκ ἴδειν τὰ πυρὰ, δὲ συλλαβὼν  
 he-said (that he) indeed did not 'see the fires, but having-captured

ἄνδρα ἥκεν ἄγων, ἔχοντα Περ-  
 (a) man he-came bringing (him), (this man) having (a) Per-

σικόν τόξον καὶ φαρέτραν, καὶ σάγαριν  
 sian bow and quiver, and (a) kind-of-battle-axe

οἰανπερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. Ἐρωτώμενος δὲ  
 such-as the Amazons have. Being-asked —

ποδαπὸς εἴη, ἔφη μὲν εἶναι Πέρσης,  
 of-what-country he-might-be, he-said indeed (that) he-was (a) Persian,

δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος Τηρο-  
 and (that); he-was-proceeding from the army of-Teri-

βάζου, διπως λάβοι ἐπιτήδεια· δ' οἱ ἥρωτων  
 bazus, that he-might-procure provisions; and — they-asked

αὐτόν, τε ὄπόσον τὸ στράτευμα εἴη. καὶ  
 him, not-only how-great the army might-be, but-also

ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι  
 for what it-had-been-assembled. And — (he) said, | that

Τηρίβαζος εἴη ἔχων τε τὴν δύναμιν ἔαυτοῦ  
 Teribazus might-be having not-only the force of-himself,

καὶ Χάλυβας καὶ  
 [that Teribazus had not only his own army,] but-also Chalybian and

Ταόχους μισθοφόρους· δὲ ἔφη αὐτὸν παρεσκευ-  
 Taochan mercenaries; and he-said (that) he was-pre-

ἀσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὅρους, ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς,  
 pared at the crossing of-the mountain, in the narrow

ἦπερ μοναχῇ εἴη πορεία, ὡς ἐνταῦθα  
 (parts) by-which alone there-was (a) passage, that there  
 ἐπιδησόμενον τοῖς Ἑλλησιν. Ἔδοξε τοῖς  
 he-was-about-attacking the Greeks. It-seemed (good) to-the  
 στρατηγοῖς ἀκούσασι ταῦτα συναγαγεῖν τὸ  
 generals (after) having-heard this to-collect-together the  
 στράτευμα· καὶ εὐθὺς καταλιπόντες φύλακας,  
 army; and immediately leaving sentinels,  
 καὶ Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 and Sophraenetus (the) Stymphalian (as) commander over  
 τοῖς μένουσι, ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες  
 — (those) remaining (behind). they-proceed, having (a)  
 ἄγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἀνδρῶπον. Ἐπειδὴ<sup>2</sup>  
 guide (namely) the captured man. When  
 δὲ ἵπερέβαλλον τὰ δρῦ, οἱ πελτασταὶ προϊ-  
 however they-crossed-over the mountains, the targeteers going-  
 ὄντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον  
 before and having-perceived the camp (of the enemy)  
 οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὅπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακρα-  
 they-did not wait-for the heavy-armed-men, but having-raised  
 γόντες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Δ' οἱ βάρβαροι  
 a-shout they-ran against the camp. But the barbarians  
 ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον, οὐχ ἔπέμειναν, ἀλλ'  
 hearing the noise, did not remain, but  
 ἔφευγον· δῆμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέδανόν τινες τῶν βαρ-  
 fled; likewise — also they-killed some of-the bar-  
 βάρων· καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς εἶκοσι, καὶ  
 barians; and horses were-taken about twenty (in number), and  
 ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τηριβάζου ἐάλω, καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ  
 the tent — (that) of-Teribazus was-taken, and in it  
 εὗναι ἀργυρόποδες κλῖναι καὶ ἔκπι-  
 (there were found) to-be silver-footed couches and drinking-  
 ματα, καὶ οἱ φάσκοντες ἀρτοκόποι,  
 cups, and — (those) saying (that they were) bakers,  
 καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόοι. Ἐπειδὴ δέ  
 and — (those) (saying that they were) cup bearers When indeed

οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ἐπύδοντο ταῦτα,  
the commanders of-the heavy-armed-men heard these  
 ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην  
(things), it-seemed to-them (best) to-depart | the fastest  
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις  
[as fast as possible] to — (their own) camp, lest any  
 ἐπίθεσις γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. Καὶ  
attack might-happen to — (those) having-been-left-behind. And  
 εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλ-  
immediately having-recalled (the men) by-the (sound of the) trum-  
 πυγγι \_ ἀπήσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ  
pet they-departed, and they-arrived at — (their)  
 στρατόπεδον αὐδημερὸν.  
camp the-same-day.

---

## CHAPTER V.

Δέ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδόκει εἶναι πορευτέον,  
But on-the next-day it-was-thought to-be necessary-to-proceed,  
 διη δίναντο τάχιστα, πρὶν η τὸ στράτευμα  
in-what-way they-could most-speedily, before that the army  
 συλλεγῆναι πάλιν, καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ  
(of the enemy) was-collected again, and to-have-seized the  
 στενά. Δ' εὐθὺς συσκενασάμενοι ἐπορεύ-  
lefiles. And immediately having-collected-their-baggage they-pro-  
 οντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος ἔχοντες πολλοὺς  
seeded through much snow having many,  
 ἦγεμόνας καὶ αὐδημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον,  
guides; and on-the-same-day having-passed-over the height,  
 ἐφ' ὧ Τηρίβαζος ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι,  
on which Teribazus intended to-attack them-

κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορί ίδησα  
they-encamped. Hence they-proceeded

τρεῖς σταδιοὺς ἔρημους πεντεκαίδεκα  
three days'-march (in a) desert fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, καὶ  
parasangs to the river Euphrates, and  
διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὄμφαλόν.  
they-crossed-over it being-wet to the navel.

Δέ ἐλέγοντο αἱ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ οὐ εἶναι πρόσω.  
And they-say the sources of-it not to-be far.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος καὶ  
Hence they-advanced through much snow and

πεδίου τρεῖς σταδιοὺς, πεντεκαίδεκα  
(through a) plain three days'-march, (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας. Ο δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο  
parasangs. The — third (day's march) was

χαλεπός καὶ βορρᾶς ἀνεμος ἐπνει ἐναντίος,  
difficult-and-severe and (the) north wind blew against-their-faces,  
παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα, καὶ  
entirely parching-up every-thing, and

πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνδρώπους. Ενδα δὴ τις τῶν  
benumbing the men. Then indeed some-one of-the

μάντεων εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ  
augurs said (that) it-was-to-be-sacrificed to-the wind, and

σφαγιάζεται· καὶ δὴ ἔδοξε περιφανῶς πᾶσι  
it-was-sacrificed, and indeed it-seemed evidently to-all (that)

τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος λῆξαι. Δέ τὸ βάθος  
the violence of-the wind ceased. And the depth

τῆς χιόνος ἦν ὁργιά· διέτε καὶ πολλὰ τῶν  
of-the snow was (a) fathom; so-that even many of-the  
ἵποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων ἀπώλετο, καὶ  
baggage-cattle and of-the slaves perished, and

τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. Δέ διεγένοντο  
of-the soldiers about thirty. And they-passed

τὴν νύκτα καίοντες πῦρ· δ' ἦν πολλά ξύλα  
the night burning fire; for there-was much wood

ἐν τῷ σταδμῷ· οἱ δὲ προσιόντες ὅψε  
in the place-where-they-halted; — (those) indeed coming late  
εἶχον οὐ ξύλα. Οἱ οὖν ἤκοντες πάλαι  
had no wood. — (Those) therefore coming before  
καὶ καίοντες τὸ πῦρ οὐ τοὺς ὅψιζοντας  
and burning the fire (would) not (let) — (those) coming-late  
προσίεσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ, εἰ μὴ μεταδοίεν αὐτοῖς  
approach to the fire, unless they-shared with-them  
πυροὺς, ἢ τι ἄλλο, εἴτι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν.  
wheat, or any-thing else, if-any-thing they-might-have eatable.  
Ἐνδα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὃν ἔκαστοι  
So-then indeed they-shared with-one-another what each  
εἶχον. Ἐνδα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, τῆς χιόνος  
had. There-where indeed the fire was-burning, the snow  
διατηκομένης, ἐγίγοντο μεγάλοι βόδροι ἕστε  
(being) melted, there-became large pits until  
ἕπι τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν  
to the ground; where indeed there-was-present (an opportunity)  
μετρεῖν τὸ βάδος τῆς χιόνος.  
to-measure the depth of-the snow.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύοντο τὴν ὅλην ἐπιοῦσαν  
Hence — they-proceeded (during) the entire following  
ἡμέραν διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶπων  
day through snow, and many of-the men  
ἔβουλιμίασαν. Δέ Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθοφυλακῶν, καὶ  
got-the-bulimy. But Xenophon commanding-the-rear, and  
καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνδρῶπων  
finding — (those) fallen-down of-the men  
τὴνόει ὁ τι τὸ πάδος εἴη. Δέ ἐπειδὴ τις  
knew-not what the disease might-be. But when some-one  
τῶν ἐμπείρων εἶπε αἰτῶ ὅτι σαφῶς  
of — (those) acquainted-with (it) told him that evidently  
βούλιμιῶσι, καὶ φάγωσι τι, ἀναστήσονται.  
they-had-the-bulimy, and-if they-eat something, they-would-get-up,  
περιιώτ περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἰ πού ὅρών τι  
going-about among the baggage-cattle, if any-where he-saw any 'hins,

Βρωτὸν ἥτις ποτόν, διεδίδου, καὶ διδόντας  
eatable or drinkable, he-distributed (it), and giving (it)  
διέπεμπε τοῖς βουλιμιῶσι τοὺς δυναμένους  
he sent-about to — (those) having-the-bulimy — (those) being-able  
παρατρέχειν. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐμφάγοιεν τι,  
to-run-about. When — they-might-have-eaten any-thing.  
ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. Δὲ πορευομένων  
they-stood-up and proceeded-forth. But proceeding (on

Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας ἀφικνεῖται  
their march) Chirisophus indeed about dark arrives  
πρὸς κώμην, καὶ καταλαμβάνει πρὸς τὴν κρήνην  
at (a) village, and finds at the spring  
ἐμπροσθεν τοῦ ἔρυματος γυναικας καὶ κόρας ἐκ  
in-front of-the rampart women and girls from  
τῆς κώμης ὑδροφορούσας. Αὗται ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς  
the village carrying-water. These asked them  
τίνες εἰεν. Δ' ὁ ἔρμηνες εἶπε Περσιστί,  
who they-might-be. And the interpreter said 'in (the)' Persian-language,  
ὅτι πορεύονται παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς τὸν  
that they-were-proceeding from (the) king to the  
σατράπην. Αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι εἴη οὐκ  
satrap. — (they) — replied, that he-was not  
ἐνταῦθα, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην.  
there, but was-distant as-much-as (a) parasang.  
Δ' οἵ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὄψὲ συνεισέρχονται σὺν ταῖς  
But — (they) because it-was late enter-together with the  
ὑδροφόροις εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα πρὸς τὸν κωμάρχην.  
water-carriers into the fort to the head-man-of-the-village.  
Ἐηταῦθα οὖν μὲν Χειρίσοφος καὶ ὅσοι τοῦ  
There therefore indeed Chirisophus and as-many of-the  
στρατεύματος ἐδυνθύσαν ἐστρατοπεδεύ-  
army (as) were-enabled (to come up) en-  
σατο· δ' οἵ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν  
camped; and — (those) of-the other soldiers that-were  
μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν  
not able to-have-e completed the route passed-the-night

ἄστοι καὶ ἀνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθα τινες τῶν  
 fasting and without fire; and there some of-the  
 στρατιωτῶν ἀπώλοντο. Δέ τινες τῶν πολεμίων  
 soldiers perished. And some of-the enemy  
 τινειδεγμένοι ἐφείποντο, καὶ ἡρπαζον τὰ  
 being-collected-together pursued (the rear), and seized --  
 τῶν ὑποζυγίων μὴ δυνάμενα, καὶ  
 (those) of-the baggage-cattle not being-able (to proceed), and  
 ἐμάχοντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ αὐτῶν. Δέ καὶ  
 fought with-one-another for them. And also  
 ἐλείποντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε οἱ διεφθαρ-  
 there-were-left-behind-of-the soldiers both — (those) having-  
 μένοι τοὺς ὄφδαλμούς ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος,  
 been-ruined (as respects) the eyes by the snow,  
 τε οἱ ἀποσεσηπότες τοὺς δακτύλους  
 (and — (those) having-been-mortified (as respects) the fingers  
 τῶν ποδῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους.  
 of-the feet by the cold [and those who had their toes  
 Δὲ μὲν ἦν ἐπικούρημα τοῖς  
 mortified by the cold]. But indeed it-was (a) defence to-the  
 ὄφδαλμοῖς τῆς χιόνος, εἰ τις πορεύοιτο  
 eyes from-the snow, if any-one (when) he-proceeded (on)  
 ἔχων τι μέλαν πρὸ τῶν ὄφδαλμῶν,  
 the march) (having) (had) something black before the eyes,  
 δέ τῶν παδῶν, εἰ τις κινοῖτο, καὶ  
 and (a defence) of-the feet, if any-one moved-about, and  
 μηδέποτε ἔχοι ἕσυχίαν, καὶ εἰ τὴν νύκτα  
 never might-have rest, and if at — night  
 ἵπολύοιτο. Δέ ὅσοι ἔκοιμῶντο ἵποδε-  
 they-loosened-their-sandals. But (as many) as slept having-their-  
 δεμένοι, οἱ ἴμάντες εἰσεδύνοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας  
 sandals-on, the straps penetrated into the feet  
 καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο·  
 and the soles (of the sandals) were-frozen-about (the feet);  
 γὰρ καὶ, ἐπειδὴ τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα ἐπήλιπε,  
 for indeed. when — (their) old sandals failed

πεποιημένοι ἦσαν καρβάτινας ἐκ τῶν  
 (them), they-had-made (for themselves) rough-sandals from the  
 νεοδάρτων βοῶν. Διὰ τὰς ἀνάγκας οὖν  
 raw-hides of-oxen. Through — (such) necessity therefore  
 τοιάντας τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὑπελείποντο· καὶ  
 as-these some of-the soldiers were-left-behind; εἰδόντες τι μέλαν χωρίον, διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι  
 seeing a black place, [on-account-of the to-have disappeared  
 αὐτόδι τὴν χιόνα, εἴκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ  
 there (as respects) the snow, [on account of the disappear-  
 ance there of the snow,] they-conjectured (that it) had-melted; and  
 ἐτειήκει διὰ τινὰ κρήνην, ἡ ἣν ἀτμίζουσα  
 it-had-melted through some spring, which was smoking  
 πλησίον ἐν νάπῃ. Ἐνταῦδ' ἐκτραπόμενοι  
 near in (a) woody-vale. There turning-away  
 ἐκάθηντο, καὶ ἐφασαν οὐ πορεύεσθαι.  
 they-sat-down, and said (that they would) not proceed  
 'Ο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὁπισδοφύλακας,  
 — But Xenophon having (the command of) rear-guard,  
 ὡς ἤσθετο ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ  
 as he-perceived (this) begged of-them by-every art and  
 μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων, δτι πολλοὶ  
 means not to-be-left-behind, saying, that many (of the)  
 πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι ἔπονται, καὶ τελευτῶν  
 enemy being-assembled-together pursued (them), and finishing  
 ἔχαλέπαινε. Οἱ δὲ ἐκέλευον σχάζειν  
 he-grew-angry. — (They) indeed requested (him) to-kill  
 γαρ ἀν οὐ δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι.  
 (them); for (that) 'they — 'were not 'able to-proceed.  
 \*Ἐνταῦδα ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτισον φοβῆσαι  
 Then it-seemed (to him) to-be the-best to-have-scared  
 τοὺς ἔπομένους πολεμίους, εἰ τις δύναιτο, μὴ  
 the pursuing enemy, if any-thing could-be-done, lest  
 ἐπιπέσοιεν τοῖς κάμηνονσι. Καὶ μέν οὐτοί<sup>τοι</sup>  
 they should-fall-upon — (those) being-exhausted. And indeed it-was

ἡδη σκότος, οἱ δὲ προσήεσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ  
now dark, — 'they indeed advanced with-much noise  
διαφερόμενοι ἀμφὶ δύν εἰχον.      **\*Ενδα δὴ**  
disputing about what they-had (of the booty). Then truly  
μὲν οἱ ὄπισθοφύλακες ἀτε ὑγιαινον-  
indeed — (those of the) rear-guard as being-in-good-condition-  
τες, ἔξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους·  
and-able, starting-up ran to the enemy;  
δὲ οἱ κάμνοντες, ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον μέγιστον  
and the exhausted (men), | having-shouted as-much as-the-greatest  
ἡδύναντο,      **ἔχρονσαν**  
they-could, [having shouted as loud as they possibly could,] struck  
τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα. Οἱ πολέμοι δὲ  
the shields against the spears. The enemy indeed  
δείσαντες,      **ῆκαν** ἐαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος  
having-become-alarmed, threw themselves among the snow  
εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς      **ἔτι** ἐφθέγξασθαι  
into the woody-vale, and no-one (of them) afterwards made-a-noise  
οὐδαμοῦ.  
any-where.

**Kai** Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, εἰπόντες  
And Xenophon indeed and — (those) with him, telling  
τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσιν, ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τινες  
— (those) being-weak-and-helpless, that on-the next-day some  
ἥξουσί ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι,  
would-come to them, (then) proceeding (on their march, but)  
πριν διελθεῖν τέτταρα στάδια ἐτυγχάνουσιν  
before (that) they-had-gone-over four stadia they-found  
ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀναπαυομένοις  
on the road — soldiers resting  
ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος ἔγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδεὶς  
on the snow (and) having-been-covered (by it), and neither  
οὐδεμία φυλακὴ καθειστήκει, καὶ  
had (no) (any) guard 'been-placed-over (them), and  
ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. Δ' οἱ ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ  
they-'roused them 'up. And — they-said that — ('these'

ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ἵποχωροῖεν. Οὐδὲ  
 before did not make-progress. — (Xenophōn) indeed  
 παρών, καὶ παραπέμπων τοὺς ἴσχυροτάτους τῶν  
 going-past, and sending-on the strongest of-the  
 πελταστῶν, ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη  
 targeteers, ordered (them) to-see-and-ascertain what might-be  
 τὸ κωλῦον. Οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον, ὅτι τὸ  
 the hindrance. — 'They indeed announced that the  
 ὅλον στράτευμα οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο.  
 whole army might-be thus (in a manner) 'taking-rest.  
 Καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐνταῦθα ηὐλίσθησαν  
 And — (those) with Xenophon then took-up-their-quarters  
 αὐτοῦ ἀνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι, καταστησάμενοι  
 there without fire and supperless, stationing  
 φυλακὰς οἵας ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν  
 (such) guards as they-were-able. When indeed it-was  
 πρὸς ἡμέραν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας τοὺς νεω-  
 towards day, — — Xenophon having-sent the young-  
 τάτους πρὸς τοὺς τοῦτος ασθενοῦντας  
 est (of his men) to — (those) being-weak-and-sick  
 ἐκέλευεν ἀναστῆσας ἀναγκάζειν  
 ordered (them) having-'roused (them) 'up to-compel (them)  
 προιέναι. Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει  
 to-go-forward. At — this (time) Cheirisophus sends  
 τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς οἱ  
 'some) of — (those) from the village | about-seeing how the  
 τελευταῖοι ἔχοιεν. Δ'  
 last might-have (themselves) [to see how the rear fared]. But  
 οἱ  
 — (the young men sent by Xenophon) rejoiced (at) seeing (them)  
 παρέδοσαν τούτοις ασθενοῦντας κομίζειν ἐπι  
 gave-over to-these (the) weak-and-sick to-conduct to  
 τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ  
 the camp, they-themselves — proceeded-forward, and  
 πρὶν διεληλυθέναι εἴκοσι στάδια ἦσαν πρὸς  
 before (that) they-had-completed twenty stadia ther-were

τῇ κώμῃ ἐνδα Χειρίσοφος ηὐλίζετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ  
the village where Cheirisophus was-quartered. When indeed  
συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε εἶναι ἀσφαλές  
they-got-together among-one-another, it-seemed to-be safe  
σκηνοῦν τὰς τάξεις κατὰ τὰς κώμας. Καὶ  
to-quarter the troops up-and-down the villages. And  
Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἔμενεν αὐτοῦ, οἱ ἄλλοι  
Cheirisophus indeed remained there (where he was), the others  
δὲ διαλαχόντες κώμας ἀς ἔωρων, ἐπορεύ-  
indeed having-drawn-lots (for the) villages which they-saw, pro-  
σιτο, ἔκαστοι ἔχοντες τοὺς ἑαυτῶν.  
ceeded, | each having the (men) of-themselves [each hav-

ing their respective command].

Ἐνδα δὴ Πολυβότης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς  
Here indeed Polybotes (an) Athenian captain  
ἐκέλευσεν εαυτόν ἀφιέναι· καὶ  
requested (that) they-would-allow him to-go-away; | and  
λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους, εαυτόν ἀφιέναι· καὶ  
taking the well-girt, [and taking with him the most active  
θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην, ἣν Ξενοφῶν  
of his men], running to the village, which Xenophon  
εἰλήχει, καταλαμβάνει πάντας τοὺς κωμῆ-  
obtained-by-lot, he-surprises all the inhabitants-of-  
τας ἐνδον, καὶ τὸν κωμάρχην, καὶ ἐπιτακαίδεκα  
the-village at-home, and the village-chief, and seventeen  
πώλους τρεφομένους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ, καὶ  
colts bred for (a) tribute to (the) king, and  
τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου γεγαμημένην  
the daughter of-the village-chief married (the)  
ἐνάτην ἡμέραν. δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ὥχετο  
ninth day; and the husband of-her had-gone-out  
θηράσων λαγῶς, καὶ οὐχ ἦλω ἐν ταῖς κώμαις.  
hunting hares, and was not found in the villages  
Αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα  
The — houses were under-ground, the — mouth (or

Ὥςπερ φρέατος, δὲ κάτω εὐφείαι  
 entrance was) like (that) 'of (a) well, but below spacious.  
 Δέ αἱ εἰσόδοι μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ὅρυκται,  
 And the entrances — for-the cattle (were) dug  
 δὲ οἱ ἀνθρώποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. Ἐν δὲ  
 but the men descended on ladders. In —  
 ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἴς, βόες, ὅρνιδες,  
 the houses there-were goats, sheep, cows, fowls,  
 καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· δὲ πάντα τὰ κτήνη  
 and the young of-these; and all the cattle  
 ἐτρέφοντο χιλῷ ἐνδὸν. Δέ καὶ ἦσαν  
 were-nourished on-hay within (the houses). And also there-was  
 πυροί, καὶ κριδαί, καὶ ὅσπρια, καὶ κρίδινος οἶνος  
 wheat, and barley, and legumes, and barley wine  
 ἐν κρατῆρσι· δέ καὶ αἱ αὐταὶ κριδαὶ ἐνῆσαν  
 in large-bowls; and also — (these) same barley-grains floated  
 ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο,  
 even-with-the-brims (of the vessels), and reeds lay-in (them),  
 οἱ μὲν μείζους, δὲ οἱ ἐλάττονες, οὐκ  
 — (some) indeed larger, but — (others) smaller, (and) not  
 ἔχοντες γόνατα· δ' ἔδει ὅπότε τις διψῶν  
 having joints; and it-was-proper when any-one might-be-thirsty  
 λαβόντα τούτους εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. Καὶ  
 having-taken these into — (his) mouth to-suck. And  
 ἦν πάνυ ἄκρατος, εἰ μή τις ἐπιχέοι  
 it-was very strong, | if not [unless] some-one poured-in  
 ὕδωρ· καὶ τὸ κπόμα ἦν πάνυ ἥδυ συμμα-  
 water; and the drink was very pleasant to-one-accus-  
 δόντι.  
 tomed-to (it).

'Ο δέ Ξενοφῶν ἐποιήσατο τὸν ἀρχοντα της  
 — And Xenophon made-for-himself the ruler of —  
 ταίτης κώμης σύνδειπνον, καὶ ἐκέλευε αὐτὸι  
 this village his-guest-at-supper, and he-exhorted him  
 θαρρεῖν, λέγων, ὅτι οὐτε στερήσοιτο  
 'o-be-o'-good-courage, saying, that he-'should not "be-deprived

τῶν τέκνων, τε ἀπίασιν ἀντεμπλήσαντες τὴν  
 of—(his) children, and (as) they-depart they-would-be-about-filling the  
 οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, ἦν φαίνηται  
 house of-himself with — provisions, if he-show-himself (as)  
 ἔξηγησάμενος τι ἀγαθόν τῷ στρατεύματι,  
 having-been-the-leader (in) some good for-the army,  
 ἕστ' ἀν γέγωνται ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔδυει. Ο δὲ  
 until 'they might get with another tribe. — And  
 ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ, φιλοφρονούμενος, ἔφρασεν  
 this he-promised, and, being-kindly-disposed, he-told  
 οἶνον ἔνθα ἦν κατωρυγμένος. Οὖν  
 (them respecting) wine where it-was buried. Therefore  
 μὲν ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται  
 indeed this — (same) night, all the soldiers  
 διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως, ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν  
 having-been-quartered-dispersedly thus, were-made-to-rest in great  
 ἄφθονοις, ἔχοντες τὸν κωμάρχην ἐν φυλακῇ, καὶ  
 abundance, having the village-chief under guard, and  
 τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ δόμοῦ ἐν ὅφδαλοις. Δὲ τὴν  
 the children of-him likewise under eye. And on-the  
 ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κωμάρχην  
 next day Xenophon taking the village-chief  
 ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Χειρίσοφον· ὅπου δέ παρίοι  
 proceeded to Cheirisophus; wherever indeed he-might-pass-by  
 κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,  
 (a) village, he-turned-aside to — (those) in the villages,  
 καὶ πανταχοῦ κατελάμβανε εὐωχούμενος καὶ  
 and everywhere he-found (them) feasting and  
 εὐδυμούμενος, καὶ οὐδαμόδεν ἀφίεσαν  
 enjoying-themselves, and nowhere did-they-'allow (them) 'to  
 πρὶν παραδεῖναι ἀριστον αὐτοῖς.  
 depart before (that) they-had-'placed dinner 'before them  
 Δ' ἦν οὐκ ὅπου οὐ παρείθεσαν ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 And there-was not anywhere (where) they-'did not 'place on  
 τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνεια, ἐρίφεια,  
 the same table flesh (of) lamb, κι<sup>2</sup>

χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὄρνιθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἀρτοῖς,  
pork, veal, fowl, with much bread.

τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις, δὲ τοῖς κριδίνοις.  
— (that) namely (of) wheat, and — (that of) barley.

\*Οπότε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενος βούλοιτο προπιεῖται  
Whenever — any-one being-friendly-disposed | wished to-drink-before

τῷ εἰλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα,  
to-the [wished to drink to another] he-drew (him) to the large-bowl,

ἔνθεν ἔδει ἐπικύψαντα ροφοῦντα πίνειν  
there it-was-necessary having-stooped-down sucking to-drink

ὅςπερ βοῦν. Καὶ ἔδιδοσαν τῷ κωμάρχῃ λαμ-

λικε (an) ox. And they-granted to-the village-chief to-

βάνειν ὃ τι βούλοιτο. Οὐ δὲ ἔδέχετο οὐδὲν  
take whatever he-might-wish. Who however accepted nothing

ἄλλο μὲν, ὅπου δὲ ἴδοι τινα τῶν συγ-

αλλοῦ μέν, ὅπου δὲ ἴδοι τινα τῶν συγ-

γενῶν ἀεὶ ἐλάμβανεν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν.

lations 'he always 'took (them) with him.

\*Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἥλδον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατε-

When however they-came to Cheirisophus, they-

λάμβανον κάκείνους σκηνοῦντας,  
found also-these (his men feasting) being-in-their-quarters,

ἐστεφανωμένους στεφάνοις τοῦ ἔπον χιλοῦ,  
crowned with-crowns (made) of — dry grass,

καὶ Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς  
and Armenian boys — (in) — (their) barbarian

στολαῖς διακονοῦντας. Δέ τοις παῖσιν  
dresses waiting-on-them. And they-showed the boys

ὅςπερ ἐνεοῖς ὃ τι δέοι ποιεῖν.  
(by signs) as-if (they were) deaf-and-dumb what they-ought to-do.

\*Ἐπεὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἐφιλοφρονήσαντ  
When — Cheirisophus and Xenophon had-saluted

ἀλλήλους, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κωμάρχην,  
one-another, in-common — they-questioned the village-chief,

διὰ τοῦ ἐρμηνέως περσίζοντος, τίς ἡ χώρα  
through the interpreter speaking-the-Persian-language, what the country

*εἰη.* Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Αρμενία. Καὶ  
might-be. And who said, that (it was) Armenia. And  
πάλιν ἥρωτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφοιντο. Δ'  
again asking for-whom the horses might-be-bred And  
ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι δασμός βασιλεῖ· ἔφη δε,  
—(he) said, as (a) tribute to (the) king, he-said also, (that)  
τὴν πλησίον χώραν εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ  
the neighbouring country was (that of the) Chalybes, | and  
ἔφραζεν τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν εἴη.  
mentioned the road in-what it-might-be [and he told them the

Καὶ τότε μὲν Ξενοφῶν ὤχετο  
direction of the road]. And then indeed Xenophon departed  
ἄγων αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτας ἔαντοῦ,  
conducting him to the family of-himself, [to his own family,]  
καὶ δίδωσι ἵππον ὃν εἰδῆφει παλαί-  
and he-gave (the) horse which he-had-taken (and which was) rather-  
τερον τῷ κωμάρχῃ ἀναδρέψαντι καταδῦσαι,  
old to-the village-chief (he) having-fattened (it) to-offer-it-in-sacrifice,  
ὅτι ἤκουσεν αὐτὸν εἶναι ιερὸν τοῦ Ἡλίου,  
because he-had-heard (that) it was (a) victim of-the Sun,  
δεδιώς μὴ ἀποδάνη. γὰρ ἐκεκάκωτο ὑπὸ τῆς  
having-feared lest it-might-die; for it-had-been-injured by the  
πορείας. αὐτὸς δὲ λαμβάνει τῶν πώλων.  
journey; 'he indeed 'himself takes (some) of-the colts,  
καὶ ἔκάστω τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν  
and to-each of-the other generals and captains  
ἔδωκε πῶλον. Οἱ δὲ ἵπποι ταύτη ἦσαν  
he-gave (a) colt. The — horses in-this (country) were  
μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, δὲ πολὺ  
smaller indeed (than those) of-the Persians, but much  
θυμοειδέστεροι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα ὁ κωμάρχης  
more-spirited. And indeed here the village-chief  
διδάσκει περιειλεῖν σακία περὶ τοὺς πόδας  
instructs (them) to-tie small-bags about the feet  
τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ήποζυγίων. ὅταν ἄγωσι  
of-the horses and of-the cattle; when they-drove (them)

διὰ τῆς χιόνος· γάρ ἀνεν τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο  
through the snow; for without the little-bags they-sum  
μέχρι τῆς γαστρός.  
up-to the belly.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

'Επεὶ δ' ὁγδόη ἡμέρα ἦν, μὲν παραδίδωσι  
WHEN — (the) eighth day was, 'he indeed 'delivered-over  
τὸν ἡγεμόνα Χειρισόφω, δὲ καταλείπει τοὺς  
the guide to-*Cheirisophus*, but he-left the  
οἰκέτας τῷ κωμάρχῃ, πλὴν τοῦ  
members-<sup>1</sup>of (his) 'family to-the chief-of-the-village, except — (his)  
υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος· δὲ τοῦτον  
son — (who was) just coming-to-age; and him  
παραδίδωσι 'Επισθένει 'Αμφιπολίτη φυλάττειν  
ne-gave-over to-Episthenes (of) Amphipolis to-guard  
ὅπως, εἰ ἡγήσοιτο καλῶς. ἀπίοι  
that, if 'he (the father) 'should-guide (them) fairly, he-might-return  
ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον. Καὶ εἰσεφόρησαν εἰς τὴν  
(home) having also this-one. And they-brought to the  
οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ὡς πλεῖστα ἐδύναντο, καὶ ἀνα-  
house of-him as many-things (as) they-could, and having  
ζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. Δ' ὁ κωμάρ-  
broken-up-their-camp they-proceeded-on-their-march. And the village-  
χης λελυμένος ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς διὰ χιόνος·  
chief unbound guided them through (the) snow;  
καὶ ἦδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταδιῷ, καὶ  
and now also it-was in the third day's-march, and  
Χειρίσοφος ἐχαλεπάνθη αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐκ  
*Cheirisophus* became-angry with-him that he-did no-

ἥγεν εἰς κώμας. Δ' ὁ ἐλεγεν δτι εἰεν οὐκ  
lead (them) to villages. But who said that there-was not  
ἐν τῷ τούτῳ τόπῳ. Ο δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἐπαισε  
(any) in — this region. — And Cheirisophus struck  
αὐτὸν μὲν, δ' οὐκ ἐλησε. Δ' ἐκ τούτου  
him indeed, but 'did not bind (him). | And from this  
ἔκεινος ἀποδράς ὤχετο τῆς νυκτὸς,  
he having-fled went-away (in) the night, [and on this ac-  
καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. Τόδε  
count he ran off at night,] leaving-behind — (his) son. This  
δὴ ἡ κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια τοῦ  
truly-indeed, (namely) the ill-treatment and neglect of-the  
ἥγεμόνος, ἐγένετο μόνον διάφορον Χειρί-  
guide, was (the) only dissension (between) Cheiri-  
σόφῳ καὶ Ξενωφῶντι ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ. Δὲ Ἐπισ-  
sophus and Xenophon on the route. But Epis-  
θέντος τε ἡράσδη τοῦ παιδὸς, καὶ κομίσας  
thenes not-only became-fond of-the boy, but-also having-taker  
οἴκαδε ἐχρῆτο πιστοτάτῳ.  
(hus) home | made-use-of (him as) the-most-faithful [found him very

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπτὰ  
mu.h attached to himself]. After this they-proceeded seven  
σταδμοὺς, ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας,  
laç s-march, always five parasangs the day,  
παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν, εὗρος πλε-  
to the river Phasis, (the) breadth (of which is) equal  
Δριαῖον. Ἔντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδμοὺς  
to-a-plethrum. Hence they-proceeded two days'-march  
δέκα παρασάγγας. ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ  
(making) ten parasangs; at — the pass-over  
εἰς τὸ πεδίον Χάλυβες καὶ Ταόχοι.  
(the mountains) on-to the plain (the) Chalybes and (the) Taochi,  
καὶ Φασιανοί ἀπήντησαν ἥντοις. Χειρί-  
σοφος δ', ἐπεὶ κατεῖδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῷ  
Sophus indeed when he-saw the enemy on the

ἵπερβολῆ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχω  
 pass, ceased proceeding (on the march), being-distant  
 εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσῃ  
 about thirty stadia, that he-might not approach  
 τοῖς πολεμίοις ἄγων κατὰ κέρας. δὲ  
 the enemy | leading by (a) wing; [in column,] and  
 καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς  
 also announced to-the other (officers) to-bring-up the  
 λόχους, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα γένοιτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος.  
 companies, so-that the army might-get into line.  
 Δέ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὅπισδοφύλακες ἥλδον, συνεκάλεσε  
 And when the rear-guard came, he-called-together  
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὡδε·  
 the generals and captains, and spoke thus:  
 Οἱ μέν πολέμιοι ὡς ὁρᾶτε κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς  
 The — enemy as you-see possess the passes  
 τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ ὥρα βουλεύεσθαι, ὅπως  
 of-the mountain, (it is) indeed time to-consider, how  
 ἀγωνιούμεδα ὡς κάλιστα. Δοκεῖ  
 we-may-encounter (them) to-the-best-advantage-possible. It-seems  
 οὖν μὲν ἐμοὶ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις  
 therefore indeed to-me to-direct — the soldiers  
 ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, δέ ἡμᾶς βουλεύεσθαι, εἴτε  
 to-take-their-dinners, and (that) we should-consult, whether  
 δοκεῖ ἵπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε  
 it-seems (best) to-cross-over the mountain either to-day or  
 αὔριον. Ἐμοὶ δὲ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ,  
 to-morrow. To-me indeed at-least, said — Cleanor, it-seems  
 ἐπὰν ἀριστήσωμεν τάχιστα ἔξο-  
 (best), after we-have-dined as-speedily-as-possible (and) having-  
 πλισαμενοὺς ὡς τάχιστα ἴέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.  
 armed-ourselves as speedily-as-possible to go against the men.  
 Γάρ εἰ διατρίψομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, τε  
 For if we-shall-waste the present day, not-only  
 οἱ πολέμιοι νῦν ὄρῶντες ἡμᾶς ἔσονται θαρρα-  
 the enemy now seeing us will-be more

λεώτεροι, καὶ ἄλλους εἰκός, τούτων θαρ-  
νούντων, προσγενέσθαι πλείους.  
old, and (that) others as-is-natural, these besoming-confi-  
dent-and-bold, will-join (them in) greater (numbers).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν. Ἐγὼ δὲ  
After this-one Xenophon said: I indeed  
γιγνώσκω οὗτον· εἰ μὲν ἔστι ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι,  
think thus: if indeed it-is necessary to-fight  
τοῦτο δεῖ παρεσκευάσθαι ὅπως ὡς μαχούμεδα  
this ought to-be-arranged how — we-may-fight  
κράτιστα. Εἰ δὲ βούλόμεδα ὑπερβάλλειν  
to-the-best (advantage). If indeed we-wish to-cross-over  
ὡς ῥᾶστα, τοῦτο δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι  
(the mountain) as easily-as-possible, this seems to-me to-be  
σκεπτέον ὅπως λάβωμεν μὲν ἐλάχιστα  
necessary-to-be-considered how-that we-may-receive — the-fewest  
τραύματα, δὲ ὡς ἀποβάλλωμεν ἐλάχιστα σώματα  
wounds and so-that we-may-lose the-fewest (bodies)  
ἀνδρῶν. Οὖν μὲν τὸ ὄρος ἔστι τὸ  
(of-) men. Therefore indeed the mountain is — (as far as,  
ὅρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἐφ' ἔξηκοντα στάδια,  
is-to-be-seen more than (to) sixty stadia (in length),  
δ' ἀνδρες φανεροί εἰσιν φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς  
but (the) men manifestly are watching us  
οὐδαμοῦ, ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· οὖν  
nowhere, except along this-same — road; therefore (it is)  
πολὺ χρείττον, καὶ πειρᾶσθαι κλέψαι λαδόντας  
much better, both to-endeavour to-seize, being-concealed,  
τι τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους, καὶ εἰ δυναίμεδα  
some (part) of-the desert mountain, and if we-can  
ἀπτάσαι φδάσαντας, μᾶλλον  
to take-forceable-possession, having-occupied (it before the enemy), rather  
ἢ μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἵσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἀνδρας  
than to-fight against strong places and men  
παρεσκευασμένους. Γάρ πολὺ ρᾶσι  
prepared (to resist) For (it is) more

ιέναι δρόσιον ἀμαχὶ, ἢν ὁμαλεῖ  
 to-go (up 2) steep (place) without-fighting, than (along) level (road)

πολεμίων ὄντων ἐνδεν καὶ ἐνδεν· καὶ νύκτωρ  
 (the) enemy being here and there; and at-night

τις ἀν δρόψῃ τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν μᾶλλον  
 any-one may see — (things) before (his) feet more

ἀμαχὶ, ἢ μεδ' ἡμέραν  
 (distinctly when) not-fighting, than in (the) day (time) (while)

μαχόμενος· καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα εἰμενεστέρα τοῖς  
 fighting; and the rough (road is) kinder to-the

ποσὶν ιοῦσιν ἀμαχὶ, ἢ ἡ ὁμαλὴ  
 feet to-those-marching without-fighting, than the smooth 'one)

βαλλομένοις τὰς κεφαλὰς. Καὶ οἱ  
 to-those-being-struck on-the head (with stones). And it-'does not

δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀδύνατον κλέψαι εἴξօν  
 'seem to-me to-be impossible to-steal (a march) it-being-allowed

μὲν ιέναι νυκτὸς, ως μὴ δρᾶσθαι, δὲ  
 (us) indeed to-go by-night, so-as not to-be-seen, it-'being also

εἴξօν ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ως μὴ παρέχειν  
 'allowed (us) to-go-away so-far | as not to-suffer (a)

αἴσθησιν. Δὲ  
 being-heard [as to allow no opportunity of being heard or perceived]. And

μοι ἀν δοκοῦμεν, προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν  
 to-me — we-seem-likely, pretending to-attack

ταῦτη ἀν χρῆσθαι τῷ ἀλλῷ δρει  
 in-this (manner) — to-have the rest (of the) mountain

ἔρημοτέρῳ· γάρ οἱ πολέμοι μᾶλλον μένοιεν  
 more-deserted; for the enemy 'would rather 'remain

αὐτοὺς ἀδρόου. Ἀτὰρ ἐγὼ συμβάλλομαι  
 here collected-together. But-why 'should I 'conjecture

τι περὶ κλοπῆς; γάρ ἐγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε,  
 any-thing about stealing? for I-at-least, O Cheirisophus,

ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, δοσοι  
 hear, (that) you, the Lacedæmonians, as-many (of you as)

ἐστὲ ὁμοίων, εὐδὺς εἰ  
 are 'of (the class of) 'equals (or higher order). immediately frag

παιδῶν μελετᾶν κλέπτειν, καὶ εἰναι οὐκ  
 boys (commence) to-practice to-steal, and (that) it-is not  
 αἰσχρὸν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν, ὅσα  
 shameful, but commendable to-steal, as-many-things-as (the  
 νόμος μὴ κωλύει. Δέ ὅπως κλέπτητε ὡς  
 law 'does not 'forbid. And so-that you-may-steal | as  
 κράτιστα, καὶ πειρᾶσθε λαν-  
 best-possible, [as adroitly as possible,] and have-exerted-yourselves to-  
 δάνειν, ἄρα ἐστιν νόμιμον ὑμῖν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε  
 conceal (it), now-then it-is lawful for-you, if you-are-caught  
 κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. Νῦν οὖν ἐστιν  
 stealing, to-be-scourged. Now therefore (this) is  
 μάλα καιρός σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν  
 (the) very (best) opportunity for-you to-show — (your)  
 παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μέντοι, μὴ ληφθῶμεν  
 education, and to-guard moreover, lest we-may-be-caught  
 κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μὴ λάβωμεν  
 stealing the mountain, (and) so-that we-'may not 'receive  
 πληγάς. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, κάγῳ  
 stripes. But also, said — Cheirisophus, and-I  
 ἔκονώ ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, εἰναι δεινοὺς  
 rave-heard (that) you, the Athenians, are clever  
 κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα δεινοῦ  
 (to-steal) (at stealing) the public-money, and-though very great  
 κινδύνου ὄντος τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς  
 danger being to — (him) stealing, and (that) — (your)  
 κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ οἱ  
 best (men) moreover (steal) the-most, if-indeed the  
 κρατίστοι ἀξιοῦνται ἀρχεῖν ὑμῖν. Ὅστε  
 best (men) are-thought-worthy to-rule you; so-that (it is)  
 ἄρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν.  
 time also for-you to-show — (your) education.  
 Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, είμι ἔτοιμος,  
 I indeed therefore, said — Xenophon, am ready,  
 ἔχων τοὺς ὄπισθοφύλακας, ἐπειδὴν δειπνή  
 having the rear-guard (with me), after we-shall-have

τῷ μεν, ἵέναι καταληφόμενος τὸ ὄρος. Δὲ καὶ  
 οὔπη, το-го about-taking-possession (of) the mountain. And also  
 ἔχω ἡγεμόνος· γάρ οἱ γυμνῆτες ἐνεδρεύσαντες  
 -have guides; for the light-armed-men having-laid-in-ambush  
 ἔλαβόν τινας τῶν κλωπῶν ἐφεπομένων ἥμιν· καὶ  
 took some of-the marauders following us; and  
 πυνθάνομαι τούτων, ὅτι τὸ ὄρος ἐστι οὐκ ἄβατον,  
 I-hear from-these, that the mountain is not impassable,  
 ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὅςτε ἔάνπερ  
 but (that) it-is-grazed-on by-goats and oxen; so-that if  
 ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους ἐσται  
 once we-take-possession-of any (part) of-the mountain there-will be  
 βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις. Δὲ ἔλπίζω  
 passable (places) even for-the cattle. And I-expect (that)  
 τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲ ἔτι μενεῖν ἐπειδὴν  
 the enemy will not-indeed longer remain after  
 θῶσιν ἥμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων.  
 they-see us on the level (with them) on the heights.  
 Γάρ ἐδέλουσι οὐδὲ νῦν καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ίσον  
 For they-will not-indeed now come-down to (an) equality  
 ἥμιν. Ο δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ  
 with-us. — And Cheirisophus said: And why is-it-proper (that) you  
 iέναι, καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ  
 (should) go, and leave the command-of-the-rear-guard? but  
 πέμψον ἄλλους, μὴ ἀν τινες ἐδελούσιοι φάίνωνται.  
 send others, unless that some volunteers may-make  
 Ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεδύ-  
 (their) appearance. Upon this Aristonymus (the) Methy-  
 δριεὺς ἔρχεται, ἔχων ὀπλίτας, καὶ Ἀρισ-  
 τέας Χίος, γυμνῆτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος  
 teas (the) Chian, (having his) light-armed-men, and Nicomachu  
 Οἰταῖος, γυμνῆτας· καὶ σύνδημα  
 (the) Οἰταῖος, (with his) light-armed-men; and (an) agreement  
 ἐποιήσαντο, ὅπότε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα  
 was-made, (that) when they-might-have-possession-of the heights

καίειν πολλὰ πυρά. Ταῦτα συνδέμενοι  
to-burn many fires. These (things) being-agreed-on  
ἥριστων. ἐξ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου ὁ Χειρίσοφος προ-  
they-dined; after — the dinner — Cheirisophus led  
ἥγαγε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους  
forward the whole army against the enemy  
ώς δέκα σταδίους, ὅπως δοκοίη ὡς μάλιστα  
about ten stadia, so-that he-might-seem as-much-as-possible  
προσάξειν ταύτη.  
to-be-about-to-lead-against (them) in-that (direction).

\*Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν, καὶ ἐγένετο νὺξ  
When indeed they-had-supped, and it-was night  
οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ὥχοντο, καὶ  
— (those) indeed appointed (for this service) departed, and  
καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος. δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι  
take-possession-of the mountain; and the other (troops)  
ἀνεπαύοντο αὐτοῦ. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ,  
reposed there (where they were). The enemy indeed,  
ώς ἡσδοντο τὸ ὄρος ἔχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρευαν, καὶ  
as they-perceived the mountain occupied, kept-watch, and  
ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ διὰ νυκτός. \*Ἐπειδὴ δὲ  
burned many fires during (the) night. When indeed  
ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε  
it-was day, Cheirisophus — having-offered-sacrifice led  
κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν· οἱ δὲ καταλαβόντες  
(the army) along the road; — (those)—having-taken-possession-of  
τὸ ὄρος ἐπήσαν κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δέ τῶν  
the mountain advanced along the heights. But of-the  
πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ μὲν ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ  
enemy the great (part) indeed remained at the pass  
τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ μέρος αὐτῶν ἀπῆντα τοῖς  
of-the mountain, but (a) part of-them went (against) — (those)  
κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δέ πρὸν τοὺς πολλοὺς,  
along the heights. But before (that) | the many, [the  
εἶναι ὅμοῳ, οἱ κατὰ τὰ  
main bodies of the armies,] were together. — (those) along the

ἄκρα συμμιγνύσιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες  
 heights met one-another, and the Greeks  
 νικῶσι καὶ διώκουσιν. <sup>Ἐν τούτῳ</sup>  
 conquered and drove-back (their opponents). At this (time)  
 δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐξ τοῦ πεδίου, μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ  
 — also — (those) from the plain, namely the targeteers  
 τῶν Ἑλληνων ἔθεον δρόμῳ πρὸς τοὺς  
 of-the Greeks ran 'in (a) 'race against — (those)  
 παρατεταγμένους, δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἐφείπετο ταχὺ<sup>drawn-up-against</sup> (them), and Cheirisophus followed quickly  
 βάδην σὺν τοῖς ὅπλίταις. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι  
 step-by-step with the heavy-armed-men. But the enemy (namely)  
 οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων τὸ ἄνω  
 — (those) on the road, when they-saw — (those) above  
 ἥττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ οὐ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν  
 defeated, flee-away; and not many indeed of-them  
 ἀπέδανον. Δέ πάμπολλα γέρρᾳ ἐλήφθη, ἀ  
 died. But (a) great-many shields were-taken, which  
 οἱ Ἑλληνες κόπτοντες ταῖς <sup>μαχαίραις,</sup>  
 the Greeks cutting — (with their) swords,  
 ἐποίουν ἀχρεῖα. Δ' ὡς ἀνέβησαν,  
 made useless. And as they-arrived-on (the heights),  
 θύσαντες, καὶ στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, κατέβησαν  
 having-sacrificed, and having-erected (a) trophy, they-descended  
 εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ ἦλθον εἰς κώμας γεμούσας  
 into the plain, and they-went to villages stored-with  
 πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν.  
 many and good (things).

## CHAPTER VII

*Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν πέντε σταδίους,*  
 From — these (villages) they-proceeded five days'-  
*μαρτίου, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς Ταόχους.*  
 march, (making) thirty parasangs, to (the) Taochi;  
*καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπε· γὰρ οἱ Ταόχοι*  
 and — provisions began-to-fail (them); for the Taochi  
*ῳκουν iσχυρὰ χωρία, καὶ ἐν οἷς εἶχον πάντα*  
 inhabited strong places, and in which they-had all  
*τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνακεκομισμένοι.*  
 — (their) provisions having-'carried (them) 'up (and stored

*Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς χωρίον, ὃ*  
 them there) When however they-arrived at (a) place, which  
*μὲν εἶχεν οὐ πόλιν οὐδὲ οἰκίας, δ' αὐτόσε καὶ*  
 indeed had no town nor houses, and there both  
*ἄνδρες καὶ γυναικες καὶ πολλὰ κτήνη ἦσαν*  
 men and women and many cattle were  
*συνεληλυθότες, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἦκων εὐθὺς*  
 included, Cheirisophus indeed having-come immediately  
*προσέβαλλε πρὸς τοῦτο· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη*  
 made-an-attack against this (place), when — the first  
*τάξις ἀπέκαμεν, ἄλλη προσῆγει καὶ αὖθις*  
 division began-to-grow-tired, another succeeded and again  
*ἄλλη· γὰρ ἦν οὐ* *ἀδρόοις*  
 another; for it-was not (possible for them) drawn-up-in-a-body  
*περιστῆναι, ἄλλὰ ἦν ποταμὸς κύκλῳ.*  
 to-stard-around (it), as there-was (a) river 'in (a) 'circle  
*Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤλθε σὺν τοῖς ὅπισθο-*  
 (around it). When — Xenophon came with the rear.  
*φύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὅπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα*  
 guard and targeteers and heavy-armed-men, then  
*δὴ Χειρίσοφος λέγει· "Ηκετε εἰς καλόν· γὰρ*  
 truly Cheirisophus says You-have-come most-opportunely. *εἰς*

**τὸ** χωρίον αἱρετέον· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
— (this) place must-be-taken; for there-is no — provision

τὴ στρατιᾶ εἰ μὴ ληφόμεθα τὸ  
for the army | if not [unless] we-shall-take — (this)

χωρίον Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἔθουλεύοντο κοινῇ· καὶ  
place. Then indeed they-deliberated in-common; and

τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος, τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον  
— Xenophon having-asked, what might-be the hindrance

εἰσελθεῖν, ὁ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ αὗτη  
to-enter (the place), — Cheirisophus said: But this

ἔστιν μία πάροδος ἦν ὄρας· δταν δέ  
is 'the' one (only) passage which you-see; whenever indeed

τις πειρᾶται παριέναι ταύτη, κυλινδοῦσι  
any-one should-attempt to-pass-along this, they-roll (down)

λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας·  
stones over this — impending rock;

δος δέ ἂν καταληφθῆ, οὗτο διατίθεται.  
(he) indeed who may have-been-struck, 'is thus disposed-of.

**Δ'** ἀμα ἔδειξε ἀνδρώποντος συντετριμμένους  
And at-the-same-time he-showed men crushed

καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. Δέ ἦν ἀναλώσωσιν  
both (as respects) legs and ribs. But if they-should-expend

τοὺς λίθους, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τι οὐδὲν ἄλλο  
— (their) stones, said — Xenophon, is-there nothing else

κωλύει παριέναι; γὰρ δὴ οὐχ ὄρωμεν  
(that) prevents (us) to-advance? for indeed we-do not <sup>'see</sup>

ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, εἰ μὴ τούτους ὅλιγος  
(any) of — (those) opposed-to-us, unless these few

ἀνδρώποντος, καὶ τούτων δύο ή τρεῖς ὡπλισμένους.  
men, and of-these (only) two or three are-armed.

Δέ τὸ χωρίον, δος δεῖ διελθεῖν βαλλο-  
And the space, which it-is-necessary to-pass-through (while) being-

μένους ἔστιν, ὡς καὶ σὺ ὄρας, σχεδὸν τρία  
thrown-at is, as even you see, about three

ἡμιπλεθρά. Δέ τούτου δσον  
half-plethra [about 150 feet]. And of-this (space) as-much as (a)

πλέθρον δασὺ μεγάλαις πίτναι διαλευ-  
 plethrum [about 100 feet] (is) thick with-great pine-trees standing.  
 πούσαις ἀνδ' ὅν ἀνδρες ἐστηκότες ὡ-  
 apart-from-one-another against which men standing —  
 τί πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίδων ἢ  
 what will-they-suffer either from the thrown stones or  
 ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδουμένων; τὸ λοιπὸν  
 from the rolled (ones)? the rest (of the space)  
 ἥδη οὖν γίγνεται ως ἡμίπλεθρον,  
 now therefore becomes about (a) half-plethrum [about 50feet], (over)  
 ὁ δεῖ, δταν οἱ λίδοι λαφήσωσι, παρ-  
 which it-is-necessary, when the stones may-cease, to-run-  
 δραμεῖν. Ἀλλὰ, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, εὐδὺς  
 past. But, said — Cheirisophus, immediately  
 ἐπειδὰν ἀρξῶμεδα προσιέναι εἰς τὸ δασὺ,  
 when we-commence to-advance to the (part) thick (with trees)  
 πολλοὶ οἱ λίδοι φέρονται. Αὐτό, ἔφη,  
 many — stones are-thrown. That, said (Xenophon),  
 ἀν εἴη τὸ δέον γάρ θᾶττον ἀναλώσουσι  
 would be the thing-wanted, for the-more-speedily will-they-expend  
 τοὺς λίδους. Ἀλλὰ πορευόμεδα,  
 — (their) stones. But let-us-advance (to the place),  
 ἐνδεν ἔσται τι μικρόν ἡμῖν παραδραμεῖν,  
 whence there-will-be some small (place) for-us to-run-past,  
 ἦν δυνώμεδα, καὶ βάρδιον ἀπελθεῖν,  
 if we-can, and (from which we may) easily depart,  
 ἦν βουλώμεδα.  
 if we-please.

\*Ἐντεῦθεν Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ Καλλί-  
 Thence Cheirisophus and Xenophon, and Calli-  
 μαχος Παρθάσιος λοχαγός, (γάρ ἡ ἡγεμονία  
 machus (the) Parrhasian (a) captain, (for the lead  
 τῶν λοχαγῶν τῶν ὄπισθοφυλάκων  
 of-the captains of-the rear-guard (was in possession)  
 τούτου ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ,) ἐπορεύοντο· δὲ οἱ αλλοι  
 of-this-one on-that — day,) proceeded-forward; but the other

Ιοχαγοὶ ἔμεινον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. Μετὰ τοῦτο  
 captains remained in — safety. After this  
 οὖν ὡς ἐβούηκοντα ἄνδρωποι ἀπῆλδον ἵπε  
 therefore about seventy men went-off under  
 τὰ δένδρα, οὐκ ἀνδροί, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἕνα,  
 the trees, not collected-in-a-body, but one-by-one,  
 ἑκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίας  
 each-one guarding-himself as (well as) he-could. Agasias  
 δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεδυδρεύς  
 — the Stymphalian and Aristonymus (the) Methydriau  
 καὶ οὗτοι ὅντες λοχαγοὶ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, καὶ  
 and these being captains of-the rear-guard, and  
 ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· γάρ ην  
 others also, standing-near without the trees; for it-was  
 οὐκ ἀσφαλές πλεῖον ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον ἐστάναι  
 not safe (for) more than — one company to-stand  
 ἐν τοῖς δένδροις. Καλλίμαχος ηνδα δὴ μηχανᾶ-  
 under the trees. Callimachus then indeed con-  
 ταί τι· προέτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου,  
 tried something (thus). he-ran-forward from the tree,  
 ἵψ αὐτός ην, δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· δὲ ἐπεὶ  
 under which he was, two or three times; but when  
 οἱ λίθοι φέροιτο, ἀνεχάζετο εἰπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης  
 the stones were-hurled, he-retired expeditiously; at each  
 δὲ προδρομῆς πλέον ἢ δέκα ἄμαξαι πετρῶν  
 - sally more than ten wagon (loads) of-stone  
 ἀνηλίσκοντο. Δέ ὁ Ἀγασίας, ὡς ὅρᾳ τὸν  
 were-consumed. But — Agasias, as he-perceives —  
 Καλλίμαχον, ἀ ἐποίει, καὶ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα  
 Callimachus, what he-was-doing, and all the army  
 θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πιθῶτος παρα-  
 beholding (it), fearing lest (he might) not (be) the-first run-  
 δράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ παρακαλέσας τὸν  
 nning-by into the place, neither calling-to —  
 Ἀριστώνυμον ὄντα πλησίον, οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον  
 Aristonymus (he) being near, nor (to) Eurylochus

τον Λουσιέα ὄντας ἑταίρους, οὐδὲ οὐδένα  
 the Lusian (both) being (his) comrades, nor (to) no-one  
 ἄλλον, αὐτός χωρεῖ, καὶ παρέρχεται  
 else, he went-on (by himself), and passed-by  
 πάντας. Ο δὲ Καλλίμαχος, ὡς ἐώρα αὐτὸν  
 all. — But Callimachus, as he-saw him  
 παριόντα ἐτιλαμβάνεται τῆς ἵπνος αὐτοῦ·  
 passing-by seizes the rim (of the shield) of-him;  
 δ' ἐν τούτῳ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς παρέδει  
 but at this (time) Aristonymus (the) Methydrian ran-by  
 αὐτοὺς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς.  
 them, and after this (one) Eurylochus (the) Lusian.  
 Γάρ πάντες οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς, καὶ  
 For all these claimed-for-themselves valour, and  
 διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἄλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως  
 contended with one-another (as respects it); and thus  
 ἔριζοντες αἴροντι τὸ χωρίον. Γάρ ὡς ἄπαξ  
 contending they-take the place. For as 'they once  
 εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἤνεγκεν ἄνωθεν.  
 'had-run-in, not (a) stone was-thrown from-above  
 \*Ἐνταῦδα δὴ ἦν δεινὸν θέαμα. Γάρ αἱ  
 Then indeed there-was (a) dreadful spectacle. For the  
 γυναικες βίπτονται τὰ παιδία,  
 women throwing — (their) children (over the precipice),  
 καὶ εἶτα ἐπικατέριπτον, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες  
 (and) then threw-themselves-down-upon (them), and the men  
 ὥσαίτως. \*Ἐνδα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας  
 in-like-manner (did the same). Then indeed also Aeneas (the)  
 Στυμφάλιος, λοχαγὸς, ἴδων τινα, ἔχοντα  
 Stymphalian, (a) captain, seeing some-one (of them), having (a)  
 καλὴν στολὴν, θέοντα ὡς βίψοντα ἑαυτὸν  
 handsome dress, running as being-about-'throwing himself 'over,  
 ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύσων. Δεὶ  
 laid-hold (of him) as being-about-hindering (him). But  
 ὁ ἐπισπᾶται αὐτὸν, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ὤχοντο  
 — (he) 'drags him 'along, and both went 'over'

φερόμενοι κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν, καὶ ἀπέδανον.  
being-born down the rocks, and died

\*Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν πάνυ ὄλιγοι ἀνδρῶποι ἐλήφθησαν,  
Therefore indeed very few men were-captured,

δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ βόες καὶ ὄνοι καὶ πρόβατα.  
but — many oxen and asses and sheep.

\*Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ

Thence they-proceeded through (the country) 'of (the) 'Cha-

λύβων ἑπτά σταδίους, πεντήκοντα παρ-  
lybians seven days'-march, (making) fifty para-

σάγγας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ἀλκιμώτατοι  
These were the-bravest (of those people) whose

διῆλθον. καὶ ἤεσαν εἰς χεῖρας.  
(country) they-passed-through, | and they-went to hands [and they

Εἶχον δὲ λινοῦς θώρακας

came to close combat]. They-had also linen cuirasses (reaching)

μέχρι τοῦ ἡτρου, δ' ἀντί τῶν πτερύγων  
just to-the groin, and in-place of — skirts (they had)

πυκνὰ σπάρτα ἐστραμμένα. Εἶχον δὲ καὶ  
thick cords twisted. They-had also —

πενημῖδας, καὶ κράνη, καὶ μαχαίριον παρὰ  
greaves, and helmets, and (a) knife at

τὴν ζώνην ὅσον Λακωνικὴν ξυήλην,  
— (their) girdle as-long-as (a) Spartan (dagger) sickle-shaped,

ῷ ἐσφαττον, ὃν δύναντο κρατεῖν.  
with-which they-cut-the-throats, of — (those) they-could master,

καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀν διχοντες  
and cutting-off — (their) heads — (and) having

ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ ἥδον, καὶ ἔχόρευον,  
(them) they-proceeded (on their march); and they-sang, and danced.

ὅπότε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔμελλον ὄψεσθαι.  
when (they thought) the enemy were-about to-see (them)

Καὶ εἶχον δὲ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαΐδεκα πηχῶν,  
And they-had also (a) spear about fifteen cubits (in length)

ἔχον μίαν λόγχην. Οὗτοι εἰ ἔμενοι  
(but) having 'only) one spike. These (people) remained

ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἑλλῆνες  
 in — (their) towns. When however the Greeks  
 παρέλθουεν, εἶποντο ἀεὶ μαχόμενοι.  
 may-have-passed-by, they-followed continually fighting (with them).  
 \*Ωικουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὁχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 They-dwelt — in — strongholds, and — (their) provisions  
 ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν ἐν τούτοις, ὅπερε  
 were-brought-up in these (strongholds), so (that)  
 τοὺς Ἑλλήνας λαμβάνειν μηδὲν αὐτόθεν, ἀλλὰ  
 the Greeks took nothing from-that-place, but  
 διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν, ἀ τὴν ἔλαβον ἐκ τῶν  
 were-nourished by-the cattle, which they-took from the  
 Ταύχων. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ<sup>ταύχη</sup>  
 After this the Greeks arrived at  
 τὸν ποταμόν Ἀρπασαν, εὔρος  
 the river Harpasus, (the) breadth (of which being)  
 τεττάρων πλέθρων. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ  
 four plinthia. Thence they-proceeded through  
 Σκυθινῶν τέτταρας σταδμοὺς,  
 (the country of the) Scythini four days'-march, (making)  
 εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας,  
 twenty parasangs, through (a) plain to villages,  
 ἵν αἱς ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.  
 in which they-remained three days, and collected-provisions.  
 Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἥλθον τέτταρας σταδμοὺς  
 Thence indeed they-went four days'-march (making)  
 εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, πρὸς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαιμονα,  
 twenty parasangs, to (a) large and wealthy  
 καὶ οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἥ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνίας. Ἐξ  
 and populous city, which was-called Gymnias  
 ταύτης ὁ ἄρχων τῆς χώρας πέμπει ἡγεμόνα  
 this (place) the ruler of-the country sends (a) guide  
 τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, ὅπως ἄγοι αὐτούς διὰ τῆς  
 to-the Greeks, that he-might-conduct them through the  
 χώρας πολεμίας ἑαυτῶν. Δ' ἐκεῖνος  
 country inimical (to his people) themselves. And he

ἔλθων λέγει, ὅτι ἀξεῖ αἰτοὺς πέντε ἡμέρας  
having-come says, that he-will-lead them (in) five days  
 εἰς χωρίον, ὅπερ ὄφονται θάλατταν· δὲ εἰ  
to (a) place, whence they-would-see (the) sea; and if  
 μὴ ἐπηγγέλετο τεθνάναι. Καὶ ἥγουμενος,  
not announced-himself (willing) to-die. And leading  
 ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν  
(them), when he-entered into the (country) imminent  
 ἔαυτοῖς, παρεκελεύετο αἴδειν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν  
to-themselves, he-exhorted (them) to-burn and lay-waste the  
 χώραν· καὶ ὃ ἐγένετο δῆλον ὅτι ἔλθοι  
country; and by-which it-became evident that he-had-come (by)  
 ἐνεκα τούτου, οὐ τῆς εὔνοίας τῶι  
reason of-this, (and) not — (from any) good-will (for) the  
 Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὅρος τῷ  
Greeks. And they-arrived at the mountain on-the  
 πέμπτη ἥγερα· ὅνομα δὲ τῷ ὅρει ἦν Θήχης.  
fifth day; (the) name — (of) the mountain was Theches  
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὅρους.  
When indeed the foremost got on the mountain,  
 καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν, πολλὴ κραυγὴ  
and looked-down (on) the sea, (a) great noise  
 ἐγένετο. Δέ οἱ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες  
occurred. But — Xenophon and the rear-guard  
 ἀκούσας ὡήθησαν ἀλλούς πολεμίους ἔμπροσθεν  
having-heard (it) thought (that) other enemies in-front  
 ἐπιτίθεσθαι· γὰρ εἶποντο ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς  
were-assailing (them); for they-followed behind from the  
 καιομένης χώρας, καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ποιησάμενοι  
burnt places, and the rear-guard by-forming  
 ἐνέδραν τε ἀπέκτεινάν τινας καὶ ἐζώγρησαν.  
 (an) ambuscade not-only killed some, but-also made  
 καὶ ἔλαβον ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν γέρρα  
 (others) 'prisoners; and they-took about — twenty shields  
 ὠμοθόεια δασειῶν βοῶν.  
 (made of raw-hides of-thick-haired oxen.)

\*Ἐπειδὴ δε ἡ βοή τε ἐγίγνετο πλείων καὶ  
When indeed the noise not-only became greater but-also  
εγγύτερον, καὶ οἱ ἀεὶ ἐπιοντες ἔθεον  
nearer, and — (those) continually running-up kept-running  
δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀεὶ βοῶντας, καὶ ἡ βοή  
m-haste to — (those) continually shouting, and the noise  
ἐγίγνετο πολλῷ μείζων, δσῳ δὴ πλείους  
became much greater, by-how-much indeed more-numerous  
ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι δὴ εἶναι τι  
they-became, it-seemed to — Xenophon indeed to-be something  
μεῖζον. Καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον,  
greater (than common). And (he) having-mounted on (his) horse,  
καὶ ἀναλαβὼν Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἵππεας,  
and having-taken-with (h.m) Lucius and the cavalry,  
παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ  
, he went forward, that) he-might-give-assistance; and quickly indeed  
ἀκούοντι τῶν στρατιωτῶν βοώντων, Θάλαττα!  
they-hear the soldiers shouting, (The) sea!

Θάλαττα! καὶ παρεγγυώντων.  
(the) sea! and cheering-on (those in the rear).

\*Ἐνδα δὴ ἀπαντες ἔθεον καὶ οἱ ὁπισθοφύλακες,  
Then indeed all commenced-running and the rear-guard,  
καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἤλαύνετο καὶ οἱ  
and the baggage-cattle were-excited (to their full speed) and (also) the  
ἵπποι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον,  
horses. And when all arrived on the summit,  
ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλαν ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατη-  
then indeed they-embraced one-another, also (the) gene-  
γοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς, δακρύοντες. Καὶ ἔξαπίνης,  
rals and captains, shedding-tears. And suddenly,  
δτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος, οἱ  
whoever indeed (it might be) having-exhorted (them to it), the  
στρατιώται φέρουσι λίδους, καὶ ποιοῦσι μέγαν  
soldiers bring stones, and make (a) large  
κολωνὸν. \*Ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν πλῆθος  
mound. Then they-placed-on (this mound a) multitude,

δερμάτων ὄμοβοιών, καὶ βακτηρίας, καὶ τὰ γέρρα  
of-skins of-raw-ox-hides, and staves, and the shields  
αἰχμάλωτα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμῶν τε αὐτός κατέτεμεν  
captured (from the enemy), and the guide not-only himself cut-to-pieces  
τὰ γέρρα, καὶ διεκελεύετο τοῖς ἀλλοις.  
the shields, but-also exhorted the others (to do the same).

Μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἀποπέμπουσι τὸν ἡγεμόνα,  
After thus the Greeks sent-away the guide,  
δόντες δῶρα ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον,  
giving (him) presents from (the) common (stock, namely, a) horse,  
καὶ ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην, καὶ Περσικήν σκεινήν,  
and (a) silver cup, and (a) Persian robe,  
καὶ δέκα δαρεικοὺς· δ' μάλιστα ἤτει τοὺς  
and ten darics, but most-of-all he-asked-for the  
δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν  
finger-rings, and he-obtained many (of them) from the  
στρατιωτῶν. Δέ δείξας κώμην αὐτοῖς οὗ  
soldiers And he-having-pointed-out (a) village to-them where  
σκηνήσουσι, καὶ  
they-might-encamp (or take up their quarters), and (he also having showed  
τὴν ὁδόν, ἣν πορεύσονται εἰς Μάκρωνας,  
them) the road, on-which they-were-to-proceed to (the) Macrones,  
ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐσπέρα, ὥχετο ἀπιών τῆς νυκτὸς.  
when it-was evening, he-departed, proceeding during-the night.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ  
HENCE — the Greeks proceeded through  
Μακρώνων τρεῖς σταδμοὺς,  
(the country) 'of (the) 'Macrones three days'-march, (making)  
δέκα παρασάγγας. Δέ τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ  
ten parasangs. And on-the first day

ιφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, δις ὥριζε τὴν  
they arrived at the river, which bounded-and-divided the  
τῶν Μακρώνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκι.  
(territories) of-the Macrones — (from) — (those) of-the Sey.  
Σινῶν. Εἰχον δ' οὐ περδέξιον χωρίον οἷον  
θησι. They-had — 'on (their) 'right (a) place such-as  
χαλεπώτατον, καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς  
(to be) the-most-difficult (of access), and on (their) left  
ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς δὲ ὁ ὥριζων, δι' οὖ  
another river, into which the bounding (river), through where  
ἔδει διαβῆναι, ἐνέβαλλεν. Οὗτος  
.it-was-necessary to-cross, emptied (itself). This (river)  
δὲ ἦν δασὺς δένδροις οὐ μὲν παχέσι,  
— was thick-set (on its shores) with-trees not indeed thick (or large)  
δὲ πυκνοῖς. Ταῦτα οἱ Ἑλληνες, ἐπεὶ  
but (growing) close-together. These (trees) the Greeks, after  
προσῆλθον, ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τοῦ  
they-arrived, cut-down, hastening to-go-out from the  
χωρίον ὡς τάχιστα. Δ' οἱ Μάκρωνες, ἔχοντες  
country as speedily-as-possible. But the Macrones, having  
γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τριχίους χιτῶνας  
wicker-shields and spears and hair tunics,  
παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν καταντιπέρας τῆς διαβάσεως,  
had-been-drawn-up on-the-opposite-side of-the crossing-place,  
καὶ διεκελεύοντο ἄλλήλοις, καὶ ἔρριπτον λίθους  
and encouraged one-another, and they-threw stones  
εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν, δέ οὐ ἐξικνοῦντο, οὐδὲ  
in the river, but 'they-did not 'reach (our men), (nor) (or)  
ἔβλαπτον οὐδένα.  
hurt none (of-them).

\*Ἐνδα δὴ τις ἀνήρ τῶν πελταστῶν προσέρχεται  
Then indeed some man of-the targeteers comes-up  
τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι  
to — Xenophon, affirming (that he) had-been-a-slave  
\*Ἀδήνησι, λέγων, δτι γιγνώσκοι τὴν φωνὴν  
at-Athens. (and) saying, that he-knew the language

τῶι . . . ινδρώπων. Καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ταύτην εἴνας  
of — (that) men. And I-think, said-he, this to-be

ἔμπη τοιχίδα καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει, ἔθέλω  
my country; and | if not [unless] something hinders, I-wish

διαλέχθηναι αὐτοῖς. Ἀλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη.  
to-speak with-them. But nothing hinders, said

ἀλλὰ διαλέγου, καὶ μάδε πρωτον  
(Xenopho.); but speak (with them), and ascertain first:

τίνες εἰσίν. Ἐρωτήσαντος, οἱ δ'  
what (people) they-may-be. He-inquiring, — (they) —

εἶπον, ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα αὐτοὺς  
said, that (they were) Macrones. Ask them

τοίνυν, ἔφη, τι ἀντιτετάχαται, καὶ  
then, said (Xenophon), why drawn-up-against (us), and

χρήζοισιν εἶναι πολέμιοι ἡμῖν. Δ' οἱ  
wish to-be enemies to-us. But — (they)

ἀπεκρίναντο. Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐρχεσθε ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
answered. (Because) that even you come against

ἡμετέραν χώραν. Οἱ στρατηγοί ἐκέλενον  
our country. The generals (then) ordered (him,

λέγειν, ὅτι οὐ ποιήσοντες κακῶς γε,  
to-say, | that not making evil at-least, [that not in the

ἀλλὰ πολεμήσαντες  
least intending to injure you,] but having-been-making-war <sup>1</sup>with (the)

βασιλεῖ, ἀπερχόμεδα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ  
king, we-were-returning to — Greece, and (that,

βουλόμεδα ἀφικέσθαι ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Ἐκεῖνοι  
we-desire to-arrive to (the) sea. They

ἡρώτων, εἰ ἀν δοῖεν τὰ πίστα τούτων.  
asked, if (they) would give — pledges of these (things)

Δ' οἱ ἔφασαν ἐδέλειν καὶ δοῦνα.  
And — (they) said (that they) wished both to-give

καὶ λαβεῖν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ Μάκρωνες διδόασι  
and to-receive (them) Then the Macrones gave

τοῖς Ἑλλησι βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην, δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες  
the Greeks (a) barbarian Prince, and the Greeks

ἔκείνοις Ἐλληνικήν· γάρ ἔφασαι  
 (gave) them (a) Grecian (one); for they-said (that)  
 ταῦτα εἶναι πιστὰ· δὲ ἀμφότεροι  
 these were (their) pledges; and both (parties called on the)  
 θεοὺς ἐπειμαρτύραντο.  
 gods (that) they-might-witness (it).

Δέ μετὰ τὰ πιστὰ, οἱ Μάχρωνες εὐθὺς  
 And after the pledges, the Macrones immediately  
 συνεξέκοπτον τὰ δένδρα, τε ὠδοποίουν  
 cut-down-with (them) the trees, not-only to-make-a-road (for  
 ὁδὸν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες, ἀναμε-  
 them, for a) path as about-'passing (them) 'through min-  
 μιγμένοι εν μέσοις τοῖς Ἐλλησι· καὶ  
 gling (at the same time) among the Greeks; but-also  
 παρεῖχον ἄγορὰν οἵαν ἐδύναντο· καὶ  
 provided (a) market (for them) such-as they-were-able; and  
 παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις, ἕως κατέ-  
 they-led (them) 'along for three days, until they-set-  
 στησαν τοὺς Ἐλληνας ἐπὶ τὰ ὅρια Κόλχων.  
 down the Greeks on the borders (of the Colchians).  
 'Ενταῦθα ἦν μέγα ὄρος, δὲ προσβατόν· καὶ  
 Here was (a) large mountain, but accessible; and  
 οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τούτου.  
 the Colchians had-been-drawn-up on this (mountain).

Καὶ οἱ Ἐλληνες μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἀντιπαρετάζαντο  
 And the Greeks indeed — (at) first drew-up-against  
 κατὰ φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἀξοντες πρὸς  
 (them) in line, as thus about-leading (the men) against  
 τὸ ὄρος· δέ ἐπειτα ἐδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς πρὸς  
 the mountain; but when it-seemed to-the generals (that)  
 συλλεγεῖσι βουλεύσασδαι ὅπως ἄγωνιοῦνται  
 they-should-assemble to-deliberate how they-should-contend  
 ὡς κάλλιστα. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔλεξεν, δτι δοκεῖ,  
 to-the-greatest-advantage. Xenophon therefore said, that it-seemed  
 παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα,  
 :to him), ceasing (to have the troops) — 'in (a) line

ποιῆσαι ὄρδίους λόχους· γὰρ μὲν  
 to-form | straight companies; [columns of companies;] for indeed  
 ἡ φάλαγξ εὐθὺς διασπασθήσεται· γὰρ μὲν  
 the line will immediately be-broken; for indeed  
 εἴ τι εὑρήσομεν ἀνοδον, δέ τὴν  
 in — (some places) we-will-find (an) impassable-road, but in — (others)  
 εὐοδον τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ποιῆσει ἀδυ-  
 να — (good-road to-the mountain; and immediately this will-cause despon-  
 μίαν, ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα, ὄρωσι  
 iency (in the men), when drawn-up in line, they-see  
 ταύτην διεσπασμένην. Ἐπειτα, ἦν μὲν προσάγωμεν  
 this (line) broken. Then, if indeed we-advance  
 τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ πολλοὺς, οἱ πολέμιοι περιττεύσουσι  
 drawn-up many-deep, the enemy will-reach-beyond  
 ἡμῶν, καὶ χρήσονται τοῖς περιττοῖς,  
 us (on the wings), and will-use the superfluous  
 τι δὲ ἀν βούλωνται. Δὲ ἐὰν  
 (men), (in) any (manner) which they may desire. And if  
 ἴωμεν τεταγμένοι ἐπ' ὁδίγων, ἀν εἴη οὐδὲν  
 we-go (forward) drawn-up few-deep, it-would be nothing  
 θαυμαστόν, εἰ ἡ φάλαγξ ἡμῶν διακοπείη  
 wonderful, | if the line of-us [if our line] be-cut-through  
 ὑπὸ καὶ ἀδρόων βελῶν καὶ πολλῶν ἀνδρώπων  
 by both collected missiles and many men  
 ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δέ πη τοῦτο ἔσται, ἔσται  
 falling-upon (it); if indeed by-any-means this should-be, it-will-be  
 κακὸν τῇ ὁδῷ φάλαγγι. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι,  
 bad for-the whole line. But it-seems to-me, (that)  
 ποιησαμένος τοὺς λόχους ὄρδίους, κατασχεῖν  
 having-formed the companies (in) columns, to-separate  
 τοῖς λόχοις διαλιπόντας τοσοῦτον χωρίον,  
 the companies, being-distant (from one another), so-much space,  
 ὃσον τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι  
 as-that the extreme companies (on the right and left) will-be.  
 ἔξω κεράτων τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ οὕτως ο  
 beyond (the) wings of-the enemy. And thus we th

ἐσχατοι λόχοι ἐσόμεδα τε ἔξω τῆς φάλαγγος  
extreme companies, 'will-be not-only beyond the line  
τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἀγοντες ὄρδιονς οἱ  
of-the enemy, but-also leading (forward) in-column the  
κράτιστοι ἡμῶν προσίασι πρῶτον, τε  
travest of-us advance first, and (in the place) in-which  
ἄντη εἴνοδον ταύτη ὁ ἔκαστος λόχος  
there may 'be (a) good-road, in-that — each company  
ἀξει. Καὶ οὐ τε ἐσται ῥάδιον τοῖς πολεμίοις  
will-lead. And it-'will not indeed 'be easy for-the enemy  
εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὸ διαλεῖπον  
to-penetrate into the (space) left (vacant between the com-

όντων λόχων ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν, τε  
panies in column) there-being companies here and there, and-indeed

οὐ ἐσται ῥάδιον διακόψαι λόχον ὄρδιον  
it-'will not 'be easy to-break-through (a) company in-column  
προσιόντα. Τε ἔάν τις τῶν λόχων πιέζηται  
advancing-forward. And if any of-the companies be-hard-pressed  
ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. Τε ἦν πῃ εἰς τῶν  
the nearest will-give-assistance. And if by-any-means one of-the  
λόχων δυνηθῇ ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον οὐδεὶς τῶν  
companies may-be-able to-ascend on the height none of-the  
πολεμίων μηκέτι μείνῃ. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε καὶ  
enemy after-this may-remain. This seemed-good, ana  
ἐποίουν τοὺς λόχους ὄρδιον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
they-formed the companies (in) columns. And Xenophon  
ἀπών ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐρύνυμα  
departing from the right (wing of the enemy) to the left  
ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· Οὗτοι εἰσιν, οὓς ὄρατε,  
said to-the soldiers: These are, whom you-see, (the)  
μόνοι ἀνδρες ἔτι ἐμποδὼν  
only men yet in-the-way (to prevent) us — not soon  
εἰναι, ἐνδα πάλαι ἐσπεύδομεν·  
to-be, there (where) we-'have long 'desired-and-hastened (to be);

τοῦτοις, ἦν πως δυνάμεδα, δεὶ καὶ κατα  
these, if in-any-way we-can, it-becomes (us) even | to  
φαγεῖν ὀμούς.  
eat-up raw [to exterminate].

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔκαστοι ἐγένοντο ἐν ταῖς χώραις,  
When indeed each had-got in — (their) places,  
καὶ τοὺς λόχους ἐποιήσαντο ὄρδίους, ἐγένοντα  
and the companies were-formed (in) columns, there-were  
μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς  
— companies of-the heavy-armed-men (to) about the (number of)  
ὅγδοηκοντα, δὲ δὲ ἔκαστος λόχος σχεδὸν  
eighty, and — each company (amounted) nearly  
εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· δὲ ἐποιήσαντο τοὺς πελ-  
ταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ τοὺς  
geeters and the archers | threefold [in three divisions] —  
μὲν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου δὲ τοὺς τοῦ  
(one) indeed beyond the left-wing and the (other beyond) the  
δεξιοῦ δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον, ἔκαστους  
right-wing and the (third) in (the) centre, each (divi-  
σχεδὸν ἔξακοσίους. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ  
sion being) nearly six-hundred (men). After this the  
στρατηγοὶ παρηγόνταν εὔχεσθαι·  
generals ordered (the soldiers) to-make (their  
εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες  
'vows; having-'made (their) 'vows, and also having-sung-the-pæan,  
ἐπορεύοντο. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξεινόφων  
they-proceeded (forward). And Cheirisophus indeed and Xenophon  
καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς, γενόμενοι ἔξω τῆς  
and the targeteers with them, being beyond the  
φάλαγγος τῶν πολεμίων ἐπορεύοντο.  
line of-the enemy, proceeded (on their march).

Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὡς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαραδέοντες.  
The enemy indeed, as they-saw them, running-against  
οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιόν, δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τῷ  
them). — (some) in front to the right hit — (others) to the

εὐώνυμον, διεσπάσθησαν, καὶ ἐποιησαν πολὺ<sup>ref;</sup>  
were-drawn-asunder, and they-made (a) great  
κενὸν ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τῆς φάλαγγος ἔστων. Δέ οἱ  
—oid in the middle-of-the line of-them. But the  
πελτασταί κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν,  
targeteers in the Arcadian (division in the centre).  
δν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν ἥρχεν ἴδόντες αὐτοὺς  
whom Eschines the Acarnanian commanded seeing them  
ἢιαχάζοντας, νομίσαντες φεύγειν, ἔθεον  
separating, having-thought (them) to-be-fleeing, ran (forward)  
ἀνὰ κράτος, καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἀναβαίνουσι  
with (all their) might, and these first ascended  
ἐπὶ τὸ ὅρος. δὲ καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν,  
on the mountain; and also the Arcadian heavy-armed (troops),  
δν Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὁρχομένιος ἥρχε, συνεφείπετο.  
whom Cleanor the Oichomenian commanded, followed-together(after).  
Δ' οἱ πολέμοι, ὡς ἥρξαντο θεῖν οὐκέτι  
But the enemy, as (the Greeks) began to-run no-longer  
ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγὴ ἀλλος ἀλλῃ ἐτράπετο.  
stood, but fled, | other in-other turned [some  
Δ' οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἀνα-  
going one way and some another]. But the Greeks de-  
βάντες εστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν  
scending (from the mountain) encamped among  
πολιταῖς κώμαις ἔχουσαις πολλὰ τάπιτήδεια.  
many villages having much (of) provisions.  
Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα  
| And the indeed other (things) [and as respects other things] there-was  
οῦδεν, δ τι καὶ ἔθαύμασαν. δὲ ἦν πολλὰ  
nothing, that even they-were-surprised-at; but there-were many  
τα σμήνη αὐτόδι, καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν  
— bee-hives there, and as-many of-the soldiers 'as  
ἔφαγον τῶν κηρίων, πάντες τε ἐγίγνοντο ἀφρονες,  
ate of-the combs, all not-only became delirious  
καὶ ἥμοιν, καὶ διεχώρει αὐτοῖς κάτω,  
but-also vomited, | and it-passed-through them downwards. | and they

καὶ οὐδεὶς ἤδυνατο ἴστασθαι ὅρθός,  
were purged,] and no-one was-able to-stand straight  
ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἔδηδοκότες ὀλίγον σφόδρα ἐώκεσαν  
but — (those) indeed having-eaten little very-much resembled  
μεθύοντι, δ' οἱ πολὺ<sup>ν</sup>  
(persons) being-drunk, but — (those having eaten) much (resembled)  
μαινομένοις, δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀποθνήσκοντι.  
those) being-mad, and also (resembled) — (those) dying  
Πολλοί δὲ ἔκειντο οὕτω, ὡςπερ τροπῆς  
Many indeed lay (on the ground) so, as-though (a) rout  
γεγενημένης, καὶ ἡ ἀδυμία ἦν πολλὴ. Δὲ τῇ  
had-taken-place, and the dejection was great. But on-the  
ἵστεραιά οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπέδανε, δ' ἀνεφρόνοντι  
next-day no-one indeed had-died, but they-recovered (their)  
ἀμφὶ που τὴν αὐτήν ὥραν. δὲ  
'senses about perhaps the same hour (they lost them); and  
τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο, ὡςπερ ἐκ  
'on (the) 'third and fourth (days) they-got-up, as-if from  
φαρμακοποσίας.  
taking-physic.

\*Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδιούς,  
Hence indeed they-proceeded two days'-march, (making)  
ἐπτὰ παρασάγγας, καὶ ἦλιον ἐπὶ θάλατταν  
seven parasangs, and came to (the) sea  
εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, \*Ἐλληνίδα πόλιν, οἰκουμένην,  
at Trapezus, (a) Greek city, populous,  
ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, ἀποικίαν  
(and situated) on the Euxine Sea, (being a) colony  
Σινωπέων, ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Κόλχων.  
'of (the) 'Sinopians, in the territory 'of (the) 'Colchians.  
\*Ἐνταῦθα ἐμειναν ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἡμέρας  
There they-remained, about — thirty days  
ἐν ταῖς κώμαις τῶν Κόλχων. Κάντεῦθεν ὄρμα-  
in the villages of-the Colchians. And-hence making-  
μενοι ἐληίζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. Δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι  
incursi — they-plundered — Colchis. And (the) Trapezians

παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ τε ἐδέξαντο  
 provide (a) market for-the camp, and not-only received  
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ ἔδοσαν  
 the Greeks (hospitably in their city), but-also gave (them)  
 ζένια βοῦς καὶ ἀλφίτα  
 gifts-of-hospitality-and-friendship, (namely) oxen and barley-meal  
 καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ καὶ συνδιεπράττοντο ὑπὲρ  
 and wine. And also they-negotiated (with them) for  
 τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων, μάλιστα τῶν  
 (and in behalf) of-the neighbouring Colchians, especially — (those)  
 οἰκούντων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. καὶ ζένια καὶ ἥλιδον  
 dwelling in the plain; and gifts-of-hospitality also came  
 παρ' ἐκείνων βόες. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ παρεσ-  
 from them (namely) oxen. After this indeed they-pre-  
 κενάζοντο τὴν θυσίαν, ἣν εὔξαντο. δὲ ίκανοι  
 pared the sacrifice, which they-had-vowed; and sufficient  
 βόες ἥλιδον αὐτοῖς ἀποδῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτῆρι,  
 oxen came to-them to-sacrifice to — Jupiter the Preserver,  
 καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα, καὶ τοῖς ἀλλοῖς θεοῖς  
 and to — Hercules for-safe-conduct, and to-the other gods  
 ἀ εὔξαντο. Δὲ καὶ ἐποίησαν γυμνικὸν  
 (that) which they-had-vowed. And also they-made (a) gymnastic  
 ἀγῶνα, ἐν τῷ ὄρει, ἐνδιαπερ ἐσκήνουν. Δὲ εἴλοντο  
 contest, on the hill, where they-were-encamped. And they-chose  
 Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην (ὅς ἐφυγε οἰκοδεύει  
 Dracontius (the) Spartan (who became-an-exile from-home  
 ὃν παῖς, ἀκον κατακτανών παῖδα,  
 being (a) boy, (he) unwillingly killing (a) boy,  
 πατάξας ξυήλη) τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι  
 having-struck (him) 'with (a) 'dagger) not-only to-take-'care (to pro-  
 δρόμου, καὶ προστατῆσαι τοῦ ἀγῶνος.  
 vide) 'for (a) 'race, but-also to-preside-over the contest  
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο,  
 (and games). When indeed the sacrifice was (performed),  
 παρέδοσαν τὰ δέρματα τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἐκέλευνον  
 they-gave the skins to — Dracontius, and they-requested

ἥγεισδα. ὅπου πεποιηκώς εἴη, τὸν  
 (him) to-lead (to the place) where he-may-have-made the  
 δρόμον. οὐ δέ δεῖξας, ἀπερ  
 course. — But (he) having-pointed (to the place), when  
 ἐτύγχανον ἐστηκότες, ἔφη, οὐ οὗτος λόφος  
 they-happened (to be) standing, said, — this hill (12)  
 κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου τις ἀν Βού  
 most excellent for-running (in) whatever-direction any-one may de  
 ληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται πα  
 sire. (But) how then, said-they, will-they-be-able to  
 λαίειν ἐν οὗτως σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ;  
 wrestle in (a place) so hard and bushy (and rough)?  
 οὐδὲ, εἶπε, οὐ καταπεσών, ἀνιάσεται τι  
 — but (he), said-he, who having-fallen, will-be-distressed some (what)  
 μᾶλλόν. Δέ παιδες μὲν, οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν  
 the-more. And boys indeed, the most (of them) —  
 αἰχμαλώτων. ἥγωνίζοντο στάδιον,  
 (from those) taken-prisoners, contended (in the) stadium  
 δέ δόλιχον πλείους οὐ  
 (or short course), and (in the) dolichon (or long course) more than  
 ἑξήκοντα Κρῆτες ἔδεον, δε ἔτεροι πάινη  
 sixty Cretans ran, and others (contended in) wrestling  
 καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον. Καὶ ἐγένετο  
 and boxing and (the) paneratum. And it-was (a)  
 καλὴ θέα· γὰρ πολλοὶ κατέβησαν,  
 fine sight; [for many went-down, [entered the lists,]  
 καὶ, ἀτε τῶν ἐταίρων θεωμένωι, ἐγίγνετο  
 and, as — (their) companions were-looking-on, there-was  
 πολλὴ φιλονεικία. Δέ καὶ ἵπποι ἔδεον· καὶ  
 much emulation. And also horses ran; and  
 ἐδει αὐτούς, ἐλάσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦ,  
 it-was-necessary for-them, having-galloped along-down the steep,  
 ἀναστρέψαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάτῃ, πάλιν  
 (and) having-turned-round in the sea, again  
 ἀγειν ἀντὶ πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν. Καὶ μὲν  
 ~lead-back upwards to the altar. Αντὶ indeed 'going

κάτω οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦτο· δ'  
 downwards -- many (of the horses) rolled (down), bu-  
 ἀνω πρὸς τὸ ἵσχυρῶς ὅρθιον, οἱ  
 (going) upwards against the exceedingly steep (ground), the  
 ἵπποι μόλις ἐπορεύοιτο βάδην· εὐδα  
 horses scarcely proceeded step-by-step (walking); then  
 ἐγίγνετο πολλὴ κραυγὴ, καὶ γέλως, καὶ παρακέ-  
 there-was much shouting, and laughter, and cheer  
 λευσις αὐτῶν.  
 as from-them.

## BOOK V.

## CHAPTER I

"Οσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπράξαν ἐν τῇ  
 WHAT indeed — the Greeks did in the  
 ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου, καὶ ὅσα  
 march-upwards, in — (that, namely,) with Cyrus, and what (they did)  
 ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θαλασσαν  
 in the journey, — (that, namely,) just to (the) sea  
 τὴν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ Εὐξείνῳ, καὶ  
 [the] in the Pontus Euxinus, [namely, the Euxine Sea,] and  
 ὡς ἀφίκοντο εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν,  
 how they-arrived at Trebisond (a) Greek city,  
 καὶ ὡς ἀπέδυσαν ἀ εὔξαντο θύσειν  
 and how they-offered-the-sacrifice which they-had-vowed to-sacrifice 'for  
 σωτήρια, ἐνδα πρῶτον ἀφίκοιντο εἰς φιλίαιν  
 [their] safety, when first they-should-arrive at (a) friendly  
 γῆν, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.  
 country, (all this) has-been-declared in the preceding discourse.

"Ἐκ τούτο δὲ ξυνελθόντες ἔβουλεύοντο περὶ  
 Upon this indeed coming-together they-deliberated concerning  
 τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· δὲ Ἀντιλέων  
 the remaining (part of the) journey, and Antileon (the)  
 Θούριος ἀνέστη πρῶτος, καὶ ἐλεξεν ὥδε· Ἐγὼ μὲν  
 Thurian stood-up first, and spoke thus: I indeed  
 τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἦδη ἀπείρηκα  
 therefore, said-he, O men, have-'become now 'tired  
 ξυσκευαζόμενος, καὶ βαδίζων, καὶ τρέχων, καὶ  
 packing-up, and walking, and running, and

φέρων τὰ δόπλα, καὶ ἵών ἐν τάξει, καὶ  
 carrying — (my) arms, and going (drawn-up) in order, and  
 φυλάττων φυλακὰς, καὶ μαχόμενος·  
 | guarding guard, [standing guard,] and fighting;  
 ἐπιδύμω ἡδη δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἔχομεν θάλατταν,  
 I-desire now indeed, since we-have (attained the) sea,  
 πανσάμενος τούτων τῶν πόνων, πλεῖν τὸ  
 having-rested from-these — (our) toils, to-sail the  
 λοιπὸν, καὶ ἐκταθεὶς, ὥσπερ Ὁδυσσεύς.  
 remainder (of the way), and stretched-out, like Ulysses,  
 καθεύδων ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Οἱ στρα-  
 sleeping to-arrive in — Greece. The sol-  
 τιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεδορύθησαν  
 diers hearing these (things) loudly-applauded (him)  
 ὡς λέγοι εὖ· καὶ ἄλλος ἔλεγε ταῦτα,  
 as (one who) spoke well; and another said these (same  
 καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες.  
 things), and all — (those) being-present (said the same).  
 Ἐπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἰπεν ὡδε·  
 Then indeed Cheirisophus rose-up and spoke thus:  
 Ω ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος ἐστιν φίλος μοι,  
 O men, Anaxibius | is (a) friend to-me, [is my friend,]  
 δὲ καὶ τυγχάνει ναναρχῶν. Ἡν οὖν πέμψητε  
 and also happened-to-be commanding-a-fleet. If therefore you-will-send  
 με, οἴομαι ἀν ἐλθεῖν ἔχων καὶ τριήρεις καὶ  
 me, I-think — to-come (back) having both galleys and  
 πλοῖα τὰ ἀξοντα ἡμᾶς·  
 transports | (for) the (hereafter) carrying us; [to transport us home;]  
 δὲ ὑμεῖς, εἰπερ βούλεσθε πλεῖν, περιμένετε, ἐστ'  
 and you, since you-desire to-sail, stay-here, until  
 ἐγὼ ἀν ἐλθω· ἦξω δὲ ταχέως. Οἱ  
 I may come (back); I-will-come indeed speedily. The  
 στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἤσθησάν τε  
 soldiers hearing these (things) were-delighted —  
 καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο αὐτὸν πλεῖν ὡς τάχιστα.  
 and voted (for) him to-sail as speedily-as-possible.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε  
 After this (one) Xenophon stood-up and spoke  
 ὁδε· Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ στέλλεται ἐπὶ πλοῖα,  
 thus: Cheirisophus indeed — is-sent after ships,  
 δὲ ἡμεῖς ἀναμενοῦμεν. "Οσα οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι  
 and we will-remain-here. What therefore it-seems to-me to-be  
 καιρὸς ποιεῖν εἰν τῇ μονῆ, ταῦτα ἔρω.  
 proper to-do in — (our) stay, that I-will-tell (you).  
 Πρῶτον μὲν δεῖ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι  
 First indeed it-is-necessary — (for) provisions to-be-procured  
 ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· γάρ ἔστιν οὔτε ἴκανή  
 from the enemy; for there-is neither (a) sufficiently-abundant  
 ἄγορά, οὔτε εὐπορία ἀνησόμεθα  
 market, nor (have we the) means (with which) we-shall-buy  
 δτου, εἰ μὴ τισίν δλίγοις· ἡ χώρα δὲ  
 anything, unless some few; the country indeed (around us is)  
 πολεμία· οὖν κίνδυνος πολλοὺς  
 hostile (to us); therefore (there is) danger (that) many  
 ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἦν πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 may-perish, if you-proceed-out for — provisions  
 ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως. Ἄλλα δοκεῖ μοι  
 carelessly — and unguardededly. But it-seems to-me  
 λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια σὺν προνομαῖς,  
 (that we ought) to-take — provisions with foraging-parties,  
 δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι ἀλλως, ώς σώζησθε,  
 and not to-wander-about at-random, in-order-that you-may-preserve (you)  
 δ' ἡμᾶς ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τούτων.  
 Yes, and (that) we (your officers) should-regulate these (things).  
 \*Ἐδοξε ταῦτα. Ἐτί  
 It-seemed-well (respecting) these (things), and they were adopted. And-now  
 τοίνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. Γάρ τινες ὑμῶν  
 therefore listen also to-this. For-as some of-you  
 ἐκπορεύονται ἐπὶ λείαν· οἴομαι οὖν εἶναι  
 will-proceed-out to plunder; I-think therefore (it) to-be  
 βέλτιστον εἰπεῖν ἡμῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἔξιέναι,  
 best +on-tell us (of) the intending to-go-out



ἀντὶ οὐδὲν ἔδει ὅν μέλλω λέγειν· δέ τοι  
 there would 'be no 'need of-what I-am-about to-say; but now  
 ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἀδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πει-  
 since this (is) uncertain, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-en-  
 ρᾶσθαι συμπαρασκευάζειν πλοῖα καὶ αὐτόθεν.  
 deavour to-provide-and-bring-together ships even here.

Γὰρ τὴν μὲν ἔλασθη, ἵπαρχόντων  
 For if indeed he-should-come (back with ships, vessels) being-provided  
 ἐνδάδε, πλευσούμεδα ἐν ἀφθονωτέροις.  
 here, we-shall-sail in (a) greater-abundance (of ships)

\*Ἐὰν δέ μὴ ἄγῃ, χρησόμεδα τοῖς  
 If indeed he-'should not 'bring (any), we-will-make-use of— (those)  
 ἐνδάδε. \*Ἐγὼ δὲ ὅρῶ πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέ-  
 here. I indeed see vessels frequently sailing

οντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζούντιων  
 by; if therefore we-should-be-asking from the-people-of-Trebisond

μακρὰ πλοῖα, κατάγομεν  
 | long ships, [ships of war,] we-might-bring-into-port (those vessels

καὶ φυλάττομεν αὐτά παραλυόμενοι τὰ  
 sailing by), and might-guard them | loosening the

πηδάλια, ἔως ἵκανα ἀν  
 rudders, [unshipping the rudders,] until (a) sufficient (number) may

γένηται τὰ ἀξοντα, ἀν ἵσως  
 be-got (for) the 'carrying (of us) 'hereafter, 'we may probably

οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κομιδῆς οἵας δεόμεδα. Καὶ  
 not 'have-failed 'of (a) 'conveyance such-as we-see. And

ταῦτα ἔδοξε. \*Εννοήσατε δ', ἔφη,  
 these (suggestions) were-approved. Think also, said-he,

εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ,  
 if (it will not be) proper even to-support from the common (stock),

οὓς ἀν κατάγωμεν, δσον χρόνον ἀν  
 those-whom 'we may 'bring-in, so-'long (a) time 'as 'they may

μένωσι ἔνεκεν ἡμῶν, καὶ ξυνδέσθαι  
 'remain on-account of-us, and to-make-an-agreement (with them

ναῦλον, ὅπως ὠφελοῖντες  
 about the) passage-money, so-that benefitting (us) they (ma-

**καὶ ὠφελῶνται.**      **Kai** ταῦτα      **ἔδοξε**  
 αἴσιον benefit (themselves). And these (things) seemed-good  
**Δοκεῖ μοι ποίνυν, ἔφη, τὴν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα**  
 It-seems to-me therefore, said-he, if perhaps even these (things),  
**μή ἐκπεράινηται, ὥστε πλοῖα ἀρκεῖν,**  
 do not result, so-that vessels be-sufficient (for us),  
**ἐντείλασθαι ταῖς πόλεσιν οἰκουμέναις παρὰ**  
 (it is) to-be-enjoined to-the cities situated along (the)  
**θάλατταν ὁδοποιεῖν τὰς ὁδοὺς, ἃς ἀκούομεν εἴναι**  
 sea to-repair the roads, which we-hear to-be  
**δυσπόρους.**      **γὰρ πείσονται, καὶ διὰ τὸ**  
 difficult-to-pass-through; for they-will-obey, both | through the  
**φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι**  
 to-fear, [through fear,] and through the to-desire [and through  
**ἀπαλλαγῆναι ἡμῶν.**  
 the desire] to-get-rid of-us.

**Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον, ὡς δέοι οὐ**  
 Then indeed they-exclaimed, that there-ought not  
**ὑδοιπορεῖν.**      **Δὲ ὁ ὡς ἔγνω τὴν**  
 to-be-travelling-by-land. But — (Xenophon) as he-perceived the  
**ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, οὐδέν μὲν πε-**  
 want-of-reason of-them, 'put nothing indeed (respecting roads) 'to-  
**ψήφισε, δὲ ἐπεισε τὰς πόλεις ὁδοποιεῖν**  
 vote, but he-persuaded the towns to-make-the-roads  
**ἔκούσας, λέγων δτι θᾶττον ἀπαλλάξον-**  
 of-their-own-free-will, saying that the-more-speedily they-would-be-  
**ται, τὴν αἱ ὁδοὶ γένωνται εὔποροι.**  
 freed-from (the Greeks), if the roads became passable.  
**Δέ καὶ ἔλαθον πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπε-**  
 And also they-obtained (a) fifty-oared-galley from the people-of-  
**ζουντίων, τῇ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα**  
 Trebisond, over-which they-placed Dexippus (a) Lacedaemonian  
**περίοικον. Οὗτος, ἀμελήσας τοῦ ζυλλέγειν**  
 provincial. This (person), having-neglected (the) to-collect  
**πλοῖα, ἀποδράς ὠχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων**  
 vessels, having-fled he-departed out of-the (Euxine) Sea, having

τὴν ναῦν. Οὗτος μὲν οὖν ὥστερον ἐπάθε  
 the vessel. This (person) indeed therefore afterwards suffered  
 δίκαια· γὰρ ἐν Θράκῃ παρὰ  
 just (punishment); for in Thrace at (the court of)  
 Σειρῆνη, πολυπραγμονῶν τι, ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ  
 Seuthes, meddling-with something, he-died by (the  
 Νικάνδροι τοῦ Λάκωνος. Δέ καὶ  
 bands of, Nicander the Lacedæmonian. And (the Greeks) also  
 ἔλαβον τριακόντορον, ἦ Πολυκράτης  
 received (a) thirty-oared-galley, over-which Polycrates (the)  
 Αἰγαῖος ἐπεστάθη, ὃς κατῆγε πλοῖα ὁπόσα  
 Athenian was-placed, who brought-in (the) vessels as-many-as  
 λαμβάνοι επὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ  
 he-could-capture (to the shore) before the camp. And  
 μὲν ἐξαιρούμενοι τὰ ἀγώγιμα, εἰ ἦγον τι,  
 indeed taking-out the cargoes, if they-brought any,  
 καθίστασαν φύλακας, ὅπως εἴη σῶα,  
 they-placed guards over (them), so-that they-might-be safe,  
 δέ χρήσαντο τοῖς πλοίοις εἰς παραγωγήν.  
 and they-used the vessels for (their) conveyance.  
 'Εν δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 During (the time) that — these (things) were, the Greeks  
 ἔξησαν ἐπὶ λείαν· καὶ μὲν οἱ ἐλάμβανον,  
 went-out after plunder; and indeed — (some) took (plunder),  
 δέ καὶ οἱ οὐ. Δέ Κλεαίνετος ἔξαγαγὼν  
 but also — (others did) not. But Cleænetus leading-out  
 καὶ τὸν λόχον ἔαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον πρὸς  
 both the company of-himself and another (one) against (a)  
 χαλεπὸν χωρίον, τε αὐτός ἀπέθανε καὶ πολλοί  
 difficult place, not-only himself lost-his-life, but-also many  
 ἄλλοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.  
 others of — (those) with him.

## CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν οὐκέτι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπι-  
τήδεια, διῆτε ἀπαυδημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.  
WHEN indeed it-was no-longer (possible) to-take — pro-  
visions, so-as to-return-the-same-day to the camp,  
ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν, λαβὼν ἡγεμόνας  
[on this [then]] Xenophon, having-taken (as) guides (some)  
τῶν Τραπεζούντιων, ἔξαγει τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ  
of-the people-of-Trebisond, led-out the half of-the  
στρατεύματος εἰς Δρίλας, δὲ τὸ ἥμισυ  
army against (the) Drilæ, but the (other) half  
κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· γὰρ οἱ  
he-left to-guard the camp; for the  
Κόλχοι ἀτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, ἦσαν  
Colchians as having-been-driven-out from — (their) houses, were  
ἀδρόοι πολλοὶ, καὶ ἵπερεκάθηντο ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
collected-together (in) great (numbers), and were-posted on  
τῶν ἄκρων. Δέ οἱ Τραπεζούντιοι οὐκ ἦγον  
the heights. But the people-of-Trebisond did not lead  
διπόδεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν βάδιον  
(them to places) whence — — provisions were easy  
λαβεῖν· γὰρ ἦσαν φίλοι αὐτοῖς·  
to-take; for (the people inhabiting them) were friends to-themselves;  
δὲ προδύμως ἦγον εἰς τοὺς Δρίλας, ὑφ' ὧν  
but eagerly led (them) to the Drilæ, | from whom  
Ἐπασχον κακῶς, εἰς χωρία τε  
they-suffered evil, [who had injured them,] into (a) country not-only  
ἀρεινὰ, καὶ δύσβατα, καὶ πολεμικωτάτους  
mountainous, but-also difficult-of-access, and (among) the-most-warlike  
ἀνθρώπους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.  
people of — (those) on the Pontus (Euxinus).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἦσαν ἄνω ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ,  
When indeed the Greeks were up in the country,

ὅποια τῶν χωρίον ἐδόκει τοῖς Δρίλαις εἰναι  
 'such of-the places as it-seemed to-the Drilæ to-be  
 ἀλώσιμα, ἐμπιπράντες ἀπήεσαν· καὶ  
 easy-to-be-taken, having-set-fire (to such places) they-retreated; and  
 ἦν οὐδὲν λαμβάνειν, εἰ μὴ ὥς, η̄ Βοῦς, η̄ τι  
 there-was nothing to-take, unless swine, or oxen, or any  
 ἄλλο κτῆνος διαπεφευγός τὸ πῦρ. Δέ η̄ν ἔν  
 another cattle having-escaped-from the fire. | But there-was one  
 χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν.  
 place (the) metropolis of-them; [but there was one place that

εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνερρύνησαν.  
 was +heir metropolis;] to this all flocked-together.

Δέ περὶ τοῦτο η̄ν ἵσχυρῶς βαδεῖα  
 And round this (place) there-was (an) exceedingly deep  
 χαράδρα, καὶ πρόσοδοι πρὸς τὸ χωρίον  
 ravine, and (the) accesses to the country (were)  
 χαλεπαί. Οἱ πελτασταὶ δὲ, προδραμόντες τῶν  
 difficult. The targeteers however, having-run-before the  
 ὅπλιτῶν πέντε η̄ξ στάδια, διαβάντες τὴν  
 heavy-armed-men five or six stadia, having-crossed the  
 χαράδραν, ὅρῶντες πολλὰ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα  
 ravine, (and) seeing many sheep and other  
 χρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον. δέ καὶ  
 things, made-an-attack on the place: and also  
 πολλοὶ δορυφόροι, οἱ ἔξωρημένοι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπι-  
 many spea-men, — (those) having-gone-out for — pro-  
 τήδεια ξυνείποντο. ὤστε οἱ διαβάντες  
 visions followed-with (them); so-that — (those) crossing (the  
 ἐγένοντο πλείους η̄ διεχιλίους ἀνδρώποντος.  
 ravine) happened-to-be more than two-thousand men

Δέ ἐπει μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν  
 But when fighting they-were not able to-take  
 τὸ χωρίον (γὰρ καὶ η̄ν εὐρεῖα τάφρος  
 the place (for also there-was (a) broad trench, (it)  
 ἀναβεβλημένη περὶ αὐτὸν, καὶ ἐπὶ<sup>..</sup>  
 having-been-thrown-up around this (place), and (there-were) ..

τῆς ἀναβολῆς σκόλοπες, καὶ ξύλιναι τύρσεις  
the rampart palisades, and (also) wooden tower.

πυκιαὶ πεποιημέναι), δὴ ἐπε-  
close-together having-been-made) (on the mound or rampart), indeed they-  
χείρου ἀπιέναι· δὲ οἱ ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς  
attempted to-depart, but the (Drilæ) pressed-upon them.

Δὲ ὡς οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀπωτρέχειν  
But (the Greeks; as they-were not able to-retreat

(γὰρ ἡ κατάβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν  
(for the passage-down from the place to the ravine

ἥν ἐφ' ἐνὸς). πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ὃς  
was for one) (only), sent to Xenophon, who

ἡγείτο τοῖς ὄπλιταις. Δ' ὁ ἐλθὼν  
led the heavy-armed-men. And the (messenger) having-gone

λέγει, ὅτι χωρίου ἔστι μεστόν πολλῶν  
said, that (the) place is full of-many

χρημάτων· οὔτε δυνάμεσα λαβεῖν τοῦτο·  
things, nor were-we-able to-take this (place);

γὰρ ἐστιν ἵσχυρὸν· οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ἥδιον· γὰρ  
for it-is strong; or to-retreat easily; for

ἐπεξεληλυθότες μάχονται, καὶ ἡ ἀφοδος  
(the enemy) having-marched-out fought (us), and the way-from

χαλεπή.  
(it is) difficult.

\*Ακούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν, προσαγαγὼν  
Having-heard these (things) — Xenophon, leading-forward

πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν, ἐκέλευσε μὲν τοὺς  
(his men) to the ravine, ordered — the

ὄπλιτας θέσθαι τα ὄπλα· αὐτὸς δὲ,  
heavy-armed-men to-stand — (under) arms; he indeed,

διαβάς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς, ἐσκοπεῖτο πότεροι  
having-crossed-over with the captains, considered whether.

εἴη κρείττον ἀπάγειν καὶ τοὺς  
it-might-be better to-lead-back also — (those) 'having (already)

διαβεβηκότας, ἢ καὶ διαβιβάζειν τοὺς ὄπλιτας,  
crossed-over, or even to-lead-over the heavy-armed-men.

ώς ἀν τοῦ χωρίου ἀλόντος. Γάρ ἐδόκει μὲν  
— (loping) the place being-taken. For it-seemed indeed  
τὸ ἀπάγειν οὐκ εἰναι ἀνευ πολλῶν  
(the) to-lead (the men) 'back not to-be (possible) without many  
νεκρῶν, δ' ἀν οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ ωντο ἔλειν  
lead | and — the captains even were-of-opinion to-take  
τὸ χωρίον.  
the place [and the captains were of the opinion that the place could

Kai ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε, πιστεύσας  
be taken]. And — Xenophon yielded, having-confided  
τοῖς ἱεροῖς· γὰρ οἱ μάντεις ἀποδειγμένοι ἤσαν,  
in-the-sacrifices; for the augurs had-shown,  
ὅτι μὲν ἔσται μάχη, δὲ τὸ τέλος τῆς  
that indeed there-would-be (a) battle, and (that) the termination of-the  
ἐξόδου καλὸν. Kai μὲν ἔπειπε τοὺς  
excursion (would be) favourable. And — he-sent the  
λοχαγοὺς διαβιβάσοντας τοὺς  
captains | being-about-bringing-over [to bring over] the  
ὅπλιτας, δ' αὐτὸς ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἄπαντας  
heavy-armed-men, but he-himself remained having-kept-back all  
τοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ εἴα οὐδένα ἀκροβο-  
the targeteers, and allowed none (of them) to-skir-  
λίζεσθαι. Επεὶ δ' οἱ ὅπλιται ἦκον,  
mish (with the enemy). When indeed the heavy-armed-men came,  
ἐκέλευσε ἔκαστον τῶν λοχαγῶν ποιῆσαι τὸν  
he-ordered each of-the captains to-form — (his)  
λόχον ως ἀν οἴηται κράτιστα ἀγωνιεῖσθαι.  
company as 'he might 'think the-best to-fight (with);  
γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἤσαν πλησίον ἀλλήλων, οἱ  
for the captains were near to-one-another, who  
πάντα τῷ χρόνῳ ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ  
at-all — times contended with-one-another about  
ἀνδραγαδίας. Kai οἱ μὲν ἐποίουν ταῦτα·  
deeds-of-valour. And — (they) indeed did these (things).  
δ' οἱ παρήγειλε πᾶσι τοῖς πελτασταῖς iέναι  
and — he-ordered all the targeteers to-go

ὅπηγχυλωμένους, ὡς δεῆσον ἀκοιτίζειν  
 holding-their-javelins-by-the-thong, as it-would-be-necessary to-hurt  
 ὅπόταν σημήνῃ, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιθε-  
 whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the archers to-have  
 βλήσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, ὡς δεῆσον  
 placed (the arrows) on the string, as it-would-be-necessary  
 τοξεύειν ὅπόταν σημήνῃ, καὶ τοὺς γυμνῆτας  
 to-shoot whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the light-armed  
 ἔχειν τὰς διφδέρας μεστὰς λίθων·  
 slingers) to-have — (their) bags-made-of-skins full of-stones;  
 καὶ ἐπεμψε τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους τούτων  
 and he-sent — (those) fit to-have these (things)  
 ἐπιμεληθῆναι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα παρεσκεύαστο,  
 'taken-care-of. When indeed all had-been-prepared,  
 καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ὑπολοχαγοὶ, καὶ οἱ  
 and the captains and the lieutenants, and — (those)  
 ἀξιοῦντες μὴ εἶναι χείρους τούτων, πάντες  
 esteeming (themselves) not to-be inferior (to) these, all  
 παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων  
 were-drawn-up-in-order, and indeed truly they-beheld  
 ἀλλήλους· (γὰρ ἡ τάξις διὰ  
 one-another; (for the order (in which they were drawn up), from  
 τὸ χωρίον ἦν μηνοειδῆς). Ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 (the nature of) the place, was (a) crescent). When indeed  
 ἐπαιάνισαν, καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφέγξατο,  
 they-had-sung-the-paeon, and the trumpet had-sounded,  
 ἄμα τε ἥλαλαξαν τῷ Ἔνναλίῳ, καὶ  
 at-the-same-time also they-raised-the-war-cry to — Enyalius, and  
 οἱ ὅπλιται ἔθεον δρόμῳ· καὶ τὰ  
 the heavy-armed-men ran, (as) in (a) race, (fast); and the  
 βέλη ἐφέρετο ὁμοῦ λόγχαι, τοξεύματα  
 missiles were-thrown together, (namely,) lances, arrows,  
 σφενδόναι, δὲ πλεῖστοι λίθοι ἐκ τῶν  
 balls-and-stones-from-slings, and many stones from the  
 χειρῶν· δέ ἦσαν οἱ καὶ προσέφερον πῆρ.  
 hands; and there-were (some) who even threw fire

'Υπὸ δέ πλέθυς τῶι βελῶι  
 (at the place). On-account therefore 'of (the) 'multitude of-the missiles  
 οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλιπον τε τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς  
 the enemy deserted not-only the palisades but-also the  
 τύρσεις· ὅςτε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος καὶ Φι-  
 towers; so-that Agasias (the) Stymphalian and Phi-  
 λόξενος Πελληνεύς, καταδέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα  
 Ioxenus (the) Pellenian, having-put-down — (their) arms,  
 ἀνεβῆσαν ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον, καὶ ἄλλος  
 mounted (the rampart) in (their) tunics only, and one  
 εἰλκε ἄλλον, καὶ ἄλλος ἀναβεβήκει, καὶ, ὡς  
 drew-up another, and another climbed-up, and, as  
 ἐδόκει, τὸ χωρίον ἥλώκει. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ  
 it-appears the place was-taken. And — the targeteers  
 καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ εἰςδραλόντες ἤρπαζον ὃ τι ἕκαστος  
 and the light-armed-men running-in took whatever each-one  
 ἐδύνατο· ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας  
 could; — Xenophon indeed standing at the gates  
 κατεκώλευε ἔξω ὅπόσους ἐδύνατο τῶν ὄπλιτῶν·  
 detained without as-many-as he-could of-the heavy-armed-men;  
 γὰρ ἄλλοι πολέμιοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπὶ τιτὶν ἴσχυροῖς  
 for other enemies appeared on some strong  
 ἄκροις. Μεταξὺ δὲ οὐ πολλοῖ χρόνοι  
 heights. In-the-mean-while, indeed no long time  
 γενομένου ἐγίγνετο τε κραυγὴ ἐνδον, καὶ οἱ  
 having-occurred, there-was — (a) noise within, and the  
 ἐφευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἀ ἔλαβον,  
 (men) fled, — (some)indeed even having what they-had-taken,  
 τάχα δὲ τις καὶ τετρωμένος· καὶ ἦν πολὺς  
 presently also some even wounded; and there-was much  
 ὥδισμὸς ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. Καὶ οἱ  
 crowding-and-pressing about the gates. And — (these)  
 ἐκπίπτοντες ἐρωτώμενοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἄκρα τέ  
 pushing-out being-questioned said, that (a) citadel indeed

ἐστιν ἐνδον, καὶ πολλοί οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ἐκδεδρα-  
is within, and many (of) the enemy, who sallying-  
μηκότες, παίουσι τοὺς ἀνδρώπους ἐνδον.  
forth, fell-on the men within.

\*Ἐντεῦθεν ἐκέλευσε Τολμίδην τὸν κῆρυκα  
Then (Xenophon) ordered Tolmides the crier  
ἀνειπεῖν τὸν βουλόμενόν λαμβάνειν τι  
to-proclaim (that) — (those) desiring to-take anything  
ἰέναι εἰσω. Καὶ πολλοὶ ἴεντο εἰσω, καὶ οἱ  
might-go within. And many rushed within, and — (those)  
ῳδούμενοι εἰσω νικῶσι τοὺς ἐκπίπτοντας,  
pushing (to get) within overcome — (those) pressing-out,  
καὶ πάλιν κατακλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς  
and 'they again 'shut-up the enemy in  
τὴν ἄκραν. Καὶ μὲν πάντα ἔξω τῆς ἄκρας  
the citadel. And indeed all (things) without the citadel  
διηρπάσθη, καὶ οἱ \*Ἐλληνες ἐξεκομίσαντο.  
were-seized, and the Greeks 'carried (them) 'out,  
δὲ οἱ ὁπλῖται ἔδεντο τὰ ὅπλα, οἱ μὲν  
and the heavy-armed-men stood — (under) arms, — (some) indeed  
περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, δὲ οἱ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν  
about the palisades, and — (others) along the road  
τὴν φέρουσαν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν. \*Ο Ξενο-  
— (that, namely,) leading to the citadel. — Xenon-  
φῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐσκόπουν, εἰ εἴη  
phon indeed and the captains began-to-consider, if it-might-be  
οἷόν τε λαβεῖν τὴν ἄκραν· γὰρ ην οὕτω  
possible to-take the citadel; for (if) it-were so  
σωτηρία ἀσπαλής· ἀλλως δὲ ἐδόκει  
(their) safety (would be) sure; otherwise indeed it-seemed  
εἶναι πάντα χαλεπὸν ἀπελθεῖν· δὲ τὸ χωρίον  
to-be extremely difficult to-retire; and the place  
ἔδοξε αὐτοῖς σκοπούμενοις εἶναι παντάπασιν  
seemed to-them (after) having-explored (it) to-be altogether  
ἀνάλωτον. \*Ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν  
impregnable. Then they-began-to-prepare (for) the

ἀφοδον, καὶ ἔκαστοι μεν διῆρουν τοὺς  
retreat, and each (of the men) indeed pulled-up the  
σταυροὺς τοὺς καδ' αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἐξεπέμ-  
palisades — (those namely) near themselves, and they-sent  
πορτο τοὺς ἀχρείους καὶ ἔχοντας  
out (of the place) the useless (persons) and (those), having  
φορτία, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὁπλιτῶν. δὲ οἱ  
burdens, also the multitude of-the heavy-armed-men; but the  
λοχαγοί κατέλιπον οἵς ἔκαστος  
captains left (remaining those) in-whom each  
ἐπίστευεν.  
confided

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἥρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, πολλοὶ  
After indeed they-commenced to-retreat, many (of the enemy)  
ἐπεξέδεον ἐνδοῦς, ἔχοντες γέρρα  
rallied-forth from-within (the citadel), having (Persian) shields  
καὶ λόγχας, καὶ κνημῖδας καὶ Παφλαγονικά κράνη·  
and lances, and greaves and Paphlagonian helmets;  
καὶ ἄλλοι ἀνέβαινον ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας τὰς  
and others went-up on the houses — (namely those)  
ἐνδεν καὶ ἐνδεν τῆς ὁδοῦ φερούσης εἰς  
on-this-side and (those) on-that-side of-the way leading to  
τὴν ἄκραν. Ὡςτε ἦν οὐδὲ ἀσφαλές διώκειν  
the citadel. So-that it-was not-even safe to-pursue (them)  
κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς φερούσας εἰς τὴν  
to the gates — (those namely) leading to the  
ἄκραν. Καὶ γὰρ ἐπερρίπτουν ἀνωδεν μεγάλα  
citadel. And indeed they-threw-on (them) from-above large  
ξύλα, ὡςτε ἦν καὶ χαλεπὸν μένειν καὶ  
(logs of) wood, so-that it-was both dangerous to-remain and  
ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἡ νὺξ ἐπιοῦσα ἦν φοβερὰ. Δέ  
to-retreat; and the night coming-on it-was dreadful But  
αὐτῶν μαχομένων καὶ ἀπορουμένων τις θεῶν  
they fighting and perplexed some-one 'of (the) 'gods  
δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας. Γάρ ἐξαπίνης  
save them (the) means of-safety. For suddenly

οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀνέλαμψεν, ὅτου  
 a) house of —(those) on (the) right having-burst-out-in-flames, whoever  
 δὴ ενάψαντος. Ὡς δ' αὗτη ξυνέ-  
 truly (it may be) having-set-fire-to (it). As indeed this (house) fell-  
 πιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν  
 m, (the enemy) fled, —(those namely) from the houses  
 ἐν δεξιᾷ. Ὡς δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔμαθε τοῦτο  
 on (the) right. As indeed — Xenophon learned this  
 παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐκέλευε καὶ ενάπτειν τὰς  
 from — fortune, he-ordered (them) also to-set-fire (to) the  
 οἰκίας ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, αἱ ἡσαν ξύλιναι,  
 houses on (the) left, which (as) they-were wooden, were  
 ὥστε καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. Οἱ ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ  
 also even immediately 'on-fire. — They-fled therefore even  
 ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκιῶν. Οἱ δὲ μόνοι  
 from these — (same) houses. — (Those) indeed alone  
 κατὰ τὸ στόμα δὴ ἔτι ἐλύπουν,  
 along the front (or direction of the army) truly any-more annoyed  
 καὶ ἡσαν δῆλοι ὅτι ἐπικείσονται ἐν τῷ  
 (them), and it-was evident that they-would-fall-on (them) on —  
 ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει.  
 (their) departure and also (on their) descent (from the plain).

\*Ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα,  
 Then 'he (Xenophon) ordered (them) to-bring wood,

ὅσοι ἐτύγχανον ὅντες ἔξω  
 (namely) 'such (men) 'as happened being without (the reach)  
 τῶν βελῶν, εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν  
 of-the missiles, into the middle (between) themselves and the  
 πολεμίων. Δέ ἐπει ἦν ἥδη ἕκανα  
 enemy. And when there-was now (a) sufficient (quantity)  
 ἐνῆψαν· δὲ καὶ ἐνῆπτον τὰς οἰκίας,  
 they-set (it) 'on-fire; and also they-set-fire-to the houses  
 παρὰ τὸ αὐτὸ χαράκισμα ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι ἔχοιεν  
 along the very palisading, so-that the enemy might have  
 ἀμφὶ ταῦτα. Οὕτω μόλις  
 (their mind occupied) about these (things) Thus with-difficult

ἀπῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, ποιησάμενοι πῦ  
they-departed from the place, having-made (a) fire  
ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ  
in (the) middle (between) themselves and the enemy. And  
πᾶσα ἡ πόλις κατεκαύθη, καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι, καὶ αἱ  
all the town was-burnt, and the houses, and the  
τύρσεις, καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, καὶ πάντα<sup>(things)</sup>  
towers, and the palisading, and all (things)  
τἄλλα, πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.  
else, except the citadel.

Δὲ τῇ ὕστεραιᾳ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἀπήσαν, ἔχοντες  
And on-the next-day the Greeks departed, having  
τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ἐπει ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν κατάβασιν  
— provisions. But as they-feared the descent  
τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, (γὰρ ἦν πρανῆς  
— (namely that) to Trebisond, (for it-was steep  
καὶ στενή,) ἐποιήσαντο ψευδενέδραν. Καὶ  
and narrow,) they-made (a) false-ambuscade. And (a)  
ἀνὴρ Μυσὸς τὸ γένος, καὶ ἔχων τοῦτο τοὔνομα,  
man (a) Mysian — by-birth, and having this same-name  
λαβὼν δέκα Κρητῶν, ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ  
(Mysus), taking ten Cretans, he-remained in (a) bushy  
χωρίῳ, καὶ προεποιεῖτο πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν  
place, and did-as-if to-attempt to-conceal  
τοὺς πολεμίους. δὲ αἱ πέλται αὐτῶν,  
(himself from) the enemy; and the shields of-them,  
οὖσαι χαλκαὶ, διεφαίνοντο  
being brass, appeared (glittering) through (the bushes)  
ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε. Οὖν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι  
from-time — to-time. Therefore indeed the enemy  
διορῶντες ταῦτα ἐφοβοῦντο ὡς οὖσαν  
perceiving these (things) feared (it) as being (a real,  
ἔνεδραν. δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινεν  
ambuscade; and the army during this (time) descended.  
Ἐπει δὲ ἐδόκει τῷ Μυσῷ οὗτος  
When indeed it-seemed to - Mysus (that the Greeks) now

ὑπεληλυθεναι ἵκανὸν,      ἐσῆμην φεύγειν ἀνὰ  
nad-advanced      sufficiently (far), he-gave-the-signal to-flee      with  
κράτος·      καὶ δις ἔξαναστὰς φεύγει, καὶ  
'all (their) 'might; and who getting-up flees, as-also  
οἵ σὺν αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι Κρητεῖς,  
—(those) with him. And indeed the other Cretans,  
ἐκπεσόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ (γὰρ ἔφασαν  
departing from the road (for they-said (that they)  
ἀλίτκεσθαι τῷ δρόμῳ) ἐσώθησαν κυλιν-  
were-getting-caught in-the race) saved (themselves) roll-  
δούμενοι εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς νάπας. Δέ  
ing-down into (the) woods among the bushy-hollows. But  
ὁ Μυσός φεύγων κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν, ἐβόα  
Mysus fleeing along the road, he-called-out (for them)  
βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀι ἐλαβοι  
to-help (him); and they-helped him, and 'took  
τετρωμένουν. Καὶ οἱ αὐτοὶ βοηθήσαντες  
(him) 'off wounded. And — those having-helped (him)  
ἀνεχώρουν ἐπὶ πόδα      βαλλόμενοι,  
| retreated on foot [retreated slowly step by step] being-thrown-at  
καὶ τινες τῶν Κρητῶν ἀντιτοξεύοντες.  
(by the enemy), and some of-the Cretans 'shot  
Οὗτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,  
(their) 'arrows-in-return. Thus they-arrived at the camp  
πάντες ὄντες σῶοι.  
all being safe.

## CHAPTER III

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Χειρίσοφος οὔτε ἤκεν, οὔτε <sup>Ἄντι</sup>  
 WHEN indeed — Chirisophus neither came, nor were-there  
 ἵκανα πλοῖα, οὔτε ἦν ἔτι <sup>λαμβά</sup>  
 sufficient vessels, nor was-there any-more (any place where) to-pro-  
 νειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπιτέον. Καὶ  
 cure the provisions, it-seemed to-be necessary-to-depart. And  
 μὲν ἐνεβίβασαν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα τε τοὺς  
 indeed they-placed on board the vessels not-only — (those)  
 ἀσθενοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς ὑπέρ τετταράκοντα  
 being-infirm, but-also — (those) above forty  
 ἔτη, καὶ παιδας καὶ γυναικας, καὶ  
 (years of) age, and (the) children and women, and  
 τῶν σκευῶν δσα ἦν μὴ ἀνάγκη ἔχειν.  
 of-the baggage such-as it-was not necessary to-have (with them),  
 καὶ Φιλήσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους  
 and Philesius and Sophænetus the oldest  
 τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες, ἐπέλενον <sup>ἐπι-</sup>  
 of-the generals going-on-board, they-ordered (them) to-  
 μελεῖσθαι τούτων· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. Ἡ  
 take-charge of-them; but the others marched-forth; the  
 ὁδὸς δὲ ὠδοπεποιημένη ἦν. Καὶ πορευόμενοι  
 road indeed having-been-made. And proceeding-forth  
 ἀφικινοῦνται τριταῖοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα, <sup>Ἐλληνίδα</sup>  
 they-arrived (in) three-days at Cerasus, (a) Grecian  
 πόλιν ἐπὶ θαλάττη, ἀποικον <sup>Σινωπέων,</sup>  
 city on (the) sea (coast), (a) colony of (the) 'Sinopians,  
 ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρᾳ. <sup>Ἐνταῦθα</sup> ἔμειναν δέκα  
 in the Colchian country. Here they-remained ten  
 ἡμέρας· καὶ ἐγιγνετο <sup>ἐξέτασις</sup> <sup>ἐν τοῖς</sup>  
 days; and there-was (a) review (of those) under —  
 διπλοῖς καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακιχίλιοι  
 arms and-also (an) enumeration, and there-were eight-the-usual

*kai* ἔξακόσιοι. Οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν ἐκ τῶν  
and six-hundred. These were-saved out-of — (those at first)  
ἀμφὶ τοὺς μυρίους· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπώλοντο τε  
about — ten-thousand, and the others had-been-destroyed not-only  
ἵπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, *kai* χιόνος, *kai* εἰ τις  
by the enemy, but-also (by the) snow, and if any  
νόσω. *b.g.* sickness.

*Kai* ἐνταῦθα διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀργύριον  
And here they-distribute the money  
γενόμενον ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων. *Kai* τὴν  
got from (the sale) of-the prisoners. And the  
δεκάτην, ἥν ἔξειλον Ἀπόλλωνι  
tenth (part), which they-took-out (and set apart) for-Apollo  
*kai* τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, οἱ στρατηγοί διέλα-  
and the Ephesian Diana, the generals took-among-them-  
βον, ἔκαστος τὸ μέρος, φυλάττειν τοῖς  
selves, each-one — (his) part, to-keep (it) for — (these)  
θεοῖς. δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναιος ἔλαβε ἀντὶ<sup>τ</sup>  
god;; and Neon the Asinæian took (the part) in-place  
Χειρισόφου. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ποιησάμενος  
of-Cheirisophus. Xenophon therefore having-made (and set aside  
ἀνάθημα τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος,  
out of his part an) offering — (that) indeed for — Apollo,  
ἀνατίθησιν εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων  
deposits (it) in the treasury of-the Athenians  
ἐν Δελφοῖς, *kai* ἐπέγραψε τό τε ὄνομα αὐτοῦ  
in Delphis, and he-inscribed (on it) the — name of-himself  
*kai* τὸ Προξένου, δις ἀπέδανε σὺν Κλεάρχῳ.  
and — (that) of-Proxenus, who died with Clearchus;  
*γαρ* ἦν ξένος αὐτοῦ. Δε τὸ  
for (Proxenus) was (the) guest-friend of-himself. But the (part)  
τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, δτε ἀπήει συν  
of — Diana of — Ephesus, when he-departed with  
Ἀγησιλάω ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς τὴν ὁδόν Βοιωτοὺς,  
Agerilaus from -- Asia into the road (to) Boeotia.

καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ νεωκόρῳ τῆς  
 ne-left with Megabyzus the warden of he (temple  
 Ἀρτέμιδος, ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐδόκει οὖναι κινδυνεύσων,  
 of Diana, as he seemed to-go about-incurring-danger.  
 καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἦν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, ἀπο-  
 and enjoined-on (him), if indeed he should-be-saved, to-  
 δοῦναι αὐτῷ. δὲ ἦν πάθη τι  
 return (the money) to-himself; |but if he-suffered any-thing [but  
 ἀναδεῖναι, ποιησάμενοι  
 if he lost his life] to-dedicate (it), having-made (and set it apart)  
 τὴν Ἀρτέμιδη, ὅ τι οἰοίτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ  
 for — Diana, whatever he-might-think to-be-agreeable to-the  
 θεῶ. Δ' ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔφευγε αὐτοῦ  
 goddess. But when — Xenophon was-in-banishment (and) he  
 ἤδη κατοικοῦντος ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι, οἰκισθέντος παρὰ  
 now dwelling in Scillus, having-been-settled near  
 τὴν Ολυμπίαν ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, Μεγάβυζος  
 — Olympia by the Lacedæmonians, Megabyzus  
 ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Ολυμπίαν θεωρήσων,  
 came to Olympia | about-seeing-the-public-games, [for the  
 καὶ ἀποδίδωσι  
 purpose of being present at the Olympian games,] and he-returned  
 τὴν παρακαταδήκην αὐτῷ. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν λαβών  
 the deposit to-him. And Xenophon taking (it)  
 ὡνεῖται χωρίον τὴν θεῶ, ὅπου ὁ θεός  
 buys (a) piece-of-land for-the goddess, where the god  
 ἀνείλε. Δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς  
 had-directed (him) "by-a-response. And (the) river Selinus  
 ἔτυχε ρέων διὰ μέσου τοῦ χωρίου.  
 |happened running [ran] through (the) middle of — (this) piece-of-land.  
 Καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς παραρρέει  
 And in Ephesus also (a) river Selinus runs-by  
 παρὰ τὸν νεὼν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος, καὶ δὲ ἐν ἀμφοτέροι  
 along the temple of — Diana, and also in both  
 ἔνεισι ἵχθνες καὶ κόγχαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ χωρίῳ  
 there-are fish and shell-fish; in indeed — (this) piece-of-land

ἐν Σκιλλοῦτι καὶ θῆραι πάντων,  
in Scillus (there are) also hunts of-all (kind, espe-  
cially of) such-as are hunted wild-beasts. And also  
ἐποιησε βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου,  
he-made (an) altar and (a) temple with the sacred money,  
καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ ἀεὶ δεκατεύων τὰ  
and (for) the rest (of time) also always taking-the-tenth (of) the  
ῶραῖα ἐξ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ἐποίει θυσίαν τῇ θεῷ·  
season's (produce) from the land he-made (a) sacrifice to-the goddess;  
καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες  
and all the citizens and the neighbouring men  
καὶ γυναικες μετεῖχον τῆς ἑορτῆς.  
and women participated (in) the festival (following the sacri-

Δὲ ἡ θεὸς παρεῖχε τοῖς σκηνῶσιν  
fife). And the goddess supplied —(those who) might-be-encamped  
ἄλφιτα, ἄρτους, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ  
(with) barley-meal, bread, wine, sweatmeats, and (a)  
λάχος τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς, καὶ  
share of-the victims from the sacred pastures, and  
τῶν θερευομένων δὲ. Γὰρ καὶ τε οἱ παῖδες  
of — (those) hunted also. For also not-only the sons  
Ξενοφῶντος ἐποιοῦντο θήραν εἰς τὴν ἑορτὴν,  
of-Xenophon made (a) hunt for the festival,  
καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν· οἱ ἄνδρες  
but-also — (those) of-the other citizens; — (those) men  
δὲ Βουλόμενοι καὶ ξυνεδήρων· καὶ ἥλισ-  
namely desiring (it) also hunted-with (them); and there-  
κέτο τὰ μέν ἔξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ  
were-caught — (partly) indeed from this the (same) sacred  
χώρου, δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐκ τῆς Φοιλόης, σύνες καὶ  
place, and also — (partly) from — Phoiè, boars and  
δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. Δὲ ἡ χώρα  
antelopes and deer. And — (this sacred) piece-of-land  
ἔστιν ἡ πορεύονται ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος εἰς  
is (on the road) by-which they-go from Lacedæmon to

Ὀλυμπιαν, ὡς εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ Διὸς  
 Olympia, about thirty stadia from the temple of Jupiter  
 ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ. Ἐντὶ δὲ ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ χώρῳ  
 in Olympia. There are within also in — (this) sacred place  
 καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ἄλση καὶ ὅρη μεστά δένδρων,  
 also meadows and groves and hills full of trees.  
 οἰκανὰ τρέφειν καὶ σῦς καὶ αἴγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ  
 adapted to breeding as well swine as goats and oxen and  
 ἵππους, ὡςτε καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, τῶν ιόντων  
 horses, so that also the cattle, — (of those) going  
 εἰς τὴν ἑορτὴν, εὖωχεῖσθαι. Δε περὶ τὸν  
 to the festival, are well supplied with food. And round the  
 ναὸν αὐτὸν ἔφυτεύθη ἄλσος ἡμέρων δένδρων,  
 temple itself is planted (a) grove of cultivated trees,  
 ὅσα ἔστι τρωκτὰ ὥραια. Δ' ὁ  
 (bearing) such (fruits) as are eatable in different seasons. And the  
 ναός εἰκασται τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ ὡς μικρὸς  
 temple is like to — (that) in Ephesus (in) as (far as a) small  
 μεγάλω, καὶ τὸ ξόανον  
 (one may be compared) with (a) large (one), and the statue  
 ἐοικεν τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ, ὡς κυπαρ-  
 is-like to — (that) in Ephesus, (in) as (much as) one (being) of  
 ρίττινον δυτὶ χρυσῷ. Καὶ στήλη  
 cypress (is like to one) being of gold. And (a, pillar  
 ἐστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναόν ἔχουσα γράμματα·  
 stood near the temple having (this) inscription:  
 Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΙΕΡΟΣ ΤΗΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ.  
 — (This) ground (is) sacred — (to) Diana.  
 ΔΕ ΤΟΝ EXONTA KAI ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ  
 And — (he) possessing (it) and gathering  
 KATAΘΤΕΙΝ EKAΣΤΟΤ ΕΤΟΥΣ  
 the fruit (thereof) is to offer in sacrifice each year  
 THN MEN ΔEKATHN.  
 the — tenth (part of this produce). And from  
 TOT PERITTOY EPIΣΚETAZEIN TON NAON.  
 he residue to keep in repair <sup>τελε</sup> <sub>τελε</sub>

ΑΝ ΤΙΣ ΔΕ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ  
 If any-one indeed 'should not 'perform these  
 ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ.  
 (conditions) it-will-be-a-care to-the goddess (to remember it).

## CHAPTER IV.

<sup>3</sup>Ex Κερασοῦντος δὲ οἱ καὶ πρόσθει  
 From Cerasus — those-who (had) even before  
 ἔκομιζοντο μὲν κατὰ θάλατταν,  
 (been on board) 'were (again) 'carried — by sea,  
 δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ γῆν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦσαν  
 but the rest proceeded by land. But when they-were  
 ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁρίοις Μοσσυνοίκων, πέμπουσιν εἰς  
 on the confines 'of (the) 'Mossynæci, they-send to  
 αὐτοὺς Τιμησίδεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον, ὅντα  
 them Timesitheus the Trapezian, being (the)  
 πρόξενον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες  
 public-friend-and-entertainer of-the Mossynæci, inquiring  
 πότερον πορεύσονται τῆς χώρας ὡς διὰ  
 whether they-might-proceed-through — (their) country as through  
 φιλίας, ἢ ὡς διὰ πολεμίας. Δὲ οἱ  
 (a) friendly (one), or as through (an) inimical (one). And —  
 εἶπον δτι οὐ διήσοιεν, γὰρ  
 they-said that they-'would not 'allow (them) 'to-pass-through, for  
 ἐπίστευον τοῖς χωρίοις. Ἐντεῦδεν ὁ Τιμη-  
 they-trusted to — (their) strong-places. Then —  
 σίδεος λέγει, δτι οἱ ἐκ τοῦ  
 stheus says, that — (those of the Mossynæci) from —  
 ἐπέκεινα εἰσιν πολέμιοι αὐτοῖς. Καὶ ἐδόκει  
 beyond (them) were enemies to-them. And it-seemed-best  
 καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλοιντο ποιήσασθαι  
 'call-on them (to knew), if they-might-wish to-make

ξυμμαχίαν. καὶ ὁ Τιμησίδεος πελφθεὶς  
 (an) alliance (with the Greeks); and — Timesitheus having-been-sent  
 ἦκεν ἀγων τούς ἄρχοντας. Ἐπει  
 (to them) came bringing — (their) rulers (or chiefs). When  
 δὲ ἀφίκοντο, τε οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων,  
 indeed they-arrived, not-only the chiefs of-the Mossynœci  
 καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλληνῶν, συνῆλθον·  
 but-also the generals of-the Greeks, came-together;  
 καὶ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξε, δὲ Τιμησίδεος ἡρμήνευε·  
 and indeed Xenophon spoke, and Timesitheus interpreted  
 Ὡ Μοσσύνοικοι ἄνδρες, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεδα δια-  
 o Mossynœan men, we desire | to  
 σωζῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ·  
 'save (ourselves) ^through into the Greece on-foot.  
 γὰρ ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα· δὲ  
 [to go safely into Greece on foot;] for we-have no ships, and  
 οὗτοι κωλύουσι ἡμᾶς, οὓς ἀκούμεν εἴναι  
 those (people) oppose us, whom we-hear to-be  
 πολεμίους ὑμῖν. Εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν  
 enemies to-you. If therefore you-wish, it-is-allowed you  
 λαβεῖν ἡμᾶς ξυμμάχους, καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι,  
 to-take us (as) allies, and to-avenge-yourselves.  
 εἰ ποτε οὗτοι ἥδικήκασιν ὑμᾶς τι, καὶ  
 if at-any-time these (people) may-have-injured you (in) any-thing, and  
 τούτους είναι ὑπηκόους ὑμῶν  
 (you may have) these (people) (so as) to-be subject (to) you  
 τὸ λοιπὸν. Δέ εἰ ἀφήσετε ἡμᾶς, σκέψασθε  
 (for) the rest (of time). But if you will-reject us, consider  
 πόδεν ἀν αὖδις λάβοιτε τοσαύτην δύναμιν  
 whence 'you may again 'procure such (a) force  
 ξύμμαχον. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ ἄρχων  
 (as an) ally. To this the ruler (or head chief)  
 τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι καὶ βούλοιντο  
 of-the Mossynœci replied, that 'they both 'desired  
 ταῦτα, καὶ δέχοιντο τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. Ἀγετε  
 thus, and accepted the alliance. | Brine

δέ, εἶφη δὲ Ξενοφῶν, τί δεήσεσθε χρῆ  
 then, [well then,] said — Xenophon, in-what do-you-want to-  
 σασθαι ἡμῶν, ἀν γεγώμεδα ξύμμαχοι ἡμῶν;  
 make-use of-us, if we-become allies of-you?  
 καὶ τί ἔσεσθε οἷοι τε ὑμεῖς ξυμπρᾶξαι ἡμῖν  
 and in-what will-it-be possible for-you to-assist us  
 περὶ τῆς διόδου. Δὲ οἱ εἶπον ὅτι  
 as-respects the journey-through (the country)? And — they-said that  
 ἐσμεν ἵκανοι εἰσβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 we-are sufficient (and able) to-make-an-irruption | from the (side) on  
 θάτερα εἰς τὴν χώραν τὴν  
 side [from the farther side] into the country — (namely that)  
 τῶν πολεμίων ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν, καὶ πέμψαι  
 of-the enemies of-you as also of-us, and to-send  
 δεῦρο ὑμῖν ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες ξυμ-  
 hither for-you ships as also men, who are-to-  
 μαχοῦνται ὑμῖν, τε καὶ ἥγησονται τὴν  
 be-auxiliaries for-you, as also they-will-guide (you) on-the  
 ὁδὸν.  
 road.

\*Ἐπὶ τούτοις δόντες καὶ λαβόντες πιστὰ  
 Upon these (things) giving and taking pledges-of-good-faith  
 ϕχοντο. Καὶ ἦκον τῇ ὁστεραίᾳ ἄγοντες τρια-  
 they-departed. And they-came on-the next-day bringing three  
 κόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα, καὶ τρεῖς ἄνδρας  
 hundred boats (made out of) one-piece-of-wood, and three men  
 ἐν ἐκάστῳ, ὃν οἱ δύο μὲν,  
 (being) in each, of-whom — two indeed (from each boat),  
 ἐκβάντες, ἐθεντο εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ  
 having-disembarked, placed-themselves in line under-arms, and  
 ὁ εἰς ἐμενε. Καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες  
 the one (in each boat) remained. And — (these last) indeed taking  
 τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν. δὲ οἱ μένοντες  
 — (their) boats sailed-away; but — those remaining  
 ἐξετάξαντο ὁδε. \*Ἐστησαν ἀνὰ μάλιστα  
 were drawn up thus. They-stood — very (nearly)

ἔκατὸν, ὡςπερ χοροί, ἀντιστοιχοῦντες  
 (a) hundred (in each line), like hoops-of-dancers, drawn-up-opposite  
 ἄλληλοις, πάντες ἔχοντες γέρρα λευκῶν  
 one-another. all having shields (made of) white (hides)  
 βοῶν δασέα, εἰκασμένα πετάλῳ  
 of-oxen (and the) hair-on, (the shield) being-like 'to (a) 'leaf  
 κιττοῦ, δὲ ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ παλτὸν ὡς ἔξαπτχη  
 of-ivy, and on the right (hand was a) javelin about six-cubit-long  
 ἔχον μὲν ἐμπροσθεν λόγχην, δὲ ὅπισθεν  
 having indeed 'at (the) top (a) spear, but 'at (the) 'lower  
 σφαιροειδές τοῦ ξύλου αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἐνεδε-  
 (end a) ball-like-form (made) of-the wood itself. And they-  
 δύκεσαν χιτωνίσκους ὑπὲρ γονάτων,  
 were-dressed (in) tunics (reaching) to (the) knees,  
 πάχος ὡς λινοῦ  
 (and the) thickness (of these tunics was the same) as (that) 'of (a) 'linen  
 στρωματοδέσμου, δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ σκύτινα  
 bed-sack, and (they having) on the head leathern  
 κράνη, οἵαπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, ἔχοντα  
 helmets, such-as the Paphlagonian (helmet), having (a)  
 κρώβυλον κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύττα τιарο-  
 bunch-of-hair along (the) middle (of the helmet), very-nearly tiara-  
 ειδῆ. δὲ καὶ εἶχον σιδηρᾶς σαγάρεις. Ἐντεῦθεν  
 shaped, and also they-had iron battle-axes. Then  
 μὲν εἷς αὐτῶν ἔξηρχε, δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύ-  
 indeed one of-them went-out, and all the others proceeded  
 οντο ἀδοντες ἐν ρυθμῷ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ  
 forth singing in rhythmic-modulation, and passing through  
 τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὅπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων,  
 the lines and through the heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,  
 ἐπορεύοντο εὐδὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπὶ  
 they-proceeded directly towards the enemy, on (a)  
 χωρίον ὁ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐπιμαχώτατον. Δε  
 Earthed-place which seemed to-be most-assailable. And  
 τοῦτο ὥκειτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως καλούμένης  
 his (place) was-situated before the city called

αὐτοῖς τῆς μητροπόλεως, καὶ ἔχούσῃς τὸ ἀκρότατον  
by-them the metropolis, and having the highest-situation

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. Καὶ ὁ  
(of any place in the country) of-the Mossynæci. And the  
πόλεμος ἦν περὶ τούτου· γάρ οἱ  
war was about this-same (place); for — (those who)  
ἀεὶ ἔχοντες τοῦτ' ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἔγχρατεις  
at-any-time having this (place) seemed to-be the-most-powerful  
καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους  
even of-all (the) Mossynæci, and they-say (that) these  
οὐ ἔχειν τοῦτο δικαίως,  
(their opponents) 'had not 'obtained this (place) justly.  
ἀλλὰ καταλαβόντας, δὲν κοινόν  
but having-seized (it), (it) being common (property, that thus)  
πλεονεκτεῖν.  
they-got-the-ascendency.

Δ' τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἰποντο αὐτοῖς,  
And some of-the Greeks even followed them,  
οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ  
not having-been-ordered by the generals, but  
ἔνεκεν ἀρπαγῆς. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, προσίοντων,  
for-the sake of-plunder. But the enemy, (they) advancing,  
τέως μὲν, ἡσύχαζον· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο  
so-long-as (they did) indeed, kept-quiet; but when they-got  
ἔγγυς τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες αὐτοῖς τρέ-  
near the place, sallying-out 'put them 'to-  
πονται, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνοὺς τῶν Βαρβάρων,  
flight, and they-killed many of-the barbarians.  
καὶ τινάς τῶν ξυναναβάντων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ  
and some of-the accompanying Greeks, and  
ἔξικον μέχρι οὖς εἶδον τοὺς Ἑλλήνας βοη-  
they-pursued just-to where they-saw the Greeks coming.  
δοῦντας. Δὲ εἴτα ἀποτραπόμενοι ὠχούτο,  
to-help 'the defeated). And then having-turned-back they-fled.  
καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν,  
and cutting-off the heads of-the dead

ἐπεδείκνυσαν τε τοῖς Ἑλλησι καὶ τοῖς  
 they-exhibited (them) not-only to-the Greeks but-also to-the  
 πολεμίοις ἔαυτῶν, καὶ ἀμα ἐχόρευον ἀδοντες  
 enemies of-themselves, and at-the-same-time they-danced singing  
 τινὶ νόμῳ. Δὲ οἱ Ἑλλῆνες μάλα ἤχθοντε  
 to-some tune. And the Greeks were very-much disturbed  
 δτι ἐπεποιήκεσαν τε τοὺς πολεμίους θραυστέρους,  
 that they-had-made not-only the enemy more-bold-and-daring,  
 καὶ δτι οἱ Ἑλλῆνες ἐξελθόντες σὺν αὐτοῖς  
 but-also that — Greeks having-gone-out with them  
 ἐπεφεύγεσαν, ὅντες μάλα συχνοί· δο οὐπω  
 fled, (they) being very numerous; which had never  
 ἐπεποιήκεσαν πρόσδεν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Δὲ  
 'been-done before during the expedition. But  
 Ξενοφῶν, ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἑλλῆνας, εἶπεν·  
 Xenophon, calling-together the Greeks, said:  
 Ἀνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀδυμήσητε ἐνεκα  
 Men soldiers, do not 'be-cast-down on-account  
 τῶν γεγενημένων· γὰρ ιστε δτι καὶ  
 of-the (things) having-happened (thus); for know that even (a)  
 ἀγαθὸν οὐ μείον τοῦ κακοῦ γεγένηται. Γὰρ  
 good not less (than) the evil has-occurred. For  
 πρῶτον μὲν ἐπίστασθε, δτι οἱ μέλλοντες  
 first indeed know, that — (those) being-about  
 ἡγεῖσθαι ἡμῖν εἰσιν πολέμιοι τῷ ὅντι  
 to-conduct us are enemies to — (those) being (really  
 οἴσπερ καὶ ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς·  
 enemies to themselves) to-whom also it-is-necessary for-us (also to be  
 καὶ ἐπειτα δὲ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀφρον-  
 enemies); and next indeed — (those) of-the Greeks ne-  
 τιστήσαντες τῆς τάξεως ξὺν ἡμῖν, καὶ  
 gleaning the order-and-discipline (prevalent) with us, and  
 ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ἴκανοι πράττειν ξὺν  
 thinking (themselves) to-be able to-perform with  
 τοῖς βαρβάροις ταῖτά, ἀπερ ἔντιν, καὶ  
 the barbarians the-same, which (they do) with us

δεδώκασιν δίκην·

; have-given justice; [have suffered justly]; so—that hereafter (it will be

ἡττον ἀπολειψονται ἡμετέρας  
considered) worse 'should (the men) 'desert our

τάξεως. Ἀλλ' δεῖ ὑμᾶς πυρασκευάζεσθαι,  
ranks. But it-is-proper (that) you prepare-yourselves,

ὅπως καὶ τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν βαρβάρων  
so—that both |(to)-the friends being of-the barbarians [to the

δόξητε εἶναι κρίττους αὐτῶν,  
barbarians your allies] you-may-appear to-be 'better (than) they

καὶ δηλώσητε τοῖς πολεμίοις, δτι  
(in courage), and show — (your) encouages, that they-'do

οὐ μαχοῦνται δόμοίοις ἀνδράσι νῦν τε καὶ δτε  
not 'fight 'with (the) same men now as when

ἐμάχοντο τοῖς ἀτάκτοις.

they-fought with-the undisciplined.

Οὐτως μὲν ἔμειναν οὖν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν  
So indeed they-remained therefore that — day

Δ' τὴν ὑστεραίᾳ θύσαντες, ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήθη  
But on-the next-day having-sacrificed, when they-had obtained-favour

σαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, ποιησάμενοι τοὺς λόχους  
able-omens, they-breakfasted, having-formed the companies

ὁρθίους, καὶ ταξάμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους  
|straight, [in columns,] and drawing-up the barbarians

ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κατὰ ταῦτα, ἐπορεύοντο,  
on the left according (to) the-same (way) they-marched-forth,

ἔχοντες τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων, ὑπολειπόντες  
having the archers between the companies, having-

πομένους δὲ μικρὸν τοῦ στόματος τῶν  
left indeed (a) little (space from) the front of-the

ὅπλιτῶν. Γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ εὐζωνοι τῶν  
heavy-armed-men. For there-were the active (men) of-the

πολεμίων, κατατρέχοντες ἐβαλλον τοῖς λίθοις.  
enemy, (who) running-down threw — stones;

οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταὶ ἀνέστελλον τούτους  
the archers and targeteers kept-back these

Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο βάδει.  
 But the others (of the Greeks) proceeded (slowly, step-by-step)

πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ' οὗ οἱ βάρβαροι  
 first indeed against the (strong) place at which the barbarian

ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς  
 (allies of the Greeks) were repulsed and the (Greeks) with them

γὰρ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι.  
 for there the enemy were drawn-up-against (them).

Οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν οὖν ἐδέξαντο πελταστὰς,  
 The barbarians indeed therefore received (the) targeteers,

καὶ ἐμάχοντο. δὲ ἐπειδὴ οἱ ὅπλιται  
 and fought (with them); but when the heavy-armed-men

ἦσαν ἔγγυς ἐτράποντο. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ  
 were near they-took-to-fight. And indeed the targeteers

εὐδίς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἀνω πρὸς τὴν μητρό-  
 directly followed driving (them) upwards towards the metro-

πολιν, οἱ ὅπλιται δὲ εἶποντο ἐν τάξει.  
 polis, the heavy-armed-men indeed followed in order

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἀνω πρὸς ταῖς οἰκίαις τῆς μετρο-  
 When indeed they-were above by the houses of the metro-

πόλεως, ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ  
 polis, here indeed the enemy 'having —

πάντες γενόμενοι δμοῦ ἐμάχοντο, καὶ  
 all 'got together fought (with them), and

ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλποῖς· καὶ ἔχοντες ἄλλα  
 they-hurled — (their) darts; and having other

παχέα δόρατα, μακρὰ, δσα ἀνήρ ἀν μόλις  
 thick spears, large, so-that (a) man could scarcely

φέροι, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμυνεσθαι  
 carry (them), with-these they-endeaoured to-defend-themselves

ἐκ κειρός. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἑλλῆνες οὐχ ὑφίεντο  
 hand-to-hand. But when the Greeks 'did not 'give-way,

ἄλλο ἐχώρουν δμόσε, οἱ  
 [but went to-the-same-place, [but engaged in close combat,] the

βάρβαροι ἐφευγον, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἀπαντες ἐλποι  
 barbarians fled. and thereupon 'they altogether 'left

τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν  
 the place. But the king of them — (he living) in  
 τῷ μόσσυνι τῷ ὥκοδομημένῳ ἐπ' ἄκραι,  
 the wooden-tower — (that namely) having-been-built on (the) height,  
 ὃν μένοντα αὐτοῦ πάντες τρέφουσι καὶ  
 whom remaining these all supported and  
 φυλάττουσιν κοινῇ, οὐκ ἔθελεν ἐξελθεῖν,  
 guarded (him) in-common, 'did not 'wish to-leave (it),  
 οὐδὲ οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ πρότερον αἴρεσθαι,  
 nor — (those) in the strong-place first taken,  
 ἀλλ' κατεκαίδησαν αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μοσσύνοις.  
 but were-burnt these with the wooden-towers  
 Δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες, διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία, εὗρισκον  
 But the Greeks, ransacking the place, found  
 ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις θησαυροὺς ἄρτων νενημένων  
 in the houses stores of-bread heaped-together  
 πατρίους, ὡς οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι  
 according-to-the-custom-of-their-forefathers, as the Mossynæci  
 ἔφεισαν, δὲ τὸν νέον σίτον ἀποκείμενον ξὺν τῷ  
 say, also the new corn put-up (with) (in) the  
 καλάμῃ. δὲ αἱ πλεῖσται ἦσαν ξειαί. Καὶ  
 stra; and the most was spelter. And  
 τεταριχευμένα τεμάχη δελφίνων εὗρισκετο ἐν  
 pick'ed slices of-dolphins were-found in  
 ἀμφορεῦσι, καὶ στέαρ τῶν δελφίνων ἐν τεύχεσι,  
 jars, and (the) fat of — dolphins in vessels,  
 ὡς οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι ἔχρωντο, καθάπερ οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 which the Mossynæci used, as the Greeks  
 τῷ ἔλαιῳ. Δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνωγαίων ἦν  
 do) — oil. And in the upper-parts-of-the-houses there-were  
 πολλὰ κάρυντα τὰ πλατέα, οὐχ ἔχοντα  
 many nuts (chestnuts) the broad-ones, not having  
 οὐδεμίαν διαφυήν. Τούτῳ καὶ ἔχρωντο  
 (no) (any) fissure. This 'they even used  
 πλείστῳ σίτῳ, ἔψυστες καὶ ὀπιτῶντες ἄρτους  
 most for-food, boiling (them) and baking bread

Δὲ οἶνος εὑρίσκετο, ὃς μὲν ἄκρατος  
 (of them). Also wine was-found, which indeeed (when) pure  
 ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὀξὺς ἵπο τῆς αὐστηρότητος.  
 seemed to-be sour from — (its) very-great-roughness,  
 δὲ κερασθεῖς εὐώδης τε καὶ  
 but being-mixed (with water) (it becomes) fragrant and also  
 ἡδύς.  
 pleasant.

Οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν δὴ, ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα,  
 The Greeks indeed —. having-breakfasted there,  
 ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες  
 proceeded on — (their) forward (march), giving-up  
 τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων.  
 the place to — (their) allies of-the Mossynœci.

Δὲ καὶ ὄπόσα ἄλλα χωρία παρήσαν, τῶν  
 And also as-many other places as they-arrived-at, — (those)  
 ὅντων ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις, τὰ εὐπροσο-  
 being with the enemy, — (some of the places) being-most-  
 δῶντατα οἵ μὲν ἔλειπον, δὲ οἱ  
 accessible the (barbarians) indeed deserted (them), but the (inhabit-  
 ants of other places) willingly surre .dered

And the most  
 τῶν χωρίων ἦν τοιάδε. Αἱ πόλεις ἀπεῖχον  
 of-the places were (situated) thus. The towns were-distant  
 ἀπ' ἄλληλων ὄγδοηκοντα στάδια, αἱ δὲ  
 from one-another (about) eighty stadia, — (some) indeed  
 πλεῖστης, αἱ δὲ μεῖον· δὲ ἀναβοώντων  
 more, — (others) indeed less; and calling-aloud (to)  
 ἄλληλων ξυνήκουνον ἐξ τῆς ἐτέρας πόλεως  
 one-another they-heard-each-other from the (other) (one) city  
 εἰς την ἐτέραν· ἡ χώρα ἦν οὖτως ὑψηλή  
 to the other; (for) the country was so elevated  
 τε καὶ κοίλη. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἦσαν  
 and so hollow. When indeed having-proceeded-forwards they-were  
 ἐν τοῖς φίλοις, ἐπεδείχνυσαν αἵτοις παιδας  
 among — friends, they-showed them boys (the sons of)

ἐών εὐδαιμόνων, ἀπαλούς καὶ σφόδρα λευκούς,  
 of-the rich, soft and exceedingly white,  
 σιτευτούς, τεθραμμένους ἐφδοῖς καρύοις, καὶ οὐ  
 being-made-fat, having-been-fed with-boiled chestnuts, and not  
 δέοντας πολλοῦ εἶναι ἵσους τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ  
 wanting much to-be equal — (in) length and — (in)  
 πλάτος, δὲ ποικίλους τὰ νῶτα, καὶ πάντα<sup>on-all'</sup>  
 breadth, and painted-with-various-colours on-the back, and  
 τὰ ἐμπροσθεν ἔστι γυμένους ἀνθέμιον. Δέ  
 the forepart pricked (in the form of) flowers. And  
 καὶ ἔζητον ξυγγίγνεσθαι ἐμφανῶς ταῖς ἑταῖραις  
 also they-desired to-have-intercourse publicly with-the mistresses  
 αἷς οἱ Ἑλληνες ἥγον, γὰρ οὗτος νόμος  
 which the Greeks brought (with them), for this custom  
 ἦν σφισι. Δέ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναικες  
 was to-them. And all the men and the women  
 λευκοί. Οἱ στρατευσάμενοι  
 were very) white. — (Those) having-'served-in (this) 'expedition  
 ἔλεγον διελθεῖν βαρβαρωτάτους,  
 | said (that) they-passed-through the-most-barbarous, [that these were  
 καὶ πλεῖστον  
 the most barbarous people they had passed through,] and the-most  
 κεχωρισμένους τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων. Γάρ  
 removed from-the Grecian manners (and customs). For  
 τε ἐποίουν ὅντες ἐν ὅχλῳ ἀπερ ἀνθρώποι ἀν  
 indeed they-do being in (a) crowd what men would  
 ποιήσειαν ἐν ἐρημίᾳ, ἀλλως δὲ ἀν οὐ  
 (only) do in private, otherwise indeed might not  
 τολμῶεν. τε ὅντες μόνοι ἔπραττον  
 dare (to do); and being alone they-did-those-things  
 ἀπερ ἀν ὅμοια ὅντες  
 which (they) might (do) (the) same (as if) being (in company,  
 μετ' ἀλλων. διελέγοντό τε ἐαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐγέλων  
 with others; talked — to-themselves, and laughed

Ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐφιστάμενοι ὥρχοῦντο δποι  
to themselves, and stopping they-danced wherever  
τύχοιεν, δέσπερ ἐπιδεικνύμενοι ἄλλοις.  
they-might-happen (to be), as-if exhibiting-themselves to-others

---

## CHAPTER V.

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας, τε διὰ τῆς  
THROUGH these — countries, — (namely) through — (those)  
πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπο-  
inimical and — (those) friendly, the Greeks pro-  
ρεύθησαν ὀκτὼ σταδιούς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς  
ceeded eight days'-march, and arrived among (the)  
Χάλυβας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ὀλίγοι καὶ  
Chalybes. These (people) were few (in number) and ( vere)  
ἵπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος "οἵ  
subjects of-the Mossynœci, and — (their) living for-the  
πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπὸ σιδηρείας. Ἐντεῦθεν  
most of-them (was obtained) from iron-works. Hence  
ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνούς. Ἡ χώρα δὲ  
they-arrived among (the) Tibareni. The country —  
τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν ἦν πολὺ πεδινωτέρα, καὶ εἶχει  
of-the Tibareni was much more-level, and they-had  
χωρία ἐπὶ θαλάττη ἥπτον ἔρυμνα. Καὶ  
stations on (the) sea (coast) but-weakly fortified. And  
οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔχρηζον προσβάλλειν πρὸς τὰ χωρία,  
the generals wanted to-make-an-attack on the places,  
καὶ ἀνηδηνάι την στρατιὰν καὶ  
and to-have-<sup>1</sup>conferred some benefit on-the army and  
οὐκ ἐδέχοντο τὰ ζένια ἀ ἡκε παρὰ  
they-<sup>1</sup>did not receive the gifts-of-hospitality which came from  
Τιβαρηνῶν, ἀλλ' κελεύσαντες ἐπιμεῖναι  
the) Tibareni, but having-ordered (the messengers) to-wait

ἔστε βουλεύσαντο, ἐθύοντο. Καὶ πολλὰ  
till they-might-deliberate, they-sacrificed. And many (victims  
καταθυσάντων, τέλος πάντες οἱ μάντεις ἀπε  
having-been-sacrificed, at-last all the augurs of  
δεῖξαντο γνώμην, δτι οἱ θεοὶ οὐδαμῆ προσίοιντε  
ferred (their) opinion, that the gods in-no-wise approved-of  
τὸν πόλεμον. Ἐντευδεν δὴ ἐδέξαντο τὰ ξένα,  
the war. Then indeed they-accepted the gifts-of.  
νια, καὶ πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας, ὡς  
hospitality, and proceeding-on (their march) two days, as  
διὰ φιλίας, ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα  
through (a) friendly (country), they-arrived at Cotyora (a)  
Ἐλληνίδα πόλιν, ἀποικιαν Σινωπέων, δ' ὅντας  
Greek city, (a) colony from-Sinope, and being  
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Τιβαρηνῶν.  
in the country 'of (the) 'Tibareni.

Ἡ στρατιά ἐπέζευσε μέχρι ἐνταῦθα. Πλῆθος  
The army proceeded-by-land just-to here. (The) length  
τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ<sup>τῆς</sup>  
of-the descent (down the country along) the road from  
τῆς μάχης ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἀχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα  
the battle (ground) in Babylon just to Cotyora (was)  
ἕκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο σταδιοί, ἔξακόσιοι  
a-hundred (and) twenty two stations, (making) six-hundred  
καὶ εἴκοσι παρασάγγαι, μύριοι καὶ ὅκτακισχίλιοι  
and twenty parasangs, (or) ten-thousand and eight-thousand  
καὶ ἔξακόσιοι στάδιοι. πλῆθος χρόνοι  
and six-hundred (18,600) stadia; the-amount of-time (was)  
ὅκτὼ μῆνες. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τετταράκοντα  
eight months. There they-remained forty  
πέντε ἡμέρας. Ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον  
five days. During — these (days) 'they first  
μὲν ἔδυσαν τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ ἐποίησαν πομπὰς  
indeed 'sacrificed to-the gods, and they-made processions  
ἔκαστοι κατὰ ἔδυνος τῷν Ἐλληνῶν,  
each according-to (the) nation (or tribe) of-the Greeks

*xai γυμνικούς ἀγῶνας.* Δε τα  
 (to which he belonged), and gymnastic games. And — (that)  
*ἐπιτήδεια ἐλαμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλα-*  
 provisions they-took — (partly) indeed from — Paphla  
*γονίας, δὲ τὰ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν·*  
 genia, and — (partly) from the lands of-the Cotyrites;  
*γὰρ οὐ παρεῖχον ἀγοράν, οὐδέ' ἔδέχοντο*  
 for they-did not provide (a) market, nor did-they-receive  
*τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας εἰς τὸ τείχος.*  
 the feeble-and-sick within the walls.

Ἐν τούτῳ πρέσβεις ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης,  
 During this ambassadors come from Sinope,  
*φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τε τῆς*  
 they-being-in-fear about the Cotyores namely (those) of-the  
*πόλεως, (γὰρ ἦν ἐκείνων,* *καὶ*  
 city, (for it-was of-them, [for it was theirs], and (the in-  
*ἔφερον φόρους ἐκείνους,) καὶ*  
 habitants) brought tribute to-them, and (they were also in fear)  
*περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον* δημον-  
 about the territories, as they-had-heard (that they were) being-  
*μένην.* Καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐλεγον  
 ravaged. And going to the camp, they-said  
 (δε Ἐκατώνυμος προηγόρει, νομιζόμενος εἶναι δεινὸς  
 (and Hecatonymus spoke-for-them, he-being-considered to-be able  
*λέγειν).* Ἡ πόλις τῶν Σινωπέων ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς,  
 to-speak): The city of-the Sinopians has-sent us,  
*ῷ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐπαινέσοντάς τε ἡμᾶς, ὅτι*  
 O men soldiers, about-praising indeed you, that  
*ὄντες Ἑλληνες νικᾶτε βαρβάρους, δὲ καὶ*  
 being Greeks you-have-conquered (the) barbarians, and also  
*ἐπειτα ξυνησθησομένους, ὅτι πάρεστε*  
 then congratulating (you), that you-are-present (here)  
*σεσωσμένοι, ὡς ἡμεῖς ἀκούμεν, διὰ πολλῶν τε*  
 having-been-saved, as we hear, through many and  
*καὶ δεινῶν πραγμάτων.* Δε ἀξιοῦμεν, ὄντες καὶ  
 also grievous things. But we-think-it-right, being also

αὐτοὶ Ἔλληνες, μὲν πάσχειν τι  
 ourselves Greeks, (that we ought) indeed to-suffer something  
 ἀγαθὸν, δὲ μηδέν κακὸν ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ὅντων Ἐλλήνων·  
 good, but nothing evil from you, being Greeks;  
 γὰρ οὐδὲ πώποτε ὑπῆρξαμεν ποιοῦντες οὐδὲν  
 for neither 'have-we ever 'commenced doing (no) (any)  
 κακῶς ὑμᾶς. Οὗτοι Κοτυρίται δὲ εἰσὶ μὲν  
 evil to-you. These Cotyritans — are indeed  
 ἡμέτεροι ἄποικοι, καὶ ἡμεῖς παραδεδώκαμεν αὐτοῖς  
 our colonists, and we have-given them  
 ταύτην τὴν χώραν, ἀφελόμενοι βαρ-  
 this — (same) land, having-taken (it) 'from (the) 'bar-  
 βάρους· καὶ διὸ οὗτοι φέρουσιν ἡμῖν  
 barians; and therefore these (people) bring us (an)  
 τεταγμένον δασμὸν, καὶ ὥσαύτως Κερασούντιοι καὶ  
 appointed tribute, and likewise (the) Cerasuntians and  
 Τραπεζούντιοι· ὕστε ὁ τι κακὸν ἀν ποιήσητε  
 Trapezuntians; so-that whatever evil 'you may 'do  
 τούτους, ἡ πόλις Σινωπέων νομίζει  
 them, the city 'of (the) 'Sinopians considers (itself)  
 πάσχειν. Δέ νῦν ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς τε  
 to-suffer (from it). But now we-hear (that) you not-only  
 παρεληλυθόντας εἰς τὴν πόλιν βίᾳ, ἐνίους  
 having-entered into the town by-force, some (of you)  
 σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις, καὶ λαμβάνειν  
 lodge in the houses, but-also (that you) take  
 βίᾳ, ἐκ τῶν χωρίων ὅν ἀν δέησδε,  
 by-force, from the (neighbouring) places what 'you may 'want  
 οὐ πείθοντας. Οὖν οὐκ ἀξιοῦμεν  
 (the owners) not consenting. Therefore we-'do not 'approve  
 ταῦτα· δὲ εἰ ποιήσετε ταῦτα  
 these (things); and if you-will-do these (things) there-'will-  
 ανάγκη ἡμῖν ποιεῖσθαι φίλον καὶ Κορύλαν  
 be (a) 'necessity for-us to-make friends both (of) Corylas

*καὶ Παφλαγόνας, καὶ ἄλλον, ὅντικι  
and (of the) Paphlagonians, and (any; other, whomsoever  
ἄν δυνώμεδα.  
may be-able.*

*Πρὸς ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπεν  
In-respect to-these (things) Xenophon rising-up spoke  
ἰπέρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν· Ἡμεῖς δὲ, ὦ ἄνδρες  
for the army: We indeed, O men (of)  
Σινωπεῖς, ἤκομεν ἀγαπῶντες, ὅτι διεσωσάμεδα  
Sinope, nave-come being-content, that we-have-saved  
τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ ἦν οὐ  
— (our) bodies and — (our) arms; for it-was not  
δυνατὸν ἀμα ἀγειν καὶ φέρειν χρήματα,  
possible at-the-same-time to-drive and bring (away) things,  
καὶ μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ  
and to-fight the enemy. And now when  
ἡλθομεν εἰς τὰς Ἐλληνίδας πόλεις, μὲν ἐν  
we-have-come to — Greek cities, (as) indeed among (the)  
Τραπεζοῦντι (γὰρ παρεῖχον ἡμῖν ἀγοράν) ὡνού-  
Trebisondians (for they-provided us (a) market) buy-  
μενοι εἴχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἀνδ' ὅν  
ing we-had — (our) provisions, and in-return for-what  
ἐπίμησαν ἡμᾶς, καὶ ξένια ἔδωκαν  
they-honoured us, and (the) gifts-of-hospitality (which) they-gave  
τὴ στρατιᾶ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτούς, καὶ εἰ  
to-the army we-honoured them in-return, and if  
τις τῶν Βαρβάρων ἦν φίλος αὐτοῖς, ἀπει-  
any-one of-the barbarians was (a) friend to-them, we-ab-  
χόμεδα τούτων· δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους  
stained (from injuring) them; but (to) the enemies  
αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὓς αὐτοὶ ἤγοιντο ἐποιοῦμεν κακῶς  
of-them against whom they may-have-led (us) we-did evil  
δσον ἐδυνάμεδα. Δέ ἐρωτᾶτε αὐτούς ὅποιων  
as-much-as we-could. But ask them what-sort  
τινῶν ἐτυχον ἥμων· γάρ πάρεισι ἐνθάδε,  
if-persons they-may-have-found us; for they-are-present here*

οὗς ἡ πόλις ξυνέπεμψεν ἡμῖν ἡγεμόνας διὰ  
 whom the city sent-with us (as) guides through  
 φιλίαν. Δ' ὅποι ἀν ἐλδόντες μὴ ἔχωμεν διὰ  
 friendship. But wherever we may have-been-coming (and) not having  
 ἀγορὰν, ἀν τε εἰς βάρβαρον γῆν τε  
 (a) market, (it) may (be) as-well to (a) barbarian country as (it)  
 ἀν Ἑλληνίδα, λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 may (be) to (a) 'Grecian, we-take — provisions  
 οὐχ ὕβρει, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκῃ. Καὶ  
 not (through) insolence, but (through) necessity. And  
 ἐκτήσαμεδα πολεμίους Καρδούχους καὶ  
 we-made enemies (of the) Carduchi and (of the)  
 Ταύχους καὶ Χαλδαίους, καίπερ οὐχ ὄντας  
 Taochi and (of the) Chaldaeans, although not being  
 ὑπηκόους βασιλέως, καὶ ὅμως ὄντας μάλα  
 subjects of (the) 'king, and yet being very  
 φοβεροὺς, διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἀνάγκην  
 formidable, | through the to-be [from being] (in) necessity  
 λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ οὐ παρεῖχον  
 to-take — provisions, when they-did not 'furnish (us)  
 ἀγορὰν. Δέ Μάκρωνας, καίπερ ὄντας βαρ-  
 (a) market. But (the) Macrones, although being bar-  
 βάρους, ἐπεὶ παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν, οἷαν ἐδύναντο,  
 barians, when they-provided (us a) market, as-much-as they-could,  
 ἐνομίζομεν τε εἰναι φίλους, καὶ ἐλαμβάνομεν  
 we-considered indeed to-be friends, and we-took  
 οὐδὲν τῶν ἐκείνων βίᾳ. Δέ Κοτυωρίτας,  
 nothing of-the (things) of-them by-force. But (the) Cotyorites  
 οὓς φατέ εἶναι ὑμετέρους, εἰ εἰλήφαμεν τι  
 whom you-say to-be yours, if we-have-taken any-thing  
 αὐτων, αὐτοὶ εἰσιν αἵτιοι· γάρ  
 from-them, they-themselves are (the) authors (thereof); for  
 οὐ προεφέροντο ὡς φίλοι ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ  
 they-did not 'carry-themselves as friends of-us, but  
 κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας, οὔτε ἐδέχοντο  
 having-closed — (their) gates, 'would neither receive (us)

εἰσω, οὐτε ἐπεμπον ἀγορὰν ἔξω·  
within (the walls), nor did-they-send (us a) market without (the walls),

δέ γητιῶντο τὸν ἀρμοστὴν παρ' ὑμῶν εἶναι  
and they-alleged (that) the governor (sent) by you was

αἴτιον τούτων. Ο δὲ λέγεις  
the-author of-these (things). (As to) what indeed you-say (that)

παρελθόντας βίᾳ σκηνοῦν, ἥμεῖς ἔξιοῦμεν,  
entering by-force we-quartered (in the place), we requested,

δέξασθαι τοὺς κάμυνοντας εἰς τὰς  
(that) they-would-receive — (those) being-sick — (under) — (their)

στέγας· δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἀνέῳγον τὰς πύλας,  
roofs; but when they-would not open the gates,

ἵνα τὸ χωρίον αὐτὸν ἐδέχετο ἥμᾶς  
[in-which (way) the place itself received us [where the

ταύτη εἰσελθόντες,  
nature of the place admitted our entrance] in-the-same (place) entering,

ἄλλο ἐποιήσαμεν μὲν οὐδὲν βίαιον· δ' οἱ  
(but) we-committed indeed no violent (act), but — (these)

κάμυνοντες σκηνοῦσι ἐν ταῖς στέγαις, δαπανῶντες  
being-sick they-quarter — (under) the roofs, | consuming

τὰ εαυτῶν· καὶ φρον  
the (things) of-themselves; [living on their own means]; and we-

ροῦμεν τὰς πύλας, ὅπως οἱ ὑμῶν κάμυνοντες  
guard the gates, so-that — (those) of-us being-sick

μὴ ὕστερον ἐπὶ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ ἀρμοστῷ,  
may not be in the (power of) your governor,

ἀλλ' κομίσασθαι ἵνεφ' ἥμιν, | but that it may  
but to-remove (them) may-be to us, [but that it may

ὅταν βουλῶμεθα. Δέ οἱ  
be in our power to remove them,] when we-wish. But the

ἄλλοι, ὡς ὄρατε, σκηνοῦμεν ὑπαίθριοι,  
rest (of us) as you-see, we-are-encamped (in the) open-air

ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἀν τις  
in — (proper) order, prepared, (that) should any-one

μὲν ποιῆεν, ἀντευποιεῖν, δέ άι  
indeed act well (to us), to-act-well-in-return (to them) but (if he) shoul-

κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι. Δέ  
 act) ill, to-defend (ourselves). And (as respects) what  
 ἔπειλησας, ὡς, ἢν δοκῇ ὑμῖν, ποιήσεσθε  
 you-have-threatened, that, if it-seemed-proper to-you, you-would-make  
 Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ξυμμάχους ἐφ'  
 Corylas and (the) Paphlagonians (your) allies against  
 ὑμᾶς, δὲ ἡμεῖς, ἢν μὲν ἦ ἀνάγκη,  
 us, but we (on our part), if indeed it-may-be necessary.  
 πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις. (γὰρ ἥδη καὶ ἐπολε-  
 will-fight even with-you-both; (for already even we-have  
 μήσαμεν ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν.) δὲ  
 fought with-others more-numerous (than) you;) and (if) it  
 ἀν δοκῇ, ποιήσομεν τὸν Παφλαγόνα  
 may seem-proper (to us), we-will-make the Paphlagonian (a)  
 φίλοι ὑμῖν. Δέ ἀκούομεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιδυμεῖν  
 friend to-us. And we-have-heard (that) he even covets  
 τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ τῶν ἐπιδαλαττίων χωρίων.  
 — your city and the maritime places

Οὖν πειρασόμεδα, συμπράττοντες  
 We-'shall therefore 'try, helping (him in) what  
 ἐπιδυμεῖ γίγνεσθαι φίλοι.  
 he-desires to-become (his) friends.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ξυμπρέσθεις ἦσαν μὲν μάλα  
 After this (speech) the joint-ambassadors were indeed very  
 δῆλοι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Ἐκατωνύμῳ τοῖς  
 evident being-much-displeased at — Hecatonymus in — (what  
 εἰρημένοις. δ' ἄλλος αὐτῶν παρελθὼν εἶπεν,  
 he-had-been-saying; but others of-them coming-forward said,  
 ὅτι οὐ ἤκοιεν ποιησόμενοι πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ  
 that they-did not 'come making war, but  
 ἐπιδείξοντες ὅτι εἰσί φίλοι. "Ην μὲν ἔλ-  
 showing-and-declaring that they-were friends. If indeed you should.  
 Νητε πρὸς τὴν πόλιν Σινωπέων, ἐκεὶ δεξόμεδαι  
 come to the city of-the-Sinopeans, there we-will-receive (you)  
 καὶ ζενίοις, δὲ νῦν κελεύσομεν τοὺς  
 even with gifts-of-hospitality, and now we-will-order — (those'

ἐνδάδε διδόναι ἀ δύνανται· γαρ ὅρῶμεν πάντα  
here to-give what they-can; for we-perceive all  
δύνται ἀληθῆ ἀ λέγετε. Ἐκ τούτου τε οἱ Κοτυω-  
being true that you-say. After this indeed the Cotyo-  
ρίται ἐπεμπον ξένια, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ  
ritans sent gifts-of-hospitality, and the generals  
τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔξενιζον τοὺς πρέσβεις τῶν Σινωπέων,  
of-the Greeks entertained the ambassadors of-the Sinopeans,  
καὶ διελέγοντο πρὸς ἄλλήλους τε πολλά  
and they-conversed with one-another not-only (about) many (things)  
καὶ φιλικὰ, τὰ  
but-also (about) friendly (things, that concerned one another), among-the  
ἄλλα τε ἐπινδάνοντο καὶ περὶ τῆς  
other (things) indeed they-inquired and (in particular) about the  
λοιπῆς πορείας, ὃν ἑκάτεροι ἔδεοντο.  
remaining route, what each (party) desired (to know).

---

## CHAPTER VI.

Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ  
Such was the end indeed to-that — day.  
Δε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ξινέλεξαν τοὺς  
But on-the next-day the generals assembled the  
στρατιώτας, καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς  
soldiers, and it-seemed (best) to-them as-respects the  
λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας  
remaining route (that) having-called-in the Sinopeans  
Βουλεύεσθαι. Γὰρ εἴτε δέοι πορεύ-  
to-consult (with them). For if it-might-be-necessary to-  
εσθαι πεζῇ, οἱ Σινωπεῖς ἀν ἐδόκουν εἶναι χρήσιμοι·  
proceed by-land, the Sinopeans would seem to-be useful;  
γαρ ἦσαν ἐμπειροι τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε  
for they-were well-acquainted (with) — Paphlagonia; if

κατὰ θάλατταν ἔδόκει προσδεῖν  
by sea it-seems (that they would) require (the aid)  
 Σινωπέων, γάρ ἀν ἔδόκουν μόνοι εἶναι  
'of (the) Sinopeans, for 'they would 'seem alone to-be  
 ἵκανοι παρασχεῖν πλοῖα ἀρκοῦντα  
competent to-furnish ships 'being (in number) 'sufficient  
 τὴν στρατιā. Οὖν παλέσσαντες τοὺς πρέσβεις  
for-the army. Therefore calling (in) the ambassadors  
 ξυνεβούλεύοντο, καὶ ἤξιον δυτας Ἑλληνας  
they-consulted-together, and requested being (as) Greeks  
 Ἑλλησι τούτῳ πρῶτον δέχεσθαι  
to-Greeks (that) in-this (relation) they-'would first receive  
 καλῶς τε εἶναι εὔνοις τῷ καὶ  
(them) well, not-only to-be friendly-and-kind to — (them), but-also  
 ξυμβούλεύειν τὰ κάλλιστα.  
to-advise (them) for-the best.

Δὲ Ἐκατώνυμος ἀναστὰς, πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογή-  
But Hecatonymus having-risen-up, first indeed he-stated-in-  
 σατο περὶ οὗ εἰπεν, ὡς ποιήσουντο τὸν Παφλαγόνα  
defence about what he-said, that they-would-make the Paphlagonian  
 φίλον, δτι οὐχ εἴποι, ὡς σφῶν  
a) friend, that he-'might not 'have-said (this), as-that themselves  
 πολεμησόντων τοῖς Ἑλλησι, ἀλλ' δτι  
were-about-making-war against-the Greeks, but that (though)  
 ἔξον εἶναι φίλους τοῖς βαρβάροις αἱρή-  
it-being-allowed (them) to-be friends to-the barbarians they-  
 σονται τοὺς Ἑλληνας. Ἐπεὶ δέ  
would-take (in preference) the Greeks. When indeed  
 ἐκέλεινον ξυμβούλεύοιμι, ἐπεν-  
they-called-in (him) that-he-might-'give (his) opinion-and-advice, calling-  
 ξάμενος εἰπεν δδε. Εἰ μὲν ξυμβούλεύοιμι,  
imprecations (on himself) he-spoke thus: If indeed I-advise  
 ἀ δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι βέλτιστά, πολλά καγαδὰ  
(you), what seems to-me to-be best, 'may much even-good  
 γένοιτο μοι. δὲ εἰ μή, τάναντία. Γάρ αὕτη  
happen to-me; but if not, the-contrary. For that

ξυμβοιώνή ἡ λεγομένη εἶναι ἱερὰ δοκεῖ μεν  
 counsel which is-said to-be sacred seems to-me  
 παρεῖναι· γάρ νῦν μὲν δῆ, ἀν μὲν φανῶ  
 to-be-present, for now indeed —, if indeed I-shall-appear (as)  
 ξυμβουλεύσας εὖ, ἔσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπαι-  
 having-advised (you) well, you-will-be many — αρ-  
 νοῦντές με· δὲ ἀν κακῶς, ἔσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ κατα-  
 plauding me; but if ill, you-will-be many — εκε-  
 ρώμενοι. Οὖν μὲν οἵδ' ὅτι ἔξομεν πολὺ<sup>ν</sup>  
 erating (me). Therefore indeed I-know that we-shall-have much  
 πλείω πράγματα, ἐὰν κομίζησθε κατὰ θάλατταν·  
 more trouble, if you-are-conveyed by sea.  
 γάρ δεήσει τὸν μῆμας πορίζειν τὰ πλοῖα·  
 for it-will-be-necessary (that) we furnish the ships;  
 δὲ ήν στέλλησθε κατὰ γῆν, δεήσαι τὸν μῆμας  
 but if you-are-sent by land, it-will-be-necessary (that) you  
 εἶναι τοὺς μαχομένους. "Ομως δέ  
 be — (those) fighting. However indeed (the things)  
 ἃ γιγνώσκω λεκτέα· γάρ εἰμι ἔμπειρος καὶ  
 which I-know are-to-be-spoken; for I-am well-acquainted both  
 τῆς χώρας τῶν Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως.  
 with-the country of-the Paphlagonians and — (their) power.  
 Γάρ ἔχει ἀμφότερα, καὶ κάλλιστα πεδία καὶ  
 For it-has both, as-well most-beautiful plains as  
 ἴψηλότατα ὄρη. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἴδα εὐδίνς  
 most-high mountains. For first indeed I-know exactly  
 τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἣ ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι·  
 the entrance by-which (it will be a) necessity (for you) to-make  
 γάρ ἔστιν οὐ ἄλλη ἣ  
 (your entrance); for there-is not by-another than (that) by which  
 τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους καθ' ἐκάτερα τῆς ὁδοῦ  
 the peaks of-the mountain on each (side) of-the road  
 ἔστιν ἴψηλά, κατέχοντες ἀ καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι  
 are high, possessing which even (a) very few  
 ἀν δύναιντο κρατεῖν· δὲ κατεχομένων τούτων,  
 might be-able to-be-superior (to you); but having-pre-occupied this

αὐδέ πάντες οἱ ἀνδρῶποι ἀν δύναιντ'  
not-even all the men (in the world) might be-able

ἀν διελθεῖν· δὲ καὶ ἀν δείξαιμι ταῦτα.  
(that they) might pass-through; and also I could show this,

εἰ βούλοισθε ξυμπέμψαι μοί τινα. Ἐπειτα δὲ  
if you-desire to-send-with me any-one. Then indeed

οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὅντα, καὶ ἵππείαν, ἦν οἱ βάρ-  
I-know even (of) plains being, and cavalry, which the bar-  
βαροι αὐτοὶ νομίζουσι εἶναι κρείττω ἀπάσοις τῆς  
barians themselves consider to-be superior (to) all the

ἵππειας βασιλέως. Καὶ νῦν οὕτοι  
cavalry 'of (the) 'king. And now (lately) these (Paphla-

οῦ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ κα-  
gonians 'did not present (themselves) 'to (the) 'king call-

λοῦντι, ἀλλὰ ὁ ἄρχων αἰτῶν φρονεῖ μεῖζουν.  
ing-on (others), but the ruler of-them thinks greater

Δέ εἰ καὶ δυνηθεῖτε τε κλέψαι  
(of himself, than to obey). And if also you-were-able indeed to-steal

τὰ ὅρη, ἢ λαβόντες φέασαι,  
(over) the mountains, or having-taken-possession to-have-anticipated (the

καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μαχόμενοι κρατῆσαι τε  
enemy), and in the plain fighting to-have-conquered —

τούς ἵππεις τούτων καὶ πλειον ἢ δώδεκα  
the cavalry of-these (people) and more than twelve

μυριάδες πεζῶν ἥξετε ἐπι τοὺς  
ten-thousands [120,000] of-infantry, you-will-come to the

ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμώδοντα, εὗρος  
rivers, first indeed to-the Thermodon, (the) breadth

τριῶν πλέθρων, δύν οἷμαι χαλεπὸν  
(being) three plethora, [300 feet,] which I-think difficult

διαβαίνειν, ἀλλως τε καὶ ὅντων μὲν πολλῶν  
to-cross, especially — also there-being indeed (a) numerous

πολεμίων ἔμπροσθεν, δὲ πολλῶν ἐπομένων  
enemy before (you), and many following

ἵπισθεν· δεύτερον δ' Ἰριν, ὡςαύτως τρί-  
eind, second — (the) Iris, likewise three.

πλέθρον· δὲ τρίτον Ὄλυν, οὐ μεῖον  
 plethora; [300 feet;] and third (the) Halys, not less (than)  
 δυοῖν σταδίοιν, δν ἀν οὐ δύναισθε διαβῆναι  
 two stadia, which 'you may not 'be-able to-pass  
 ἄνευ πλοῖων· δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων πλοῖα;  
 without boats; but what-one will-there-be — providing boats!  
 ὡς δ' αὗτως καὶ ὁ Παρθένιος ἀβατος, ἐφ' δι  
 as indeed likewise even the Parthenius (is) impassable, at which  
 ἀν ἔλθοιτε, εἰ διαβαίητε τὸν Ὄλυν. Ἐγὼ  
 'you may 'arrive, if you-cross-over the Halys. I  
 οὖν μὲν νομίζω τὴν πορείαν εἶναι οὐ χαλεπήν  
 therefore indeed consider the route to-be not difficult  
 ὑμῖν, ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν ἐδύνατον. Δὲ ἀν  
 (only) for-you, but altogether impassable. But if  
 πλέντε, ἔστιν ἐνδένδε μὲν παραπλεῦσαι  
 you-sail, it-is (in your power) from-hence indeed to-coast-along  
 εἰς Σινώπην, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ  
 to Sinope, from Sinope indeed to Heracleia; from  
 Ἡρακλείας δὲ ἀπορία οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε  
 Heracleia indeed (the) passage (may be) either by-land or  
 κατὰ θάλατταν· γάρ ἔστιν καὶ πολλὰ πλοῖα ἐν  
 by sea; for there-are even many vessels in  
 Ἡρακλείᾳ.  
 Heracleia.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔλεξε ταῦτα, οἱ ὑπώπτευον  
 When indeed he-had-said this, — (some) suspected (that)  
 λέγειν ἔνεκα φιλίας τῆς Κορύλα, (γάρ η  
 ne-said (it) by-reason of-friendship for — Corylas, (for he-was  
 καὶ πρόξενος αὐτῷ,) δὲ καὶ οἱ  
 even (the) public-guest-friend to-him,) and also — (others) (suspected  
 ὡς ληφόμενον δῶρα διὰ ταύτην τὴν ξυμβού-  
 him) as about-to-receive (a) reward on-account-of this — coun-  
 λὴν· δὲ οἱ καὶ ὑπώπτευον λέγειν ἔνεκα  
 sel; and —(others) again suspected (that) he-said (so) by-reasen  
 τοίτοι. ὡς μὴ ιόντες πεζῇ ἐργάζοιντο τι κακὸν  
 if-they, that lest going on-foot they-might-do some evil

*την χώραν Σινωπέων. Δ' οὖν οἱ Ἑλληνες  
to-the country of (the) Sinopeans. But — the Greeks*

*ἐψησαντο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν κατὰ θάλατταν.  
voted to-make the journey by sea.*

*Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν. Ω Σινωπεῖς,  
After these (things) Xenophon said: O Sinopeans,*

*οἱ ἄνδρες μὲν ὥρηνται πορείαν, ἦν ὑμεῖς ξυμβου-  
the men indeed have-chosen (the) route, which you ad-*

*λεύετε· δὲ ἔχει οὕτω·*

*vise; | and it-has (itself) thus; [and we will sail on these con-  
ditions;] if indeed it-is-intended (that) there-will-be ships sufficient*

*ἀριθμῷ, ὡς μὴ ἕνα καταλείπεσθαι ἐνδάδε,  
in-number, so-as (that) not one be-left here,*

*ἡμεῖς ἀν πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν οἱ  
we may sail; if indeed we-intend (that) — (some)*

*μὲν καταλείψεσθαι, δὲ οἱ πλεύσεσθαι, ἀν  
indeed are-to-be-left, but — (others) to-sail, we may*

*οὐκ ἐμβαίημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. Γὰρ γιγνώσκομεν,  
not 'embark on (board) the ships. For we-know,*

*ὅτι, ὅπου μὲν ἀν κρατῶμεν ἀν δυναίμεδα  
that, where indeed 'we may 'be-the-strongest 'we may be-able*

*καὶ σώζεσθαι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·  
both to-save (ourselves), and to-have — provisions;*

*δὲ εἰ πον ληφθησόμεδα ἥττους  
but if any-where | we-shall-be-taken worse [shall be found weaker]*

*τῶν πολεμίων, εὑδηλον δὴ, δτε  
(than) — (our) enemies, (it is) very-evident indeed, that*

*ἐσόμεδα ἐν χώρᾳ ἀνδραπόδων. Οἱ πρέσβεις  
we-will-be in (the) place of-slaves. The ambassadors*

*ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκέλενον πέμπειν  
bearing these (things) requested (them) to-send*

*πρέσβεις. Καὶ πέμποντι Καλλίραχον  
ambassadors (to Sinope). And they-sent Callimachus (the)*

Ἄρκαδα, καὶ Ἀρίστωνα Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Σάμονταν Ἀχαιόν. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ψήφωντο.  
Arcadian, and Ariston (the) Athenian, and Samo-  
as (the) Achæan. And — (they) indeed departed.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι,  
During indeed this (same) — time (it seemed) to Xenophon,  
ὄρῶντι μὲν πολλοὺς ὀπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων,  
seeing indeed (the) many heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,  
δὲ καὶ ὄρῶντι πολλούς πελταστὰς, καὶ τοξότας  
and also seeing many targeteers, and archers  
καὶ σφενδονήτας, καὶ ἵππεας δὲ, καὶ μάλα ἵκανούς  
and slingers, and cavalry also, and very efficient  
ἥδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν, ὅντας δὲ ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ,  
now through — exercise, being indeed in — Pontus,  
ἐνδια τοσαύτῃ δύναμις ἃν οὐκ παρεσκευάσθη ἀπ'  
where such (a) force could not have-been-prepared from  
ἰλίγων χρημάτων, εὖδόκει εἶναι καλὸν  
small things-and-means, 'it (therefore) 'seemed to-be good  
αὐτῷ προσκτήσασθαι καὶ χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῷ  
to-him to-have-added-yet-more both territory and power to —  
Ἑλλάδι, κατοικίσαντας πόλιν. Καὶ εὖδόκει  
Greece, having-provided (a) city (there). And it-seemed  
αὐτῷ ἃν γενέσθαι μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ  
to-him (that it) might become great, considering  
τε τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν, καὶ τοὺς περιου-  
not-only the multitude of-themselves, but-also — (those) inhabiting-  
κοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ ἔτι τούτοις  
around the Pontus (unskilled in war). And about this  
ἔδύετο, πρὶν εἰπεῖν τινι τῶν στρατιωτῶν,  
he-sacrificed, (and) before he-spoke to-any of-the soldiers,  
καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρακιώτην, τὸν  
having-called-in Silanus the Ambracian, — (who)  
γενόμενον τὸν μάντιν Κύρου. Οὐ δέ Σιλανός,  
was the augur of-Cyrus. — But Silanus  
δεδιώς μὴ ταῦτα γένηται, καὶ ἦ στρατιᾶ  
having-feared lest this might-happen, and the army

καταμείνη ποι, εἰκφέρει λόγον εἰς τὸ  
 might-remain some-where (here), he-brings word to the  
 στράτευμα, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται τὴν στρατιὰν  
 army that Xenophon desired the army  
 καταμεῖναι, καὶ οἰκίσαι πόλιν, καὶ περι-  
 to-remain, and to-build (a) city, and (thereby) ac-  
 ποιήσασθαι ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν ἑαυτῷ. Δ' ὁ  
 aspire (a) name and power for-himself. But —  
 Σιλανὸς αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα  
 Silanus himself desired to-arrive in — Greece  
 ὅτι τάχιστα· γάρ διεσεσώκει τρισ-  
 'as quick 'as-possible; for he-had-saved (the) three-  
 χιλίους δαρεικούς, οὓς ἔλαβε παρὰ Κύρου, ὅτε  
 thousand daries, which he-received from Cyrus, when  
 θυόμενος ἤληδενσε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας  
 sacrificing he-told (the) 'truth (respecting) the ten days  
 Κύρῳ. Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἦκουσαν,  
 to-Cyrus. But (as respects) the soldiers, when they-heard  
 ἐδόκει μὲν τοῖς εἶναι βέλτιστον καταμεῖναι,  
 (this), it-seemed indeed to — (some) to-be the-best to-remain,  
 δὲ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὐ. Δὲ Τιμασίῳ  
 but — (others) the-most (numerous) not (to remain). But Timasius  
 δ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος λέγουσι  
 the Dardanean and Thorax the Boeotian told  
 τινὰς ἐμπόρους παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν  
 some merchants being-present-there of-the Heracleans  
 καὶ Σινωπέων, ὅτι, εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι  
 and 'of (the) 'Sinopeans, that, if they-do not procure  
 μισθόν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὅτε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 pay for-the army, so-as to-have — provisions (while)  
 ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι τοσαύτη δύναμις κιν-  
 sailing-out (on their voyage), | that so-large (a) force will-be  
 δυνεύσει μεῖναι ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.  
 in-danger to remain in — Pontus [there will be danger cf sc

Ι'ἀρ Ξενοφῶν βοι-  
 large a force remaining in Pontus]. For (said they), Xenophon w

λεύεται, καὶ παρακαλεῖ ἡμᾶς, ἐπειδὰν τὰ πλοῖα  
 planning (thus), and requests us, when the vessels  
 ἔλθῃ, εἰπεῖν τότε ἐξαίφνης τῇ στρατιᾷ· Ἀνδρες,  
 may-come, to-say then suddenly to-the army; Men,  
 νῦν μὲν δρῶμεν ὑμᾶς δυτας ἀπόρους καὶ  
 'we now indeed 'perceive you being at-a-loss (how) even  
 ἐπειδὴ τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ὡς  
 in the voyage-homeward to-have — provisions, and how  
 ἀπελθόντας οἴκαδε ὀνῆσαι τι τοὺς οἴκοι·  
 Having-departed home to-have-benefitted any (of) — (those) at-home;  
 εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε ἐκλεξάμενοι τῆς οἰκουμένης  
 if indeed you-desire (it), having-selected — (an) inhabited  
 χώρας, κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν Πόντον ὅπη ἀν  
 place, 'in (a) 'circle round the Pontus whenever 'you may  
 βούλεσθε, κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐδέλοντα,  
 'wish, to-take-possession-of (it), and — (those) indeed wishing  
 ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, δὲ τὸν ἐδέλοντα μένειν  
 (it), to-depart home, but — (those) wishing (it) to-remain  
 αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δὲ πάρεσιν ὑμῖν, ὕστε, ὅπη  
 here, ships indeed are-ready (here) for-you, so-that, when 'you  
 ἀν βούλεσθε, ἀν ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπέσοιτε.  
 may 'wish, 'you may suddenly 'fall-on (such place).

Οἱ ἐμπόροι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπήγγελλον  
 The merchants hearing these (things), announced  
 ταῖς πόλεσι· δὲ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς  
 (them) to-the cities; and Timasion the Dardanean  
 ἔννέπεμψε αὐτοῖς Εὐρύμαχόν τε τὸν Δαρδανέα  
 sent-with him Eurymachus also — (a) Dardanean  
 καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιώτιον, ἐροῦντας τὰ αὐτὰ  
 and Thorax the Boeotian, saying the self  
 ταῦτο Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται,  
 same (things). (The) Sinopeans and also (the) Heracleans,  
 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πέμποντι πρὸς τὸν Τιμα-  
 θαντας having-heard these (things), sent to — Timas-  
 θαντας καὶ κελεύοντι, λαβόντα χρῆματα,  
 and requested (him), having-received money

προστατεῦσαι, ὅπως ἡ στρατιά  
to-place-himself-at-the-head (of bringing it about), that the army  
ἐκπλεύσῃ. οὐδὲ ἀσμενος ἀκούσας,  
would-sail-out (of the Euxine). — (He) indeed willingly listening

ἐν ξυλλόγῳ, ὄντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν,  
(to this), | (and) in (an) assembly, being the soldiers,

λέγει τάδε. Δεῖ  
[and in an assembly of the soldiers.] spoke thus: It-becomes (us)  
οὐ, ὦ ἀνδρες, προσέχειν τῇ μονῇ, οὐδὲ  
not, O men, to-bend (our minds) on — remaining, nor  
ποιεῖσθαι οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος τῆς  
to-make (no) (any) (country) of more-value (than) —  
Ἐλλάδος. Ἀκούω δὲ τινας θύεσθα ἐπὶ τούτῳ,  
Greece. I-hear indeed (that) some are-sacrificing about this

οὐδὲ λέγοντας ὑμῖν. Δὲ ἵπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν.  
(and) not-even mentioning (it) to-you. And I-promise you,

ἀν ἐκπλέητε, παρέξειν ἐκάστῳ κυζικητὸν  
if you-set-sail, to-furnish hereafter to-each-of-you (a) eyzicene

μισθοφορὰν τοῦ μηνός, ἀπὸ<sup>1</sup>  
(about five dollars) as-pay — (per) month, (counting) from

νοῦμηνίας· καὶ ἀξώ ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν  
(the) beginning-of-the-month; and I-will-lead you to —

Τρωάδα, ἐνδεν καὶ εἰμι φυγάς, καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ<sup>2</sup>  
Troas, whence even I-am (an) exile, and — my

πόλις ἵπάρξει ὑμῖν· γάρ ἐκόντες  
city will-aid you; for they (my countrymen) will willingly

δέξονται με. Δὲ ἐγώ αὐτὸς ἴγήσομαι,  
receive me. And I myself will-conduct (you to places),

ἐνδεν λήψεσθε πολλὰ χρήματα. Εἰμι δὲ ἐμ-  
where you-will-get much riches. I-am indeed well-

πειρος τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας, καὶ τῆς  
acquainted-with — Αἰολία and — Phrygia, and —

Τρωάδος, καὶ πάσης τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Φαρ-  
Troas, and all the government [satrapy] (of) — Phar-

ναβάζοι, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐκεῖδεν,  
nabasus, | the indeed through the to-be nence, [partiv as be

δὲ τὰ δια τὸ ξυνεστρα-  
ing a native of that place], and — (partly) through [the to-make-eam-  
τεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ  
paigns-with [having served with] in that (place) with Clearchus  
τε καὶ Δερκυλίδᾳ.  
and also Dercyllidas.

Αὖθις δὲ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιωτιος, δος ἀεὶ ἐμάχετο  
Afterwards indeed Thorax the Boeotian, who always contended  
Ξενοφῶντι περὶ στρατηγίας, ἀναστὰς, ἔφη,  
with Xenophon about (the) command-of-the-army, having-stood-up, said,  
εἰ ἔξελθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, Χερσόνησον  
if they-should-depart from the Pontus, (that the) Chersonese  
ἔσεσθαι αὐτοῖς, χώραν καλὴν καὶ  
will-be (the place) for-them, (for that the) country (is) fine and  
εὐδαιμονα, ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ  
rich, so-that (it will be) to — (him) wishing-it (in his power)  
ἐνοικεῖν, δὲ τῷ μὴ βουλομένῳ  
to-dwell-therein, but to — (him) not wishing-it (it will be in his  
ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε. Δὲ εἶναι γελοῖον, οὔσης  
power) to-depart home. And (that) it-was ridiculous, there-being  
ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου χώρας,  
in — Greece much and excellent land,  
μαστεύειν ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων. Δ' ἔστε, ἔφη,  
to-seek-for-it in the (country) of-barbarians. But until, said-he  
ἄν γένησθε ἐκεῖ, καγὼ, καθάπερ Τιμασίων,  
'you may 'get there, both-I, as-well-as Timasion  
ἵπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν τὴν μισθοφορίαν. Δὲ ἔλεγε  
promise you — pay. And he-said  
ταῦτα, εἰδὼς Τιμασίωνι ἀ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ  
this, having-heard from-Timasion what the Heracleans and  
οἱ Σινωπεῖς ἴπισχνοῦντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ  
the Sinopeans had-promised (it) provided (that) they-set-sail. But —  
Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα. Δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ  
Xenophon during this was-silent. But Philesius and  
Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀναστὰς ἐλεγον, ὡς εἴη δειπόν  
Lyco- the Achaeans having-stood-up sa d., that it-was insufferable

μὲν Ξενοφῶντα ἴδια τε πείθειν  
indeed that) Xenophon in-private 'should not-only 'persuade (people)  
καταμένειν, καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς, μή  
to-remain, but-also to-sacrifice about — (their) stay, not  
κοινούμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, δὲ εἰς τὸ κοινόν  
having-communicated to-the army, and in the public

ἀγορεύειν μεδὲν περὶ τούτων. Ὡςτε δὲ Ξενο-  
to-declare nothing about these (things). So-that — Xeno-

φῶν ἦναγκάσθη ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε·  
phon was-obliged to-stand-up and to-speak thus:

Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι, ὡς μὲν ὅρᾶτε, ὅποσα  
I, O men, sacrifice, as indeed you-see, as-well-as  
δύναμαι, καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἔμαυτοῦ, ὅπως  
I-can, both for you and for myself, | in-order-that

τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πραττων  
I-happen both speaking and thinking and doing [in order  
ταῦτα ὅποια μέλ-  
that I may speak, and think and do] those (things) such-as it-may-be-

λει ἔσεσθαι κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα τε ὑμῖν καὶ  
about to-be the-most-honourable and best not-only for-you but-also

ἔμοι. Καὶ νῦν ἐδυόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου,  
for-me. And now I-was-sacrificing about thus same (thing).

εἰ εἴη ἀμεινον ἀρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς  
(namely) whether it-would-be better to-begin to-speak to  
ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων, ἥ παντάπασι  
you and to-act respecting these (things), or altogether

μηδὲ ἀπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Δέ Σιλανὸς δὲ  
not to-touch the affair. And Silanus the

μάντις ἀπεκρίνατο μοὶ τὸ μέγιστον  
augur determined for-me — (what was of the) greatest

μὲν, τὰ οἱρὰ εἶναι καλὰ· (γὰρ  
(importance) indeed, (that) the victims were favourable; (for

γὰρ εἰ καὶ ἔμε δύτα οὐκ ἀπειρον  
he-knew also (that) I was not unskilled (in such things)

διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ παρεῖναι τοῖς οἱροῖς·) δέ  
by-reason of — /my) always being-present at-the sacrifices;) and

Ἐλεξε δτι φαίνοιτο ἐν τοῖς ιεροῖς τις δόλος  
said that there-appeared in the victim.s (as if) same fraud

καὶ ἐπιθυμή ἐμοί, ὡς ἄρα γιγνώσκων,  
and plotting (was agitating) against-me, as in-truth knowing,  
δτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς.  
that he was-plotting to-calumniate me to you.

Γαρ ἔξηνεγκε τὸν λόγον, ὡς ἐγὼ ἦδη διανοοίμεν  
For he-brought-out the report, that I already intended  
πράττειν ταῦτα, οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς.  
to-do these (things), not having-persuaded you (to give

Δὲ ἐγὼ, εἰ μὲν ἔώρων ὑμᾶς ἀποροῦντας,  
your consent). And I, if indeed I-saw you destitute

τοῦτ' ἀν ἐσκόπουν ἀφ' οὐ  
(and in perplexity), for-that 'I would 'have-looked-out from which 'it  
ἀν γένοιτο, ὅστε ὑμᾶς λαβόντας πόλιν, τὸν  
might happen, that you having-taken (a) city, — (those)

μὲν βουλόμενον, ἀποπλεῖν ἦδη, τὸν  
indeed desiring (it), (might) set-sail now, — (those)

δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτή  
indeed not desiring (it), (might do so) when they-might-have-  
σαιτο ἴκανὰ, ὅστε ὠφελῆσαι τι τοὺς οἰκείους  
acquired sufficient, so-as to-assist somewhat the families  
ἔαντον. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ὁρῶ Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινω-

πεῖς πέμποντας τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ὑμῖν, ὅστε  
peans sending — vessels even to-you, so-as (that)

ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ ἀνδρας ὑπισχνουμένους ὑμῖν μισθὸν  
you-may-set-sail, and men promising you pay

ἀπὸ νουμηνίας, δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι καλόν  
from (the) beginning-of-the-month, it-seems to-me to-be (an) excellent

σωζομένους ἐνδα βουλόμεδα λαμβάνειν  
(thing that) we-being-saved to-where we-wish (to be) to-receive

μισθὸν τῆς πορείας· καὶ τε αὐτός παύ-  
pay for (making) 'the journey; and not-only myself do-

καὶ ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὅπόσοι προσ-  
desist from-this — (same) intention, but-also sub-as have

ἔρεσαν πρὸς ἐμὲ, λέγοντες, ὡς χρὴ πράττειν  
 some-forward to me, saying, that it-is-necessary to-do  
 ταῦτα, φημι χρῆναι ἀνα-  
 these (things), I-say (to them also) (that) it-is-necessary to-  
 παύσασθαι. Γὰρ οὕτω γιγνώσκω· δοτες  
 desist (from them). For thus I-know: being  
 πολλοὶ ὅμοι, ὥσπερ νῦν, ἀν δοκεῖτε μοι καὶ  
 many together, as now, 'you may seem to-me even  
 εἶναι ἔντιμοι, καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· (γὰρ ἔστιν  
 to-be honoured, and to-have — provisions; |(for it-is  
 ἐν τῷ κρατεῖν καὶ το —  
 in the to-have-power [for it belongs to those having power] even —  
 λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἥττόνων·) δ' ἀν διασπασ-  
 to-take the (things) of-the weaker;) but — being-torn-  
 δέντες, καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως γενομένης  
 into-pieces, and — (your) force having-become (divided into)  
 κατὰ μικρὰ, ἀν οὔτε δύναισθε λαμβάνειν  
 — small (parties), 'you might neither 'be-able to-procure  
 τροφὴν, οὐτ' ἀν ἀπαλλάξαιτε χαίροντες. Δοκεῖ  
 subsistence, nor might you-depart rejoicing. It-seems  
 οὖν μοι ἀπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπο-  
 therefore to-me (good) which (is good) for-you, (that) 'we (ought) 'to-  
 ρεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· καὶ ἐάν τις μείνῃ  
 depart for — Greece; and if any-one remains  
 ἢ ληφθῇ ἀπολιπῶν τινα, πρὶν τὸ πᾶν  
 or be-caught 'leaving any-one 'behind, before (that) the whole  
 στράτευμα εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ αὐτὸν κρίνεσθαι  
 army is in safety (that) he is-to-be-judged  
 ὡς ἀδικοῦντα. Καὶ δτῷ, ἐφη ταῦτα δοκεῖ  
 as committing-a-crime. And to-whom, said-he these (things) seem  
 ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα Ἀπαντες  
 (good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All  
 ἔνετειναν.  
 held-up (their hands).

'Ο Σιλανὸς δὲ ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν,  
 — Silanus indeed cried-out, and attempted to-speak

ώς εἴη δίκαιον τὸν βουλόμενον  
 (in order to show), that it-might-be lawful for — (those) desiring  
 ἀπέντας. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ οὐκ ἤνείχοντο.  
 (i.) to-depart. The soldiers however 'did not 'tolerate  
 ἀλλ' ἤπειλον αὐτῷ, δτι εἰ λήψονται ἀποδήμοντα,  
 (it) but threatened him, that if they-caught (him) running.  
 δράσκοντα, ἐπιδήσουεν τὴν δίκην.  
 away, | they-would-'put the law 'on (him), [they would

Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἔγνωσαν,  
 punish him]. Thereupon, when the Heracleans knew,  
 ὅτι δεδογμένον εἴη ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ Ξενοφῶν  
 that it-had-been-determined to-set-sail, and (that) Xenophon  
 αὐτὸς ἐπεψήφικώς εἴη, πέμπουσι μὲν τὰ πλοῖα,  
 himself had-put-it-to-vote, sent indeed the ships,  
 δὲ τὰ χρήματα ἀ ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίων  
 but (as respects) the money which they-promised to-Timasion  
 καὶ Θώρακι τῆς μισδοφορίας ἐψευσμένοι  
 and Thorax (as) the pay (of the soldiers) they-had.  
 νοι ἥσαν. Ἐνταῦθα δὲ οἱ ὑπεσχημένοι  
 falsified (their word). Then indeed — (those) having-promised  
 τῆς μισδοφορίαν ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἥσαν καὶ  
 the pay were-astounded and  
 ἐδεδοίκεσαν τὴν στρατιὰν. Οὗτοι οὖν παραλα-  
 feared the army. These therefore taking-with  
 βόντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς, οἵς ἀνεκοι-  
 (them) also the other generals, to-whom they-com-  
 νοῦντο, ἀ πρόσθεν ἐπραττον, (δὲ  
 municated, what 'they before (this) 'attempted-to-bring-about, and  
 ἥσαν πάντες, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου,  
 they-were all (of them), except Neon the Asinian,  
 ος ὑπεστρατήγει Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ Χειρίσοφος οὐτε  
 who commanded-under Chirisophus, but Chirisophus 'was not-yet  
 παρῆν,) ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγοντιν  
 'present,) they-went to Xenophon, and said  
 ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοῦη  
 that it-repentend them (for what had been done), and it-might-seem

είναι κράτιστον πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ ἔστι  
to-be the-best to-sail to (the) Phasis, when there-were  
πλοῖα, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν χώραν Φασιανῶν  
vessels, and to-have-taken the country 'of (the) <sup>'Phasians</sup>  
(δὲ νῦνδοῦς Αἰγάτου ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν).  
(for (a) grandson of-Æetes happened to-be-reigning-over them)  
Δέ Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο, δτι ἀν εἴποι οὐδὲν  
But Xenophon replied, that 'he would 'say nothing  
τούτων εἰς τὴν στρατιάν. δὲ ὑμεῖς ξυλλέξαντες,  
of-these to the army; but you assembling  
ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε.  
'them), said-he, if you-wish, tell (them about the affair)  
Ἐνταῦθα Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς ἀποδείκνυται  
Then Timasion the Dardanian offered (the)  
γνώμην, οὐκ ἐκκλησιάζειν, ἀλλὰ  
opinion, (that) they-'ought not 'to-call-a-council (of all), but  
πρῶτον τοὺς λοχαγοὺς πειρᾶσθαι πείσειν  
first the captains (ought) to-endavour to-persuade  
ἔκαστον αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἀπελθόντες  
| each (of the men) of-himself [his own men]. And departing  
ἐποίουν ταῦτα.  
they-did these (things).

---

## CHAPTER VII.

Οἱ στρατιῶται οὖν ἀνεπύθοντο ταῦτα  
The soldiers therefore heard (that) these (things)  
πραττόμενα. Καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει, ὡς Ξενοφῶν  
were-doing. And — Neon tells (them), that Xenophon,  
ἀναπεπεικώς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς, διανοεῖται,  
having-persuaded the other generals, was-deliberating  
ἔξαπατήσας, ἀγειν πάλιν τοὺς στρατιώτας  
deceiving (them), to-lead back-again the soldiers

εἰς Φᾶσιν. Δέ οἱ στρατιῶται ᾁκούσατες  
to (the) Phasis. But the soldiers bearing (this,  
were χαλεπῶς ἔφερον· καὶ ἐγίγνοντο ξύλογοι,  
greatly excited. and there-were assemblages,  
καὶ κύκλοι ξυνίσταντο, καὶ ἤσαν μάλα φοβεροὶ,  
and circles were-formed, and they-were much to-be-feared,  
μὴ ποιήσειαν, οἴα καὶ ἐποίησαν τοὺς κήρυκας  
est they-might-do, as 'they even 'had-done to-the heralds

Κόλχων καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους· γάρ  
·of (the) Colchians and the superintendents-of-the-markets; for  
ὅσοι μὴ κατέφυγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, κατε-  
as-many-as 'did not 'take-refuge in the sea, were-  
λεύσθησαν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἥσθανετο,  
destroyed. When however Xenophon perceived (these

ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα ξυνα-  
things), it-seemed (best) to-him 'as speedily 'as-possible to-call-  
γαγεῖν ἀγοράν αὐτῶν, καὶ μὴ ἐᾶσι  
together (an) assembly of-them (the soldiers), and not-to-have-permitted

ξυλλεγῆναι αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν  
(them) to-assemble of-their-own-accord: and he-ordered the  
κήρυκα ξυλλέγειν ἀγοράν. Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ  
general to-collect-together (a) meeting. But — (they) when  
ἤκουνσαν τοῦ κήρυκος, ξυνέδραμον καὶ  
they-heard (the proclamation) of-the herald, ran-together even  
μάλα ἐτοίμας. Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν οὐ μὲν  
very speedily. Then Xenophon 'did not indeed  
κατηγόρει τῶν στρατηγῶν, ὅτι ἥλθον πρὸς αὐτόν,  
'accuse the generals, that they-came to him,  
δὲ λέγει ὡδε·  
but speaks thus:

Ἄκούω, ὁ ἄνδρες, τινὰ διαβάλλειν ἔμει ὡς  
I-hear, O men, (that) some-one accuses me that  
ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς  
I namely deceiving you intend to-lead (you) to (the)  
Φᾶσιν. Ακούσατε μου οὖν πρὸς θεῶν·  
Phasis. Hear me therefore for (the sake) of the-gods,

ταὶ ἔατι μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἀδίκειν, οὐ χρή  
 and if indeed I may-appear to-do-wrong, it-'is not 'proper  
 με ἀπελθεῖν ἐνδένδε, πρὶν ἀν δῶ δίκην·  
 (that) I should-depart hence, | before 'I may 'give justice;  
 δ' οἱ διαβάλλοντες ἐμὲ  
 [before I suffer punishment,] but (if) — (those) calumniating me  
 ἀν φαίνωνται ὑμῖν ἀδίκειν, χρῆσθε αὐτοῖς οὕτως  
 may appear to-you to-do-wrong, treat them so  
 ὡς περ ἄξιον. Τμεῖς δὲ δήπου ιστε, ἔφη, ὅδει  
 as is-fitting. You indeed certainly know, said-he, whence  
 ἥλιος ἀνίσχει, καὶ ὅπου δύεται, καὶ ὅτι,  
 (the) sun rises, and where it-sets, and to-whom,  
 ἐὰν μὲν μέλλῃ ιέναι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, δεῖ  
 if indeed he-intends to-go to — Greece, (to him) it-is-necessary  
 πορεύεσθαι πρὸς ἐσπέραν· ἦν δέ τις βούληται  
 to-proceed to (the) west; if indeed any-one might-wish  
 εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοῦμπαλιν πρὸς  
 (to go) to the barbarians, (on) the-contrary (he must go) to (the)  
 ἔω. Ἐστιν οὖν ὅςτις ἀν δύναιτο ἔξαπα-  
 east. Is-there therefore any-one (that) might be-able so-to-  
 τῆσαι ὑμᾶς τοῦτο, ως  
 deceive you in-this, as (to make you believe that the) sun,  
 ἐνδειν μὲν ἀνέσχει, δὲ δύεται ἐνταῦθα, δὲ  
 there-where indeed it-was, 'it also 'sets there, and  
 ἐνθα δύεται, δ' ἀνισχει ἐντεῦθεν; Ἀλλὰ μὲν  
 where it-sets, 'it also 'rises there? But indeed  
 καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι βορέας μὲν  
 even this at-least know, that (the) north-wind 'will indeed  
 φέρει ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,  
 carry (us) out-of the Pontus (Euxinus) towards — Greece,  
 δέ νότος εἴσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγετε,  
 su. (the) south-wind inwards towards (the) Phasis, and you-say,  
 ἵταν βορρᾶς πνέη, ως εἰσιν καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰς  
 when (the) north-wind may-blow, that it-is fair sailing for  
 τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτο οὖν ὅπως ἐστιν, τις  
 — Greece. In-this therefore how is-it (possible), any-one

ἀν ἔξαπατήσαι ὑμᾶς, οἵτε ἐμβαίνειν, ὅπόταν  
 could deceive you, so-as to-embark, when (the)  
 νότος πνέη; Ἀλλὰ γάρ ἐμβιβῶ  
 south-wind may-blow? But perhaps (you will say that) I shall-put  
 ὅπόταν ἦ γαλήνη. Ἐγώ  
 'you' 'on-board' when there-may-be (a) calm. Will I  
 οὐκοῦν μὲν πλεύσομαι ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ, δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐν  
 not-therefore indeed 'sail' in one ship, but you in  
 ἑκατόν τούλαχιστον; Πῶς οὖν ἀν ἐγώ  
 (a) hundred (at) the-least? How therefore could I either  
 βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς πλεῖν ἐν ἐμοὶ, μὴ βουλο-  
 force you to-sail with me, (you) not being  
 μένους, ἢ ἔξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι. Δὲ ποιῶ  
 willing, or deceiving lead (you away). But | I-make  
 ὑμᾶς ἔξαπατηδέντας καὶ κατα-  
 [I will suppose] (that) you having-been-deceived and having-  
 γονητευδέντας ὑπὸ ἐμοῦ ἤκειν εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ  
 been-tricked by me to-come to (the) Phasis, and  
 δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν·  
 indeed (that) we-descend (from the vessels) to the land  
 δῆπον γνώσεσθε, ὅτι ἐστέ οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι.  
 you-'will certainly 'know, that you-are not in — Greece.  
 Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ὁ ἔξηπατηκώς ἔσομαι εἰς, δὲ  
 And I indeed who have-been-deceiving (you) will-be (but) one, but  
 ὑμεῖς οἱ ἔξηπατημένοι ἔχοντες ἐγγὺς μυρίων  
 you — (who) have-been-deceived near ten-thousand  
 ὅπλα. Πῶς οὖν ἀν εἰς ἀνὴρ μᾶλλω  
 (men under) arms. | How therefore could one man more  
 δοίη δίκην,  
 given justice, [how could one man more effectually have brought punish-  
 ἢ βουλευόμενος οὕτω τε περὶ  
 ment on himself,] than (for) planning thus not-only about  
 σιτοῖς καὶ ὑμῶν; Ἀλλ' οὗτοι εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι  
 himself but-also (about) you? But these are the words  
 ἀνθρώπων καὶ ῥιζίων κάμοι φθονούντων, ὅτι ἐγώ  
 if man even foolish 'and envying 'me because

τιμῶμαι ὑφ' ὑμῶν. Καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἀτιμηνούμενοι μοι· γάρ εἴγώ η̄ κωλύω τίνα λέγειν,  
 do-they-annoy me; for 'do I either 'prevent any-one to-speak,  
 εἰ τις δύναται τι ἀγαθὸν ἐν ὑμῖν,  
 if any-one is-able (to say) any-thing good (or advantageous) for you,  
 η̄ μάχεσθαι, εἰ τις ἐδέλει, τε ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ  
 or to-fight, if any-one wishes, not-only for you but-also  
 εἰαυτοῦ, η̄ ἐγρηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας  
 (for) himself, or to-watch for — your  
 ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελόμενον; Γάρ τι, ὑμῶν  
 safety (if) caring (to do so)? For (in) what, you  
 αἱρουμένων ἀρχοντας, εἰμι ἐγώ ἔμποδόν τινι;  
 choosing officers, am I (a) hindrance to-any-one?  
 παρίημι, ἀρχέτω· μόνον φαινέσθω  
 I-yield (to him), 'let (him) 'command; alone 'let (him) 'appear  
 ποιῶν τι ἀγαθόν ὑμᾶς. Ἀλλὰ γάρ  
 doing something good (and advantageous) for-you. But however  
 μὲν τὰ εἰργμένα περὶ τούτων ἀρκεῖ ἐμοὶ·  
 indeed the (things) said about this are-sufficient for-me;  
 εἰ δὲ τις ὑμῶν οἴεται η̄ αὐτὸς ἀν ἔξαπατη-  
 if indeed any-one of you thinks that he-himself could have-been-  
 δῆναι ταῦτα, η̄ ἄλλον ἔξαπα-  
 deceived (as respects) these (things), or (that) another (could) have  
 τῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδα-  
 deceived (him) (as respects) these (things), speaking 'let (him) 'in-  
 σκέτω. Δὲ ὅταν ἔχητε ἄλις τούτων,  
 form (us). But when you-may-have enough of-these (things),  
 μὴ ἀπέλθητε, πρὶν ἀκούσητε οἷον πρᾶγμα  
 'do not depart, before you-may-have-heard what thing  
 ὅρῶ ἀρχόμενον ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ· δο εἰ ἔπεισι καὶ  
 I-see reigning in the army; which if it-go-on and  
 ἔσται, οἷον ὑποδείκνυσι,  
 will-be, as it-'shows (itself) 'gradually, (it is) time for-us  
 βουλευεσθαι ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν αὐτῶν, μὴ ὅποφαινώμεθα  
 to-deliberate about us ourselves, lest we-appea-

τε κάκιστοι καὶ αἰσχιστοι ἄνδρες, καὶ πρὸς  
not-only the-worst but-also the-most-infamous men, both before

θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ  
(the) gods and before men (and) both (before) friends and  
πολεμίων.  
foes.

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἔδαυ-  
The soldiers indeed hearing these (things) won-  
μασάν τε ὃ τι εἴη, καὶ ἐκέλευνον λέγειν  
dered not-only what it-might-be, but-also requested (him) to-say

Ἐξ τούτου ἀρχεται πάλιν. Ἐπίστασθε  
(what it was). On this he-begins again: You-know  
πον, ὅτι ἦν χωρία ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι  
perhaps, that there-are places in the mountains (belonging to the)  
Βαρβαρικά, φίλια τοῖς Κερασούντιοις, ὅθεν τινὲς  
barbarians, friendly to-the Cerasuntians, whence some  
χατιόντες ἐπῶλον νῆμῖν καὶ ιερεῖα καὶ ἄλλα  
coming-down sold us both (cattle for) victims and other

ῶν εἶχον, δέ καὶ τινες ὑμῶν δοκοῦσι μοι  
'things) which they-had, and also some of-you seem to-me  
ἔλθοντες ἐγγυτάτῳ χωρίον τούτων,  
having-gone to-the-nearest places of-these (people), (and)  
ἀγοράσαντές τι, ἀπελθεῖν πάλιν. Κλεάρετος  
having-purchased something, to-have-gone-away again. Clearetus

ὁ λοχαγός, καταμαθὼν τοῦτο, ὅτι εἴη  
the captain, having-learned this, that (this place) was  
καὶ μικρὸν καὶ ἀφύλακτον, διὰ τὸ φίλιον  
both small and unguarded, on-account-of the friendship  
νομίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς  
(that they) supposed to-be (between us), went against them  
τῆς νυκτὸς ὡς πορθήσων, εἰπὼν οὐδενὶ ὑμῶν.  
at — night as about-plundering, telling none of-us.

Διενενόητο δὲ, εἰ λάβοι τὸ χωρίον τόδε,  
He-had-proposed however, if he-should-take — (this) place here,  
ιηκέτι μὲν ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὸ στράτευμα, δὲ εἰσβας  
never-more indeed to-go to the army, but embarking

ἐις πλοῖον, ἐν ᾧ οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ επύγ-  
 in (board a) vessel, in which the companions of-himself hēp-  
 χανον παραπλέοντες, καὶ ἐνθέμενος  
 pened-to-be sailing-along (the coast), and putting-on (board)  
 εἰ τι λάβοι ἀποπλέων οἴχεσθαι  
 | if any [whatever] he-might-take, (and then) sailing-away to-depart  
 ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. Καὶ ξυνωμολόγησαν ταῦτα  
 out-of the Pontus. And they-concerted these (things)  
 αὐτῷ οἱ σύσκηνοι ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου, ὡς  
 with-him, (namely) — (those his) companions from the vessel, as  
 ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομι. Οὖν παρακαλέσας, ὅποσους  
 I now perceive. Therefore having-called-together, as-many-as  
 ἐπειδειν, ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. Δ' ἡμέρα  
 he-had-persuaded, he-led (them) against the place. But day  
 γενομένη φθάνει αὐτὸν πορευόμενον,  
 have-become overtakes him proceeding (on his march),  
 καὶ οἱ ἄνδρωποι ξυστάντες βάλλοντες  
 and the men (of the place) having-come-together hurling  
 καὶ παίοντες ἀπὸ ἵσχυρῶν τόπων, ἀποκτείνουσι  
 and striking from (the) strong places, they-kill  
 τε τὸν Κλεάρετον καὶ συχνούς τῶν ἄλλων.  
 not-only — Clearetus but-also many of-the other (men);  
 δ' οἱ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ ἀποχωροῦσι εἰς Κερασοῦντα.  
 but — some of-them also go-away to Cerasus.  
 Ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἦν ἡμεῖς  
 These (things) indeed were on the day on-which we  
 ἔξωρμῶμεν δεῦρο πεζῇ. τινὲς δὲ τῶν  
 set-out hither on-foot; (while) some indeed of — (those who  
 πλεόντων ἥσάν ἔτι ἐν Κερασοῦντι, οὔτε  
 were) sailing were still in Cerasus, "having not-yet  
 ἀνηγμένοι. Μετὰ τοῦτο, ὡς οἱ Κερασοῦντιοι  
 "brought-up (the anchors). After this, as the Cerasuntians  
 λέγοντων, ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου  
 say, there-arrived of-the (people) from the place  
 τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων, χρήζοντες ἐλθεῖν  
 three men of-the older-class, desiring to g.

πρὸς τὸ κοινόν. Δέ εἶπεὶ οὐ  
to the public-council (of officers). But when they-did not  
χατέλαβον ἡμᾶς, ἔλεγον πρὸς τοὺς Κερασουντίους,  
'find us, they-told to the Cerasuntians,  
ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί δόξειεν ἡμῖν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ'  
that they-wondered why it-seemed to-us (proper) to-go against  
αὐτούς. Ἐφασαν εἶπεὶ μέντοι  
them. 'They (the Cerasuntians) said (that) when however  
σφεῖς λέγειν, ὅτι τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ γένοιτο ἀπὸ<sup>τοῦ</sup>  
they told (them), that the thing 'did not 'happen fro  
κοινοῦ, αὐτοὺς τε ἥδεσθαι  
common (or public authority), (that) they 'were not-only 'delighted  
καὶ μέλλειν πλεῖν ἐνθάδε, ὡς λέξαι τὰ  
but-also (that they) were-about 'o-sail hither, so-as to-relate the  
γενόμενα ἡμῖν, καὶ κελεύειν τοὺς  
(things) having-happened to-us, and (that) they-requested — (those)  
δεομένους τούτου λαβόντας τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν  
desiring this (that) taking the dead to-bury  
αὐτοὺς. Δέ τινὲς Ἐλλήνων, τῶν  
them. But some (of the) Greeks, — (those namely)  
ἀποφυγόντων, ἔτυχον ἔτι ὄντες ἐν Κερασοῦντι.  
having-fled-away, happened still (being) (to be) in Cerasus;  
δ' αἰσθόμενοι τοὺς Βαρβάρους, ὅποι ἰοιεν,  
and having-perceived the barbarians, (and) whether they-were-going,  
αὐτοὶ τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς λίθοις, καὶ  
they not-only dared to-throw — stones, but-also  
παρεκελεύοντο τοῖς ἀλλοῖς. Καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες  
encouraged — others (to do so). And the men  
ἀποδνήσκουσι, ὄντες οἱ τρεῖς πρέσβεις, καταλευσ-  
die, being the three ambassadors, stoned-to-  
θέντες. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, οἱ Κερασούντιοι  
death. When indeed this happened, the Cerasuntians  
ἐρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς, καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ  
come to us, and relate the affair; and  
ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἥχθόμεθά  
we the general hearing (it) were-greatly-excited-again-

τε τοῖς γεγενημένοις, καὶ ἔβουλενόμεθα ξὺν  
 not-only the (things) having-happened, but-also we-consulted with  
 τοῖς Κερασούντιοις, δπως οἱ νεκροί τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 the Cerasuntians, how the dead of-the Greeks  
 ἀν ταφείησαν. Δὲ συγκαδήμενοι ἔξωθεν τῶν  
 might be-buried. And sitting-together outside of-the  
 δπλων, ἐξαίφνης ἀκούομεν πολλοῦ θορίβον,  
 place-of-arms, suddenly we-hear much noise-and-outray.  
 Παῖε, παῖε, Βάλλε, Βάλλε, καὶ τάχα δὴ ὄρῶμεν  
 Strike, strike, throw, throw, and immediately indeed saw  
 πολλοὺς προσδέοντας ἔχοντας λίδους ἐν ταῖς  
 many (men) running-together having stones in —  
 χερσί, δὲ καὶ ἀναιροῦμένους. Καὶ μὲν  
 (their) hands, and also 'picking (them) 'up. And indeed  
 οἱ Κερασούντιοι ὡς ἀν καὶ ἐωρακότες τὸ  
 the Cerasuntians as (they) may even have-perceived the  
 πρᾶγμα παρ' ἑαυτοῖς, δείσαντες ἀπο-  
 affair ('hat happened) among themselves, fearing re-  
 χωροντι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. Ἡσαν δὲ, νὴ Δία,  
 treat to — (their) vessels. There-was indeed, by Jupiter,  
 καὶ οἱ ἥμῶν ἔδεισαν. Ἔγωγε μὴν ἦλθον  
 even — (some) of-us (who) feared. I-at-least indeed went  
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἤρώτων, δ τι τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐστὶ.  
 to them, and inquired, what the affair is.  
 Δὲ ἦσαν τῶν μὲν οἱ ἔδεισαν οὐδέν, δὲ  
 And there-were (some) of —(them) indeed who knew nothing, and  
 ὅμως εἰχον λίδους ἐν ταῖς χερσίν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 yet had stones in — (their) hands. When indeed  
 ἐπέτυχον τινὶ εἰδότι, λέγει μοι δτι οἱ ἀγορα-  
 I-found some-one knowing (it), he-tells me that the superintendents-  
 νόμοι ποιοῦσι τὸ στράτευμα δεινότατα. Ἐ-  
 of-the-market treat the army most-shamefully. Λ-  
 τούτῳ τις ὁρᾷ τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζη-  
 this (time) some-one saw the superintendent-of-markets Ze-  
 λαρχον ἀποχωροῦντα πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ  
 larchus retreating to the sea. and

ἀνέκραγε· δὲ οἱ ὡς ἦκουσαν ἴενται ἐπ' αὐτὸν  
 called-out; and —(those) that heard (it) rushed towards him  
 ὥσπερ ἢν ἄγριον συνὸς ἢν ἔλαφον φανέντι οὗ.  
 as-if either (a) wild boar or (a) stag were-appearing  
 Δ' οἱ Κερασούντιοι αὖτε, ὡς εἶδον ὁρμῶντας καὶ  
 But the Cerasuntans also, as they-saw (them) hurrying towards  
 αὐτούς, σαφῶς νομίζοντες οἵσθαι ἐπὶ  
 them, evidently thinking (that they were) about-to-rush against  
 τοῖς, φεύγοντι δρόμῳ, καὶ ἐμπίπτουσιν  
 themselves, flee in-haste, and throw (themselves)  
 εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. Δὲ καὶ τινες ἡμῖν αὐτῶν  
 into the sea. And also some of-us ourselves  
 ξυνειζέπεσον,  
 'threw (themselves) together-in (the sea), and whoever happened  
 μὴ ἐπιστάμενος νεῦν ἐπνίγετο. Καὶ τί δοκεῖτε  
 not being-skilled to-swim was-drowned. And what do-you-think  
 τούτους;  
 Mὲν οὐδέν τίδίκουν,  
 of-these (persons fleeing thus)? They-did indeed no 'wrong,  
 δὲ ἔδεισαν μὴ τις λίττα ὥσπερ κυσίν ἐμ-  
 but they-feared lest some madness like (that of) dogs might  
 πεπιτώκοι ἡμῖν. Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ἔσται τοιαῦτα,  
 have-fallen-on us. If then these (things) are-to-be even-thus,  
 θέασασδε, οἷα ἡ κατάστασις τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔσται  
 see, what the constitution of-the army will-be  
 ἡμῖν. Τμεὶς μὲν οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε  
 w-us. You indeed the whole (army) 'will not 'be  
 κύριοι οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι πόλεμον ὃς ἀν  
 masters either to-undertake (any) war which 'you may  
 βούλησδε, οὔτε καταλῦσαι,  
 'wish, or to-'put-an-end-to (it) 'by-making-peace, but in-private  
 δέ βουλόμενος ἀξεῖ στράτευμα ἐφ' ὅτι  
 —(he) desiring (it) will-lead (an) army against what 'they  
 ἀνθέλῃ. Καὶ τινες πρέσβεις ἰωσὶ ὑμᾶς, ἢ  
 may 'wish. And (if) any ambassadors might-come to-you, either  
 δεόμενοι εἰρήνης ἢ τινός ἄλλου, οἱ βουλόμενοι,  
 asking for-peace or anything else. —(those) wishing (it)

κατακτείναντες τούτους ποιήσουσιν  
 having-killed these (ambassadors) will-make (that)  
 ὑμᾶς μὴ ἀκοῦσαι τῶν λόγων τῶν ιόντων  
 you will not hear the words of — (those) coming  
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Ἐπειτα δὲ οὓς μὲν ὑμεῖς ἀπαντεῖς  
 to you. Then also, (those) whom indeed you all  
 ἀν ἔλησθε ἀρχοντας, ἔσονται ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ χώρᾳ ·  
 may have-chosen rulers, | will-be in no place;  
 δοξτις ἀν ἔληται εαυτὸν  
 [will be in no authority:] but whoever may take-upon himself  
 στρατηγόν, καὶ ἔδελη λέγειν, Βάλλε,  
 (the office of; general, and wishes to-say, Strike,  
 Βάλλε, ωτος ἔσται ίκανὸς κατακανεῖν, καὶ  
 strike, this (person) will-be able to-kill, both  
 ἀρχοντας καὶ ἴδιωτην, ὃν ὑμῶν ἀν ἔδελη,  
 commander and private, whom of-us he may wish,  
 ἄκριτον ήν ὅσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ, ὅσπερ  
 without-trial, if there-may-be — (those) obeying them, as  
 καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. Δὲ σκεψάσθε οἵα καὶ  
 even now has-happened. Also consider what-sort-of (things) even  
 οἱ οὗτοι αὐδαίρετοι στρατηγοί διαπεπράχασιν  
 — these (same) self-chosen generals effected  
 ὑμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν Ζήλαρχος ὁ ἀγορανόμος,  
 for-you. For indeed Zelarchus the superintendent-of-the-market  
 εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, ἀποπλέων οἴχεται, οὐ  
 if indeed he-has-done you 'wrong, sailing-away he-has-departed, not  
 δοὺς ὑμῖν δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖ,  
 rendering you justice; if indeed he-has not 'done (you) 'wrong,  
 φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δείσας μὴ ἀποδάνῃ  
 he-flees from the camp, fearing lest he-may-die  
 ἀδίκως ἄκριτος. Οἱ δὲ καταλεύσαντες τοὺς  
 unjustly without-trial. — (Those) indeed having-stoned the  
 πρέσβεις, διεπράξαντο ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν  
 ambassadors, have-effected for-you alone indeed of-the  
 Ἑλληνων μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι εἰς Κερασοῦντα,  
 Greeks (that it is) not safe to-be in Cerasus

μὴ ἀν ἀφικνεῖσθαι σὺν ἴσχυΐ· δέ  
unless 'it may 'have-been-gone-there with (a) strong-force; but (as respects)  
τοὺς νεκρούς, οὓς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ οἱ κατακαρόντες  
the dead, whom previously those — having-killed

ἐκέλευνον θάπτειν, διεπράξαντο μηδὲ εἶναι  
(them) requested (you) to-bury, they-have-rendered (it) not-even to-be  
ἀσφαλές ἔτι ἀνελέσθαι τούτους ξὺν  
safe now (for you) to-carry these (dead) 'off (even) with

κῆρυκίω. Γὰρ τίς ἐδελήσει ἵέναι κῆρυξ,  
(the) herald's-staff. For who will-desire to-go (as a) herald,  
ἀπεκτονώς κήρυκας; Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς ἐδεήθημεν  
having-killed heralds? But we requested (the  
Κερασούνιων Δάψαι αὐτοὺς. Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα  
Cerasuntians to-bury them. | If indeed therefore these

ἔχει καλῶς,  
(things) have handsomely, [if these proceedings be right,] 'let (them)  
δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα, ὡς  
'appear (good) to-you (and be sanctioned by you), in-order-that, <sup>as</sup>  
τοιούτων ἐσομένων, τις καὶ ποιήσῃ φυλαχήν  
these-same (things) are-about-to-be, one 'may both 'set (a) guard  
ἰδίᾳ, καὶ πειρᾶται σκηνοῦν ἔχων τὰ ἔρυμα  
in-private, and endeavour to-lodge, having the strong-places  
ὑπερδέξια. Εἰ μέντοι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα δοκεῖ  
'over (his) right. If however — these-same deeds seem  
ὑμῖν εἶναι θηρίων, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀνθρώπων;  
to-you to-be (those) of-wild-beasts, but not (those) of-men  
σκοπεῖτε τίνα παῦλαν αὐτῶν· εἰ δέ μὴ, πρὸς  
look-for some cessation of-them; if indeed not, —

Διός, πῶς ήθύσομεν θεοῖς  
(in the name of) Jupiter, how either shall-we-sacrifice 'to (the) 'gods  
ἡδέως, ποιοῦντες ἀσεβῆ ἔργα, ή πῶς μαχούμεθα  
cheerfully, (while) performing impious deeds, or how shall-we-fight

πολεμίους, ην κατακαίνωμεν ἀλλήλους; Δέ  
our; enemies, if we-kill one-another? And  
τίς φιλία πόλις δέξεται ἡμᾶς, ητίς ἀν ὅρᾳ  
what friendly city will-receive us, which may see

τοσαύτηι ἀνομίαν ἐν ἡμῖν· δὲ τίς θαρρῶι  
such lawlessness among us? and what-one confiding  
ἀξει ἀγορὰν, ἢν φαινόμεδα ἔξαμαρ-  
will-bring (provisions for a) market, if we-appear offend  
τάνοντες περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μέγιστα; δὲ  
ing as-respects — these the-greatest (of things)? and  
δὴ οὐδὲ οἰόμεδα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου πάντων,  
truly (there) where we-think to-find (the) praise of-all,  
τίς ἀν ἐπαινέσειεν ἡμᾶς ὅντας τοιούτους; γὰρ  
what-one might praise us being such? for  
μὲν ἡμεῖς, ὅτι οἴδ', ἀν φαίνεν τους εἶναι  
indeed we, as they, would pronounce — (those) to-be  
πονηροὺς ποιοῦντας τὰ τοιαῦτα.  
bad (men) doing — these-same (things).

'Ἐκ τούτου πάντες ἀνιστάμενοι ἐλεγον τους  
On this all rising-up said (that) —  
μὲν ἀρξαντας τούτων δοῦναι  
(those) indeed having-been-leaders of-these (things) | (ought) to-give  
δίκην, δὲ τοῦ λοιποῦ αγ-  
justice, [ought to be punished,] and (for) the future (it should) no-  
κέτι ἔξεινα ἀρξαι ἀνομίας. εἰαν δὲ  
more be-allowed to-begin (any) lawlessness (of the kind); if indeed  
τις ἀρχῃ, αὐτοὺς ἀγεσθαι  
any-one should-command (these things), (that) they were-to-be-led  
ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, δὲ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καταστῆσαι  
to death, and (that) the generals should-'put  
πάντας εἰς δίκας. δὲ εἶναι δίκας, καὶ εἰ  
all on trial; and there were) to-be trials, even if  
τις ἤδικητο τι ἄλλο ἔξ οὖ Κῦρος  
any-one had-done-wrong (in) any-thing else since Cyrus  
ἀπέδανε. δὲ ἐποιήσαντο τοὺς λοχαγοὺς  
died; and they-made the captains (the)  
δικαστὰς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶντος παραινοῦντος, καὶ τῷ  
judges And Xenophon recommending, an i the

μάντων συμβουλευόντων, καὶ ἔδοξε καθῆφοι  
augurs agreeing-theirto. 'it even seemed (good) to-purify  
τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ καθαρμός ἐγένετο.  
the army. And (the) purification took-place.

---

## CHAPTER VIII.

Δὲ καὶ ἔδοξε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὑποσχεῖν  
AND also it-seemed (good that) the generals should-undergo  
δίκην τοῦ χρόνου παρεληλυθότος.  
(a) trial (for their conduct) during-the time having-gone-by.  
Καὶ διδόντων Φιλήσιος μὲν ὄφλε  
And giving (it) Philesius indeed was-condemned (to pay)  
καὶ Ξανθίκλης τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαυ-  
and-also Xanthicles (for) the (careless) guarding of-the merchant-  
λικῶν τὸ μείωνα χρημάτων εἴκοσι μνᾶς.  
vessels the deficiency of-things (of their cargoes) twenty minas.  
Δὲ Σοφαινέτος δέκα μνᾶς, ὅτι αἱρεθεὶς  
And Sophænetus (was fined) ten minas, because having-been-chosen  
ἄρχων κατημέλει. Δὲ τινες κατηγόρησαν  
commander he-neglected (his duty). And some accused  
Ξενοφῶντος, φάσκοντες παίεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ,  
Xenophon, saying (that) they-were-struck by him,  
καὶ ἐποιοῦντο τὴν κατηγορίαν ὡς ὑθρί<sup>1</sup>  
and they-made the accusation (against him) as being.  
ζούντος. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς ἐκέ-  
insolent (and overbearing). And — Xenophon standing-up re-  
λευσε τὸν λέξαντα πρῶτον εἰπεῖν, ποῦ καὶ  
quested the (one) having-spoken first to-say. where also  
επλήγη. Δὲ ὁ ἀποκρίνεται. Ὅπου καὶ  
ne-might-have-been-beaten. And — he-replied: Where even  
ἀπωλλύμεδα τῷ βίγει, καὶ οὗ πλείστη  
were-perishing with-the cold, and (where) there-was the-most

χιων. Δέ ὁ εἰπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ χειμῶνος  
snow. And — (Xenophon) said: But indeed even (the) cold  
δύντος γε οἴνου λέγεις, δὲ σίτου ἐπιλελοιπότος,  
being at-least as-great-as you-say, and provisions had-become-deficient,  
δὲ παρόν οἴνου μηδ' ὀσφραίνεσθαι, δὲ  
and there-was-present of-wine not-even (enough) to-smell-to, and  
πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων ὑπὸ πόνων, δὲ  
many (of us) being-exhausted with fatigue, and (the)  
πολεμίων ἐπομένων, εἰ ὕβριζον  
enemy following, if (then) I-acted-insolently (and overbear-  
ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ, ὅμολογῷ εἶναι καὶ  
ingly) on such (an) occasion, I-acknowledge (myself) to-be even  
ὕβριστότερος τῶν δυνων, οἵς φασὶν, ὑπὸ<sup>more-spiteful</sup>  
— (than) — asses, which it-is-said, (that) from  
τῆς ὕβρεως, κόπου οὐκ ἐγγίγνεσθαι. Δέ καὶ  
— spite, fatigue 'is not engendered. And also  
ὅμως λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης. Πότερον  
likewise tell (us), said-he, for what you-were-beaten. Whether  
ἥτουν σέ τι, καὶ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἔδίδως  
did-I-ask you for-any-thing, and, when you-did not 'give (it)  
μοι ἐπαιον; ἀλλ' ἀπήτουν; ἀλλὰ  
to-me I-struck (you)? but did-I-'demand (anything) 'back? or  
μαχόμενος περὶ παιδικῶν, ἀλλὰ μεδύων ἐτα-  
was-fighting about (a) beloved (object), or being-in-liquor, did-  
ρώνησα;  
— 'Επεὶ δὲ ἔφησεν  
I-act-turbulently-like-a-drunken-man (to you)? When indeed he-said  
οὐδὲν τούτων, ἐπήρετο αὐτόν,  
(that it was) nothing of-these (things), (Xenophon) asked him,  
εἰ ὄπλιτεύοι; Οὐκ, ἔφη. Πάλιν, εἰ  
if he-served-as-a-heavy-armed-soldier? No, said-he. Again, if  
πελτάζοι. Οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ἔφη, ἀλλ' ταχθεῖς ὑπὸ<sup>as-a-targeteer.</sup> Not-even this, said-he, but having-been-appointed by  
τῶν συσκήνων ἐλαύνειν ἡμίονον  
— (his) comrades to-drive (a) mule (he himself) being  
ἐλεύθερος. 'Ενταῦθα δὴ ἀναγιγνώσκει αὐτόν,  
(a) freeman Then indeed he-recognised him,

καὶ ἤρετο· Ὡς εἰ σὺ ὁ ἀπαγαγών  
and asked (him): Whether — (are) you the (man) carrying-away  
τὸν κάμηνοντα; Ναι μὰ Δί', ἔφη· γάρ σι  
the (person) being-sick? Yes — by-Jupiter, said-he; for you  
ἡνάγκαζες· δὲ διέρριψας τὰ σκεύη τῶν  
compelled (me to do so); and you-threw-about the baggage of —  
ἔμων συσκήνων. Ἀλλ' ἡ διάρριψις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-  
my comrades. But the throwing-about, said — Xenon-  
φῶν, ἐγένετο τις τοιαύτη. Διέδωκα ἄλλοις  
phen, happened something like-this. I-distributed (it) to-others  
ἀγειν, καὶ ἐκέλευσα ἀπαγαγεῖν  
to-carry, and ordered (them) to-carry (such baggage) 'away  
πρὸς ἐμέ, καὶ ἀπολαβὼν ἀπαντα σῶα, ἀπέδωκά  
for me, and having-received all safe, I-delivered (it)  
σοι, ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα ἐμοὶ.  
to-you, when also you produced the man to-me.  
Ἄκούσατε, ἔφη, οἷον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο·  
Hear, said-he, how indeed the thing happened;  
γάρ καὶ ἀξιον.  
for (it is) even worth (your while).

\*Αὐτῷ κατελείπετο, διὰ τὸ μηκέτι  
(A) man was-left-behind, on-account (that) — he-was no-longer  
δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἐγίγνοσκον  
able to-proceed. And I indeed knew  
τὸν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον, δτι εἴη εἰς ἡμῶν· δὲ  
the man so-much (only) (as) that he-was one of-us; and  
ἡνάγκασα σὲ ἀγειν τοῦτον, ως μὴ  
I-obliged you to-carry this (man), that he-might not  
ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γάρ, ως ἐγὼ οἴμαι, πολέμιοι  
'perish; and also, as I think, (the) enemy  
ἔφεί ποντο ἡμῖν. Ο ἄνδρωπος συνέφη τοῦτο  
were-pursuing us. The man acknowledged this.  
Οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ προὔπεμψά σε,  
Therefore, said — Xenophon, after I-had-sent you 'before  
προσιών σὺν τοῖς ὄπισθοφύλαξι οὐκ αἰδίς  
coming-up with the rear-guard did-'I not likewise

καταλαμβάνω ὅρύττοντα βόδρον, ὡς κατο-  
 'overtake (you) digging (a) pit, as about  
 φίξοντα τὸν ἀνδρῶπον· καὶ ἐπιστὰς ἐπήνουν  
 'burying the man; and stopping did-'I (not) 'praise  
 τε; Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἥμῶν παρεστηκότων, ὁ ἀνὴρ  
 you? When indeed we having-stood-by, the man  
 συνέκαμψε τὸ σκέλος, οἱ παρόντες ἀνέκραγον,  
 drew-together — (his) legs, — (those) present exclaimed,  
 ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ ζῆ· σὺ δ' εἶπας· Ὡπόσα  
 that the man was-alive; you indeed said: (He may live) as-'much  
 γε βούλεσθαι· ὡς ἔγωγε οὐκ ἔξω αὐτὸν.  
 at-least 'as he-pleases; as I-at-least 'will not 'carry him.  
 Ἐνταῦθα ἐπαισά σε· λέγεις ἀληθῆ· γάρ  
 Then I-struck you; you-speak (the) truth; for  
 ἔδοξας μοι ἐοικέναι εἰδότι, ὅτι ζῆ·  
 you-seemed to-me to-have-been-like (one) knowing, that he-was-alive.  
 Τί οὖν· ἔφη, τι ἦττον ἀπέδανεν, ἐπεὶ ἔγώ  
 What then? said-he, did-'he any the-less 'die, after I  
 ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν σοι; Καὶ γάρ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο·  
 showed him to-you? Certainly, not for, said — Xeno.  
 φῶν, ἡμες πάντες ἀποδανούμεδα· οὖν ἔνεκα  
 phon, we all shall-die; therefore on-account  
 τούτου δεὶ ἥμᾶς κατορυχθῆναι ζῶντας;  
 of-this is-it-necessary (that) we are-to-be-burned alive?  
 Πάντες μὲν ἀνέκραγον ὡς παίσειν τοῦτον  
 All indeed cried-out that he-had-struck this (man too)  
 ὀλίγας· δ' ἐκέλευε ἄλλους λέγειν,  
 few (blows); and 'he (then) 'called-up (the) others to-say,  
 διὰ τί ἔκαστος ἐπλήγη. Δέ ἐπεὶ  
 for what each (of them) had-been-struck. But when they-'did  
 οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἐλεγεν· Ἐγώ, ὁ ἀνδρες,  
 not 'stand-forward, he said: I, O men,  
 δὴ ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι ἀνδρας ἔνεκεν  
 indeed acknowledge to-have-beaten men by-reason of-undisciplined-  
 ἀταξίας· δοις μὲν  
 and-disorderly-conduct-in-'leaving (their) 'ranks; to-as-'many indeed

ἦρκει σωζεσθαι δὶ' ἡμᾶς, τε ιόντων ἐν τάξει  
 were-content to-be-saved by us, not-only marching in ranks  
 καὶ μαχομένων, δπον δέοι· δὲ αὐτοὶ<sup>but-also</sup>  
 fighting, where it-might-be-necessary; but those  
 λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις, προδέοντες, ἥδελον ἀρπάζειν,  
 leaving the ranks, hurrying-on-before, they-desired to-plunder,  
 καὶ πλεονεκτεῖν ἡμῶν. Εἰ δὲ πάντες ἔποι-  
 and to-have-an-advantage-over us. If indeed we all had-  
 οῦμεν τοῦτο, ἀπαντεῖς ἀν ἀπωλόμεδα. Δὲ καὶ  
 acted so, we all might have-perished. And also  
 ἥδη τινα μαλακίζομενον καὶ οὐκ ἔδέλοντα  
 already some giving-way-to-slothful-feelings, and not willing  
 ἀνίστασθαι, ἀλλὰ προϊέμενον αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις,  
 to-stand-up, but abandoning themselves to-the enemy.  
 καὶ ἔπαισα, καὶ ἔβιασάμεν πορεύεσθαι. Γάρ ἐν  
 I also struck, and forced to-proceed. For in  
 τῷ ἴσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτός ποτε ἀναμένων  
 the vehement cold even myself once waiting  
 τινὰς συσκευαζομένους, καθεζόμενος  
 for-some having-packed-up (their baggage), (and) having-sat-down  
 συχνὸν χρόνον, κατέμαծον ἀναστὰς μόλις  
 'for (a) considerable time, I-found standing-up difficult  
 καὶ ἔκτείνας τὰ σκέλη. Οὖν λαβών  
 and-also stretching-out the legs. Having therefore taken  
 πεῖραν ἐν ἐμαυτῷ, ἐκ τούτου καὶ ὄπότε ἴδοιμι  
 experience in myself, after this also when I-saw (one)  
 καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα ἥλαυνον· γάρ  
 sitting-down and indulging-in-sloth I-drove (him) on; for  
 τὸ κινεῖσθαι καὶ ἀνδρίζεσθαι παρεῖχε τινὰ  
 — to-be-moved (about) and to-act-manfully produce (a) certain  
 θρημασίαν καὶ ὑγρότητα· δὲ τὸ καθῆσθαι καὶ  
 warmth and suppleness; but — to-sit-down and  
 ἔχειν ἥσυχίαν ἔώρων ὃν ὑπουργὸν τῷ  
 (to-have) idleness I-perceive (as) being the-assisting-means by which  
 τε τὸ αἷμα ἀποτήγνυσθαι, καὶ τοὺς  
 not-only (that) the blood is-congealed, but-also (that) the

δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσήπεσθαι· καὶ ἀπέρ  
 fingers of-the feet are-mortified; and (with) which  
 ὑμεῖς ἴστε πολλοὺς παδόντας. Ἀλλον δὲ γε  
 you know many are-suffering. Another indeed at-least  
 ἵσως ὑπολειπόμενόν που, διὰ ράστων, καὶ  
 likewise being-left-behind somewhere. through insolence, and  
 κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς  
 hindering both you (in) the front and us (in)  
 τοὺς ὄπισθεν πορεύεσθαι ἐπαίσα πύξ, ὅπως  
 the rear to-proceed-forward I-struck 'with (the) fist, so-that  
 μὴ παίοιτο λόγχῃ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.  
 he-might not 'be-stuck 'with (the) 'spear by the enemy.  
 Καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἔξεστιν αἵτοις σωθεῖσιν, εἰ  
 For indeed therefore now it-is-allowed to-those having-been-saved, if  
 ἐπαθόν τι ὑπὸ ἐμοῦ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον,  
 they-have-suffered any-thing by me contrary-to — justice,  
 λαβεῖν δίκην. Δ' εἰ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῖς  
 to-obtain justice. but if they-had-got into (the power of) the  
 πολεμίοις, τι οὕτω μέγα ἀν ἐπαθον,  
 enemy, what (evil) however great 'they may 'have-suffered, (for)  
 ὅτου ἀν ἕξιον λαμβάνειν δίκην; ὁ λόγος  
 which 'they might 'claim to-obtain justice? the case (is)  
 ὑπλοῦς, ἔφη, μοι. Εἰ μέν ἐκόλασά τινα ἐπ'  
 plain, said-he, to-me. If indeed I-have-punished any-one for  
 ἀγαθῷ, ἀξιῷ ὑπέρχειν δίκην, οἷαν  
 (his) good, I-claim to-undergo justice (and punishment), such-as  
 καὶ γονεῖς νιοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισί.  
 even parents (receive for) sons and teachers (for) boys.  
 Καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἱατροὶ καίονται καὶ τέμνονται ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ.  
 And also the surgeons cauterize and cut for good.  
 Δέ εἰ νομίζετέ με πράττειν ταῦτα  
 But if you-think me 'to (have) 'acted thus (through)  
 ὕβρει, ἐνδυμήδητε, ὅτι νῦν σὺν  
 insolence, and tyranny) consider, that now with (the assistance  
 τοῖς θεοῖς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον θαρσῶ ἢ τότε, καὶ  
 of) the gods I 'have much-more spirit than then. and

είμι θρασύτερος νῦν ἢ τότε, καὶ πίνω πλεῖον οἶνον  
 am bolder now than then, and I-drink more wine;  
 ἀλλ' ὅμως πάιω οὐδένα· γάρ ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς ἐν  
 but yet-however I-strike no-one; for I-see you (now) in (a)  
 εὐδίᾳ. Δὲ δταν χειμών<sup>η</sup>, καὶ μεγάλη  
 calm. But when (a) storm may-be, and (a) great  
 θάλαττα ἐπιφέρηται, οὐχ ὁράτε,  
 sea may-be<sup>-1</sup> bearing (itself) 'onward, do<sup>-1</sup>'you not 'see,  
 ὅτι πρωρεὺς χαλεπαίνει μὲν τοῖς ἐν  
 that the-commander-in-the-prow becomes-angry indeed with—(those) in  
 πρώρᾳ καὶ ἐνεκα νεύματος μόνου, δὲ καὶ  
 (the) prow even by-reason-of (a) nod only, and also (the)  
 κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ; γάρ ἐν τῷ  
 steersman with — (those) in (the) stern? for in —  
 τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτηδέντα ἵκανα  
 such (circumstances) even small mistakes (are) sufficient  
 συνεπιτρίψαι πάντα. Ὅτι δὲ ἐπαιον αὐτοὺς  
 to ruin all. That indeed I-struck this (man)  
 δικαίως, καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες  
 justly, even you have<sup>-1</sup>given (your) 'judgment; having  
 ξίφη, οὐ φύγοντς, παρέστητε, καὶ ἔξην ὑμῖν  
 swords, not voting-pebbles, you-stood-by, and it-was-allowed you  
 ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ ἐθούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ, μὰ Δία,  
 to-assist them, if you-wished; but, by Jupiter,  
 οὔτε ἐπεκουρεῖτε τούτοις, οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ  
 'you neither assisted these (men), nor with me  
 ἐπαίετε τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν ἐποιήσατε  
 struck the disorderly. Therefore | you-have-made  
 ἔξουσίαν τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν, ἐῶντες  
 licence [you gave licence] to-the bad (ones) of-them, permitting  
 αὐτούς ὑβρίζειν· γάρ οἴμαι, εἰ ἐδέλετε  
 them to-be-violent (and audacious); for I-think, if you-wish  
 σκοπεῖν, εὑρήσετε τοὺς αὐτοὺς καὶ  
 to-examine, you-will-find (that) — (those) same (who) even  
 τότε κακίστους, καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτάτους.  
 then (were) the-worst, (are) even now the-most-audacious

Γοῦν Βοΐσκος, ὁ Θετταλὸς πύκτης, τότε μὲν  
Also Boiscus, the Thessalian boxer, then indeed  
διεμάχετο, μὴ φέρειν ἀσπίδα, ὡς  
fought-hard, (that he might) not carry (his) shield, as  
κάμνων, νῦν δ' ὡς ἀκούω, ἥδη ἀποδέδυκε  
being-sick, now indeed as I-hear, 'has already 'despoiled  
πολλοὺς Κοτυωριτῶν. Ἡν οὖν σωφονῆτε,  
many 'of (the) Cotyrians. If therefore you-are-wise,  
ποιήσετε τούτῳ τάνατία, ἢ ποιοῦσι τοὺς  
you-will-do to-this (one) the-reverse, to (what) they-do (to) the  
κίνας. γὰρ μὲν διδέασι κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς,  
dogs; for indeed they-have-tied-up dogs the cross-ones,  
τὰς ἡμέρας μὲν, δὲ τὰς νύκτας  
(namely) during-the day indeed, but by — night have-'let (them)  
ἀφιᾶσι. δὲ τοῖτον ἢν σωφρονῆτε δήσετε μὲν τὴν  
'loose; but this-one if you-are-wise you-will-tie indeed by —  
νύκτα, δὲ ἀφίσετε τὴν ἡμέραν. Ἄλλὰ γὰρ,  
night, but let-loose by — day. But also,  
ἔφη, θαυμάζω, ὅτι, εἰ μὲν ἀπηχθόμεν τινι  
said-he, I-am-surprised, that, | if indeed I-become-hateful to-any-one  
ὑμῶν, μέμνεσθε,  
of-you, [if I did anything to incur your displeasure,] you-remember (it),  
καὶ οὐ σιωπᾶτε, εἰ δὲ ἐπεκούρησα τῷ  
and 'did not 'remain-silent, if indeed I-assisted — (any-one)  
ἢ χειμῶνα, ἢ ἀπήρυξα πολέμιον,  
(or) 'against (a) 'storm, or repelled (the) enemy (from him),  
ἢ συνεξεπόρισά τι ἀσθενουντι ἢ ἀποροῦντι,  
or aided-in-procuring any-thing 'for (one) 'being-sick or being-destitute,  
οὐδεὶς μέμνηται τούτων, οὐδέ εἰ ἐπήνεσα  
no-one remembers these (things), nor if I-have-praised  
τινα ποιοῦντα τι καλῶς, οὐδέ εἰ ἐτίμησα,  
any-one doing something good, or if I-have-honoured,  
ὡς ἔδυνάμην, τιν' ἄνδρα ὅντα ἀγαθὸν,  
as (much as) I-could, any man being brave,  
οὐδὲ μέμνεσθε τούτων. Ἄλλὰ μὴν τε  
neither do-you-remember these (things). But indeed (it is) not-only

καλόν, καὶ δίκαιον, καὶ ὅσιον καὶ ἥδιον μεμνῆσθαι  
beautiful, but-also just, and pious and pleasing to-remember

τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν.  
— good rather than — evil.

<sup>3</sup>Ἐξ τούτον μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀιεμίμησον.  
On this indeed truly they-rose-up and recolected

Καὶ περιεγένετο δέστε ἔχειν κα-  
(past events). And it-remained so-as to-have hand

λῶς.  
unmely [and in the end everything turned out well].

## BOOK VI.

## CHAPTER I

**Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ**  
FROM this (time) (some of) the (Greeks) indeed during — (their)  
**ἱατριβῆ ἔζων ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς,**  
stay lived (on what they procured) from the market,  
**δὲ καὶ οἱ ληζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας.**  
and also — (others by) plundering (from) the Paphlagonians.  
**Δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἐκλώπενον μάλα εὖ τοὺς**  
And also the Paphlagonians stole-away very adroitly —  
**ἀποσκεδανυμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπειρῶντο**  
(those) scattered-about, and at — night attempted  
**κακουργεῖν τοὺς σκηνοῦντας πρόσω· καὶ ἐκ**  
to-injure-and-annoy — (those) quartering far-off; and from  
**τούτων εἰχον πολεμικάτα πρὸς ἀλλήλους.**  
these (things) they had the-greatest-hostility to one-another.  
**Ο δέ Κορύλας ὃς τότε ἐτύγχανε ἀρχῶν**  
— But Corylas who then happened (to be) ruler  
**Παφλαγονίας, πέμπει πρέσβεις, ἔχοντας**  
of-Paphlagonia, sends ambassadors, having (as presents)  
**ἵππους καὶ καλάς στολὰς, παρὰ τοὺς Ἑλληνας,**  
horses and beautiful robes, to the Greeks,  
**λέγοντας, ὅτι Κορύλας εἴη ἔτοιμος μήτε ἀδικεῖν**  
saying, that Corylas was ready neither to-injure  
**τοὺς Ἑλληνας μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ**  
the Greeks nor to-be-injured (by them). The generals  
**δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι Βουλεύσοιντο σὺν τῷ**  
however replied, that they-would-consult with the

στρατιῷ περὶ μὲν τούτων, ἐδέχοντο αἰτούς δὲ  
army about indeed there (things), they-received them however  
ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ· δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσαν τῶν ἄλλων  
at (a) hospitable (table); and also they-invited the other  
ἄνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν εἶναι δικαιοτάτους. Δέ  
men whom they-considered to-be the-most-worthy. And  
θύσαντες βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ  
having-sacrificed oxen — (those namely) captured and  
ἄλλα ἱερεῖα ἀρκοῦσαν εἰωχίαν  
other cattle-killed-for-sacrifice-and-for-eating (an) abundant feast  
παρεῖχον, δὲ κατακείμενοι ἐν σκίπτοσιν ἐδείπνουν.  
was-provided, and reclining on couches they-supped,  
καὶ ἔπινον ἐξ κερατίναν ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐντύγχανοι  
and they-drank out-of horn cups, which they-found  
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.  
in the country.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε σπονδαί ἐγένοντο καὶ  
When however not-only (the) libations had-taken-place, but-also  
ἐπαιάνισαν, πρῶτον μὲν Θρᾷκες ἀνέστησαν, καὶ  
they-had-sung-the-pæan, at-first indeed Thracians stood-up, and  
ῳρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς δρπλοῖς πρὸς  
danced with — (their) arms to (the sound of the)  
αὐλον, καὶ ἥλλοντο ἵψηλά τε καὶ κούφως, καὶ  
pipe, and they-jumped high and also with-agility, and  
ἔχρωντο ταῖς μαχαίραις· δὲ τέλος ὁ ἔτερος  
they-made-use of — (their) swords; and at-length the one  
παίει τὸν ἔτερον, ὡς ἐδόκει πᾶσι πεπληγέναι  
struck the other, so-that it-seemed to-all to-have-wounded  
τὸν ἄνδρα· δ' ὁ ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πως. Καὶ οἱ  
τὸν ἄνδρα· and — he-fell artfully in-some-way. And the  
Παφλαγόνες ἀνέκραγον. Καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύσας  
Paphlagonians cried-out. And — 'he indeed 'having-despoiled  
τοῦ ἔτέρου τὰ δρπλα, ἐξῆε ἄδων τὸν  
the other (one) of — (his) arms, departed singing the (song)  
Σιτάλκαν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρᾳκῶν ἐξέφερον τὸν  
Sitalcan: others indeed of-the Thracians carried-off the

Ἐτερον ὡς τεθνηκότα· ἦν δὲ  
other (one) as-if having-been-dead, he-was however (in the state of )  
πεπονθώς οἰδὲν. Μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες  
having-suffered no (injury). After this (some) Αἰνιᾶνες  
καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ ὥρχοῦντο τὴν  
and Magresians stood-up, who danced the (dance)  
καλούμενην καρπαίαν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Ο τρόπος  
called carpaean in — arms. The nature  
δὲ τῆς ὥρχήσεως ἦν ὅδε· ὁ μὲν παρα-  
indeed of-the dance was thus: — (one of them) indeed, having-  
δέμενος τὰ ὅπλα, σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ,  
laid-aside — (his) arms, sows and drives-a-yoke-of-oxen,  
πυκνὰ μεταστρεφόμενος, ὡς φοβούμενος·  
often turning-around, as-if fearing (something);

λῃστῆς δὲ προσέρχεται· δὲ πειδὰν ὁ προιδηταί,  
(a) robber indeed approaches; but when — he-perceives

ἀρπάσας τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ μάχεται πρὸ τοῦ  
(him), snatching-up — (his) arms, 'he even 'fights for the  
ζεύγους· (καὶ οὗτοι ἐποίουν ταῦτ'  
yoke (of oxen); (and these (men) performed these (things)

ἐν ρυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν·)  
[in rhythm to the pipe;] [keeping time to the pipe;]

καὶ τέλος ὁ λῃστῆς δῆσας τὸν ἄνδρα ἀπάγει  
and at-last the robber having-tied the man 'leads (him) 'off

καὶ τὸ ζεῦγος· δὲ καὶ ἐνίστε ὁ ζευγηλάτης  
nd-also the yoke (of oxen); but also sometimes the driver-of-the-oxen

τὸν λῃστὴν· εἰτα ζεύξας παρὰ τοὺς  
overcomes) the robber; then having-fastened (him) to the

βοῦς ἔλαύνει δεδεμένον τῷ χειρὶς ὅπίσω.  
oxen he-'drives (him) 'off bound with — (his) hands behind.

Μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσός εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων πέλτην ἐν  
After this (a) Mysian entered having (a) light-shield in

ἔκατέρᾳ τῇ χειρὶ· καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὥρχειτο μιμούμενος  
each — hand; and at-one-time he-danced mimicking

ὡς δύο ἀντιτατομένων, δὲ τοτὲ ἐχρῆτε  
as (if) two were-attacking (him). but at-another-time he-used

ταῖς πέλταις ὡς πρὸς ἓνα, δὲ τῷ  
 the shields as (if engaged) with one (only), and also another  
 τέ ἔδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκυβίστα, ἔχων τὰς πέλτας,  
 time he-whirled-about and threw-summersets, having the shields  
 ὥστε καλὴν ὄψιν φαίνεσθαι. Δέ  
 at the same time), so that (a) fine sight appeared And  
 τέλος ὠρχεῖτο τὸ Περσικόν, κρούων τὰς  
 at last he-danced the Persian (dance), striking the  
 πέλτας· καὶ ὀκλαζε, καὶ ἐξανίστατο·  
 shields (together); and he-sank-on (his) 'knees, and rose-up-again;  
 καὶ ἐποίει πάντα ταῦτα ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν  
 and he-performed all this in rhythm to the  
 αὐλόν. Δέ ἐπὶ τούτῳ οἱ Μαν-  
 (sound of the) pipe. And after this (one) — (some) Man-  
 τινεῖς ἐπιόντες, καὶ τινὲς ἄλλοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων  
 tineans coming-forward, and some others of-the Arcadians  
 ἀναστάντες, ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο.  
 standing-up, armed as handsomely (as) they-could  
 ἔχεσάν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ, αὐλούμενοι  
 | went — in rhythm, [marched in time,] playing-on-the-pipe (tuned)  
 πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπλιον ῥυθμὸν, καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν  
 for the armed-war rhythm (or movement), and they-sang-the-paeon  
 καὶ ὠρχήσαντο, ὅπερ ἐν ταῖς προσόδοις πρὸς  
 and danced, as in the procession to  
 τοὺς θεοὺς. Δέ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ὄρῶντες  
 the gods. And the Paphlagonians seeing (these things)  
 ἐποιοῦντο δεινὰ πάσας τὰς ὁρχήσεις  
 made (a) great-thing-of-it (that) all the dances  
 εἶναι ἐν δπλοῖς. Ο Μυσός ἐπὶ ὄρων τούτοις  
 were in arms. The Mysian after seeing these (things)  
 αὐτοὺς ἐκπεπληγμένους, πείσας  
 (that) they were-struck (with surprise), (and) having-persuaded  
 τινά τῶν Ἀρκάδν, πεπαμένον ὁρχηστρίδα,  
 a certain-one of-the Arcadians, having-in-possession (a) female-dancer  
 εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο  
 he-brings (her) in having-equipped (her) as handsomely (as) he-could

καὶ δοὺς αὐτῇ κούφην ἀσπίδα. Δὲ ἡ ὠρχήσατο  
and giving her (a) light shield. And — she-danced  
 πυρρίχην ἐλαφρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν  
(the) Pyrric (dance) with-great-agility. Then there-was  
 πολὺς χρότος· καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἤρουντο,  
much applause-and-clapping; and the Paphlagonians asked,  
 εἰ καὶ γυναικες συνεμαχόντο αὐτοῖς. Οἱ δὲ  
if also women fought-together with-them. — (They) —  
 ἔλεγον, ὅτι εἶεν καὶ αὖται αἱ τρεψάμεναι  
said, that it-was even these (women) — (that) had-been-driving  
 βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Οὖν μὲν τοῦτο  
(the) king from the camp. Therefore indeed such  
 ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος τῆς ταύτης νυκτὶ.  
was the end (of) — that night.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς  
And on-the next-day they-led them [the ambassadors] to  
 τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις  
the army, | and it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers  
 μήτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μήτε  
[and the soldiers resolved] neither to-injure (the) Paphlagonians nor  
 ἀδικεῖσθαι. Μετὰ τοῦτο μὲν οἱ πρέσβεις  
to-be-injured (by them). After this indeed the ambassadors  
 ὤχοντο· οἱ Ἑλληνες δὲ, ἐπειδὴ ἵκανά  
departed; the Greeks also, as (a) sufficient (number of)  
 πλοῖα ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἐπλεον  
ships seemed to-be-present, going-on-board they-sailed (that)  
 ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα, πνεύματι καλῷ, ἔχοντες  
day and night, (the) wind (being) fair, having  
 τὴν Παφλαγονίαν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Δὲ τῇ ἄλλῃ  
— Paphlagonia on (the) left. And on-the next  
 ἀφικνοῦντα εἰς Σινώπην, καὶ ὥρμισαντο εἰς  
(day) they-arrived at Sinope, and anchored at  
 Ἀρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ  
Harmene (the harbour) of — Sinope. (The) Sinopeans —  
 μὲν οἰκοῦσι ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, δὲ εἰσιν  
indeed dwell in — Paphlagonian (territory), and they-are

ἀποικοι Μιλησίων. Οὗτοι δὲ πέμπουν  
 (a) colony of-the-Milesians. These (Sinopeans) indeed sent  
 ξένια τοῖς Ἑλλησι μὲν τρισχιλίους  
 gifts-of-hospitality to-the Greeks (namely) — three-thousan  
 μεδίμνους ἀλφίτων, δὲ  
 medimni [each medimni being about twelve gallons] of-flour also  
 χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια κεράμια  
 a-thousand and five-hundred ceramia [the ceramia being abou  
 οίνου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Χειρίσοφος ἦλθε  
 six gallons] of-wine. And then Cheirisophus came  
 ξχων τριήρη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται προεδόκων  
 having galleys. And indeed the soldiers expected  
 ἥκειν ἄγοντά τι σφισι. δὸς ἡγε μὲν  
 (that) he-came bringing something for-them; but — he-brought indeed  
 οὐδὲν, δὲ ἀπῆγγελλε, ὅτι καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύ-  
 nothing, however he-announced, that both Anaxibius the naval-  
 αρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπαινοίντες αὐτοῦς, καὶ ὅτι  
 commander and the others praised them, and that  
 Ἀναξίβιος ὑπισχνείτο, εἰ ἀφικνοίντο  
 Anaxibius promised, if they-would-come-to (him) out-of  
 τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσεσθαι μισθοφορίαν αὐτοῖς.  
 the Pontus, (that) there-would-be pay to-them.

Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας ἐπ  
 And the soldiers remained five days in  
 ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμήνῃ. Ως δὲ ἐδόκουν γάγ  
 this — Harmene. As indeed they-considered (that) they-  
 νεσθαι ἔγγυς τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἥδη μᾶλλον ἢ  
 were-getting near — Greece "it now more than  
 πρόσθεν εἰςήει αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἀν καὶ ἀφίκωνται  
 before occurred to-them how they might even arrive  
 οἴκαδε ἔχοντές τι. Οὖν ἤγκαντο εἰ  
 at-home having something. Therefore they-thought (that) if  
 ἔλοιντο ἔνα ἄρχοντα, ἀν μᾶλλον ἢ  
 they-should-choose one commander, (it) would (be) better than  
 οὐσης πολυαρχίας, τὸν ἔνα δύνασθαι  
 there being many-commanders, (that) the one (commander) would-be-able

χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νύκτος καὶ ἡμέρας,  
 to-use the army both by-night and by-day  
 καὶ εἰ δέοι λανδάνειν τι ἀν  
 and if it-should-be-necessary to-conceal any-thing (that it) would (be)  
 μᾶλλον κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἰ δέοι αὐτὸν φέδάνειν  
 much better concealed, and if it-were-necessary again to-anticipate  
 τι.    ἀν  
 anything (there) would (be) less coming-late (and delay); for  
 ἀν οὐ δεῖν λόγων πρὸς ἀλλήλους,  
 (that) 'there would 'be no 'need of-conferences with one-another,  
 ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνί  
 | but (that) the to-seem (good) to-the one [but that the determination  
 ἀν περάίνεσθαι. δὲ τὸν χρόνον  
 of the one commander] would be-carried-out; but (in) the time  
 ἔμπροσθεν οἱ στρατηγοί ἐπραττον πάντα ἐκ  
 neretofore the generals did every (thing) from  
 τῆς νικώσης.    ‘Ως δὲ διενοοῦντο ταῦτα  
 the prevailing (opinion). As indeed they-were-'revolving these (things)  
 ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ  
 'in (their) 'minds, they-turned-themselves to — Xenophon; and  
 οἱ λοχαγοὶ προσιόντες αὐτῷ, ἐλεγον, ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ  
 the captains going to-him, said, that the army  
 γιγνώσκει οὕτω· καὶ ἕκαστος ἐνδεικνύμενος  
 think-and-determine thus; and each showing (his)  
 εὔνοιαν ἐπειδεν αὐτὸν ὑποστῆναι τὴν ἀρχήν.  
 good-will persuaded him to-undertake the command.  
 ‘Ο δὲ Ξενοφῶν πῆ μὲν ἐθούλετο ταῦτα,  
 — And Xenophon in-some-measure indeed desired this,  
 νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν γίγνεσθαι αὕτως  
 acknowledging (that) even the honour would-become thus  
 μείζω ἔαντῷ πρὸς τοὺς φίλους, καὶ τοῦνομα  
 greater to-himself before — (his) friends, and the-name  
 αὗτοῦ ἀφίξεσθαι μείζον εἰς τὴν πόλιν, τυχὸν  
 of-himself would-become greater in — (his own) city, perhaps  
 δὲ καὶ ἀν γενέσθαι τινος αἴτιος ἀγαθοῦ  
 likewise also (that) 'he might 'become some cause of-good

τὴν στρατιᾶ. Μὲν δὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐνδυμήματα  
 to-the army. Indeed truly — these-same considerations  
 ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμεῖν γενέσδαι ἄρχοντα αὐτο-  
 impelled him to-desire to-become | commander with-full  
 κράτορα. Δ' ὅπότε αὖ ἐνδυμοῖτο,  
 power [commander-in-chief]. But as again he-reflected,  
 δτι ἀδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνδρώπῳ, ὅπῃ τὸ  
 that (it was) uncertain indeed to-every man, | how the  
 μέλλον εἶξε, δὲ καὶ διὰ  
 future will-hold, [what the future will produce,] and also through  
 τοῦτο εἴη καὶ κίνδυνος ἀποβαλεῖν τὴν  
 this (that) there-might-be even danger to-lose — (his)  
 προειργασμένην δόξαν, ἥπορεῖτο. Δὲ αὐτῷ διαπο-  
 previous-iv.earned reputation, he-was-perplexed. And he hesi-  
 ρούμενῷ διακρίναι ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτιστον ἀνακοι-  
 tating to-decide it-seemed to-be the-best to-con-  
 νῶσαι τοῖς θεοῖς· καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο  
 suit the gods, and having-placed-by (the altar) two  
 ιερεῖα, ἐδύνετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, διπερ ἥν  
 victims, he-sacrifices to — Jupiter the king, who was  
 μάντευτὸς ἐκ Δελφῶν αὐτῷ· καὶ δὴ ἐνδ-  
 pointed-out-by-the-oracle at Delphos to-him; and indeed he-to-  
 μίζεν ἐωρακέναι τὸ ὄναρ ἀπὸ τούτου  
 knowledged | to-have-seen [to have had] the dream from the-same  
 τοῦ θεοῦ, ὃ εἶδεν, δτε ἥρχετο καθίστασδαι τὸ  
 — god, which he-had, when he-began to-set-himself —  
 συνεπιμελεῖσδαι τῆς στρατιᾶς. Καὶ δτε ὠρμάτο  
 to-take-charge-with-others of-the army. And when he-departed  
 ἔξ Ἐφέσου, συσταθησόμενος Κύρῳ, ἀνεμιμνήσκετο  
 from Ephesus, about-meeting Cyrus, he-recalled-to-mind  
 ἀετὸν φθεγγόμενον δεξιὸν ἔαυτῷ,  
 (an) eagle crying-out 'on (the) right (hand of) himself,  
 μέντοι καθήμενον, ὅςπερ ὁ μάντις ὁ προ-  
 however sitting, (which) as the augur — ac-  
 πέμπων αὐτὸν ἐλεγειν, δτι εἴη μὲν μέγας οἰωνὸς,  
 companying him said, that it-was indeed (a) great omen

καὶ οὐκ ἴδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος μέντοι  
and not belonging-to-a-private-individual, and honourable however  
ἐπίπονος· γὰρ τὰ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ  
wilsome, for the birds most-of-all attack the  
αετῷ καθημένῳ· μέντοι τὸν σύνων εἶναι οὐ  
eagle sitting, however (that) the omen is not  
κρηματιστικὸν, γὰρ τὸν ἀετὸν μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν  
indicative-of-gain, for (that) the eagle rather took  
τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πετόμενον. Οὗτῳ δὴ αὐτῷ  
— (his) provisions flying-about. As indeed he  
θυομένῳ ὁ θεὸς διαφανῶς σημαίνει μήτε προσ-  
was-sacrificing the god evidently signified neither to  
δεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς, μήτε, εἰ αἱροῖντο, ἀπο-  
desire the command, nor, if he-should-be-chosen, to  
δέχεσθαι. Τοῦτο δὴ μὲν ἐγένετο οὕτως. Ἡ  
accept (it). This truly indeed happened thus. The  
στρατιὰ δὲ συνῆλθε, καὶ πάντες ἐλεγον ἕνα  
army indeed assembled, and all said (that) one  
αἱρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε,  
(commander) was-to-be-chosen; | and when this seemed (good),

προεβάλλοντο αὐτόν.  
[and when this was resolved on by the army,] they-proposed him

'Επεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι δῆλον, δτι  
[Xenophon]. When indeed it-seemed to-be evident, that  
αἱρήσονται αὐτόν, εἰ τις ἐπιψήφιζοι,  
they-would-choose him, if any-one should-put (it) 'to-the-vote,  
ἀνέστη καὶ ἐλεξε τάδε·  
he-rose-up and spoke thus:

'Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, μὲν ἡδομαι ὑπὸ τιμάμενος  
I, O men, 'am indeed 'delighted at being-honoured  
ὑμῶν, εἰπερ εἰμι ἄνδρωπος, καὶ ἔχω χάριν,  
by-you, as-indeed I-am (a) man, and have gratitude  
καὶ εὐχομαι τοὺς θεοὺς δοῦναι μοι  
(for what you intend), and I-pray the gods to-grant me  
γενέσθαι αἴτιόν τινος ἀγαθοῦ ὑμῖν· μέντοι το  
to-become (the) author of-some good to-you; | however the

Γάρ ὁρῶ ὅτι καὶ πρόσδεν οὐ  
 For I-see that even 'they [the Lacedæmonians] heretofore 'did not  
 ἐπαίσαντο πολεμοῦντες τὴν πατρίδι μου,  
 'cease making-war against-the |country of-me, [my country,]  
 πρὶν ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν  
 before they-had-made (the) whole — state to-acknowledge (the)  
 Λακεδαιμονίους εἶναι καὶ ἡγεμόνας αὐτῶν. Ἐπεὶ  
 Lacedæmonians to-be even masters of-them. When  
 δὲ ὡμολόγησαν τοῦτο, εὑδὺς ἐπαύσαντο  
 indeed they-acknowledged this, 'they directly 'ceased  
 πολεμοῦντες, καὶ οἰκέτι πέρα ἐποιιόρκησαν τὴν  
 making-war, and no-longer more did-they-besiege the  
 πόλιν. Εἰ οὖν, ὁρῶν ταῦτα, ἐγὼ δοκοίην  
 city. If therefore, seeing these (things), I should-seem

**ἐνταῦθ' ὅπου δυναίμην ποιεῖν ἄκυρον τὸ**  
 (to be) there where I-might-be-able to-make null the  
**ἄξιωμα ἐκείνων, ἐννοῶ ἐκείνο μὴ ἀν λίαν ταχι-**  
 authority of-them, I-consider this lest 'I might very speedily  
**σωφρονισθείν.** Ὁ δέ γέγονες εἰννοεῖτε, ὅτι  
 'be-taught discretion. What indeed you consider-in-your-minds, that

*ενὸς ἄρχοντος ἀν εἰη ἥττον στάσις*  
(there being) one commander 'there would 'be less faction  
*ἢ πολλῶν, ιστε εῦ, ὅτι ἐλόμενοι μὲν*  
than (there being) many. you-know well. that having-chosen indeed

ἄλλον οὐχ εὑρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα. γάρ  
another you-will not find me exciting-faction; for  
νομίζω δέτις ὃν ἐν πολέμῳ στασιάζει πρὸς  
I-acknowledge (that) he-who being in war excites-faction against  
ἀρχοντα, τοῦτον στασιάζειν πρὸς τὴν  
(his) commander, (that) this (one) contends against the  
σωτηρίαν ἑαυτοῦ· δέ ἐὰν ἔλησθε ἐμὲ ἀν οὐκ  
safety of-himself; but if you-should-choose me 'I would not  
θαυμάσαιμι εἰ εὗροιτε τινα ἀχθόμενον καὶ ἡμῖν  
wonder if you-found some discontented both with-you  
καὶ ἐμοὶ.  
and myself.

\*Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπε ταῦτα, πολὺ πλείονες  
When indeed he-had-said these (things), many more  
ἔξανισταντο, λέγοντες, ὡς αὐτὸν δέοι ἀρχεῖν.  
stood-up, saying, that he ought to-command.  
\*Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν δτι εἴη  
Agasias indeed (the) Stymphalian said that it-would-be  
γελοῖον, εἰ ἔχοι οὕτως.  
ridiculous, | if it-have (itself) thus; [if things be in such a state;]

ώς Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὀργιῶνται, καὶ ἐὰν  
(since) that (the) Lacedæmonians might-be-enraged, even if (a party)  
συνελθόντες σύνδειπνοι μὴ αἱρῶνται Λακε-  
having-met to-sup-together (and) 'do not choose (a) Lace-  
δαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον. Εἰ ἐπεὶ οὕτω γε  
dæmonian (as) president-of-the-banquet. | If when thus at-least  
τοῦτο ἔχει, ἔφη, οὐδὲ  
it has (itself), [if such be the case,] said-he, it-would neither  
ἔξεστιν ἥμιν λοχαγεῖν, ὡς ἔοικεν, δτι  
'be-proper for-us to-lead-companies (as captains), as it-seems, that  
ἐσμέν \*Αρκάδες. \*Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀνεδορύθησαν ὡς  
we-are Arcadians. Then truly they-murmured as

τοῦ \*Ἀγασίου εἰπόντος εὖ. Καὶ δὲ Ξενο-  
(signifying) — Agasias having-spoken well. And — Xeno-  
φῶν ἐπεὶ ἔώρα ἐνδέον πλείονος,  
phon when he-saw (that) there-was-need of-more (speaking)

παρελθών εἶπεν· 'Αλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ως  
 coming-forward he-said: But, O men, said-he, that you-may  
 πάντα εἰδῆτε, ὅμνύω ὑμῖν πάντας θεοὺς καὶ  
 fully "know, I-swear to-you by-all (the) gods and  
 πάσας, η̄ μὴν ἐπεὶ ἐγώ γῆσδαιούμην  
 by-all (the goddesses), (that) truly indeed when I perceived  
 ὑμετέραν γνώμην, ἐδυόμεν, εἰ εἴη  
 your intention, I-sacrificeed, (to ascertain) if it-might-be  
 Βέλτιον ὑμῖν τε ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν  
 better for-you not-only to-have-confided this — (same)  
 ἀρχὴν ἐμοὶ, καὶ ἐμοὶ ὑποστῆναι· καὶ οἱ θεοὶ<sup>command to-me, but-also for-me to-have-undertaken (it); and the gods</sup>  
 οὐτως ἐσήμηναν ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ὥστε καὶ ἴδιώτην  
 so signified in the sacrifices that even(a) private-person  
 ἀν γνῶναι, δτι δεῖ με ἀπέχεσθαι  
 [not an augur] might know, that it-was-proper |(that) I should-hold-off  
 τῆς μοναρχίας.  
 from-the single-rule [that I should not accept the sole command].  
 Οὕτω δὴ αἵροῦνται Χειρίσοφον. Δὲ Χει-  
 Thus indeed 'they (then) chose Cheirisophus. And Chei-  
 ρίσοφος ἐπεὶ γέρεθη παρελθὼν εἶπεν· 'Αλλ',  
 risophus when he-was-elected coming-forward said: But,  
 ὦ ἄνδρες, ιστε μὲν τοῦτο, δτι ἐγωγε ἀν ἐστασίαζον  
 O men, know indeed this, that I-at-least would have-excited  
 οὐδ', εἰ εἴλεσθε ἄλλον· μέντοι, ἔφη,  
 no 'factions, if you-had-elected another; however, said-he,  
 ωνήσατε Ξενοφῶντα οὐχ ἐλόμενοι· ως  
 you-have-done-a-service-to Xenophon (by) not having-elected (him); as  
 καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἡδη διέβαλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς  
 even now Dexippus 'has already 'accused him before  
 'Αναξίβιον, δτι ἐδύνατο, καὶ ἐμοῦ μάλα  
 Anaxibius, as-much-as he-could, even I (trying) much  
 σιγάζοντος αὐτὸν. οὐ δ' ἔφη  
 'o-silence him. — (Dexippus) also said (that he)  
 νομίζειν, αὐτὸν ξελῆσαι μᾶλλον  
 thought, (that) he (Xenophon) desired rather

συναρχεῖν Τιμασίωνι, ὅντι Δαρδανεῖ  
to-be-joined-in-command-with Timasion, (he) being (a) Dardanian  
 στρατεύματος τοῦ Κλεάρχου, ἢ ἔαντο  
‘of (the) army of — Clearchus, than with-himself  
 ὅντι Λάκωνι. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη,  
(Cheirisophus) being (a) Lacedæmonian. Since however, said-he,  
 εἴλεσθε ἐμὲ, ἐγὼ καὶ πειράσομαι ποιεῖν  
(as) you-have-elected me, I will even endeavour to-do  
 ἡμᾶς ἀγαθὸν, ὃ τι ἀν δύνωμαι. Καὶ οὕτω  
you (all the) good, as-much-as I may be-able. And thus  
 παρασκευάζεσθε, ὡς αὔριον ὑμεῖς ἀναξόμενοι,  
prepare-yourselves, as to-morrow you will-be-ordered (to depart),  
 ἐὰν ἢ πλοῦς. δὲ ὁ  
if there-may-be (a) sailing (permitted by the weather); and the  
 πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν. οὖν δεῖ  
sailing will-be to Heraclea; therefore it-is-proper (that)  
 ἄπαντας πειρᾶσθει κατασχεῖν ἐκεῖσε. δὲ τὰ  
all endeavour to-arrive there; and (about) —  
 ἄλλα βουλευσόμεθα, ἐπειδὰν ἐλῶμεν ἐκεῖσε.  
other (things) we-will-consult, when we-arrive there

---

## CHAPTER II.

\*Εντεῦθεν τῇ ὕστεραίᾳ ἀναγόμενοι, ἐπλεον  
HENCE on-the next-day lifting (the anchors), they-sailed  
 καλῷ πνεύματι δύο ἡμέρας παρα γῆν.  
 ‘with (a) fair wind two days along (the) land.  
 Καὶ παραπλέοντες ἐδεώρουν τε \*Ιασονίαν ἀκτὴν,  
 And sailing-along they-saw not-only (the) Jasonian beach,  
 ἐνδα ἥ \*Ἀργῷ λέγεται ὁρμίσασθαι, καὶ τὰ  
 where the Argo is-said to-have-been-moored, but-also the  
 στόματα τῶν ποταμῶν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμώ-  
 mouths of-the rivers. first indeed of-the Thermo-

δοντος, ἐπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἰριος, ἐπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἄλυος,  
don, afterwards also of-the Iris, afterwards also the Halyus,  
μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· δὲ παραπλεύ-  
after indeed that of-the Parthenius; and having-sailed.  
σαντες τοῦτον ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν,  
by this (last river) they-arrived at Heraclea, (a)  
Ἐλληνίδα πόλιν, ἀποικον Μεγαρέων, δ'  
Greek city, (a) colony of (the) Megarians, and  
οὖσαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Μαριανδυνῶν. Καὶ  
being in the territory of (the) Mariandyrians. And  
ώρμισαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερονιάδι Χερόνησῳ, ἐνδα  
they-anchored near the Acherusian Peninsula, where  
οὸς Ἡρακλῆς λέγεται καταβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν κύνα  
— Hercules is said to-have-descended for the dog  
Κέρβερον ἥ νῦν δεικνῦσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς  
Cerberus, where (indeed) now they-show the marks of —  
καταβάσεως, τὸ βάθος ἐπὶ πλέον ἥ δύο  
(his) descent, to — (a) depth for more than two  
στάδια. Ἐνταῦδα οἱ Ἡδακλεῶται πέμπουσι  
stadia. There the Heracleans send  
ξένια τρισχιλίους μεδίμνους  
gifts-of-hospitality (namely) three-thousand medimni [the medimni  
ἀλφίτων, καὶ δισχίλια κεράμια  
being about twelve gallons] of-barley-meal, and two-thousand ceramia  
οἴνου, καὶ εἶκοσι βοῦς,  
[the ceramia being about six gallons] of-wine, and twenty oxen,  
καὶ ἑκατόν οἰς. Ἐνταῦδα ποταμός, Λύκος  
and (a) hundred sheep. Here (a) river, Lycus (by)  
δνομα, ῥεὶ διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, εὔρος  
name, flows through the plain, (the) breadth (thereof being) about  
δύο πλέθρων.  
two plethra (or about two hundred feet).

Οἱ στρατῶται δὲ συλλεγέντες ἐθουλεύοντο  
The soldiers indeed assembling deliberated  
τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν, πότερον χρή  
(about) the rest of (the) road, whether it-might-be-best

πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου ατὰ  
 for them) to-have-proceeded from the Pontus (Euxinus) by  
 γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν. Δέ Λύκων Ἀχαιός  
 land or by sea. But Lycon (an) Achæan  
 ἀναστὰς, εἶπε. Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὃ ἀνδρες, τῶν  
 rising-up, said: I-wonder indeed, O men, (at) the  
 στρατηγῶν, δτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἐκπορίζειν  
 generals, that they-do not 'endeavour to-procure  
 σιτηρέσιον ἡμῖν· γὰρ μὲν τὰ ξένια οὐ μὴ  
 money-for provisions for-us; for indeed the presents 'will not —  
 γένηται σῖτα τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν·  
 'be (sufficient) food for-the army for-three days:  
 δ' ἔστιν οὐκ, ἔφη, ἐπισιτισά-  
 and there-is no (place), said-he, having-provided-ourselves-with-pre-  
 μενοι, ὅπόδεν πορευσόμεδα. Οὖν δοκεῖ  
 visions, whence we-will-set-forth (on our journey). Therefore it-seems  
 ἐμοὶ αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ  
 to-me (that we ought) to-ask the Heracleans (for) not  
 ἔλαττον ἢ τριχιλίους κυζικηνούς.  
 less than three-thousand eyzices [about 15,000 dollars].  
 Δ' ἄλλος εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίους· καὶ  
 But another said not less than ten-thousand; and  
 πρέσβεις ἔλοιμένονς, πέμπειν μάλα αὐτίκα  
 deputies being-chosen, to-send (them) (more) immediately  
 πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, ἡμῶν καθημένων, καὶ εἰδέναι δ τι  
 to the city, we being-in-session, even to-know what  
 ἀν ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ βουλεύεσθαι πρὸς  
 report-'they might bring, and to-deliberate about  
 ταῦτα. Ἐντεῦθεν προϋβάλλοντο πρέσβεις,  
 these (things). Then they-proposed (for) deputies,  
 πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, δτι ἤρητο ἀρχων·  
 first indeed Cheirisophus, because he-had-been-chosen commander;  
 δ' ἔστι καὶ οἱ Ξενοφῶντα. Δέ  
 and it-is also (that) — (others proposed) Xenophon. But  
 οἱ ἴσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· γὰρ ταῦτα  
 — 'they vehemently set-themselves-against (it): for this

ἔδόκει ἀμφοῖν μὴ ἀναγκάζειν  
seemed to-both (of them), (that) 'they (ought) not <sup>'to-compel</sup>

Ἐλληνίδα πόλιν καὶ φιλίαν δίδοιει  
(a Greek city and (one) friendly (to them) to-give)

ὅτι αὐτοὶ μὴ ἐδέλοντες. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι  
what they 'were not 'willing (to give). When indeed these

ἔδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἴραι, πέμπονσι Λύκων  
showed (themselves) no-wants-inclined to-give, they-send Lycon

Ἄχαιόν, καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρράσιον, καὶ  
(the) Achæan. and Callimachus (the) Parrhasian, an

Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. Οὗτοι ἐλόδοντες  
Agasias (the) Stymphalian. These going (to the town)

ἐλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα. Ἐφασαν δὲ  
informed (them of) the resolutions. They-said indeed (that)

τὸν Λύκον καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν  
— Lycon even threatened, if they-did not 'do

ταῦτα. Δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἀκούσαντες  
these (things). And the Heracleans hearing (this)

ἔφασαν βουλεύσεσθαι· καὶ εὑδὺς συνῆγον  
said (that) they-would-consult-about-it; and immediately they-collected

τε τὰ χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν, καὶ ἀνεσκεύ-  
not-only — (their) property from the fields, but-also packed-

ασαν εἰσω τὴν  
up (and carried) within (the city) the (things exposed for sale in the

ἀγορὰν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκένθειντο, καὶ ὅπλα  
market, and the gates were-closed, and armed (men);

ἔφαίνετο ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν.  
appeared on the walls.

Ἐξ τούτο οἱ παράξαντες ταῦτα γῆτιῶντο  
Upon this — (those) having-promoted these (things) accused

τοὺς στρατηγοὺς διαφθείρειν τὴν πρᾶξιν.  
the generals (that they) spoiled the affair.

Καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοί συνίσταντο· δὲ  
And the Arcadians and the Achæans joined-together; and

τε Καλλίμαχος ὁ Παρράσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ  
not-only Callimachus the Parrhasian, but-also Lycon the

**Αχαιός προειστήκει μάλιστα αὐτῶν.**  
 Achæan | 'stood most 'over them [were the  
 head leaders]. | And the words were to-them, [and the con-  
 versation among them was,] that it-was disgraceful (that an) Athe-  
 naïon ἄρχειν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμο-  
 nίων, παρεχόμενον μηδεμίαν δύναμιν εἰς τὴν  
 στρατιάν, καὶ σφᾶς ἔχειν τοὺς πόνους  
 μὲν, δὲ ἄλλους τὰ κέρδη, καὶ ταῦτα  
 indeed, but others the profits, and these (things taking place);  
 σφῶν κατειργασμένων τὴν σωτηρίαν.  
 they-themselves having-effected the safety (of all),  
 γάρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους εἶναι Ἀρκάδας  
 for (that) — (those) accomplishing (this) were Arcadians  
 καὶ Ἀχαιούς, δὲ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα εἶναι  
 and Achæans, and (that) the rest (of the) army was (as)  
 οὐδὲν. (καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἥμισυ  
 nothing; (and there-was indeed in — truth above half  
 τοῦ ὅλου στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ  
 of-the whole army (who were) Arcadians and  
 Ἀχαιοί). Οὖν εἰ σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 Achæans). Therefore if they-were-wise, these (the Achæans  
 συστάντες, καὶ ἐλόμενοι στρατηγοὺς  
 and Arcadians) having-united, and choosing commanders  
 ἔαυτῶν, ἀν ποιοῖτο τὴν πορείαν καὶ  
 of-themselves, 'they might 'make the journey by  
 ἔαυτοὺς, καὶ πειρῶντο λαμβάνειν τι ἀγαθόν.  
 themselves, and endeavour to-procure something good

Ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ  
 (for themselves). This seemed (good and was adopted); and (the)  
**Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοί ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον,** εἰ  
 Arcadians or Achæans leaving Cheirisophus, if

τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα, συνέστησαν·  
any were with him, as-also Xenophon, joined-together  
 καὶ αἱροῦνται δέκα στρατηγοὺς ἔαυτῶν·  
(with the rest), and choose ten commanders of-themselves;  
 δὲ τούτους ἐφῆφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσῃς  
and (that) these (when) they-had-decided by the majority  
 ποιεῖν τοῦτο ὅ τι δοκοῖη. Οὖν μὲν ἵ  
were-to-do that whatever might-be-decided-on. Therefore indeed the  
 ἥρχὴ παντὸς τοῦ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα  
command of-all the (army) by-Cheirisophus was then  
 κατελίθη ἔκτην ἢ ἑβδόμῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφ' ἣς  
'dissolved 'on (the) 'sixth or seventh day after which  
 γέρεδη.  
he-was-chosen.

Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἔθούλετο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν  
Xenophon however wished to-make the journey  
 κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν, νομίζων οὕτως εἶναι  
in-common with them, thinking (that) thus 'it (would) 'be  
 ἀσφαλεστέραν, ἢ ἔκαστον στέλλεσθαι  
safer, than (that) each (should) go  
 ἴδιᾳ. ἀλλὰ Νέων ἔπειδεν αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι  
his-own (way); but Neon persuaded him to-proceed  
 καذ' αὐτὸν, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου, ὅτι Κλέανδρος  
by himself, having-heard from— Cheirisophus, that Cleander  
 ὁ ἄρμοστής ἐν Βυζαντιῳ φαίη θέξειν εἰς  
the governor in Byzantium said (that he would) come to  
 λιμένα Κάλπης ἔχων τριήρεις. Οὖν συνεβού-  
(the) harbour of-Calpe having galleys. Therefore he-ad  
 λευε διὰ ταῦτα δπως μηδεὶς μετάσχοι  
vise<sup>1</sup> (him) for this (purpose) that no-one might-participate  
 ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται  
to be) on the galleys, but they and the soldiers  
 κιντῶν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἄμα ἀδυ-  
of-themselves And Cheirisophus 'being indeed at-the-same-time 'dis-  
 μῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, δὲ ἄμα με-  
nartened with-the (things) having-happened, and 'being also 'dis-

σῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα,  
 gustæ on account of-these (things) (with) the army,  
 ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν δὲ τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν  
 he-permits him to-do what he-wishes. Xenophon  
 δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεῖς  
 also moreover indeed (for some time) attempted (after) having-left  
 τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι. δὲ αὐτῷ θυομένῳ  
 the army to-sail-away; and he sacrificing (to)  
 Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ ἡγεμόνι, καὶ κοινουμένῳ πότερα  
 Hercules the conductor, and consulting (with him) whether  
 εἴη λῶν καὶ ἀμεινον στρατεύεσθαι, ἔχοντι  
 it-would-be better and more-desirable to-march, having  
 τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν,  
 — (those) remaining (with him) of-the soldiers,  
 ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ὁ θεὸς ἐσήμηνε τοῖς ἵεροις  
 or to-take-leave-of (them), the god signified by-the victims  
 συστρατεύεσθαι. Οὕτω τὸ στράτευμα  
 (that he ought) to-march-with (them). Thus the army  
 γίγνεται τριχῇ. Ἀρκάδες καὶ μὲν  
 became (divided into) three-parts; (the) Arcadians and indeed (the)  
 Ἀχαιοί, πλείους ἢ τετρακισχίλιοι, πάντες ὅπλιται.  
 Achaeans, more than four-thousand, all heavy-armed-men;  
 δὲ Χειρισόφω μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους  
 but with-Cheirisophus (there were) indeed in (number) four-hundred  
 καὶ χιλίους ὅπλιται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς  
 and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number)  
 ἑπτακοσίους, οἱ Θρᾷκες Κλεάρχου. δὲ Ξενο-  
 seven-hundred, (being) the Thracians of-Clearchus; and with-Xeno-  
 φῶντι μὲν εἰς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ  
 phon indeed (there were) in (number) seven-hundred and  
 χιλίους ὅπλιται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς τρια-  
 a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number) three-  
 κοσίους. δὲ αὐτὸς μόνος εἶχεν ἵπποιν ἀμφὶ<sup>i</sup>  
 hundred; and he alone had cavalry about  
 τετταράκοντα ἵππεας.  
 forty horsemen.

Kai μὲν οἱ Ἀρκάδες διαπραξάμενοι πλοῖα παρὰ  
And indeed the Arcadians having-procured ships from  
τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν, πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως, ἐξαίφνης  
the Heracleans, first set-sail, that-is, suddenly  
ἐπιπεσόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, λάβοιεν  
making-an-irruption-against the Bithynians, (that) they-might-take  
ὅ τι πλεῖστα· καὶ ἀπο-  
[what most (they could); [as much as they could,] and de-  
βαίνουσιν εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης,  
scending (from their vessels) at (the) harbour of-Calpe,  
πῶς κατὰ μέσον τῆς Θράκης. Δὲ Χειρίσοφος  
somewhere about (the) middle — of-Thrace. And Cheirisophus  
εὐθὺς ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως  
‘having immediately commenced (the journey) from the city  
τῶν Ἡρακλεωντῶν ἐπορεύετο πεζῇ διὰ τῆς χώρας·  
of-the Heracleans proceeded-forth on-foot through the territories  
δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀνέβαλε εἰς τὴν Θράκην  
(of the Heracleans); but when he-entered (into) — Thrace  
ἥσει παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν· καὶ γὰρ ἦσθένει.  
he-went along the sea; for indeed he-was-sick.  
Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν πλοῖα, ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ  
Xenophon indeed having-taken vessels, disembarks on the  
ὅρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώπολος, καὶ  
confines of — Thrace and — Heraclea, and  
ἐπορεύετο διὰ μεσογαιας.  
proceeded through (the) inland (parts.)

## CHAPTER III.

Ὥν τρόπον μὲν οὖν τε ἡ ἀρχὴ Χειρὶ<sup>IN-WHAT</sup>  
 ιέφους τοῦ παντὸς κατελύθη, καὶ τὸ  
 στράτευμα τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐσχίσθη ἐν τοῖς  
 στράτευμα τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐσχίσθη ἐν τοῖς  
 εἰρηται ἐπάνω.] Ἐκαστοι δ' αὐτῶν  
 has-been-related above.] Each indeed of-these (three divisions)  
 ἐπραξαν τάδε. Οἱ Ἀρκάδες μὲν, ὡς ἀπέβησαν  
 fared thus. The Arcadians indeed, as they had disembarked  
 νυκτὸς εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς  
 by-night at (the) port of-Calpe, proceeded to the  
 πρώτας κώμας ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια  
 first (or nearest) villages (being) about thirty stadia  
 ἀπὸ θαλάττης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετο φῶς  
 from (the) sea. When indeed it was (day) light  
 ἔκαστος στρατηγὸς ἤγεν ἐπὶ κώμην τὸν λόχον  
 each commander led against (a) village the company  
 ἔαντον· δὲ ὅποια ἐδόκει εἶναι μείζων  
 of-himself; but whatever (village) seemed to be greater (than the rest)  
 οἱ στρατηγοί ἤγον σύνδυο λόχους.  
 the commanders led two companies together (against it).  
 Δὲ συνεβάλοντο καὶ λόφοιν, εἰς ᾧ δέοι  
 And they-agreed also 'about (a) 'hill, on which it-might-be  
 πάντας ἀλίζεσθαι· καὶ, ὅτε ἐπιπεσόντες  
 proper for-all to-re-assemble; and, as falling-on  
 ἔξαίφνης, ἔλαβον τε πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα,  
 (these people) suddenly, they-took not-only many slaves,  
 καὶ περιεβάλοντο πολλὰ πρόβατα.  
 but-also surrounded many (flocks of) sheep (and other cattle).  
 Δ' οἱ Θράκες οἱ διαφεύγοντες ἥδροι·  
 But the Thracians — (those namely) fleeing-away collected-

ζοιτο· δὲ πολλοὶ διέφευγον, ὅντες πελτασταῖς,  
 together; and many escaped, being targeteers,  
 ὀπλίτας ἐξ τῶν χειρῶν αὐτῶν  
 (from the) heavy-armed-men (even) from the hands of-them  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγοσαν, πρῶτον  
 When indeed 'they (the Thracians) 'had-collected-together, 'they first  
 μὲν ἐπιτίθενται τῷ λόχῳ Σμίκρητος, ἐνὸς τῶν  
 indeed 'attacked the company of-Smicretes, one of-the  
 στρατηγῶν Ἀρκάδων, ἦδη ἀπιόντι εἰς τὸ  
 commanders 'of (the) 'Areadians, now departing to the  
 συγκείμενον καὶ ἄγοντι πολλὰ χρήματα.  
 place-agreed-on and leading (with him) much booty.  
 Καὶ τέως μὲν οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐμάχοντο ἀμα  
 And for-a-while indeed the Greeks fought while  
 πορευόμενοι. Δέ διαβάσει ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 marching-forward. But 'they [the Greeks] 'being-about-to-cross over (a)  
 χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ τε ἀποκτιν-  
 ravine they-routed them, and 'they not-only 'killed  
 νίασι τὸν Σμίκρητα αὐτόν, καὶ πάντας τοὺς  
 — Smires himself, but-also all the  
 ἄλλους. ἄλλον λόχον δὲ τῶν δέκα στρα-  
 others (with him); of-another company indeed of-the ten com-  
 τηγῶν, τοῦ Ἡγησάνδρου, κατέλιπον  
 wands, — (that namely) of-Hegesander, they-left  
 μόνους ὄχτων· καὶ Ἡγησάνδρος αὐτὸς ἐσώθη. Καὶ  
 only eight; and Hegesander himself was-saved. And  
 δέ οἱ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ συνῆλθον, οἱ μὲν σὺν  
 also the other captains came-together, — (some) indeed with  
 πράγμασιν, οἱ δὲ ἀνεν πραγμάτων· δέ οἱ  
 things, — (others) indeed without things; but the  
 Θρᾷκες, ἐπεὶ εὗτύχοσαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτίχημα,  
 Thracians, when they-had-luckily-met (with) this — good-luck,  
 τε συνεβόων ἄλληλους, καὶ συνελέγοντο  
 not-only cried-out (encouragingly) to-one-another, but-also assembled  
 ἔρρωμένως τῆς νυκτός. Καὶ ἀμα ἡμέρᾳ,  
 strongly during-the night. And at-the-time (of) day light

καὶ πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς καὶ πελτασταὶ ἐτάττοντο  
 with many horsemen and targeteers arranged-themselves <sup>in</sup>  
 κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον, ἐνδὰ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρα-  
 a) 'circle round the hill, where the Greeks were.  
 τοπεδεύοντο, καὶ ἀεὶ πλείονες  
 encamped, and continually more (of these Thracians)  
 συνέρρεον. Καὶ ἀσφαλῶς προσέβαλλον προς  
 kept-flocking-together. And 'they safely 'rushed against  
 τοὺς ὅπλιτας· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶχον  
 the heavy-armed-men; for indeed the Greeks had  
 οὗτε τοξότην, οὗτε ἀκοντιστήν οὗτε ἵππέα.  
 neither (an) archer, or (a) javelin-man or (a) horseman.

Δ' οἱ προσδέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες  
 And the (Thracians) running-up and riding-forwards  
 ἤκόντιζον. δὲ ὄπότε  
 'threw (their) 'darts (among them); and when 'they [the  
 ἐπίοιεν αὐτοῖς, ῥαδίως ἀπέφευγον. Αλλο  
 Greeks] advanced-against them, easily fled-away. | Others  
 δὲ ἐπετίθεντο ἄλλῃ.

indeed attacked other (part) [some of the Thracians attacked  
 Καὶ μὲν τῶν πολλοὶ<sup>one part, others another part]. And indeed of-the (Greeks) many</sup>  
 ἐτιτρῶσκοντο, δὲ τῶν οὐδείς· ὅτε  
 were-wounded, but of-the (Thracians) none; so-that (the Greeks)

οὐκ ἐδύναντο κινηθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ  
 'were not 'able to-move from the place, but  
 οἱ Θρᾷκες τελευτῶντες καὶ εἰργον αἰτοὺς ἀπὸ<sup>the Thracians | finishing even prohibited them from</sup>  
 τοῦ ὕδατος. Δὲ ἐπεὶ

the water [finally even cut them off from water]. But when (the)  
 ἀπορίᾳ ἦν πολλὴ, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν·  
 distress was much, they-began-to-speak about terms,  
 καὶ μὲν τὰ ἄλλα ὅμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, δὲ οἱ  
 and indeed the other (terms) had-been-agreed-on by-them, but the  
 Θρᾷκες οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν ὄμηρους, τῶν Ἑλλήνων  
 Thracians 'would not 'give hostages, the Greeks

αἰτούντων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ <sup>ἰσχετο·</sup>  
 requesting (them), but on this (the affair) was-in-check;  
 μὲν δὴ τὰ τῶν Ἀρκάδων εἰχε  
 indeed truly the (affairs) of-the Arcadians had (themselves)  
 οὕτως.  
 "o.

Δέ Χειρίσοφος πορευόμενος ἀσφαλῶς παρὰ  
 But Cheirisophus proceeding safely along (the);  
 θάλατταν, ἀφικνεῖται εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης.  
 sea (coast), arrived at (the) harbour of-Calpe.  
 Ξενοφῶντι δὲ πορευομένῳ διὰ τῆς μεσογαίας,  
 Xenophon however proceeding through the interior,  
 οἵ ἵππεις προκαταδέοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι  
 — (his) horsemen hastening-on-before fall-in-with (some)  
 πρεσβύτας πορευομένοις ποι. Καὶ ἐπεὶ ἦχθη  
 ambassadors proceeding some-where. And when they-had-  
 σαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρώτā αὐτοὺς εἴ  
 conducted (them) to Xenophon, he-asked them if  
 ποι οἵσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος, ὅντος  
 any-where they-might-have-seen another army, being  
 Ἑλληνικοῦ. Δέ οἱ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ  
 Grecian. And — they-told (him) all the (things)  
 γεγενημένα, καὶ ὅτι νῦν πολιορκοῦνται  
 having-occurred, and that now [they [the Greeks]] were-besieged  
 ἐπὶ λόφου, δὲ πάντες οἱ Θρᾷκες εἰεν περι-  
 on (a) hill, and (that) all the Thracians were sur-  
 κεκυκλωμένοι αὐτούς. Ἐνταῦθα. μὲν ἰσχυρῶς  
 rounding them. Then indeed 'he strictly  
 ἐφύλαττε τούτους τοὺς ἀνδρῶπους, ὅπως εἰεν  
 'guarded these-same — men, so-that they-might-be  
 ἕγεμόνες ὅπου δέοι. δὲ καταστήσας  
 guides when it-might-be-required; and having-stationed  
 σκοποὺς, συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξεν·  
 scouts, he-assembled the soldiers and said;  
 Ἀνδρες στρατιώται, οἱ μὲν τῶν Ἀρκάδων  
 Men soldiers, — (some) indeed of-the Arcadian.

τεθρᾶσιν, δὲ οἱ λοιποὶ πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ τινας  
have-died, but — (those) remaining are-besieged on some

λόφου. Δ' ἔγωγε νομίζω, εἰ ἐκεῖνοι ἀπολοῦνται,  
hill. And I-at-least think, if these are-destroyed,

οὐδὲ εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν ἡμῖν,  
(that there will) neither be any salvation for-us,

πολεμίων ὄντων μὲν οὖτω πολλῶν, δὲ οὖτω  
(the) enemy being indeed so numerous, and so

τεθρῆρηκότων. Οὖν κράτιστον ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν  
confident-and-daring. (It is) therefore best for-us to-assist

τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ὡς τάχιστα, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι  
the men as speedily 'as-possible, so-that if as-yet

εἰσὶ σῶοι, μαχώμεδα, καὶ μὴ, λειφθέντες  
they-are safe, we-may-fight (together), and not, being-left

μόνοι, καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν μόνοι. Νῦν μὲν οὖν  
alone, even encounter-danger alone. Now indeed therefore

στρατοπεδεύμεδα προελθόντες ὅσου  
'let (us) encamp (after) having-marched-forward as-much

ἄν δοκῇ εἶναι καὶρὸς εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι.  
may seem to-be (the) proper (time) to the taking-of-supper;

δ' ἔως ἄν πορευόμεδα, Τιμασίων ἔχων τοὺς  
and while 'we may 'be-marching-forward 'let Timasion having the

ἴππεις προελαυνέται ἐφορῶν ἡμᾶς,  
cavalry (with him) 'ride-on-before 'keeping us 'in-view,

καὶ σκοπείτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὡς μηδὲν  
and 'let (him) 'reconnoitre the (country) in-front, that nothing

λάθῃ ἡμᾶς. (Δέ καὶ παρέπεμψε  
may-be-concealed from-us. (And 'he [Xenophon] also sent-about

εὑζώνους ἀνδρώπονς τῶν γυμνήτων εἰς τὰ  
active men of-the light-armed (troops) to the

πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως, εἰ που καδορῶεν  
flanks and to the hills, so-that, if any-where they-might-see

τί ποδεν, σημαίνοιεν. ἐκέλευε δὲ  
any-thing thence, they-might-signify (it); he-ordered (them) moreover

καίειν ἀπαντα δτῷ ἐντυγχάνοιεν κανσίμῳ.) Γάρ  
to-burn every-thing that they-might-meet-with combustible.) For

ιμεῖς ἀν ἀποδραίημεν ἐνθένδε οὐδαμοῦ· γάρ με  
 e can flee hence no-where; for indeed  
 ἔφη, πολλὴ ἀπιέναι πάλιν εἰς  
 said-he, | (it is) much [it is a long way] to-go-hence back to  
 Ἡράκλειαν, δὲ πολλὴ διελθεῖν εἰς Χρυσόπολιν·  
 Heraclea, and much to-go to Chrysopolis;  
 δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι πλησίον· εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης  
 and the enemy (being) near; to (the) Larbour of-Calpe  
 δὲ, ἐνδα εἰκάζομεν Χειρίσοφον εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται,  
 indeed, where we-suppose Cheirisophus to-be, if he-is-safe,  
 ὅδός ἐλαχίστη. Ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν ἔστιν  
 (the) way (is) very-short. But truly there indeed there-are  
 οὔτε πλοῖα, οἷς ἀποπλευσούμεδα, τε μένουσι  
 neither ships, in-which we-may-set-sail, but (we) remaining  
 αὐτοῦ οὖδε ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια μιᾶς ἡμέρας.  
 there neither is-there — provisions (enough) for-one day.  
 Δε τῶν πολιορκούμενων ἀπολομένων, σὺν τοῖς  
 But — (those) besieged perishing, with the  
 μόνοις Χειρίσοφου ἔστι κάκιον διακινδυνεύειν,  
 (men) alone of-Cheirisophus it-is worse to-face-danger,  
 ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων, πάντας ἐλθόντας εἰς  
 than — (these) being-saved, all coming to  
 ταῦτὸν ἔχεσθαι κοινῆ τῆς σωτηρίας.  
 that (place) to-take-hold in-common of — (our) safety  
 Ἀλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασμένους τὴν γνώμην  
 But it-is-necessary having-prepared-and-made-up — (our) minds  
 περεύεσθαι, ὡς νῦν ἔστιν ἢ τελευτῆσαι  
 to-proceed-forward, as(if) now it-is either to-have-ended (our lives)  
 εὐκλεῶς, ἢ ἔργασασθαι κάλλιστον ἔργον,  
 gloriously, or to-have-performed (a) most-honourable work,  
 τοσούτους Ἐλληνας σώσαντας. Καὶ ἵσως ὁ  
 so-many Greeks being-saved. And perhaps — (some)  
 θεὸς ἄγει οὐτως, δος βούλεται ταπεινῶσαι  
 god leads (the affair) thus, who wishes to-humanize  
 τοὺς μεγαληγορήσαντας, ὡς πλεῶν φρονοῦντας.  
 · · (those) having-spoken-boastfully, as 'being more wise

δέ καταστῆσαι, ἡμᾶς, τοὺς ἀρχομένους  
 (then we are), and to-render, us, — beginning  
 ἀπὸ θεῶν, ἐντιμοτέρους  
 (every thing) from (consulting the) gods, more-honoured (than)  
 ἔκείνων. Ἀλλ' χρή ἐπεσθαι, καὶ  
 they. But it-is-necessary to-follow (your leaders), and  
 προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ως ἀν δύνησθε ποιεῖν  
 apply — (your) minds, that 'you may 'be-able to-perform  
 τὸ παραγγελλόμενον.  
 the (thing) ordered.

Εἶπὼν ταῦτ' ἤγειτο. Δέ οἱ  
 Having-said this he-led (his men forward) And the  
 ἵππεis διασπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον εἰχε  
 cavalry spreading-themselves over as-'much (ground) 'as had (itself)  
 καλῶς, ἔκαιον ἦ ἐβάδιζον, καὶ  
 safe-and-proper, (and) they-set-fire in-whatever (place) they-went, and  
 οἱ πελτασταί, ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα,  
 the targeteers, moving-abreast-of (them) along the heights,  
 ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα ἐώρων καύσιμα, καὶ δὲ ἥ  
 burned all what they-saw combustible, and also the  
 στρατιὰ, εἰ ἐντυγχάνοιεν τινι παρ-  
 army (did the same), if they-found any-thing  
 λειπομένῳ. ὕστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα ἐδόκει  
 left (unhurt); so-that all the place seemed  
 αἴθεσθαι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα εἶναι πολυ. Ἐπεὶ  
 to-be-on-fire, and the army to-be large. When  
 δέ ἦν ὥρα, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐκβάιτες  
 indeed it-was time, they-encamped having-gone  
 ἐπὶ λόφον, καὶ ἐώρων τε τὰ πυρὰ τῶν πολεμίων,  
 on (a) hill, and they-saw also the fires of-the enemy,  
 (δὲ ἀπεῖχον ως τετταράκοντα σταδίους,) καὶ  
 (for they-were-distant about forty stadia,) and  
 αὐτοὶ ἔκαιον πλεῖστα ως ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ  
 they [the Greeks] burned as-much as they-could. When  
 δέ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλλη κατασθει-  
 however they-had-supped very-speedily. it-was-ordered to-extin-

νύναι πάρτα τὰ πυρὰ. Καὶ μὲν ποιησάμενοι  
 guish all the fires. And indeed having-stationed  
 φυλακὰς τὴν νύκτα ἐκάθευδον· ἀμα δὲ  
 sentinels for-the night they-went-to-sleep, at-the-time indeed  
 τὴν ἡμέρα προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ συν-  
 — (of) day (light) having-prayed to-the gods, and putting-  
 ταξάμενοι ὡς εἰς μάχην, ἐπορεύοντο τάχιστα ὡς  
 themselves-in-order as for battle, they-marched-forth as-speedily as  
 ἐδύναντο. Τιμασίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς, ἔχοντες τεὺς  
 they-could. Timasion and also the horsemen, having the  
 ἥγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες, γενόμενοι ἐλάνθασιον  
 guides and riding-on-before, having-got concealed  
 αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ, ἐνδα οἱ Ἑλληνες  
 (and unknown to) themselves on the hill, where the Greeks  
 ἐπολιορκοῦντο. Καὶ ὄρῶσιν οὐχ οὔτε φίλιοι  
 were-besieged. And see not either (a) friendly  
 στράτευμα, οὐτε πολέμιον, (καὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι  
 army, nor (an) inimical (one), (and they-announce  
 ταῦτα πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα,) these (things) to — Xenophon and the army,)  
 δὲ καὶ γραιδια γερόντια καὶ ὀλίγα πρόβατα  
 but only old-women (and) old-men and (a) few sheep  
 καὶ βοῦς καταλειμμένους. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον  
 and oxen left-behind. And indeed (at) the first  
 ἦν θαῦμα, τί εἴη τὸ γεγενημένον.  
 there-was wonder-and-surprise, what might-be the (thing) having-happened.  
 ἐπειτα δὲ καὶ ἐπινδάνοντο τῶν καταλειμ-  
 afterwards indeed also they-learned from — (those) left-  
 μένων, ὅτι οἱ Θράκες μὲν εὐδὺς ἀφ' ἐσπέρας  
 behind, that the Thracians indeed immediately after night-fall  
 ωχοντο ἀπιόντες· δὲ καὶ ἔφασαν τοὺς Ἑλληνας  
 departed going-away; and also they-said (that) the Greeks  
 οἴχεσθαι ἔωδεν· δὲ ὅπου οὐκ  
 departed early-in-the-morning; but whether (that they did) yet  
 εἰδέναι.  
 know

Οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,  
— (Those) with Xenophon hearing these (things)  
\*πεὶ ἡρίστησαν, συσκενασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο,  
after they-had-breakfasted, having-packed-up proceeded (on their  
βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα συμμίξαι τοῖς  
march), desiring as soon-as-possible to-have-joined the  
ἄλλοις εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης. Καὶ πορευόμενοι  
others at (the) harbour of-Calpe And proceeding  
ἔώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαῖων  
they-perceived the track of-the Arcadians and Achaeans  
κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐπὶ Κάλπης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο  
on the road to Calpe. When indeed they-had-arrived  
εἰς τὸ αὐτό, τε ἀσμενοί εἰδον  
at the same (spot), (they were) not-only pleased (when) they-saw  
ἄλληλους, καὶ ἤσπάζοντο ὥσπερ ἀδελφούς. Καὶ  
one-another, but-also embraced like brothers. And  
οἱ Ἀρκάδες ἐπινδάνοντο τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα,  
the Arcadians inquired of — (those) with Xenophon  
τί κατασθέσειαν τὰ πυρὰ· γὰρ μὲν ἡμεῖς, ἔφασαν,  
why they-had-put-out the fires; for indeed we, said-they,  
ῳόμεδα μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὴ σὺ  
thought indeed at — first (that) you, when we-did not  
ἔωρῶμεν τὰ πυρὰ, ἦξειν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τοὺς  
<sup>'see</sup> the fires, were-coming at — night against the  
πολεμίους· (καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὅς γε ἐδόκουν  
enemy; (and the enemy also, as at-least it-appeared  
ἡμῖν, δείσαντες τοῦτο ἀπῆλθον· γὰρ σχεδὸν ἀμφὶ<sup>'arrive,</sup> fearing this departed; for near'y about  
τούτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπήγεσαν). Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ  
that — time they-disappeared). But when you-did not  
ἀφίκεσθε, δὲ ὁ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, ὠόμεδα ὑμᾶς,  
'arrive, and the time passed-by, we-thought (that) you,  
πιδομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβηθέντας  
hearing the (things) relating to-us, (that) being-alarmed  
οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει  
you-departed fleeing to (the) sea; and it-seemed

ἡμῖν μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. Οὖτω.  
 to-us (that) we-ought not 'to-be-left-behind you. Thu  
 οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπορεύθημεν δεῦρο.  
 therefore also we proceeded in-this-direction.

---

## CHAPTER I V.

Οὗν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ηὐλιζοντο  
 THEREFORE indeed that — (same) day they-encamped  
 αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. Τὸ τοῦτο  
 there on the shore near the port. — This  
 χωρίον δέ, ὃ καλεῖται λιμήν Κάλπης, ἔστι  
 place indeed, which is-called (the) harbour of-Calpe, is  
 μὲν ἐν τῇ Θράκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ·  
 indeed in — Thrace the (Thrace namely) in — Asia;  
 δέ αὕτη ἡ Θράκη ἔστιν ἀρξαμένη ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 and this — Thrace is (in extent) beginning from the  
 στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας,  
 mouth of-the Pontus (Euxinus) just-to Heraclea,  
 ἐπὶ δεξιᾷ εἰςπλέοντι εἰς τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ  
 on (the) right (of one) sailing to the Pontus And  
 μὲν ἔστι τριήρει κώπαις ἐκ Βυζαντίου εἰς  
 indeed it-is 'for (a) galley with-oars from Byzantium to  
 Ἡράκλειαν μάλα μακρᾶς ἡμέρας πλοῦς· δέ ἐν  
 Heraclea (a) very long day's sail; and in  
 τῷ μέσῳ μὲν οὐδεμία ἄλλη  
 the middle (between these towns there is) indeed no other  
 πόλις οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνίς, ἀλλὰ Βιθυνοί  
 town either friendly or Grecian, but Bithynian  
 Θράκες· καὶ οὓς ἀν λάβωσι τῶν  
 Thracians (occupy it); and whom 'they may 'take of-the  
 Ἑλλήνων ἐκπίπτοντας ἢ πως ἄλλως λέγονται  
 Greeks east-ashore or in-any other (manner) they-are-said

υθρίζειν τοὺς Ἔλληνας δεινὰ. Δὲ ὁ λιμὴν  
 to-insult-and-treat the Greeks dreadfully. But the harbour  
 Κάλπης κεῖται ἐν μέσῳ μὲν ἑκατέρων  
 of-Calpe lies in mid (way) indeed from-both-sides (for those)  
 πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, δὲ ἐν τῇ  
 sailing from Heraclea and Byzantium, and in the  
 θαλάττῃ ἔστι χωρίον προκείμενον, τὸ  
 sea there-is a-piece-of-land (there) projecting-forward, the (part)  
 μὲν αἰτοῦ καθῆκον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν ἀπορρύξῃ  
 indeed of-it reaching-down to the sea (as a) steep  
 πέτρα, ὥφος ὅπη ἐλάχιστον οὐ μεῖον εἴκοσιν  
 rock, (the) height where (it is) the-least not less (than) tre-enty  
 ὅργυιῶν· δὲ ὁ αὐχὴν, ὁ ἀνήκων εἰς τὴν  
 fathoms; and the neck, — (that namely) extending into the  
 γῆν τοῦ χωρίου, τὸ εὖρος μάλιστα  
 land of-the country, the breadth (of this neck is) at-most  
 τεττάρων πλέθρων· δὲ τὸ χωρίον  
 four plethra (or about four hundred feet), and the place  
 ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος ἵκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνδρώποις  
 within the neck is-sufficient for-ten-thousand men  
 οἰκησαι. Λιμὴν δ' ἵπ' αὐτῇ τῇ  
 to-inhabit (or quarter on). (The) harbour indeed (is) under this —  
 πέτρᾳ ἔχων τὸ αἰγιαλὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν.  
 'same) rock having — (its) shore towards (the) west.  
 Δὲ κρήνη ὥδεος ὄδατος καὶ ἀφδονος βέοντα ἐπὶ  
 And (a) spring of-sweet water and copiously flowing near  
 τῇ θαλάττῃ αὐτῇ, ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπιχρατείᾳ τοῦ  
 the sea itself, (is) under the command of — (this)  
 χωρίου. Δὲ μὲν πολλὰ ξύλα καὶ ἄλλα,  
 place. And indeed (there is) much wood and (of) different  
 δὲ πάνυ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα  
 (kinds), but especially much and fine (wood) fit-for-ship-brilding  
 ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. Δὲ τὸ ὄρος, τὸ  
 on this — (same) sea (coast). And the mountain, —  
 ἐν τῷ λιμένι, ἀνήκει μὲν εἰς μεσόγαιαν  
 (that namely) at the harbour, extends indeed to (the) interior

ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τοῦτο γεῶδες  
 as-much as to twenty stadia, and this (part is) earthy  
 καὶ ἀλιδὸν· δὲ τὸ παρὰ Σάλατταν, πλέον  
 and clear-of-stones; and the (part) along (the) sea, more  
 ἦ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ πάντο-  
 than about twenty stadia, thick with-many and vari-  
 δαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. Δὲ ἡ ἄλλη  
 ous and large trees. And the other (parts of the)  
 χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλὴ· καὶ εἰσὶ πολλαὶ  
 country (were) beautiful and much (in extent); and there-were many  
 καὶ οἰκουμεναι κώμαι ἐν αὐτῇ· γὰρ ἡ γῆ  
 and populous villages in this (country); for the land  
 φέρει καὶ κριδάς, καὶ πυρούς, καὶ πάντα  
 produces — barley, and wheat, and all (kinds of  
 ὄσπρια, καὶ μελίνας, καὶ σήσαμα, καὶ ἀρκοῦτα  
 legumes, and millet, and sesame, and abundance (of)  
 σῦκα, καὶ πολλὰς ἀμπέλους καὶ ἥδυοίνους, καὶ  
 figs, and many vines even producing-sweet-wine, and  
 πάντα τὰλλα πλὴν ἔλαιων. Τοιαῦτη  
 all else except (trees) of-oil [the olive tree]. Such  
 μὲν ἡνὶ ἡ χώρα. Ἐσκήνωνται δέ  
 indeed was the country. (The Greeks) 'pitched (their) 'tents indeed  
 ἐν τῷ αἰγαλῷ πρὸς τῇ Σαλάττῃ· δέ εἰς τὸ  
 on the shore by the sea; but into the  
 πόλισμα ἀν γενόμενον οὐκ ἔβούλοντο  
 city (that) might have-been they-'did not 'wish  
 στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ  
 (to march and) encamp, but it-seemed (that) even  
 τὸ ἐλασσεῖν ἐνταῦθα εἶναι ἐξ ἐπιβούλης,  
 |the to go there [going there] was from design, (as if)  
 τινῶν βούλομένων κατοικίσαι πόλιν. Γὰρ οἱ  
 some (persons) were-wishing to-build (a) city. For the  
 πλεῖστοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν οὐκ ἐκπεπλευκότες ἥσαν  
 most of-the soldiers 'had not 'sailed  
 σπάνει βίον ἐπὶ τούτην τὴν  
 (from home) for-want of-subsistence on this — (same;

μισθοφοράν, ἀλλ' ἀκούοντες τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου,  
service, but hearing-of the virtue of-Cyrus,  
οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄγοντες ἄνδρας, οἱ καὶ δὲ  
—(some) indeed even bringing men. —(others) also indeed  
προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ ἔτεροι τούτων  
having-in-addition-spent money, (in the cause), and others of-these  
ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μετέρας, δὲ  
(soldiers) having-fled-from (their) fathers and mothers, and  
καὶ οἱ καταλιπόντες τέκνα, ὡς κτησαμενοί  
also —(some) leaving-behind (their) children, that they-might-acquire  
χρήματ' αὐτοῖς, ἤξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούντες καὶ  
money for-them, (then) coming back, hearing also  
τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πράτ-  
(that) — others — (those namely) with Cyrus | were-  
τειν πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ.  
doing many and good (things) [were acquiring wealth].

\*Οὐτες τοιοῦτοι ἐπόδουν σώζεσθαι εἰς τὴν  
Being such (men) they-desired | to-be-saved to —  
\*Ελλάδα.

Greece [to return in safety to Greece].

\*Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρα ἡμέρα τῆς συνόδου  
When indeed (the) next day of —(their) coming-together  
εἰς ταῦτὸν ἐγένετο, Ξενοφῶν ἐδύετο ἐπ'  
in that (place) was, Xenophon sacrificed about (an)  
ἔξοδῳ· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη ἐξάγειν ἐπὶ τὰ  
expedition; for it-was necessary to-lead-out (the soldiers) for —  
ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ καὶ ἐπενόει θάπτειν τοὺς  
provisions; and also he-was-thinking (about) burying the  
νεκροὺς. \*Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ιερὰ ἐγένετο καὶ  
dead. When indeed the victims happened (favourably) also  
οἱ Ἀρκάδες εἶποντο, καὶ μὲν ἔδαψαν ἐκάστους  
the Arcadians accompanied (him), and indeed they-buried each-of  
τοὺς νεκροὺς, τοὺς πλείστους, ἐνδαπερ ἐπεσον·  
the dead, the most, where they-had-fallen,  
(γὰρ ἥδη ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι, καὶ  
for already | they-were five days'-ones, [they were five days dead,] and

ἦν ἔτι οὐχ οἰόν τε ἀναιρεῖν) · δε  
 't-was now not possible to-'take (them) 'away); and  
 τυνενεγκόντες ἐνίους τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν,  
 buring-gathered-together some of — (those) from the road,  
 ἔθαψαν ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο ἐκ τῶν  
 they-buried (them) as becomingly (as) they-could from — (their)  
 ὑπαρχόντων · δέ οὖς μὴ εὑρισκον  
 existing (means); but (those) that they-did not find  
 ἐποίησαν μέγα κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐπέδεσαν  
 they-made (a) large cenotaph for-them, and placed-on (it)  
 στεφάνους. Δὲ ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεχώρησαν  
 garlands. And having-performed these (things) they-returned  
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ μὲν τότε δειπνήσαντες  
 to the camp. And indeed then having-supped  
 ἔκοιμήθησαν. Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ πάντες οἱ στρα-  
 they-went-to-sleep. On-the next-day indeed all the sol-  
 τιῶται συνῆλθον · (δέ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε  
 diers assembled-together; (but chiefly Agasias indeed (the)  
 Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς συνῆγε · καὶ Ἱερώνυμος  
 Stymphalian captain assembled (them); and Hieronymus (the)  
 Ἐλεῖος λοχαγὸς, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν  
 Elian captain, and — others the oldest of-the  
 Ἀρκάδων). Καὶ ἐποίησαντο δόγμα, ἐάν τις  
 Arcadians). And they-made (a) decree, if any (one)  
 τοῦ λοιποῦ μητρῷ ποιεῖν τὸ στράτευμα  
 for-the rest (of the time) might-mention to-make the army  
 δίχα αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι θανάτῳ, καὶ  
 divided-into-two (that) he should-be-punished with-death, and (that)  
 τὸ στράτευμα ἀπιέναι κατὰ χώραν, ἢπερ  
 the army (should) depart to (the) place-and-order which  
 εἶχε πρόσδεν, καὶ τοὺς πρόσδεν στρατηγούς  
 it-had before, and (that) the former generals  
 ἀρχεῖν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἥδη  
 (should) command. And Cheirisophus indeed 'had already  
 τετελευτήκει πιών φάρμακον, πυρέττων  
 'died having-drunk (a) medicine, being-in-a-fever

Ἄ& Νεων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος παρέλαβε τὰ ἐκείνα  
and Neon the Asinæan | received the (things) of

νου

nm [took his place].

Μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε.  
After this indeed Xenophon standing-up said:

Ω ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὡς ἔοικε, δῆλον μὲν ὅτι  
men soldiers, as it-seems, evident indeed that  
τὴν πορείαν ποιητέον πεζῷ· γάρ ἔστι οὐ πλοῖα.  
the journey is-to-be-performed on-foot; for there-are not ships;

ἀνάγκη ἥδη πορεύεσθαι· γάρ ἔστι οὐ τα  
(it is) necessary now to-depart; for there-is not —  
ἐπιτήδεια μένουσι. Οὖν μὲν, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς  
food (for us) remaining. Therefore indeed, said-he, we  
θυσόμεθα· δὲ ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι  
will-sacrifice; but you 'it (now) 'becomes to-prepare  
ὡς μαχομένους, εἰ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε.  
as-for fighting, if ever even at-any-other-time (it was

γάρ οἱ πολέμιοι ἀνατεθαρήκασιν. Ἐξ  
necessary); for the enemy has-recovered-confidence. After  
τούτου οἱ στρατηγοί ἐδύνοντο, δὲ Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς  
this the generals sacrificed, and Arexion (the) Arcadian  
παρῆν μάντις· δὲ ὁ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης  
was-present (as) augur; for — Silanus the Ambracian

ἥδη ἀποδεδράκει μισθωσάμενος πλοίον ἐξ  
'had already 'fled having-hired (a) vessel from  
Ἡρακλείας. Δέ θνομένοις ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ  
Heraclea. And sacrificing about — (their) departure the

ἱερά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην  
victims 'did not "become (favourable). Therefore indeed on-that  
τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο.  
— (same) day they-desisted (from their intended departure).

Καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν,  
And some having-been-bold-enough said that — Xenophon,  
βουλόμενος οἰκίσαι τὸ χωρίον, πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν  
desiring to-colonise the country, had-persuaded the augur

λέγειν ὡς τὰ ιερὰ γίγνεται οὐ ἐπὶ<sup>το-say</sup>  
that the victims were not (favourable) to (the)

ἀφόδῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν Ξενοφῶν κηρύξας  
departure. Then Xenophon having-made-proclamation (that,

τὸν βουλόμενον παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν  
- (he) wishing (it) might-be-present at the sacrifice  
τῇ αὔριον, καὶ παραγγείλας εἰ εἴη τις μάντις  
on-the next-day, and having-notified if there-were any augurs

παρεῖναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ιερὰ,  
(among them) to-be-present as inspecting-with (him) the victims,

ἐδύε· καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλοὶ<sup>'he (Xenophon) sacrificed; and then many (persons)</sup>

παρῆσαν. Δὲ θυομένων πάλιν εἰς τρίς  
were-present And sacrificing again to (the) third (time)

ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ ιερά ἐγίγνετο οὐκ.  
in-respect to-the departure the victims were not (favourable).

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον χαλεπῶς.  
On this the soldiers had (it) uneasily; [the sol-

δεια, ἀ εχοντες ἥλσον,  
diers in consequence of this were distressed;] for even the provi-

δεια, ἀ εχοντες ἥλσον,  
sions, [which having they-came, [which they had when they came,]

ἐπέλιπεν, καὶ οὐδεμία ἀγορὰ παρῆν.  
failed, and no market was-present [provided for them].

Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων, Ξενοφῶν πάλιν  
On this (the soldiers) assembling, Xenophon again

εἶπε· Ω ἄνδρες, ὡς ὅρᾶτε μὲν, τὰ ιερὰ γίγνεται  
said: O men, as you-see indeed, the victims are

οὐπώ τῇ πορείᾳ· δ' ὅρω ὑμᾶς δεομένους  
not-yet (favourable) for — (our) journey; and I-see you wanting

τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀνάγκη  
— provisions; therefore it-seems to-me to-be necessary

θύεσθαι περὶ οὐτοῦ τούτου. Τις δ'  
to-sacrifice respecting this same (thing). Some (one) however

ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα τὰ ιερά γίγνεται  
standing-up said: And with-reason therefore the vict <sup>ma</sup> are

οὐ δέ τις ήμιν· καὶ γάρ ἐγώ ἤκουσά τινος  
not (favourable) for-us; and as I have-heard from-some (one,

χθές ἀπὸ πλοίου ἤκουντος τοῦ αὐτομάτου,  
yesterday (who was) from (a) vessel coming (in) — of-itself

ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἀρμοστὴς ἐκ Βυζαντίου  
(accidentally), that Cleander the governor of Byzantium  
μέλλει ἥξειν, ἔχων πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις. Ἐκ τούτοι  
is-about coming, having vessels and galleys. On this

δὲ ἐδόκει μὲν πᾶσιν ἀναμένειν· δ' οὐδὲν  
(account) then it-seemed indeed to-all (proper) to remain; but it-was  
ἀνάγκη ἔξιέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ  
necessary to-go-out for — provisions. And about this

πάλιν ἐδύνετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ τὰ ιερά<sup>1</sup>  
it-was again 'sacrificed to three (times), however the victims  
ἐγίγνετο οὐ. Καὶ ηδη καὶ ιόντες  
were not (favourable). And now even (the soldiers) going

ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν Ξενοφῶντος, ἐλεγον ὅτι ἔχοιεν  
to the tent of Xenophon, said that they-had

οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δ' ὁ ἔφη ἀν οὐκ  
no — provisions. And — he-said (that) 'he could not

ἔξαγαγεῖν, τῶν ιερῶν μὴ γιγνομένων.  
'lead (them) 'out, the victims not being (favourable).

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδύνετο, καὶ σχεδόν  
And again on-the next-day it-was-sacrificed, and nearly

τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν  
in-some (manner) all the army on-account-of — it-being-a-solicitude

ἀπασιν, ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ιερά· δὲ τὰ  
to-every (one), were-crowded-in-a-circle round the victims; but the

θύματα ἐπιλελοίπει. Δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν οὐκ  
victims were-deficient. But the generals indeed 'did not

ἔξῆγον, δὲ συνεκάλεσαν Ξενοφῶν  
'lead-out (the troops), but 'called (them) 'together. Xenophon

οὖν εἶπεν· Ἰσως οἱ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσί.  
therefore said: Perhaps the enemy have-been-assembled-together.

καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες  
and (it is) necessary (that, we-fight; if therefore leaving-behind

τὰ σκείνη ἐν τῷ ἔρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὡς οἰμεῖ  
 — (our) baggage in the strong places so-that we-may-ga  
 παρεσκευασμένοι εἰς μάχην, ἵσως τὰ ἵερά δὲ  
 prepared for battle, perhaps the victims may  
 προχωροίν ἥμιν. Δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες  
 become-favourable to-us. But the soldiers hearing (this)  
 ἀιέκραγον ὡς δέοι οὐδὲν ἄγειν εἰς τὸ χωρίον,  
 cried-out that it-ought not to-lead to the place,  
 ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι  
 [that he ought not to lead them to such strong place,] but to-sacrifice  
 ὡς τάχιστα. Καὶ μὲν ἦν οὐκέτι πρόβατα,  
 as speedily (as possible). And indeed there-was no-longer sheep,  
 δὲ πριάμενοι βοῦς ὑπὸ ἀμάξης ἐδύνοντο· καὶ  
 but buying (an) ox from (a) wagon they-sacrificed; and  
 Ξενοφῶν ἐδεήθη Κλεάνορος τοῦ Ἀρκάδος προ-  
 Xenophon besought Cleanor the Arcadian to-be-  
 θυμεῖσθαι, εἰ εἴη τι ἐν  
 prompt-of-mind (to act), if there-might-be any-thing (encouraging) in  
 τούτῳ. 'Αλλ' ὡς ἐγένετο οὐδὲ.  
 this (sacrifice). But even-thus there-was neither (anything favourable)

Δεὶ Νέων μὲν ἦν στρατηγὸς τὸ μέρος  
 But Neon indeed was (now) general in-the place  
 Χειρισόφου· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐώρα τοὺς ἀνδρῶπονσ, ὡς  
 of-Heirisophus; and when he-saw the men, | that  
 εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ,  
 they-had (it) grievously in — (their) want, [that the men were suffer-

βουλόμενος χαρίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,  
 ing much from want of food,] wishing to-relieve-and-gratify them  
 εὑρὼν τινα ἀνδρῶπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς  
 (and) having-found (a) certain man (a) Heraclean, who  
 ἤφη εἰδέναι κώμας ἐγγὺς, ὅδεν εἴη  
 said (that) he-knew (of) villages near, whence it-might-be (possible)  
 λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν  
 to-procure — provisions, he-proclaimed (by a herald that) — (any one)  
 βουλόμενοι iέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὡς ἕγειμόνος  
 of-those-wishing to-go for — provisions, that (a) guide

τομένου.      Ἐξέρχονται δὴ εἰς  
would-be (for them). (Then) they-departed indeed to (the number of)  
δισχιλίους ἀνδρώπους σὺν δορατίοις, καὶ ἄσκοις καὶ  
two-thousand men with spears, and leather-bags and  
δυλάκοις, καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις.      Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν  
sacks, and other receptacles. When indeed they-were  
ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, καὶ διεσπείροντο, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ  
in the villages, and were-dispersed, as for the  
λαμβάνειν,      οἱ ἵππεις Φαρναβάζου  
taking (of what they wanted), the cavalry of-Pharnabazus  
πρῶτοι ἐπιπίπτοντιν αὐτοῖς (γὰρ ἦσαν βεβοη-  
first tell-upon them (for they-were (come) help-  
δηκότες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς) βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυ-  
ning the Bithynians) desiring with the Bithy-  
νοῖς, εἰ δύναιντο, ἀποκωλὺσαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας  
nians, if they-could, to-prevent the Greeks (that  
μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ  
they might not enter into — Phrygia; these — (same),  
ἵππεις ἀποκτείνοντι οὐ μεῖον πεντακοσίους τῶν  
cavalry killed not less (than) five-hundred of-the  
ἀνδρῶν· οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ ἀνέφυγον ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος.      Ἐκ  
men; the rest indeed fled-away to the mountain. On  
τούτου τις τῶν ἀποφυγόντων ἀπαγγέλλει  
this some (one) of — (those) having-fled announced  
ταύτα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον.      Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν,  
these (things) at the camp. And — Xenophon,  
ἐπεὶ τὰ ιερὰ οὐκ ἐγεγένητο ταύτῃ τῇ  
when the victims 'had not been (favourable) that —  
ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ ἀμάξης, (γὰρ ἦν οὐκ  
day, taking (an) ox from (a) wagon, (for there-were no  
ἄλλα ιερεῖα,) σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοηθεῖ, καὶ οἱ  
other cattle,) having-sacrificed he-went-to-give-help, and the  
ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἀπαντες  
others — (those namely) just-to thirty years-of-age all  
Καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς ἄνδρας  
went with him). And bringing-off — 'these) men

λοιποὺς, ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ  
left,                   they-returned to the camp.           And  
ἥν ἦδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἥλιου δυσμὰς· καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες  
it-was now indeed about sun set; and the Greeks  
ἔχοντες μάλ’ ἀδύμως ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο,  
being much dejected were-taking (their) supper, (when)  
καὶ ἔξαπίνης τινες τῶν Βιθυνῶν ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς  
even suddenly some of-the Bithynians fell-upon the  
προφύλαξι διὰ τῶν λασίων, μὲν κατέκανον  
advanced-guards through the thickets, (and) indeed they-killed  
τοὺς, δὲ τοὺς ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς  
— (some of the Greeks), and — (others) they-pursued just to  
τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ κραυγῆς γενομένης πάντες  
the camp                   And (a) great-noise arising           at  
οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐδραμον εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ διώκειν  
the Greeks ran to — arms; and to-pursue  
μὲν, καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ  
indeed, and to-move the camp at-night did not  
ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς· γὰρ τὰ χωρία ἦν δασέα·  
'seem to-be safe; for the country was full-of-thickets,  
δὲ ἐνυκτέρευον ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, φυλαττόμενοι  
and they-passed-the-night under — arms.                   guarded  
ἴκανοις φύλαξι.  
by-sufficient sentinels.

## CHAPTER V.

Οὕτω μεν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα. Δέ ἄλλα τη  
 Thus indeed they-passed the night. But at-the time-of --  
 ἥμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἤγουντο εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν  
 day (break) the generals went to the strong  
 χωρίον, δὲ οἱ εἶποντο, ἀναλαβόντες τὰ  
 place, and the (men) followed, bringing-with (them) — (their)  
 ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. Πρὶν δὲ εἴναι ὥραν  
 arms and — (their) baggage. Before indeed it-was time (for)  
 ἀρίστου ἀπετάφρευσαν εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἦ  
 dinner they-had-completed-a-trench at the place at-which the  
 εἰσοδος ἦν, καὶ ἀπαν ἀπεσταύ  
 entrance (to it) was, and had-fenced-off (the) whole (place) 'with-pal-  
 ωσαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς πύλος. Καὶ πλοῖον  
 sades, leaving three gates. And (a) vessel  
 ἦκεν ἐξ Ἡρακλείας ἄγον ἀλφιτα, καὶ ιερεία,  
 came from Heraclea bringing barley-meal, and cattle,  
 καὶ οἶνον. Δέ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς πρωὶ ἐθύετο  
 and wine. And Xenophon having-risen early he-sacrificed  
 ἐπεξόδια, καὶ τὰ ιερὰ γίγνεται ἐπὶ<sup>i</sup>  
 for-a-successful-expedition, and the victims were (favourable) on  
 τοῦ πρώτου ιερείου. Καὶ ἥδη ἔχόντων  
 the first victim. And already having (made an)  
 τέλος τῶν ιερῶν, ὁ μάντις Ἀροξίων Παρθάσιος  
 end of-the sacrifices, the augur Arexion (the) Parrhasian  
 ὥρᾳ αἰσιων ἀετὸν, καὶ κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα  
 saw (a) lucky eagle, and requested — Xenophon  
 ἤγεισθαι. Καὶ διαβάντες τὴν τάφρον  
 to-lead (forth). And (the men) crossing the trench  
 τίθενται τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἔκήρυξαν  
 ranged-themselves (under) — arms, and it-was-proclaimed-by-the-  
 τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀριστήσαντας ἔξιένται  
 heralds (that) the soldiers having-dined would-march-out

σὺν τοῖς δόπλοις, δὲ καταλιπεῖν τὸν ὅχλον  
with — (their) arms, but to-leave the crowd  
καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ.

(of camp-followers) and the slaves there (in the camp).

Μὲν δὴ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες ἔξησαν, δὲ οὐ Νέων·  
indeed truly the others all marched-out, out not Neon:

γιρ ἐδόκει κάλλιστον καταλιπεῖν τοῦτον  
for it-seemed the-best to-leave this-one (namely Necu)

φύλακα τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Ἐπεὶ  
(as a) guard of — (what was) in the camp. When

δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλιπον  
indeed the captains and the soldiers had-left

αὐτούς, αἰσχυνόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων  
them, being-ashamed not to-follow the others

ἔξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπέρ  
going-out, 'they (then) left there — (those) above

πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη. Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν  
five and forty years-of-age. And these indeed

ἔμενον, δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. Πρίν δὲ διεληλυ-  
remained, but the others proceeded-forth. Before indeed they-had

δέναι πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια ἦδη ἐνέτυχον  
gone fifteen stadia 'they already 'met-with

νεκροῖς· καὶ ποιησάμενοί τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος  
dead-bodies; and having-placed the rear of-the wing

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους νεκρούς φανέντας, ἔθαπτον  
by the first dead-bodies seen, they-buried

πάντας, ὅπόσους τὸ κέρας ἐπελάμβανε.  
(them) all, as-many-as the wing took-in (or covered)

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔθαψαν τοὺς πρώτους, προ-  
When indeed they-had-burned — (those) first (found) pro-

αγαγόντες, καὶ χάδις ποιησάμενοι τὴν οὐρὰν  
ceeding-forward, and again having-placed the rear

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων,  
along the first of-the unburied (they now met with).

ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὅπόσους ἡ στρατια  
they-buried (in) the same manner. as-many-as the army.

ἐπελάμβανεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦκον εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν  
covered. When indeed they came to the road  
τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἐνδα δὲ  
— (that namely leading) from the villages, where indeed  
ἐκειντο ἀδρόι, συνενεγκόντες  
(the dead) lay close-together, carrying (them) together  
ἔδαφαν αὐτοὺς.  
they buried them.

\* Ήδη δὲ πέρα μεσούσης τῆς ἡμέρας  
| Now indeed beyond having-been-in-the-middle (of) the day  
προαγαγόντες τὸ στράτευμα  
[it was now past mid-day] having-led-forward the army  
ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν, ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,  
beyond the villages, (the men) took — provisions.  
ὅ τι τις ὄρῳη, ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος. Καὶ  
whatever any-one saw, within the line. And  
ἔξαιφνης ὄρωσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας  
suddenly they-saw the enemy passing-over (and)  
κατὰ τινὰς λόφους ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου,  
down some hills from the opposite (side before them),  
τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, τε πολλοὺς  
drawn-up in line, (there being) not-only many  
ἵππεας καὶ πεζούς· γάρ καὶ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ  
horsemen but-also foot-soldiers; for also Spithridates and  
Ῥαθίνης ἦκον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν  
had-come from Pharnabazus having — (their)  
δύναμιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι κατεῖδον τοὺς  
forces. When indeed the enemy saw the  
Ἐλληνας, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσουν πεντε-  
Greeks, they-halted being-distant from-them about fif-  
καίδεκα σταδίους. Ἐκ τούτου Ἀρηξίων ὁ μάντις  
teen stadia. On this Arexion the augur  
τῶν Ἐλλήνων εὐδὺς σφαγιάζεται, καὶ τὰ σφάγια  
of-the Greeks immediately sacrificed, and the victims  
ἐγένετο καλὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. Ἐνδα δὴ Ξενο-  
were favourable from the first. Then indeed Xero-

φῶν λέγει· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὡς ἄνδρες στρατηγοί,  
phon said: It-seems to-me, O men commanders, (thas,

ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους  
we-ought-to-station-behind the (principal) line companies (as)

φύλακας, ἵνα που ἀν δέη, ὥσιν οἱ  
guards, that where 'it might 'be-necessary, there-may-be —

ἐπιβοηδήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι  
(those) supporting the line, and the enemy

τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ  
thrown-into-disorder may-fall-upon — (those) drawn-up-in-order and

ἀκεραίους. Ταῦτα συνεδόκε πᾶσι. Τμεῖς μὲν  
fresh. This was-approved by-all You indeed

τοίνυν, ἔφη, προηγεῖσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς  
therefore, said-he [Xenophon], advance on-the (road) to the

ἐναντίους, ὡς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ  
(enemy) in-front (of us), that we-'may not 'stand-still, since

εἴδομεν καὶ ὠφθημεν τοὺς πολεμίους. ἐγὼ δὲ  
we-have-seen and have-been-seen (by) the enemy; I indeed

ἥξω καταχωρίσας τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους,  
will-come (after) having-stationed — (those) hindmost companies,

ἥπερ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν.  
in-the-manner-which it-seemed (good) to-you.

\*Ex τούτου μὲν οἱ ἡσυχοὶ προῆγον. ὁ  
On this indeed — (they) quietly advanced; —

δὲ ἀφελῶν

(Xenophon) indeed having-taken-from (and detached from the main body

τὰς τρεῖς τελευταίας τάξεις, ἀνὰ δια-  
the three hindmost ranks (or companies), about two-

κοσίους ἄνδρας ἐπέτρεψε τὴν μὲν  
hundred men (each) ordered the (one of them) indeed

ἐφέπεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν, ἀπολιπόντας ὡς πλέθρον.  
to-follow on the right, being-distant about (a) plethrum

Σαμολας Ἀχαιὸς ἦρχε τῆς ταύτης  
[100 feet]. Samolas (the) Achaean commanded — this

τάξεως τὴν δ' ἐχώρισεν ἐπεσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ  
division, the (other) indeed he-detached to follow at the

μέσῳ. Πυρρίας Ἀρκάς ἥρχε ταύτης. δὲ  
centre; Pyrrhus (the) Arcadian commanded this (division); and  
τὴν μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ. Φρασίας  
the (third) one (was stationed) on the left; Phrasias (the)  
Ἄθηναῖος ἐφεστῆσει ταύτην. Δέ προϊόντες, ἐπεὶ  
Athenian commanded it. But proceeding-forward when  
οἱ ἡγούμενοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ μεγάλῳ  
— (those) leading (in advance) got to (a) large  
νάπει καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν, ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ  
woody-revine and difficult-to-pass, they-halted, not-knowing if  
τὸ νάπος εἴη διαβατέον. Καὶ παρεγγυῶσι  
the woody-ravine might-be passable. And requested  
στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ  
(the) generals and captains to-come-forward to the  
ἡγούμενον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, θαυμάσας ὃ τι  
leading (division). And — Xenophon, having-wondered what  
εἴη ἵσχον τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν  
it-might-be detaining the progress, and speedily hearing the  
παρεγγυήν, ἐλαύνει τάχιστα η̄ ἐδύνατο.  
announcement, pushes-on (his horse) as-fast as he-could.  
Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον Σοφαίνετος ὅν πρεσβύ-  
When indeed they-came-together Sophænetus being the-oldest  
τατος τῶν στρατηγῶν λέγει, ὅτι εἴη οὐκ ἀξιον  
of-the generals says, that it-was not worthy  
βουλῆς, εἰ δὲν τοιοῦτον τὸ νάπος ἐστι  
of-consideration, whether being such — (a) woody-ravine it-is  
διαβατέον.  
necessary-to-pass (it).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν.  
And — Xenophon speedily seizing (an opportunity) said.  
Ἄλλ' μὲν ἴστε με, ὁ ἀνδρες, πω ἐδελούσιον  
But indeed you-know me, O men, (that) 'I never voluntarily  
προξενήσαντα οὐδένα κίνδυνον ὑμῖν· γάρ ὁρῶ  
'brought any danger on-you; for I-see  
ὑμᾶς οὐ δεομένους δόξης εἰς ἀνδρειότητα, ἀλλὰ  
you not wanting reputation for valour, but

σωτηρίας. Δέ νῦν ἔχει οὐτως ἔστιν ε.  
 of-safety. But now it-has (itself) so, it-is not  
 μὲν ἀπελθεῖν ἐνδένδε ἀμαχί· γάρ οὐκ ἡμεῖς  
 indeed (for us) to-depart hence without-fighting, for if we  
 μη ἰωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι, ὥπόταν  
 do not 'advance against the enemy, these, when  
 ἀπίωμεν, ἔψονται καὶ ἐπιπεσοῦνται ἡμῖν. Ορᾶτε  
 we-retreat, will-follow and attack us. Consider  
 δή πότερον χρείττον ἴέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας,  
 indeed whether (it is) better to-go against the men  
 προβαλλομένους τὰ ὅπλα, οὐ μεταβαλ  
 'throwing (our) — arms 'before (us), or 'hurl-  
 λομένους, θεάσασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπι-  
 ing (them) 'back, to-perceive the enemy fol-  
 ὄντας ὅπισθεν ἡμῶν. Ιστε μέντοι ὅτι μὲν τὸ  
 lowing behind us. Know however that indeed the  
 ἀπιέναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων ἔοικε οὐδενὶ καλῶ, δέ  
 fleeing from (an) enemy looks-like nothing honourable, but  
 τὸ ἐφέπεσθαι ἐμποιεῖ θάρσος καὶ τοῖς  
 — to-follow 'puts confidence (and courage) even 'into the  
 κυκίοσι. Εγωγ' οὖν ἀν ἦδιον  
 cowardly. I-at-least therefore would (as a) more-pleasant (thing)  
 ἐποίην σὺν ἡμίσεσιν η ἀπο-  
 pursue with half (the number of men) (rather) than re-  
 χωροίην σὺν διπλασίοις. Καὶ τούτους  
 treat with double (the number). And (as respects) these  
 οἵδ' ὅτι, ἡμῶν μὲν ἐπιόντων, ὑμεῖς οὐδ'  
 (men) I-know that, we indeed attacking, you 'do not  
 ἔλπίζετε αὐτοὺς δέξασθαι ἡμᾶς· δέ ἀπιόντων,  
 'expect (that) they will-receive us; but retreating,  
 πάντες ἐπιστάμεδα ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι.  
 'we all 'believe that they-will-dare to-follow-after  
 Δέ ποιήσασθαι χαλεπὸν νάπος τὸ ὅπισθεν  
 'us). But to-have-placed (a) difficult ravine in — (our) rear  
 διαβάντας, μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι, ἀρ' οὐχὶ  
 .after) having-crossed (it), being-about to-fight, is-not-this

*kai* ἀξιον ἀρπάσαι; γὰρ μὲν ἐγένετο  
even (an advantage) worth to-have-seized-on? for indeed I,

*τοῖς πολεμίοις Βουλοίμην πίντα*  
(as respects) the enemy, wish (that) all (places)  
*ἀν φαίνεσθαι εὔπορα, ὥστε ἀποχωρεῖν· δὲ*  
may appear easy-to-pass-through, so-that they-may-retreat; but  
*καὶ δεῖ ἡμᾶς διδάσκεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ*  
even it-is-proper for-us to-learn from (the nature) of-the  
*χωρίου, ὅτι ἔστι οὐ σωτηρία μὴ νικῶσι.*  
place, that there-is no safety unless (our men) conquer.

Δ' ἔγωγε θαυμάζω εἰ τις νομίζει καὶ τὸ τοῦτο  
But I-at-least wonder if any-one thinks even — this  
νάπος εἶναι μᾶλλον φοβερὸν τῶν ἄλλων χωρίων  
ravine to-be more formidable (than) the other places  
ἢν διαπεπορεύμεδα. Πῶς μὲν γὰρ τὸ πεδίον  
which we-have-passed-through. How indeed therefore (is) the plain  
διαβατὸν, εἰ μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἵππεας  
to-be-passable, if we-do not conquer the cavalry.

Πῶς δὲ ὅρη, ἀ διεληλύθα-  
How indeed (will t.l.e) mountains (be passable) which we-have-crossed-  
μεν, ἢν τοσοίδε πελτασταὶ ἐφέπωνται;  
ever, if so-great-a-number-of targeteers pursue (us) \*

Δ' ἢν δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν,  
But if indeed we-are even saved (so far as) to (the) sea,

πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἐνδα οὐτε  
how-great a ravine (will) the Pontus (Euxinus be)? where neither  
ἔστι πλοῖα τὰ ἀπάξοντα, οὐτε σῖτος ὁ  
are vessels — for-carrying (us) 'away, nor provisions by-which  
θρεψόμεδα μένοντες. δὲ δεήσει, ἢν  
we-may-be-nourished (while) remaining; and it-will-be-necessary, if

γενωμέδα ἐκεὶ θᾶττον, θᾶττον ἐξέ-  
we-get there more-speedily, the-more-speedily (will we have) to-go-

*ναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.* Οὐκ οὖν κρείττον  
out for — provisions. (Is it) not therefore better  
*μάχεσθαι νῦν ἡριστηκότας, ἢ αὔριον ἀναρίστους;*  
to-fight now having-breakfasted, than to-morrow without-breakfast!

\*Ανδρες, τὰ ιερὰ τε καλά ἡμῖν, οἱ οἰωνοί.  
 Men, the sacrifices indeed (are) favourable to-us, the omens  
 τε αἰσιοί, τε τὰ σφάγια κάλλιστα. Ἰωμενοί<sup>ν</sup>  
 likewise auspicious, and the victims most-favourable, let us-ge  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. Οὐκ ἔτι δεῖ  
 against the men (our enemies). It-is not moreover 'proper (that)  
 τούτους, ἐπεὶ πάντως εἴδον ἡμᾶς,  
 those, since 'they certainly 'have-seen us, (should be allowed)  
 δειπνῆσαι ἡδέως, οὐδὲ σκηνῆσαι ὅπου ἀν-  
 to-sup comfortably, or to-encamp where 'they might  
 θέλωσι.  
 wish.

\*Εντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐκέλευνον ἦγεισθαι, καὶ  
 Then the captains requested (him) to-lead-on, and  
 οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγε. Καὶ ὃς ἦγειτο, παραγ-  
 no-one objected. And — (he) led-on (the troops), having  
 γείλας διαβαίνειν, ἢ ἔκαστος  
 ordered (them) to-cross-over, (in the place) in-which each-one  
 ἐπήγχανε ὡν τοῦ νάπωνς· γὰρ ἐδόκει  
 found (himself) being (at) the ravine, for he-thought (that)  
 τὸ στράτευμα ἀν οὕτῳ γενέσθαι πέραν ἀδρόν  
 the army might thus get over together  
 θᾶττον, ἢ εἰ ἐξεμηρύνοντο κατὰ την γεφυραν,  
 more speedily, than if they-defiled over the bridge,  
 ἢ ἢν ἐπὶ τῷ νάπει. \*Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν,  
 which was on the ravine. When indeed they-had-crossed-over,  
 παριὼν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἐλεγεν· \*Ανδρες,  
 going-on along the line he-said: Men,  
 ἀναμιμήσκεσθε ὅσας μάχας, σὺν  
 remember how-many battles, with (the assistance of)  
 τοῖς θεοῖς, νενικήκατα ιόντες  
 the gods, (you have fought and) conquered (by) coming-to  
 ὅμοσε, καὶ οἷα οἱ φεύγοντες πολεμίονς  
 close-quarters, and what — (those) fleeing (from the) enemy  
 πάσχουσι· καὶ ἐννοήσατε τοῦτο, ὅτι ἐσμεν ἐπὶ<sup>ν</sup>  
 suffer, and you-will-reflect-on this, that we-are a-

*ταῖς θύραις τῆς Ἑλλάδος.*    'Αλλ' ἔπεσθε τῷ  
the gates of — Greece.    But follow —

*'Ηρακλεὶ νῦν εἰπόντα  
Hercules (your) conductor, and exhort one-another*

*ὄνοματί.*    'Ηδύ τοι νῦν εἰπόντα  
by-name. (It is) pleasing indeed (to think, that he) now saying

*καὶ ποιησαντά τι ἀνδρεῖον καὶ καλὸν,  
and doing any-thing brave and honourable, (that he will)*

*παρέχειν μνήμην ἑαυτοῦ ἐν οἷς ἔδελει.  
furnish (a) remembrance of-himself among (those) whom he-wishes*

*\*Ἐλεγε ταῦτα παρελαύνων, καὶ  
(to remember him). He-said these (things) riding-along, and*

*ἄμα ὑφηγεῖτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ  
at-the-same-time he-led-on in line, and (the generals)*

*ποιησάμενοι τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐκατέρωθεν  
having-formed the targeteers on-each (flank)*

*ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. Παρηγγέλλετο  
they-marched-forth against the enemy. He-ordered*

*δὲ ἔχειν μὲν τὰ δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν  
(them) however to-have indeed the spears on the right*

*ῶμον, ἥως σημαίνοι τὴν σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα  
shoulder, until a-signal-should-be-given with-the trumpet; then*

*δὲ καθέντας εἰς προβολὴν ἔπεσθαι  
indeed having-lowered (them) for (a) charge to-follow (their*

*βάδην καὶ μηδένα διώκειν  
leaders in a regular) step and (that) no-one (was) to-advance*

*δρόμῳ. \*Ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρήει ΖΕΤΣ  
in (a) 'run. On this (the) watch-word came JUPITER*

**ΣΩΤΗΡ, ΗΡΑΚΛΗΣ ΗΓΕΜΩΝ.** OI  
(THE) PRESERVER, HERCULES (THE) LEADER. The

*πολέμιοι δὲ ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες ἔχειν  
enemy however remained-in-place, thinking (that) they-had (a)*

*καλὸν χωρίον. Δ' ἔπει οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπλησίαζον,  
the position. But when the Greeks approached,*

*πελτασταὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τοὺς  
(and their) targeteers having-shouted ran against the*

πολεμίους πρίν τινα κελεύειν· δ' οἱ πολέμιοι  
 enemy before (that) any-one ordered (them); but the enemy  
 ἀντίοι ὥρμησαν, τε οἱ ἵππεῖς καὶ τὸ στίφος  
 opposite rushed-on, not-only the cavalry but-also the mass  
 τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελταστάς  
 of-the Bithynians; and put-to-flight the targeteers  
 •Αλλ' ἐπεὶ ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ὑπηντίᾳ  
 But when the line of-the heavy-armed-men came-up  
 πορευομένη ταχὺ, καὶ ἄμα ἡ σάλπιγξ  
 advancing quickly, and at-the-same-time the trumpet  
 ἐφθέγξατο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα  
 sounded and they-sang-the-pean, and after this  
 ἤλαλαζον, καὶ ἄμα καθίσαν τὰ δόρατα,  
 they-shouted, and at-the-same-time they-couched — (their) spears,  
 ἔνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο,  
 then the enemy did no-longer (stand or) receive  
 ἀλλὰ ἐφευγον. Καὶ Τιμασίων μὲν ἔχων  
 (their attack), but fled. And Timasian indeed having  
 τοὺς ἵππεῖς ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσους  
 the cavalry pursued (them), and killed as-many  
 περ ἐδύναντο, ὡς ὅντες ὀλίγοι. Δὲ μεν  
 as he-could, (ω) (they) being (but) few. And indec  
 τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν πολεμίων καδ' ὁ οἱ  
 the left (wing) of-the enemy against (that) which the  
 •Ἐλληνες ἵππεῖς ἦσαν εὐδὺς διεσπάρη,  
 Greek cavalry were (opposed to) 'was immediately dispersed.  
 δὲ τὸ δεξιὸν, ἀτε οὐ διωκόμενον σφόδρα,  
 but the right (wing), as not being-followed closely,  
 συνέστη ἐπὶ λόφου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ •Ἐλληνες εἶδον  
 stood-collected on (a) hill. When indeed the Greeks saw  
 αὐτούς ὑπομένοντας, ἐδόκει εἰναι τε  
 them making-a-stand, it-seemed (to them) to-be not-only  
 ἁραστόν καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον ἴεναι ἐπ' αὐτούς.  
 the-easiest but-also the-safest to-go against them  
 Παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐδὺς ἐπεκειντο· δ'  
 Singing the-pean therefore 'they immediately attacked (them); but

οἱ οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ  
— they-did not sustain (an attack). And then the  
πελτασται ἐδίωκον, μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη·  
targeteers pursued, until the right (wing) was-dispersed,  
δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀπέδανον· γὰρ τὸ ἵππικὸν φόβον παρεῖχε,  
but few died: for the cavalry fear was-present-to

τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὅν πολὺ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ  
them), the (cavalry) of-the enemy being numerous. When however  
οἱ Ἑλλῆνες εἶδον τε τὸ ἵππικὸν Φαρναβάζου ἔτι  
the Greeks saw not-only the cavalry of-Pharnabazus still  
συνεστηκός, καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἵππέας συναθροιζό-  
standing-together, and the Bithynian cavalry flock-

μένους πρὸς τοῦτο, καὶ ἀπὸ τινὸς λόφου καταδεω-  
ing to these, and from (a) certain hill looking-

μένους τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρηκεσαν μὲν,  
down-on the (things) going-on, (though) they-were-tired indeed,  
ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ εἶναι ἵπτεον ἐπὶ  
yet however it-seemed even to-be (best-and) necessary — (to attack)

τούτους οὕτως ὅπως δύναιντο, ὡς  
them in-as-much as they-might-be-able, that after-'they [the enemy]

ἀναπαύσαιντο μὴ τεδαρέρηκότες.  
had-'rested (they might) not become-confident-and-bold.

Συνταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται.  
Being-drawn-up-in-close-order 'they [the Greeks] indeed 'advanced,

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἵππεῖς φεύγοντι κατὰ  
Then the hostile cavalry flee down (the hill)

τοῦ πρανοῦς, ὅμοίως ὥσπερ οἱ διωκόμενοι  
— precipitately, in-the-same-manner as-if — (they) were-being-pursued

ἵπτο ἵππέων· γὰρ νάπος ὑπεδέχετο αὐτοὺς, ὃ  
by cavalry; for (a) ravine received them, which

οἱ Ἑλλῆνες οὐκ ἤδεσαν, ἀλλὰ προαπετρά  
the Greeks 'did not 'know (of), as they-had-turned

ποντο διώκοντες· γὰρ ἦν ὀψὲ. Δέ ἐπανελ-  
back (from) pursuing; for it-was late. But return-

Σόντες ἐνθα ἡ πρώτη συμβολη ἐγένετο,  
ing (to the place) where the first encounter happened

στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, ἀπήεσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν  
 having-erected (a) trophy, they-went-off towards (the) sea  
 περὶ ὥλιου δυσμάς· δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἔξηκοντα σταδίοι  
 about sun set; and it-was about sixty stadia  
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.  
 to the camp.

---

## CHAPTER VI

\*Εντεῦθεν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ  
 THEN indeed the enemy had (to do) about the  
 ἔαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπῆγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας  
 (affairs) of-themselves, and removed both — (their) families  
 καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι προσωτάτω ἐδύναντο· οἱ  
 and — effects <sup>as</sup> far-off <sup>as</sup> they-could; the  
 "Ελληνες δὲ προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ  
 Greeks however <sup>waited</sup> indeed 'for Cleander and  
 τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἔξοντα·  
 the galleys and the (transport) vessel that were-about-coming,  
 δ' ἔξιόντες ἑκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ἵποζυγίοις  
 and going-out each day with the baggage-cattle  
 καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδεῶς πυρούς;  
 and the slaves they-brought (in) safely wheat,  
 κριδάς, οἶνον, ὅσπρια, μελίνας, σῦκα· γὰρ ἡ χώρα  
 barley, wine, legumes, millet, figs, for the country  
 εἶχεν ἀπαντα ἄγαδὰ πλὴν ἐλαίου.  
 had abundance (of) good (things) except (the olive) oil (tree).  
 Καὶ ὅπότε τὸ στράτευμα καταμένοι ἀναπαυόμενον  
 And while the army remained resting  
 ἔξην <sup>ἰέναι</sup> ἐπὶ λείαν, καὶ ἔξιόντες  
 it-was-allowed (the men) to-go after plunder, and going-out  
 ἐλάμβανον· δὲ ὅπότε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα  
 they-took (what they could); but when the whole army

ἔξιοι, εἰ τις ἀπελθὼν χωρὶς λάβοι τι  
 went-out, if any-one going-away aside (alone) might-take any-thing  
 ἐδοξεν εἶναι δημόσιον. Δέ ην ἡδη ἀφθονία  
 it-judged (it) to-be public-property. And there-was now abundance  
 πάντων· γὰρ καὶ ἀφικοῦντο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων  
 of-all (things); for even there-arrived from the Greek  
 πόλεων πάντοδεν ἀγοραὶ, καὶ οἱ  
 cities every-where (provisions for) markets, and — (those)  
 παραπλέοντες ἀσμενοι κατῆγον, ἀκούοντες  
 sailing-by-there-along (the coast) willingly put-in-there, hearing  
 ὡς πόλις οἰκίζοιτο, καὶ λιμὴν εἴη Δέ  
 that (a) city would-be-built, and (a) harbour be (formed). And  
 καὶ ἡδη οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ὥκουν πλησίον,  
 also already the enemy, —(those namely) dwelling near,  
 ἐπειπον πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος  
 sent to Xenophon, hearing that he  
 πολίζει τὸ χωρίον, ἐρωτῶντες, δὲ τι δέοι  
 is-forming the place, 'to-a-city, inquiring, what it-was-necessary  
 ποιοῦντας εἶναι φίλους. Δ' οὐδὲ εἰκνευεν  
 (for them) to-be-doing to-be friends. And — he-introduced  
 αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις.  
 them to-the soldiers.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται, ἔχων δύο  
 And on this Cleander arrived, having two  
 τριήρεις, δὲ οὐδέν πλοῖον. Δέ τὸ στράτευμα  
 galleys, but no (transport) vessels. But the army  
 ἐτύγχανε δὲν ἔξω, ὅτε ἀφίκετο, καὶ τινὲς οἰχόμενοι  
 happened being out, when he-came, and some were-going  
 ἐπὶ λείαν ἄλλοι ἄλλῃ εἰς τὸ  
 for plunder | others in-another [some one way, some another,] to the  
 δρός, καὶ εἰλήφεσαν πολλά πρόβατα· ὀκνοῦντες  
 mountain, and had-captured many sheep; fearing  
 δέ μὴ ἀφαιρεδεῖν, λέγοντες Δεξίππῳ,  
 however lest they-might-be-taken-from (them), they-told Dexippus,  
 δος ἀπέδρα ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος ἔχων τὴν πεντη-  
 (he) who fled from Trebisond having the fifty-oared

κόνοτρον, καὶ κελεύοντι τὰ πρόβατα  
galley, and they-request (that) the sheep (might be)  
διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς, αὐτὸν μὲν λαβεῖν  
preserved for-themselves, (and that) he indeed (was) to-take  
τὰ, δὲ ἀποδοῦνα τα σφίσιν.  
— (a part of them for himself), but to-return the (rest) to-themselves.

Δ' ἐκεῖνος εὐθὺς ἀπελαύνει τοὺς περι-  
And he [Dexippus] immediately drives-off — (those) stand-  
εστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι εἴη  
ing-round of-the soldiers, and saying that it-was  
δημόσια, καὶ ἐλθὼν τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει, ὅτι  
public-property, and going to Cleander he-says, that  
ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἄρπαζειν.  
they-endeavour to-'seize (them) 'and-take (them) 'away. —

δὲ κελεύει ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτόν τὸν  
(Cleander) however ordered (him) to-bring before him the (one)  
ἄρπαζοντα, καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν τινα  
seizing (the sheep), and — (he) indeed laying-hold-on some-one  
ῆγε.

δ' Ἀγασίας περιτυχών  
was-leading (him away); but Agasias | happening-about [meeting him]  
ἀφαρεῖται. καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἀγόμενος ἦν  
takes-away (the man); for-indeed — (he) being-led-away | was (a)  
λοχίτης αὐτῷ.

Δ' οἱ  
member to-him [was a private soldier in his company]. And the

ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπι-  
others — (those namely) being-present of-the soldiers at-  
χειροῦσι βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες  
tempted to-throw (stones at) — Dexippus, vociferating

τὸν προδότην. Δὲ καὶ πολλοί τῶν τριηριτῶν  
the traitor. And also many of-the galley-men  
ἔδεισαν καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν, καὶ Κλέ-

got-frightened and fled towards the sea, and Cle-  
ανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
ander likewise fled. Xenophon and also the other

στρατηγοὶ τε κατεκάλυνον, καὶ ἔλεγον  
generals not-only endeavoured-to-stop (their flight), but-also told

τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ὅτι εἴη οὐδὲν πρᾶγμα,  
— Cleander | that there-was no thing, [that nothing was  
ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα τοῦ στρατεύματος  
the matter,] but (that) the decree of-the army  
εἴη αἰτιον ταῦτα γενέσθαι. Δέ ὁ Κλέ-  
was (the) cause (that) these (things) occurred. And — Cle-  
ανδρος τε ἀνερεδιζόμενος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξίππου,  
under 'being not-only instigated by — Dexippus,  
καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεσθείς, ὅτι ἔφοβήδη, ἔφη  
but-also he-himself being-vexed, that he-had-been-put-in-fear, said  
ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι, καὶ κηρύξειν μηδεμίαν  
(that) he-would-sail-off, and proclaim (that) no  
πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὡς πολεμίους.  
city should-receive them, as (they were public) enemies.  
Δέ τότε οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἥρχον πάντων τῶν  
For at-that-time the Lacedaemonians governed all —  
Ἐλλήνων. Ἐνταῦθα τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐδόκει πονηρὸν  
Greece. Then — (this) affair appeared serious  
τοῖς Ἐλλησι, καὶ ἐδέοντο  
(and unfortunate) to-the Greeks, and they-entreated (Cleander)  
μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἀν οὐ  
not to-do these (things). But — he-said, (that it) could not  
γενέσθαι ἄλλως, εἰ μή τις ἔκδώσει τὸν  
be otherwise, (if not) (unless) some-one should-give-up the  
ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελό-  
(person) having-commenced to-throw (stones) and the (one) having-  
μενον. Δέ ὁν ἐξήγαγε τὸν Ἀγασίας,  
released (him). But (he) whom he-wanted was Agasias, | the  
φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι διὰ τέλους.  
friend (of) — Xenophon through (out) (to the) end; [the con-  
ἔξ οὖ καὶ ὁ Δεξίππος διέβαλεν  
stant friend of Xenophon;] for which even — Dexippus had-accused  
αὐτόν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειδὴ τὸν ἄπορία,  
him. And then after (this) there-was perplexity  
οἱ ἄρχοντες συνῆγαγον τὸ στράτευμα·  
(therefore) the commanders assembled the army

καὶ ἔτιοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐποιοῦντο παρ' ὀλίγος  
and some indeed of-them made — little  
 τὸν Κλέανδρον, δέ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι  
(of the threats of) — Cleander, but to — Xenophon  
 τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐκ ἐδόκει εἶναι φαῦλον, ἀλλ'  
the affair did not appear to-be trifling, but  
 ἀναστὰς ἐλεξεν·  
rising-up he-said:

\*Ω ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ δέ  
ο men soldiers, the affair does not indeed  
 δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ εἶναι φαῦλον, εἰ Κλέανδρος ἔχων τὴν  
 'seem to-me to-be trifling, if Cleander having — (his)  
 γνώμην οὗτως ἡμῖν ἀπεισιν ὅςπερ λέγει.  
 mind thus (disposed) to-us he-goes-away as he-says.  
 Γάρ μὲν αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις εἰσὶ ἐγγὺς·  
 For indeed the Greek cities are near; (the)  
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι δέ προεστήκασι τῆς Ἑλλάδος· δέ  
 Lacedæmonians indeed at-the-head of — Greece; and  
 εἰσι ἕκανοι καὶ ἔκαστος εἰς Λακεδαιμονίων  
 it-is competent even (for a) single one 'of (the) Lacedæmonians  
 διαπράττεσθαι δ τι βούλονται ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν.  
 to-accomplish whatever (he) wished in those cities.  
 Εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἀποκλειστεὶ ἡμᾶς  
 If therefore this (Cleander) first indeed — us

Βυζαντίου, δέ ἔπειτα παραγγελεῖ τοῖς ἀλλοις  
 'out-of Byzantium, and then should-announce to-the other  
 ἀρμοσταῖς μὴ δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰς πόλεις, ὡς ὅντας  
 governors not to-receive (us) into the cities, as being  
 ἀπιστοῦντας Λακεδαιμονίοις, καὶ ὅντας ἀνόμους,  
 'not-obeying to (the) 'Lacedæmonians, and being lawless,  
 δέ ἔτι οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἥξει πρὸς  
 and moreover-if this — report about us come to  
 \*Αναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον, ἔσται χαλεπόν  
 Anaxibius the commander-of-the-fleet, it-will-be difficult (for us)  
 καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ γάρ τὸν νὺν  
 both to-remain and to-sail-away; for indeed (at) — (this) present

χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐν τῇ γῇ  
 time (the) Lacedæmonians rule both by — land  
 καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ. Οὖν οὐκ δεῖ οὔτε  
 and by — sea. Therefore it-is not 'proper, (that) either  
 ἐνεκα ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς οὔτε δυοῖν ὑμᾶς τοὺς  
 for-the-sake-of one man or of-two (that) we the  
 ἄλλους ἀπέχεσθαι τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἀλλὰ πειστέ-  
 rest be-held-back from — Greece, but it-is-necessary-to-  
 ον δ τι ἀν κελεύωσι· καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις  
 obey-to whatever 'they may 'command; for indeed the cities  
 ἡμῶν, δθεν ἐσμὲν, πείδονται αὐτοῖς. Ἐγὼ μὲν  
 of-us, whence we-are, obey them. I indeed  
 οὖν (καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς  
 therefore (for indeed I-hear (that) Dexippus said to  
 Κλέανδρον, ὡς Ἀγασίας ἀν οὐκ ἐποίησε ταῦτα,  
 Cleander, that Agasias would not have-done these (things),  
 εἰ ἐγὼ μὴ ἐκέλευσα αὐτὸν), ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν  
 if I 'had not 'requested him), I indeed therefore (say)  
 ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας, καὶ Ἀγασίαν,  
 I-clear both you of-the blame, and (also) Agasias,  
 ἀν Ἀγασίας αὐτὸς φήσῃ ἐμέ εἰναι τι αἰτιον  
 should Agasias himself say (that) I was any cause  
 τούτων, καὶ καταδικάζω ἐμαυτοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ  
 of-these (things), and I-will-condemn myself, if I  
 ἐξάρχω πετροβολίας ή τινὸς ἄλλου βιαίου,  
 am-the-beginner of-stone-throwing or any other violence,  
 εἰναι ἀξιος τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης, καὶ ὑφέξω  
 (that I) am worthy of — extreme punishment, and I-will-submit  
 τὴν δίκην. Δὲ φημὶ καὶ, εἰ αἰτιᾶται τινα  
 to-the punishment. And I-say also, if (Dexippus) accuses any  
 ἄλλον, εἰνπὸν χρῆναι παρασχεῖν  
 other (person), (that) he ought to-surrender (himself)  
 Κλεάνδρῳ χρῖναι· γὰρ οὕτω ὑμεῖς ἀν εἰητε  
 to-Cleaner to-try (him); for thus you may be  
 ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας. Ως δὲ νῦν  
 released from — censure. As indeed (the affair) now

Φχει χαλεπόν εἰ oίδμενοι καὶ ἐπαίνου  
 has (itself), (it is) hard if thinking (that) both applause  
 καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι,  
 and honour would-be-prepared (for us) in — Greece, (that)  
 ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων, οὐδὲ ἐσόμεδα δόμοιοι τοῖς  
 in-place indeed of-these, we-will not 'be equal to-the  
 ἄλλοις, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεδα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων  
 other (Greeks), but will-be-excluded from the Grecian  
 πόλεων.  
 cities.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ,  
 After this Agasias rising-up said:  
 Οἱ ἄνδρες, διμνυμι θεοὺς καὶ θεάς η̄ μὴν  
 O men, swear (by all the) gods and goddesses that truly  
 μήτε Ξενοφῶντα κελεῦσαι με ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα,  
 neither Xenophon requested me to-rescue the man,  
 μήτε μηδένα ἄλλον ὑμῶν· δὲ μοι ἵδοντι ἀγα-  
 (nor) (or) no-one else of-you; but I seeing (a) good-  
 δὸν ἄνδρα τῶν ὑμῶν λοχιτῶν ἀγόμενον ὑπὸ<sup>τοῦ</sup>  
 and-brave man of — my company led-off by  
 Δεξίππου, δὸν ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε προδόντα,  
 Dexippus, whom you know (as) betraying (you),  
 ἔδοξεν εἰναι δεινὸν· καὶ δομολογῶ ἀφειλόμην.  
 It-seemed (to me) to-be intolerable; and I-confess (that) I-took  
 Καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν μὴ ἐκδῶτε με, δὲ ἐγὼ  
 him) 'away. And you indeed 'do not 'deliver me 'up, for I  
 ἡμαυτόν, ὡςπερ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, παρασχήσω  
 myself, as Xenophon recommends, will-surrender (myself)  
 Κλεάνδρῳ κρίναντι, ἀν ποιῆσαι ὁ τι  
 to-Cleander (that) having-tried (me), 'he may 'do (with me) whatever  
 βούληται· ἐνεκα τούτου μήτε πολεμεῖτε  
 he may-please; on-account of-this 'do not 'contend 'with (the)  
 Λακεδαιμονίοις, σώζοισθέ τε ἀσφαλῶς,  
 Lacedæmonians, may-you-unharmed indeed (return) safely (to)  
 ὅποι ἔκαστος θέλει. Μέντοι ἐλόμενοι αἵτῶν  
 wherever each-one wishes. Having indeed 'chosen them

ὑμῶν συμπέμψατε μοι πρὸς Κλέανδρον,  
of-yourselves 'send (them) 'with me to Cleander,  
οἵτινες, ἂν ἔγώ παραλείπω τι, καὶ λέξουσιν  
who, if I should-omit any-thing, (might, both speak  
καὶ πράξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ. Ἐκ τούτου ἡ στρατὰ  
and act for me. On this the army  
ἔδωκεν, προσελόμενον οὗστινας βούλοιτο ἵεναι.  
allowed (him), having-chosen whomsoever he-might-wish to-go

‘Ο δὲ προσείλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς.  
(with him). — 'He indeed 'chose the generals.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ, καὶ ὁ  
After this Agasias and the generals, and the  
ἄνηρ ἀφαιρεθεὶς ὑπὸ Ἀγασίου, ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς  
man taken-away by Agasias, proceeded to  
Κλέανδρον. Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔλεγον.  
Cleander. And the generals said:

‘Η στρατιὰ ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς πρὸς σε, ὁ Κλέανδρε,  
The army has-sent us to you, O Cleander,  
καὶ ἐκέλευσέ σε, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ πάντας, σεαυτὸν  
and request you, if you-accuse all, you-yourself  
κρίναντα χρῆσθαι ὁ τι  
having-tried (all) (are) to-treat (them) (in) whatever (manner) 'you  
ἂν βούλῃ, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ τινὰ ἕνα, ἢ δύο, ἢ καὶ  
may 'wish, if you-accuse some one, or two, or even  
πλείους, ἀξιοῦσι τούτους παρασχεῖν  
more, they-think (it) 'right (that) these 'deliver  
ἔαυτοὺς σοι εἰς κρίσιν. Εἴτε οὖν αἰτιᾷ τινα  
themselves 'up to-you for judgment. If therefore you-accuse any-one  
ἡμῶν, ἡμεῖς πάρεσμέν σοι εἴτε καὶ τινά ἄλλον,  
of-us, we are-present (before) you; if even any other,  
φράσον· γάρ οὐδεὶς ἀπέσται ὅστις  
say (so); for no-one shall-be-distant-from (obeying you) who  
ἂν ἐδέλη πείθεσθαι ἡμῖν. Μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ  
may wish to-obey us. After these (things) —  
‘Ἀγασίας παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὁ Κλέανδρε, είμι  
Agasias having-come-forward said: I, O Cleander, am

οὐδὲ ἀφελόμενος τὸν ἄνδρα Δεξίππου ἄγοντος  
 (he) who having-taken-away the man from-Dexippus leading  
 τοῦτον, καὶ κελεύσας παίειν Δέξιπ-  
 him (away), and (also) having-exhorted (the men) to-strike Dexip-  
 ππον. Γάρ μὲν οἶδα ἄνδρα ὅντα ἀγαθὸν·  
 pus. For indeed I-know (the) man (as) being good-and-brave  
 δὲ οἶδα Δέξιππον αἱρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς  
 and I-know (that) Dexippus having-been-chosen by the army  
 ἀρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου, ἵνα γῆτησάμεδα παρὰ  
 to-command the fifty-oar-galley, which we-begged from

Τραπεζούντιῶν ἐφ' ὧτε συλλέγειν πλοῖα  
 (the) Trebisondians | on which to-collect vessels [for the  
 ως σωζόμεδα, καὶ Δέξιππον  
 purpose of collecting vessels] that we-might-be-saved, and Dexippus  
 ἀποδράντα καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας, μεδ'  
 running-away and betraying the soldiers, with  
 δὲ εἰσώδη. Καὶ τε ἀπεστερήκαμεν Τραπε-  
 whom he-had-been-saved. And not-only we-have-deprived (the) people-of-  
 ζούντιον τὴν πεντηκόντορον, καὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι  
 Trebisond (of) the fifty-oared-galley, but-also we-seem to-be  
 κακοὶ διὰ τοῦτον· αὐτοὶ τε ἀπολώλαμεν  
 dishonest through this (man); 'we ourselves indeed 'were-ruined  
 τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ.

Γάρ ἦκουε, | the on this [as far as depended on this man]. For he-had-heard,

ὅς περ ἡμεῖς, ως εἴη ἀπορον ἀπιόντας πεζῇ  
 as-well-as we, that it-would-be impracticable having-departed on-foot

τε διαβῆναι τοὺς ποταμούς, καὶ σωθῆναι  
 not-only to-cross the rivers, but-also | to-be-saved [to get

εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτον οὖν ὅντα  
 safe] to — Greece. (From) this (one) therefore being

τοιοῦτον ἀφειλόμην. Εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες,  
 such (a person) I-rescued (the man). If indeed you were-leading

ἢ τις ἄλλος τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μή  
 (him away), or any-one else of—(those) with you, and not (one)  
 τῶν ἀποδράντων παρ' ἡμῶν, ξεδί εὖ δτι δη  
 if — (taose) deserting from us, know well that 'I would

ποιήσα συδει τούτων. Νόμιζε δ', εὰν νῦν  
 have-done nothing of-these (things). Consider then, if 'you new  
 ἀποκτείνης ἐμὲ, ἀποκτείνων ἀγαθὸν  
 kill me, (you) are-putting-to-death (a) brave-and-honourable  
 ἄνδρα δὶ' ἄνδρα τε δειλόν καὶ πονηρὸν.  
 man for (a) man not-only (a) coward but-also (a) villain.

Ο Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν δὴ μὲν  
 Cleander having-heard this said that indeed  
 οὐκ ἐπαινοίη Δέξιππον, εἰη  
 he-could not approve (of the conduct of) Dexippus, if (he)  
 πεποιηκὼς ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη, νομίζειν,  
 has-been-doing these (things); | not indeed, said-he, to-consider,

εἰ Δέξιππος ἦν παμπόνηρος  
 [but consider, said he,] (that) if Dexippus were (the) worst-of-villains

οὐδὲ χρῆναι αὐτόν πάσχειν βίαν, ἀλλὰ  
 (that) neither ought he to-suffer violence, but  
 κριθέντα, (διπερ καὶ νῦν ὑμεῖς ἀξιοῦτε,) τυχεῖν  
 having-been-tried, (as even now you require,) to-have-met-with  
 τὴς δίκης. Νῦν οὖν μὲν ἀπιτε, καταλιπόντες  
 — justice. Now therefore indeed retire, leaving-behind

τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἔγώ κελεύσω,  
 this — man (Agasias); when indeed I shall-call (you)

πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. Οὔτε δὲ αἰτῶμα  
 be-present at the trial. 'I neither indeed accuse

τὴν στρατιάν, οὔτε οὐδένα ἄλλον ἔτι, ἐπεὶ  
 the army, nor (no-one) (any one) else besides, since

αὐτὸς οὗτος ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. Δέ  
 he himself confesses to-have-released the man. But

ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε,  
 — (the man) having-been-taken-away said: I, O Cleander,

εἰ καὶ οἴει με ἀγεσθαι τι  
 if even you-suppose (that) I was-led-away (for) 'dcing something

ἀδικοῦντα, οὔτε ἐπαιον οὐδένα, οὔτε  
 'wrong, (I indeed) neither struck (no-one) (any one), nor

ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι τὰ πρόβατα εἴη  
 Jhrew (stones), but said that the sheep were

δημόσια· γὰρ ἦν δόγμα τῶν στρατιωτῶν, εἰ  
public-property; for it-was (a) decree of-the army, if  
τι, ὅπότε ἡ στρατιὰ ἔξιοι, ίδίᾳ ληῆσον  
any-when, when the army went-out, 'should privately make-any-  
το, τὰ λήφθεντα εἶναι δημόσια. Γαῦτα  
capture be (things sc.) captured to-be public-property. These  
εἶπον· καὶ ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν με οὗτος  
(things) I-said; and on this seizing me this  
ῆγεν, ἵνα μηδείς μὴ  
(Dexippus) was-leading (me away), in-order-that no-one 'might —  
φθέγγοιτο, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος  
'utter (any thing), but he taking — (a) part  
διασώσειε τὰ χρήματα τοῖς λῃσταῖς παρὰ τὴν  
might-preserve the things for-the plunderers contrary-to the  
ρήτραν. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ  
agreement. To this — Cleander said: Since  
τοίνυν εἰ τοιοῦτος, κατάμενε, ἵνα καὶ βούλευσά-  
therefore you-are such-a-person, remain-here, that even I-may-delibe-  
μεδα περὶ σοῦ.  
rate about you.

\*Ex τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἤριστων  
After this —(those) indeed about Cleander went-to-supper;  
δὲ Ξενοφῶν συνήγαγε τὴν στρατιὰν, καὶ συνεβού-  
and Xenophon assembled the army, and coun-  
λενε πέμψαι ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον παραιτη-  
sellel (them) to-send men to Cleander inter-  
σομένους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. \*Ex τούτου ἔδοξεν  
ceding for the men. On this it-seemed (good)  
αὐτοῖς, πέμψαντας στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς καὶ  
to-them, having-sent (the) generals and captains, and  
Δραλόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην, καὶ τῶν ἀλλων  
Dracontius the Spartan, and (those) of-the others  
οἱ ἔδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτήδειοι, δεῖσθαι  
who seemed to-be fit (for the occasion), to-entreat  
Κλεάνδρου κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφεῖναι τῷ ἄνδρε. Lear der by all means to-set-free the-two men

Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἐλθὼν λέγει· Ἐχεις μὲν, ὁ Κλέανδρος,  
 Xenophon therefore going says: You have indeed, O Cleander,  
 τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιά ὑφείτο σοι ποιῆσαι ὅ τι  
 the men, and the army allowed you to-do what  
 ἔθεούλουν, καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ ἀπάντων  
 you-wished, both (as) respects these and (as) respects all  
 ἔαντῶν· νῦν δὲ αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται σε  
 (of) themselves; now indeed they-entreat and request you  
 δοῦναι σφισι τῷ ἄνδρε, καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν·  
 to-give to-themselves the-two men, and not 'put (them) 'to-death;  
 γὰρ ἐμοχθησάτην πολλὰ ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ ἐμπροσθεν  
 for they-laboured much in the time past  
 περὶ τὴν στρατιὰν. Δέ τυχόντες  
 as-respects (being of service to) the army. And having-obtained  
 ταῦτα σου, ὑπισχνοῦνται σοι ἀντὶ τούτων,  
 this from-you, they-promise you in-return-for these (things),  
 ἢν βούλῃ ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν, καὶ ἢν οἱ θεοὶ ὕστιν  
 if you-wish to-lead them, and if the gods may-be  
 ἴλεω, ἐπιδείξειν σοι, καὶ ὡς κόσμιοι  
 propitious, (that they) will-show you, both how orderly-and-well-dis-  
 εῖσι καὶ ὡς ἰκανοί πειδόμενοι.  
 ciplined they-are and how competent (they are when) obeying  
 τῷ ἄρχοντι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ  
 — (their) commanders, (and) with (the assistance of) the gods not  
 φοβεῖσθαι τοὺς πολεμίους. Δέ καὶ δέονται σου  
 to-fear the enemy. And also they-entreat of-you  
 καὶ τοῦτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα  
 even this, (that) having-come and having-taken-command  
 αὐτῶν, λαθεῖν πεῖραν καὶ  
 of-them, (and that) | to-have-taken experience [to make trial of] both  
 Δεξίππου καὶ τῶν ἀλλων σφῶν, οἵος ἔκαστος ἐστι,  
 Dexippus and of-the rest of-them, what each is,  
 καὶ νεῖμαι ἔκάστοις τὴν ἀξίαν.  
 and to-distribute to-each-one — (his) merit [and give each one his  
 Ὁ Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα, ἔφει  
 deserts! -- Cleander having-heard these (things) said

\*Αἰλλὰ ναὶ τῷ σιώ, ταχύ τοι ἀποκρινοῦμα.  
But by the twin-gods, I-will speedily — <sup>'answer</sup>  
ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὲ δίδωμι τῷ ἄνδρε ὑμῖν, καὶ  
you. And not-only I-give the-two men to-you, but-also  
αὐτὸς παρέσομαι. καὶ ἦν οἱ θεοὶ παραδίδωσιν,  
I-myself will-come (to you); and if the gods grant,  
ἔξηγήσομαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Καὶ οἱ οὗτοι  
I-will-lead (you) to — Greece. And — those  
λόγοι εἰσὶν πολὺ ἀντίοι, ἢ  
words (of yours) are much opposed, than [are very different from  
οὓς ἐγὼ ἤκουν περὶ ἐνίων ὑμῶν, ὡς  
those] which I heard about some of-you, (namely) that  
ἀφίστατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων,  
you-were-alienating the army from (the) Lacedæmonians.

\*Ἐκ τούτου μὲν οἱ ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπῆλθον  
On this indeed — they-applauding (him) departed  
ἔχοντες τῷ ἄνδρε. Δὲ Κλέανδρος ἔδύετο ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
having the-two men. And Cleander sacrificed about  
τὴν πορείᾳ, καὶ ξυνῆν φιλικῶς Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ  
the journey, and he-associated friendly with-Xenophon, and  
ξυνεβάλοντο ξενίαν. Δὲ καὶ ἐπεὶ<sup>2</sup>  
they-joined (intimately in the) bonds-of-hospitality. And also when  
ἐώρα αὐτοὺς ποιοῦντας εὐτάκτως τὸ παραγγελ-  
he-saw them doing in-good-order the (things) com-  
λόμενον, καὶ ἐπι μᾶλλον ἐπεδύμει γενέσθαι  
manded, and yet more he-desired to-become (the)  
ἴγεμῶν αὐτῶν. \*Ἐπεὶ μέντοι αὐτῷ θυομένῳ ἐπὶ<sup>3</sup>  
leader of-them. When however he sacrificing for  
τρεῖς ὥμερας, τὰ ιερά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο,  
three days, the victims did not become (favourable),  
συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπε· Τὰ ιερὰ<sup>4</sup>  
calling-together the generals he-said: The victims were  
οὐκ ἐτελέσθαι ἔξαγειν.  
not 'brought-to-an-end (so as to be favourable for me) to-'lead (you) 'away,  
μὴ ἀδυμεῖτε μέντοι ἐνεκα τούτου· γάρ ὑμῖν,  
he not 'you-discouraged however on-account of-this; for you

ώς ἔοικε, δέδοται ἐκκομίσαι τοὺς ἄνδρας.  
as it-is-proper, it-is-given to-lead-out the men (home);  
ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε· ἡμεῖς δὲ, ἐπειδὰν ἤκητε ἐκεῖσε,  
but proceed; we indeed, when you arrive there  
δεζόμεδα ὑμᾶς ὡς κάλλιστα ἀτ  
(at Byzantium), will-receive you 'as handsomely 'as 'we may  
δυνώμεδα.  
be-able.

\*Ἐκ τούτου ἐδοξεῖ τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι  
On this it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers to-give  
αὐτῷ τὰ πρόβατα δημόσια· ὁ δὲ  
aim the sheep (being) public-property; — (he) indeed  
δεξάμενος, πάλιν ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς. Καὶ  
having-received (them), again returns (the sheep) to-them. And  
ηὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. Οἱ στρατιώται δὲ διαδέμενοι  
he indeed set-sail. The soldiers however having-sold  
τὸν σῖτον, δὴν ἥσαν συγκεκομισμένοι, καὶ τἄλλα  
he corn, which they-had-collected, and the-other  
ἀ εἰλήφεσαν, ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Bi-  
(things) which they-had-captured, departed through — Bi-  
Συνῶν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πορευόμενοι τὴν ὁρδὴν ὁδόν ἐνέ-  
thynia. But when pursuing the straight road they-  
τυχον οὐδενὶ, ὡς τε ἔχοντες τι ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν  
met-with nothing, so-that having something to-go to — (a)  
φιλίαν, ἐδοξεν αὐτοῖς ὑποστρέψαντες  
friendly (country), it-seemed (good) to-them having-marched  
τοῦμπαλιν ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. Δε  
back-again to-go one day and night. And  
ποιήσαντες τοῦτο, ἔλαβον καὶ πολλὰ ἄνδράποδα  
doing this, they-took both many slaves  
καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἔκταιοι εἰς  
and sheep (or cattle); and arrived (in) six (days) at  
Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν  
Chrysopolis of-the Calchedonians, and there they-remained  
ἔπτα ἡμέρας λαφυροπωλοῦντες.  
seven days selling-booty.

## BOOK VII.

## CHAPTER I.

"Οσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ  
 WHAT indeed truly the Greeks did in the  
 ὑναβάσει μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,  
 march-up (the country) with Cyrus until the battle,  
 καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐπεὶ Κῦρος  
 and what (they did and experienced) in the journey after Cyrus  
 ἐτελεύτησε μέχρι ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸν Πόντον, καὶ  
 died until they-arrived at the Euxine-Sea, and  
 ὅσα ἐποίουν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἐξιόντες πεζῇ, καὶ  
 what they-did from the Euxine, departing on-foot, and  
 ἐκπλέοντες, μέχρι ἐγένοντο ἔξω τοῦ στόματος  
 sailing-off, until they-got beyond the mouth (thereof)  
 ἐν Χρυσοπόλει τῆς Ἀσίας, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ  
 at Chrysopolis — (in) Asia, has-been-related in the  
 πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβού-  
 preceding discourse. On this indeed Pharnabazus fear-  
 μενος τὸ στράτευμα, μὴ στρατεύηται ἐπὶ  
 ing the (Grecian) army, lest it-might-invade —  
 τὴν χώρον αὐτοῦ, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίδιον τὸν  
 the country of-himself, having-sent to Anaxibius the  
 ναύαρχον, (ό δ' ἔτυχεν ὁν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ,) (Spartan)  
 admiral, (who indeed happened being in Byzantium,)  
 ἐδεῖτο τὸ στράτευμα διαβιβάσαι ἐξ  
 he-requested (him) to-'have the army transported from  
 τῆς Ασίας. καὶ ὑποσχνεῖτο ποιήσειν αἰτῷ πάντα,  
 — Asia, and promised to-do for-him all.

ὅσα δέοι. Καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίδιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς  
what he-might-require. And Anaxibius sent-for the  
στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἰς  
generals and captains of-the soldiers (to come) to  
Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑποσχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαῖεν,  
Byzantium, and promised, if they-should-come-over (to him),

ἐπεσθαι μισθοφοριὰν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Οἱ  
(that) there-would-be pay for-the soldiers. The

ἄλλοι μὲν δὴ ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι  
rest (of the officers) indeed truly said (that) after-having-consulted

ἀπαγγελεῖν Δὲ Ξενο-  
(together) they-would-announce (to him their determination). But Xeno-

φῶν εἶπεν αὐτῷ, ὅτι, ἥδη ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἀπὸ τῆς  
phon said to-him, that, already about-to-depart from the

στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιτο ἀποπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ ὁ Ἀναξί-  
army, 'he even wished to-set-sail. But — Anaxi-

διος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν, ἐπειτα συνδιαβάντα  
bius requested him, (that) after having-crossed-over-with

οὗτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Οὖν ἔφη  
(the others) then to-depart. 'He therefore said (that he)

ποιήσειν ταῦτα.

would-do these (things).

Δὲ Σεύδης ὁ Θρᾳξ πέμπει Μηνδοσάδην, καὶ  
But Seuthes the Thracian sends Mendosades, and  
κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροδυμεῖσθαι δπως τὸ  
requests Xenophon to-join-in-the-effort-with (him) that the  
στράτευμα διαβῆ, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ συμπροδυμη-  
army might-cross-over, and he-said to-him actively-taking-part-

δέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. Δ' ὁ  
in-the-effort that he-'would not 'repent (it). And — (Xenophon)  
εἶπεν. Ἄλλὰ μὲν τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσεται.  
said: But indeed the army will-cross-over;

Ἐνεκα τούτου τελείτω μηδὲν μήτε ἔμοι, μήτε μηδενί  
οὐ-reason of-this let-him-pay no-one neither me, nor (no-one)

ἄλλω. ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαβῆ, ἐγὼ μὲν  
,any one) else: when indeed it-may-have-crossed-over, I indeed

ἀπαλλάξομι, προσφερέσθω πρὸς τοὺς δέ  
shall-leave (r) let-him-address-himself to — (th<sup>ose</sup>) indeed  
διαμένοντας, καὶ ὅντας ἐπικαιρίους, ὡς ἀν δοκῆ  
having-remained, and being opportune, (so) as may seem  
αὐτῷ ἀσφαλές.  
to-him safe (and not calculated to fail).

<sup>3</sup>Ἐκ τούτου πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται διαβαίνονται  
After this all the soldiers cross-over  
εἰς τὸ Βυζαντιον. Καὶ ὁ Ἀραξίδιος μὲν οὐκ  
to — Byzantium. And — Anaxibius indeed did not  
ἔδιδον μισθὸν, δὲ ἐκήρυξε τοὺς στρα-  
'give (them) pay, but made-proclamation (that) the sol-  
τιώτας λαβόντας τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη<sup>η</sup>  
diers taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage  
ἔξιέναι, ὡς τε ἀποπέμψων  
(should) go-out (of the city), as (if) not-only 'sending (them) 'away  
καὶ ἄμα ποιήσων ἀριθ-  
(home), but-also at-the-same-time (as if) (making) (taking) (their) num-  
μὸν. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἦχθοντο, ὅτι  
number. Then the soldiers were-distressed, (because) that  
εἶχον οὐκ ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν,  
they-had no money to-get-provisions on the journey,  
καὶ ὅκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. Καὶ δέ  
and 'they reluctantly 'packed-up (their) 'baggage. And —  
Ξενοφῶν, γεγενημένος ξένος Κλεάνθρῳ τῷ  
Xenophon, having-become (the) guest-friend to-Cleander the  
ἄρμοστῃ, προσελθὼν ἤσπαζετο αὐτὸν  
governor, going-to (him) he-kindly-'saluted him 'taking-leave  
ὡς ἥδη ἀποπλευσούμενος. Οὐ δέ λέγει  
as now about-sailing-away. — (Cleander) indeed said  
αὐτῷ. Μὴ ποιήσῃς ταῦτα· εἰ δέ μή,  
to-him: 'Do not 'do this: | if indeed not, [for otherwise]  
ἔφη, εἴξεις αἰτίαν, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινες  
said-he, you-will-have (the) blame, since even now some  
ἥδη αἰτιῶνται σὲ ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα οὐ ταχὺ<sup>η</sup>  
already blame you that the army 'does not quickly

ἔξερπει. Δ' ὁ εἰπεν· Ἀλλ' ἔγωγε εἰμί  
 creep-out. And — (Xenophon) said: But I-at-least am  
 οὐ μὲν αἴτιος τούτου, δ' οἱ στρατιῶται αἵτοι  
 not indeed (the) cause of-this, but the soldiers themselves  
 δεόμενοι ἐπιστισμοῦ, διὰ τούτο ἀδυμοῦσι πρὸς  
 wanting provisions, through this they-are-troubled about  
 τὴν ἔξοδον. Ἀλλ' ὅμως, ἔφη, ἔγώ συμβούλεύω  
 the departure. But however, said-he, I advise  
 σοι μὲν ἔξελθεῖν ὡς πορευσόμενον,  
 you indeed to-go-out (with them) as (if) about-accompanying (them).  
 δ' ἐπειδὴν τὸ στράτευμα γένηται ἔξω, τότε  
 and when the army has-got without (the city), then  
 ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν,  
 to-leave (it). (We) therefore, said — Xenophon,  
 ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίδιον διαπραξώμεδα ταῦτα.  
 going to Anaxibius will-settle these (things)  
 Οὖτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. Δέ ὁ  
 Thus going (to him) they-told (him) these (things). And — (he)  
 ἐκέλευσε ποιεῖν οὖτω, καὶ συνεσκευ-  
 requested (them) to-do so, and (that the soldiers) having  
 ασμένους ἔξιένται τὴν ταχίστην,  
 'packed-up (their) 'baggage should-go-out in-the quickest (time),  
 καὶ προσανειπεῖν, δις ἀν μὴ παρῇ  
 and moreover-to-declare-publicly, (that he) who might not be-present  
 εἰς τὴν ἔξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμόν, διτὶ αὐτὸς  
 at the review and at the numbering, that he  
 αἰτιάσεται αὗτὸν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ τε στρατηγοί  
 (would) blame himself. Then the — generals  
 ἔξήσαν πρῶτοι, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. Καὶ ἀρδην  
 went-out first, and the others (after them). And altogether  
 πάντες ἦσαν ἔξω πλὴν ὄλιγων, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος  
 all were out except (some) few, and Eteonicus  
 εἰστήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας, ὡς, ὅπότε πάντες  
 stood by the gates, that, when all  
 γένοιντο ἔξω συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας, καὶ  
 had-got out (ready for) shutting the gates, and

έμβαλῶν τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξίδιος συγκαλέσας  
throwing-in the bar. And — Anaxibius having-called-together  
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς εἶλεξε·  
the generals and the captains said:  
Λαμβάνετε, ἔφη, μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων  
You-may take, said-he, indeed — provisions from the Thracian  
κωμῶν· (δὲ εἰσὶ αὐτόδι πολλαὶ κριδαὶ καὶ πυροί,  
villages; (and there-is there much barley and wheat,  
καὶ τὰλλα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.) δὲ λαβόντες  
and other — provisions;) and taking (these things)  
πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερόφονήσον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος  
proceed to (the) Chersonesus, where indeed Cyniscus  
μισθοδοτήσει ὑμῖν. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν  
will-give you 'pay. But some of-the soldiers  
ἢ καὶ τις τῶν λοχαγῶν ἐπακούσαντες ταῦτο,  
or even some (one) of-the captains having-overheard these  
διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ οἱ  
(things), communicated (them) to the army. And the  
στρατηγοὶ μὲν ἐπυνδάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύδουν,  
generals indeed (also) inquired about — Seuthes,  
πότερα εἴη πολέμιος ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότερα  
whether he-might-be inimical or friendly, and whether  
δέοι πορεύεσθαι διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὅρους, ἢ  
it-was-necessary to-march over the sacred mountain, or 'in (a)  
κέκλω διὰ μέσης τῆς Θράκης. Δὲ ἐν  
'circuit through (the) middle of — Thrace. But during (the time)  
ἣ διελέγοντο ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται  
in-which they-were-conversing-about these (things) the soldiers  
ἀναρπάσαντες τὰ ὅπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς  
having-snatched-up — (their) arms run in-full-speed to  
τὰς πύλας, ὡς πάλιν εἰσιόντες εἰς τὸ  
the gates, so-that again (they were about) entering within the  
τείχος. Δὲ ὁ Ἔτεονίκος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ,  
walls. And — Eteonicus and —(those) with him,  
ὡς εἶδον τοὺς ὄπλιτας προσδέοντας συγκλείοντι  
as they-saw the heavy-armed-men running-towards (them) sbu'

τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐμβάλλονται τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ οἱ  
the gates and thrust-in the bar. But the  
στρατιῶται ἐκοπτόν τε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἔλεγον  
soldiers knocked indeed at-the gates, and said,  
ὅτι πάσχοιεν ἀδικώτατα ἐκβαλλόμενοι εἰς τοὺς  
that they-suffered most-unjustly, being-thrown-out to the  
πολεμίους· καὶ ἔφασαν κατασχίσειν τὰς  
enemy; and they-said (that they would) cut-down the  
πύλας, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες ἀνοίζουσιν. Ἀλλοι  
gates, if they-did not voluntarily open (them) Others  
δὲ ἔθεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν, καὶ ὑπερβαίνουσιν εἰς  
indeed ran to (the) sea, and went-over into  
τὴν πόλιν παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τείχους· δὲ ἄλλοι  
the city along the pier of-the wall; but others  
τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ ἐτύγχανον δύντες  
of-the soldiers (those namely) who happened being  
ἔνδον, ὡς ὅρῶσι τὰ πράγματα ἐπὶ<sup>1</sup>  
within (the walls), as they-perceived the things (going on) at  
ταῖς πύλαις, διακόπτοντες τὰ κλειδά ταῖς  
the gates, cutting-through the bars with — (their)  
ἀξίναις, ἀναπεταννύονται τὰς πύλας· δ' οἱ  
axes, they-opened-wide the gates; and — (they all)  
εἰσπιπτούσιν.  
rush-in

Οἱ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὡς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα  
— Xenophon indeed as he-saw the (things) going-on,  
δείσας μὴ τὸ στράτευμα τράποιτο ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν,  
having-feared lest the army might-turn to plunder,  
καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει, καὶ ἔαυτῷ,  
and irreparable evil might-happen to-the city, and to-himself,  
καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔθει, καὶ συνεισπίτει σὺν  
and to-the army, ran, and rushes-in-together with  
τῷ δχλῷ εἰσω τῶν πυλῶν. Οἱ Βυζάντιοι δὲ, ὡς  
the crowd within the gates. The Byzantians indeed, as  
εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα εἰσπίπτον βίᾳ φεύγοντιν ἐκ  
they saw the army rushed-in by-force fled from

τῆς ὑγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δέ  
 the market, — (some) indeed to the ships, — (some) indeed  
 οἴκαδε· ὅσοι δὲ ἐτύγχανον ὅντες ἔνδον  
 home; such indeed (who) happened being within (deors)  
 ἔθεον ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον τὰς τριήρεις,  
 ran out, — (some) indeed hauled-down the galleys (late  
 ὡς σώζοιντο ἐν ταῖς τριήρεις· δὲ πάντες  
 (the water), that they-might-be-saved in the galleys; but all  
 φόντο απολωλέναι, ὡς τὴς πόλεως  
 thought (themselves) to-have-been-lost, as (believing) the town  
 ἔαλωκνίας. Δὲ ὁ Ἐτεόνικος ἀποφεύγει εἰς τὴν  
 having-been-captured. But — Eteonicus flees-away to the  
 ἄκραν. Οὐ Ἀναξίβιος δὲ καταδραμὼν ἐπὶ<sup>τὸν</sup>  
 citadel. — Anaxibius indeed running-down to (the)  
 θάλατταν περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἄκροπολιν ἐν ἀλιευ-  
 sea sailed-round to the citadel in (a) fish-  
 τικῷ πλοίῳ, καὶ εὐδὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ  
 ing boat, and immediately he-sends-for (men) from (the)  
 φρουρούς Καλχηδόνος· γὰρ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἄκροπόλει  
 garrison of-Calchedon; for — (those) in the citadel  
 οὐκ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἴκανοι σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας.  
 'did not appear to-be sufficient to-restrain the men  
 Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ὡς εἶδον τὸν Ξενοφῶντα,  
 The soldiers however as they-saw — Xenophon,  
 προεπίπτουσιν αὐτῷ, πολλοί, καὶ λέγουσι·  
 rushed-up to-him, (they being) many, and said:  
 Νῦν ἔξεστι σοι, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, γενέσθαι ἄνδρι.  
 Now it-is-allowed you, O Xenophon, to-become (a great) man.  
 Ἐχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα,  
 You-have (the) city, you-have galleys, you-have money,  
 ἔχεις τοσούτους ἄνδρας. Νῦν, εἰ βούλοω,  
 you-have such-a-great-number (of) men. Now, if you-wish  
 σύ ἀν τε ὀνήσιας ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἡμεῖς ποιήσαιμεν  
 you may not-only profit us, but-also we will-make  
 σὲ μέγαν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄλλ'  
 you (a) great (man). And — (Xenophon) replied: But

τε λέγετε εὖ, καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ  
 'you not-only say well, but-also I-will-do these (things); if  
 δὲ ἐπιθυμεῖτε τούτων, θέσθε τὰ ὅπλα  
 indeed you-desire these (things), place-yourselves — (under) arms  
 ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· Βουλόμενος  
 (and) in order as speedily (as possible); (he) wishing  
 κατηρεμίσαι αὐτοὺς· καὶ τε αὐτός παρηγγύα  
 to-have-tranquillized them; and not-only he-himself ordered  
 ταῦτα, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς ἄλλους  
 these (things), but-also he-requested the other (officers)  
 παρεγγυᾶν τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα. Δέ  
 to-order (the men) to-place-themselves — (under) arms. And  
 οἱ αὐτοὶ ταττόμενοι ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν, τε  
 — they arranging (themselves) on themselves, not-only 'did  
 οἱ ὅπλιται ἐγένοντο εἰς ὀκτώ ἐν  
 the heavy-armed-men become in (number) eight (deep) in (a)  
 ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ παραδεδραμήκεσαν  
 short time, and the targeteers had-ran-on-the-side  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἔκατερον κέρας. Δὲ τὸ χωρίον ἐστι  
 to — each wing. And the place, (which) is  
 οἷον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι καλούμενον  
 such (as is) most-beautiful to-draw-up-in-order (an army), is-called  
 τὸ Θράκιον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. Ἔπει  
 the Thracian, clear of-houses and level. When  
 δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο, καὶ κατηρε-  
 indeed the arms lay (in place), and (the men) were-some-  
 μίσθησαν, Ξενοφῶν συγκαλεῖ τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ  
 what-tranquillized, Xenophon assembled the army, and  
 λέγει τάδε·  
 speaks thus:

Ὅτι μὲν ὁργίζεσθε, ὃ ἀνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ  
 That indeed you-are-angry, O men soldiers, | and  
 νομίζετε, ἐχαπατώμενοι, πάσχειν δεινά,  
 think, being-deceived, to-suffer greatly, [and think, that  
 οὐ θαυμάζω.  
 you have been badly treated, in being thus deceived,] I-'am not 'surprised

Δέ εἰ τὴν χαριζόμεδα τῷ θυμῷ, καὶ τιμωρησόμεδα  
But if we-gratify — (our) anger, and punish

τε Λακεδαιμονίους τοὺς παρόντας,  
not-only (the) Lacedæmonians, — (those namely) being-present,

τὴς ἔξαπάτης, καὶ διαρπάσωμεν τὴν πόλιν  
(for) the deceit, but-also plunder the city

οὐδὲν τὴν αἰτίαν, ενθυμεῖσθε ἀ εἴσται  
| not the cause, [not to blame,] | consider what will-be

ἔντεῦθεν. Ἐσόμεδα  
from-this [consider what will be the consequences]. We-will-be

μὲν ἀποδειγμένοι πολέμοι Λακεδαιμονίους  
indeed (the) declared enemies (of the) Lacedæmonians

καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις. Οἵος δ' ὁ πόλεμος ἀν  
and — (their) allies. What indeed the war may

γένοιτο πάρεστιν δὴ εἰκάζειν, ἐωρακότας καὶ  
be it-is-possible indeed to-conjecture, having-seen and

ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν ἡδη γεγενημένα.  
remembered | the (things) now recently having-occurred

Γάρ ήμεῖς οἱ Ἀθεναῖοι  
[the things that have but recently occurred]. For we — Athenians

ῆλθομεν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς τοὺς  
went into the war — (that namely) with the

Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, ἔχοντες  
Lacedæmonians and — (their) allies, having

τριήρεις, τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ, δὲ τὰς ἐν  
galleys, — (some) indeed at sea, and — (some) in

τοῖς νεωρίοις, οὐκ ἐλάττους τριακοσίων,  
the docks, (together) not less (than) three-hundred,

ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει,  
there-being also much money in the city

καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν τε  
[Acropolis], and (the) income being yearly not-only

ἀπό τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ ἐκ τῆς ὑπερορίας  
from the home (revenues) but-also from — (our) foreign

οὐ μείον χιλίων ταλάντων, ἀρχοντες  
'territories) net less (than) a-thousand talents. ruling

ή εἰ ἀπασῶν τῶν νήσων, καὶ τε ἔχοντες πολλὰς  
 also all the islands, and also having many  
 πόλεις ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, καὶ τε πολλὰς ἄλλας ἐν τῇ  
 towns in — Asia, and also many others in —  
 Εὐρώπῃ, καὶ ἔχοντες αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον,  
 Europe, and having this very-same — Byzantium,  
 δπον ἔσμεν νῦν, κατεπολεμήδημεν  
 where we-are now, (yet) | we-were-warred-against [the war was car-  
 ώς ὑμεῖς πάντες ἐπίστασθε. Δὲ νῦν  
 ried on against us] as you all know. But now  
 δὴ ἀν οἰόμεδα τί παθεῖν, Λακεδαι-  
 truly 'we may think what (we may have) to-suffer, (the) Lacedae-  
 μονίων καὶ μὲν τῶν Ἀχαιῶν ὑπαρχόντων συμ-  
 monians and indeed the Achæans being ai-  
 μάχων, δὲ Ἀθηναίων, καὶ ὅσοι ἦσαν τότε  
 lies, and (the) Athenians, and such (as) were then  
 σύμμαχοι ἐκείνοις, πάντων προσγεγενημένων.  
 allies (of) them, all having-become-joined-to (them).  
 δὲ Τισσαφέροντος καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Βαρβάρων ἐπὶ  
 and Tissaphernes (as) also the other barbarians on (the)  
 θλάττῃ πάντων ὄντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν, δὲ  
 sea (coast) all being enemies to-us, but (the)  
 πολεμιωτάτου αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω.  
 most-inimical (being) this-same — king up (in the  
 δν ἥλθομεν ἀφαιρησό-  
 country); whom we-went (against for the purpose of) taking-  
 μενοι τε τὴν ἀρχήν καὶ ἀποκτε-  
 away not-only — (his) rule [throne] but-also (of) kill-  
 νοῦτες, εἰ δυναίμεδα. Πάντων τούτων δὴ  
 ing (him), if we-could. All these truly  
 δντων ὁμοῦ, ἔστι τις οὖτως ἀφρων, ὅστις  
 being alike (against us), is-there any-one so foolish, who  
 οἴεται ἡμᾶς ἀν περιγενέσθαι; Μή, πρὸς  
 thinks (that) we might get-the-superiority? Let-'us not, —  
 θεῶν, μαινώμεδα μηδ' ἀπολώμεδα  
 (in the name of the) gods, 'act-like-madmen nor perish

αἰσχρῶς, ὅντες πολέμιοι καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι, καὶ  
disgracefully, being enemies both to — (our) country, and

τοῖς ἡμετέροις φίλοις αὐτῶν τε καὶ οἰκείοις.  
to — our friends (of-ourselves) and also to (our) relations

Γὰρ εἰσὶ πάντες ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ταῖς  
For they-are all in the cities — (those namely that)

στρατευσομέναις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ μὲν  
will-be-marching against us, and justly, if indeed

ἡδελήσαμεν κατασχεῖν οὐδεμίαν βάρβαρον πόλιν,  
we-wished to-take-possession-of no barbarian city,

καὶ κρατοῦντες ταῦτα δὲ πρώτην Ἑλληνίδα  
and (we) being-superior-in-force to-these; but (the) first Greek

πόλιν εἰς ἦν ἥλθομεν, ταύτην ἔξαλαπάζομεν.  
city to which we-came. that (namely) we-plundered.

Ἐγὼ μὲν τούννν εὐχομαι πρὶν ἐπιδεῖν ταῦτα  
I indeed therefore pray (that) before I-behold such

γενόμενα ἵφ' ὑμῶν, ἐμέ γε γενέσθα  
(things) brought-to-pass by you, (that) I at-least (may) be

μυρίας ἀργυρίας κατὰ γῆς. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν,  
a-thousand fathoms under ground. And I-advice you,

ὅντας Ἑλληνας, πειδομένους τοῖς προεστη-  
being Greeks, (that) yielding-obedience to -- (those) standing-at-

κοσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων πειρᾶσθαι τυγχάνειν τῶν  
the-head-of-the Greeks to-endavour to-obtain —

δικαίων. Εάν δέ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα,  
justice. If indeed you-are not 'able (to obtain) this,

δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀδικουμένους μὴ γοῦν  
it-is-proper (that) you (though) wronged 'should not therefore

στέρεσθαι Ἑλλάδος. Καὶ νῦν δοκεῖ μοι  
'deprive-yourselves of-Greece. And now it-seems to-me (that)

πέμπταντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἶπεῖν, ὅτι ἡμεῖς παρεληλύ-  
having-sent to-Anaxibius to-say, that we have-en-

δαμεν εἰς τὴς πόλιν ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν βίαιον, ἀλλ'  
tered into the city about-committing no violence, but

ἥν μὲν δυνώμεδα εἰρίσκεσθαι τι ἀγαθὸν παρ'  
if indeed we-could to-obtain something good from

ὑμῶν· δέ εἰ μή, ἀλλὰ δηλώσοντες, ὅτι  
you; but if not, yet (however) showing, that  
ἐξερχόμεδα οὐκ ἐξαπατώμενοι, ἀλλὰ πειδό-  
we-go-out not (as) being-deceived, but (as) obey-  
μενοι.  
ing (you).

Kai ταῦτα ἔδοξε.  
| And these (things) seemed (good); [and these propositions were  
καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε Ἡλεῖον,  
adopted,] and they-sent Hieronymus — (the) Elean,  
ἔροῦντα ταῦτα, καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα,  
saying these (things), and-likewise Eurylochus (the) Arcadian,  
καὶ Φιλήσιον Ἀχαιόν. Οἱ μὲν ὤχοντο  
and Philesius (the) Achæan. — | (They) indeed went  
ἔροῦντες ταῦτα.  
saying these (things) [they went carrying this message]

Δέ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔτι καθημένων Κοιρα-  
τάδης Θηβαῖος προσέρχεται, ὃς οὐ  
But the soldiers "being still" "seated" Coera-  
tades (a) Theban came-up (to them), who (though) not  
φεύγων περιήει τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀλλὰ στρατη-  
(a) fugitive, went-about — Greece, but wishing-to-be-  
γιῶν, καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἰ ἢ  
a-general, | and announced-himself, [and offering his services,] if either  
τις πόλις ἢ ἔδνος δέοιτο στρατηγοῦ· καὶ τότε  
any city or nation might-require (a) general; and then  
προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἴη ἔτοιμος ἥγεισθαι αὐτοῖς  
coming-forward he-said, that he-was prepared to-conduct them  
εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἐνδα  
to the Delta, (so) called of — Thrace, where  
πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ λήψοιντο· δ' ἔστε  
many and good (things) might-be-obtained; and until 'the  
ἄν μόλωσιν, ἔφη παρέξειν καὶ σῖτα καὶ  
should 'arrive, he-said (that) he-would-supply both meat and  
ποτά εἰς ἀφθονίαν. Οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούονται  
drink in abundance. The soldiers listen-to

ταῦτα, καὶ ἄμα τὰ ἀπαγγελλόμενα  
 these (things), and at-the-same-time the (things) announced  
 παρὰ Ἀναξίβιου· γάρ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι πειδομένοις  
 from Anaxibius; for he-replied, that being-obedient  
 αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπαγ-  
 to-him it-would not (be) repented, but (that) he-would-  
 γέλει ταῦτα τοῖς τέλεσι τε οἴκοι, καὶ  
 announce these (things) to-the highestAuthorities — (at) home, and  
 αὐτὸς Βουλεύσοιτο περὶ αὐτῶν ἀγαθόν,  
 be-himself would-consult-and-plan about them (all the) good,  
 ὃ τι δύναιτο. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται  
 whatever he-might-be-able. On this the soldiers  
 δέχοντα τε τὸν Κοιρατάδην στρατηγὸν, καὶ  
 receive indeed — Cœratades (as their) general, and  
 ἀπῆλθον ἔξω τοῦ τείχους. Ο Κοιρατάδης δὲ  
 they-departed without the walls. — Cœratades indeed  
 συντίθεται αὐτοῖς παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα  
 agreeing with-them to-be-present at the army (the)  
 ὑστεραίαν, ἔχων καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ μάντιν, καὶ  
 next-day, having both victims and (an) augur, and  
 σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἔξῆλθον,  
 meat and drink for-the army. But when they-had-gone-out,  
 ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἔκλεισε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἐκήρυξεν  
 — Anaxibius shut the gates, and made-proclamation  
 ὃς ἀν ἀλῷ ἔνδον, ὃν τῶν στρα-  
 (that he) who might be-caught within (the walls), being-of-the ar-  
 τιωτῶν, ὅτι πεπράσεται. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κοι-  
 ρατάδης μὲν ἦκε, ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν,  
 ratsades indeed came, having the victims and the augur,  
 καὶ εἶκοσιν ἀνδρες εἶποντο αὐτῷ φέροντες ἄλφιτα,  
 and twenty men followed him carrying barley meal,  
 καὶ ἄλλοι εἶκοσι οἶνον, καὶ τρεῖς  
 and another twenty (carrying) wine, and three (carrying loads)  
 ἐλαιῶν, καὶ εἷς ἀνὴρ μέγιστον φορτίον ὅσον  
 of olives, and one man (carrying) the-greatest load that

ἔδύνατο σκορόδων, καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. Δέ  
he-could of-garlic, and another of-onions. And  
καταδέμενος ταῦτα, ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμενσιν,  
they-having-laid-down these (things), as (if) for distribution,  
ἔδύετο.  
he-sacrificed.

Δέ Ξενοφῶν μεταπεμψάμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέ-  
λευτερ διαπρᾶξαι ὅπως τε εἰςέλθοι  
But Xenophon having-sent-for Cleander re-  
quested (him) to-obtain (permission for him) that — he-might-enter  
εἰς τὸ τεῖχός, καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. 'Ο  
within the walls, and to-sail-away from Byzantium. —  
Κλέανδρος δ' ἐλθὼν, ἔφη. Ὡκώ διαπραξάμενος  
Cleander indeed having-arrived, said: I-come having-obtained  
μάλα μόλις· γάρ Ἀναξίβιον λέγειν,  
(permission with) great difficulty; for (that) Anaxibius says,  
ὅτι εἶη οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον τοὺς στρατιώτας μὲν  
that it-is not proper (that) the soldiers indeed  
εἶναι πλησίον τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ  
(should) be near the walls, Xenophon also (being)  
ἔνδον· δὲ τοὺς Βυζαντίους στασιάζειν καὶ  
within; and (that) the Byzantines were-divided-in-factions and  
εἶναι πονηροὺς ἀλλήλους· ὅμως δὲ,  
(that) they-were evil-disposed to-one-another; yet-however indeed,  
ἔφη, ἐκέλευνεν εἰςιέναι, εἰ μέλλοις ἐκπλεῖν σὺν  
he-said, he-requests (you) to-enter, if you-intend to-sail-away with  
αὐτῷ. 'Ο Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς  
him. — Xenophon indeed truly | having-embraced the  
στρατιώτας ἀπήει εἰσω τοῦ  
soldiers [having taken leave of the soldiers] departed within the  
τείχους σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. 'Ο Κοιρατάδης δὲ τῇ  
walls with Cleander. — Cœratades indeed on-the  
μὲν πρώτῃ ἥμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει, οὐδὲ διε-  
— first day had no favourable-sacrifice, neither did  
μέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοὺς στρατιώτας. Τῇ  
he-distribute (nothing) (any thing) to-the soldiers. On-the

ὑστεραιά δὲ εἰστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμόν, καὶ  
next-day indeed he-stood by the altar, and  
Κοιρατάδης, ἐστεφανωμένος, ὡς θύσων· δὲ Τι-  
Cœratades, being-crowned, as about-sacrificing; but Ti-  
μασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ  
masion the Dardanian, and Neon the Asinæan, and  
Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὄρχομένιος, ἔλεγον μὴ Κοιρα-  
Cleanor the Orchomenian, said (that it was) not for-Cœra-  
τάδη θύειν, ὡς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τὴν στρατιᾶ,  
tades to-sacrifice, as (he was) not to-be-leading the army,  
εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ὁ κελεύει  
unless he-should-give the provisions. And — he-ordered (them)  
διαμετρεῖσθαι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐνέδει αὐτῷ πολλῶν,  
to-be-distributed. When indeed it-was-wanting to-him many  
ὅςτε σίτον γενέσθαι ἐκάστῳ τῶν στρα-  
(things), so-that food should-be to-each of-the sol-  
τιωτῶν ἥμέρας, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἵερεῖα ἀπῆει,  
diers 'for (the) 'day, taking-away the victims he-departed,  
καὶ ἀπειπών τὴν στρατηγίαν.  
and renouncing the generalship.

---

## CHAPTER II.

Δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος, καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιός,  
But Neon the Asinæan, and Phryniscus the Achæan,  
καὶ Φιλήσιος ὁ Ἀχαιός, καὶ Ξανθίκλης ὁ Ἀχαιός,  
and Philesius the Achæan, and Xanthicles the Achæan,  
καὶ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τὴν στρατιᾶ,  
and Timasion the Dardanian, remained with the army,  
καὶ προελθόντες εἰς κώμας τῶν Θρακῶν, τὰς  
and proceeding to (some) villages of-the Thracians, —  
κατὰ Βυζάντιον, ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. Καὶ  
(those namely) opposite Byzantium, they-encamped. And

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυ-  
the generals formed-parties, Cleonor indeed and Phry-  
νίσκος Βουλόμενοι ἄγειν πρὸς Σευδην· (γὰρ  
niscus wishing to-lead (the army) to Seuthes; (for  
ἔπειδε αὐτούς, καὶ τῷ  
he-persuaded (and gained) them (over to his interest) and to-the (one)  
μὲν ἔδωκε ἵππον, δὲ τῷ γυναικα·) δὲ Νέων  
indeed he-gave (a) horse, but to-the (other a) woman;) and Neon  
εἰς Χερρόνησον· οἴόμενος, εἰ γένοιντο ὑπὸ<sup>τοῦ</sup>  
to (the) Chersonesus; thinking, (that) if they-got under (the)  
Λακεδαιμονίους ἀν προεστάναι παντὸς τοῦ  
Lacedæmonians (that) 'he might 'stand-at-the-head of-all the  
στρατεύματος δὲ Τιμασίων προύδυμεῖτο διαβῆναι  
army; but Timasion wanted-much to-cross  
πέραν πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν, οἴόμενος ἀν  
over again into — Asia, thinking (that) 'he might (thus)  
κατελθεῖν οἴκαδε. Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐβούλοντο  
'return home. And the soldiers desired  
ταῦτα. Δὲ τοῦ χρόνου διατριβομένου, πολλοὶ  
this-same. But the time 'being (thus) 'consumed, many  
τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν ἀποδιδόμενοι τὰ  
of-the soldiers, — (some) indeed selling — (their)  
ὅπλα κατὰ τοὺς χώρους, ἀπέπλεον ὡς  
arms up-and-down the places, sailed-away as (well as)  
ἔδύναντο· δὲ οἱ καὶ κατεμιγνύοντο εἰς  
they-could; but — (others) also mingled-with (the people, in  
τὰς πόλεις. Ἀναξίβιος δὲ ἔχαιρε ἀκούων ταῦτα,  
the towns. Anaxibius however rejoiced hearing these  
τὸ στράτευμα διαφθειρόμενον·  
(things), (that) the army (was about) being-broken-up (and)  
γὰρ, τούτων γιγνομένων, φετο μάλιστα  
dispersed); for, these (things) happening, he-thought most-of-al-  
χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζῳ.  
io-gratify Pharnabazus.

Δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ ἀρμοστῇ  
But Aristarchus (the) successor of-Cleander (the) governo

Βυζαντίου συναντᾷ Ἀναξιβίω ἀποπλέοντι ἐκ  
of-Byzantium met Anaxibius sailing-away from

Βυζαντίου ἐν Κυζίκῳ· δὲ ἐλέγετο, ὅτι καὶ Πῶλος  
Byzantium at Cyzicus, and he-said, that even Polus

ναύαρχος διάδοχος ὅσον οὐ νῆδη  
(the) admiral, (the) successor (of Anaxibius), | as-much-as not already

παρείη εἰς Ἐλλήσποντον.  
was-present in (the) Hellespont [was expected every instant to

Καὶ Ἀναξιβίως ἐπιστέλλει μὲν τῷ  
enter the Hellespont]. And Anaxibius enjoined-on — —

\*Αριστάρχῳ ἀποδόσθαι ὄπόσονς ἀν εὗροι τῶν  
Aristarchus to-sell as-many-as 'he might 'find of-the

στρατιωτῶν Κύρου ὑπολελειμένους ἐν Βυζαντίῳ.  
army of-Cyrus remaining-behind in Byzantium.

\*Ο Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐπεπράκει οὐδένα, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
— Cleander indeed had-sold none, but even

ἐθεράπευε τοὺς κάμυνοντας, οἴκτείρων,  
nursed-and-took-care-of — (those) being-sick, commiserating (them).

καὶ ἀναγκάζων δέχεσθαι οἰκία.  
and obliging (the inhabitants) to-receive (them) 'in (their) 'houses.

Δ' \*Αρίσταρχος, ἐπεὶ ήλθε τάχιστα, ἀπέδοτο οὐκ  
But Aristarchus, when he-came speedily, sold not

ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων. Ἀναξιβίως δ' παρα-  
less (than) four-hundred. Anaxibius indeed sail-

πλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον  
ing-along (the coast) to Parium sends to Pharnabazus

κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα. Δ' ὁ ἐπεὶ ἤσθετο  
according-to — agreement. But — (Pharnabazus) when he-heard

\*Αρίσταρχόν τε ἦκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον  
(that) Aristarchus — had-come to Byzantium (as)

ἀρμοστὴν, καὶ Ἀναξιβίων οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα,  
governor and Anaxibius no-longer commanded-the-fleet,

τὸ μέλησε Ἀναξιβίων πρὸς \*Αρίσταρχον, δὲ διεπράττετο  
be-neglected Anaxibius for Aristarchus, and practised

*τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ στρατεύματος τοῦ Κυρείου*  
 the same (things) about the army of — Cyrus

*ἔπειρ καὶ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.*  
 which (he had) even (done) with Anaxibius

*'Εκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα,*  
 On this — Anaxibius, having-called Xenophon  
*κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι*  
 (to him), requests(him) by-every means and contrivance to-sail  
*ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὡς τάχιστα, καὶ τε*  
 to the army as speedily (as possible), and not-only  
*τυνέχειν αὐτό καὶ συναδροῖζειν τῶν διε-*  
 to-keep it together, but-also to-collect of-the dis  
*σπαρμένων ὡς πλείστους ἀν δύνηται,*  
 persed (soldiers) as many (as) 'he might 'be-able  
*καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Πέρινθον διε-*  
 and having-'led (them) 'along to — Perinthus  
*βιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα.*  
 'transport (them) 'across into — Asia as speedily (a)  
*καὶ δίδωσιν αἵτῳ τριακόντορον, καὶ*  
 possible); and he-gave to-him (a) thirty-oared-galley, and (a)  
*ἐπιστολήν, καὶ συμπέμπει ἄνδρα, κελεύσοντα τοὺς*  
 letter, and he-sends (a) man, requesting the  
*Περινθίους προπέμψαι Ξενοφῶντα τοῖς ἵπποις*  
 Perinthians to-send-away Xenophon on — horse (back)  
*ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ δ*  
 is speedily (as possible) to the army And —  
*Ξενοφῶν μὲν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ*  
 Xenophon indeed having-sailed-across arrived at the  
*στράτευμα· οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἔδεξαντο ἥδεως,*  
 army; the soldiers also received (him) with-pleasure,  
*καὶ ἀσμένοι εὐδίνεις εἶποντο, ὡς διαβησόμενοι*  
 and 'they willingly immediately 'followed (him), as crossing-over  
*ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.*  
 from — Thrace into — Asia.  
*'Ο Σεύθης δὲ, ἀκούσας ἤκοντα πάλιν,*  
 — Seuthes however, having-heard (of him) coming back, (and)

πέμψας Μηδοσάδην πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν,  
having-sent Medosades to him by sea,

ἔδειτο ἀγειν τὴν στρατιὰν πρὸς ἑαυτόν,  
he begged (him) to-bring the army to him,

ὑπισχνούμενος αὐτῷ, ὃ τι ὤφετο λέγων  
promising him, whatever he-thought mentioning (it) (he

πείσειν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο,  
might be able) to-persuade (him). But — (Xenophon) answered (him),

ὅτι εἴη οἶν τε οὐδὲν τούτων γενέσθαι.  
[that it-was possible for-none of-these (things) to-happen [that

Kai ὁ

it was impossible for any thing of the kind to take place]. And — (he)

μὲν ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὠφέτο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ  
indeed having-heard these (things) departed. When however the

Ἑλλῆνες ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον, Νέων μὲν  
Greeks arrived at Perinthus, Neon indeed

ἀποσπάσας, εστρατοπεδεύσατο  
having-drawn-off (his troops) from (the rest), encamped

χωρίς, ἔχων ὡς ὀκτακοσίους ἀνδρῶπους· δὲ πᾶν  
apart, having about eight-hundred men; and all

τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ἦν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ  
the other (troops of the) army were in the same (place)

παρὰ τὸ τείχος τὸ Περινθίων.  
under the walls — (those namely) of-Perinthus.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἐπραττε περὶ πλοίων,  
After this Xenophon indeed was-bargaining for ships,

ὅπως ὅτι διαβαίεν τάχιστα. Ἐν  
so that he-might-cross-over (as) speedily (as possible). At

τούτῳ δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος, ὁ ἄρμοστής ἐξ  
this (time) however Aristarchus, the governor from

Βυζαντίου, ἀφικόμενος, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισ-  
Byzantium, arriving, having two galleys, having-been-

μένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου, ἀπεῖπε τε τοῖς ναυκλή-  
persuaded by Pharnabazus, he-forbade indeed the masters-of-the-

ροις μὴ διάγειν, ἐλθών τε ἐπὶ τὸ  
ships — to-carry-over (the Greeks). (and) having-gone also to the

στράτευμα εἰπε τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ περαιοῦσθαι  
 army he-told the soldiers not to go-across  
 εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀναξί-  
 into -- Asia. But — Xenophon said, that Anaxi-  
 βιος ἔκέλευσε καὶ ἐπεμψεν ἐμὲ ἐνδάδε πρὸς τούτο.  
 bios had-ordered (it) and sent me hither about this  
 Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἔλεξεν. Ἀναξίβιος μὲν  
 But Aristarchus again said: Anaxibius indeed  
 τοίνυν οὐκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ ὀρμοστής  
 therefore no-longer (is) admiral, I indeed (am) governo  
 τῷδε. δὲ εἰ λήψομαι τινα ὑμῶν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ,  
 here; and if I-shall-take any of-you on the sea,  
 καταδύσω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ὠχετο εἰς τὸ  
 I-will-sink (you). Saying these (things) he-departed within the  
 τείχος. Δ' τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ μεταπέμπεται τοὺς  
 walls. But on-the next-day he-sent-for the  
 στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τοῦ στρατεύματος.  
 generals and captains of-the army  
 Δὲ ὅντων ἥδη πρὸς τὰ τείχει, τις ἔξαγγέλλει  
 But being already before the walls, some-one informs  
 Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι, εἰ εἰζεισι συλληφθήσεται, καὶ ἢ  
 Xenophon, that, if he-entered he-would-be-apprehended, and either  
 πείσεται τι αὗτοῦ, ἢ καὶ παραδοθήσεται  
 would-suffer something there, or even be-delivered up  
 Φαρναβάζῳ. Ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα,  
 to-Pharnabazus. — (Xenophon) however hearing these (things),  
 μὲν προπέμπεται τοὺς, δὲ αὐτὸς εἶπεν, ὅτι  
 indeed sent-on-before the (rest), but himself said, that  
 βούλοιτο θῦσαι τι. Καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο,  
 he-wished to-sacrifice (about) something. And going-away he-sacrificed,  
 εἰ οἱ θεοὶ παρεῖν αὐτῷ πειρᾶσθαι ἀγειν τὸ  
 if the gods permitted him to-attempt to-lead the  
 στράτευμα πρὸς Σεύδην. Γὰρ ἔώρα οὔτε ὅν  
 army to Seuthes. For he-saw (it) neither being  
 ἀσφαλὲς διαβαίνειν τοῦ κωλύσοντος  
 safe to-cross-over (into Asia), -- (he) hindering them

ἔχοντος τριήρεις, οὐτ' ἔθούλετο ἐλθῶν ἐπὶ Χερ-  
having galleys, nor did-he-wish having-gone to (the) Cher-  
ρόνησον κατακλεισθῆναι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα  
sones, to-be-shut-up (there), and the army  
γενέσδαι ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων, ἐνδὰ μεν  
··be in great want of-every-thing, where indeed  
ἀνάγκη πείθεσδαι τῷ ἀρμοστῇ ἐκεῖ,  
(there would be a) necessity to-obey the governor there,  
δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔμελλεν ἔξειν οὐδὲν τῶν  
and the army would-hereafter have nothing of —  
ἐπιτηδείων.  
provisions.

Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶχεν ἀμφὶ ταῦτα·  
| And — (he) indeed had (himself) about these (things);  
οἱ στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ  
[while he was thus engaged;] the generals indeed and captains  
ῆκοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον,  
·coming (back) from — Aristarchus announced,  
ὅτι μὲν κελεύει σφᾶς νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι, δὲ  
that 'he indeed requests them now indeed to-go-away, but  
ῆκειν τῆς δείλης· ἐνδὰ καὶ ἡ ἐπιβούλη  
to-come (in) the evening; whereby even — (his) design-against (them)  
ἐδόκει μᾶλλον δήλη. Οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει  
appeared more manifest. Therefore — Xenophon when it-seemed  
τὰ ἵερὰ εἶναι καλὰ αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στράτευματι,  
(that) the victims were favourable for-him and the army,  
ἴέναι ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύδην, παραλαβὼν Πολυ-  
to-go safely to Seuthes, taking Poly-  
κράτην τὸν Ἀδηναῖον, λοχαγόν, καὶ παρὰ τῶν  
erates the Athenian, (a) captain, and from the  
στρατηγῶν (πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος) ἀνδρα ἑκάστου,  
generals (except from Neon) (a) man of-each,  
ῳ ἑκαστος ἐπίστευεν, ὡχετο τῆς νυκτὸς  
in-whom each-one confided, he-departed in) the night  
ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα Σεύδου ἔξήκοντα στάδια  
··the army of-Seuthes (distant) sixty stadia

Δ' ἐπεὶ ήσαν ἔγγυς αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυγχάνει πυροῖς  
 But when he-was near it, he-falls-in with-watch-fires  
 ἐρήμοις. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ὤστο  
 destitute (of sentinels). And indeed at-the first he-thought (that)  
 τὸν Σεύδην μετακεχωρηκένα ποι· ἐπεὶ δ'  
 — Seuthes had-gone-off somewhere; when indeed  
 ἦσθετο τε θορύβου, καὶ, τῶν περὶ Σεύδην  
 he-heard not-only (a) noise, but-also, — (those) about Seuthes  
 σημαινόντων ἀλληλοις, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τὰ πυρὰ  
 making-signals to-one-another, he-understood that the fires  
 κεκαυμένα εἴη τῷ Σεύδῃ πρὸ τῶν νυκτοφυλάκων  
 had-been-kindled by — Seuthes before the night-watches  
 ἔνεκα τούτου, ὅπως οἱ φύλακες μὴ ὄρωντο,  
 by-reason of-this, that the sentinels might not be-seen,  
 ὅντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, μήτε ὄποσοι μήτε ὅπου εἰεν,  
 being in the neither how-many nor where they-might-be,  
 ἢ προσιείνεις μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ  
 — (those) approaching might not be-concealed, but  
 εἰεν καταφανεῖς διὰ τὸ φῶς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθετο,  
 might-be conspicuous in the light. When indeed he-perceived  
 προπέμπει τὸν ἑρμηνέα διὰ ἐτυγχανεν ἔχων,  
 (this), he-sends the interpreter whom he-happened having  
 καὶ κελεύει εἰπεῖν Σεύδῃ, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν  
 (with him), and requests (him) to-tell Seuthes, that Xenophon  
 πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. Δὲ οἱ  
 is-present desiring to-have-an-interview with-him. But —  
 ἥροντο, εἰ δὲ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος, δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ  
 they-inquired, if (it was) the Athenian, the (one) from the  
 στρατεύματος. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη εἶναι οὗτος,  
 When indeed he-said (that) it-was he-himself.  
 ἀναπηδήσαντες ἔδίωκον· καὶ ἡλίγον  
 jumping-on (their horses) they-departed; and (a) little  
 ὕστερον πελτασταὶ ὅσον διακόσιοι παρῆσαν, καὶ  
 after targeteers as-many-as two-hundred were-present, and  
 παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ  
 having-received Xenophon and — (those) with him

ἦγον πρὸς Σεύδην. Ὁ δὲ ἦν εἰ  
 they-conducted (them) to Seuthes. — (Seuthes) indeed was in  
 τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι ἐγκεχαλι-  
 (a) tower well guarded, and horses having-been-  
 νωμένοι περὶ αὐτὴν κύκλῳ γὰρ διὰ τὸν  
 already-bridled (stood) round it 'in (a) 'circle; for through —  
 φόβον μὲν ἔχίλον τοὺς ἵππους τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας,  
 fear 'he indeed 'fed the horses during-indeed-the days,  
 δὲ τὰς νύκτας ἐφυλάττετο, ἐγκεχαλινωμένων.  
 but during-the nights he-kept-guard, they-being-bridled,  
 Γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρόσδεν Τήρης, ὁ πρόγονος  
 For indeed it-was-said (that) formerly Teres, the ancestor  
 τούτου, ἔχων πολὺ στράτευμα ἐν τῷ  
 of-this (Seuthes), having (a) numerous army in —  
 ταύτῃ χώρᾳ, παλλοὺς ἀπολέσαι ἵπο  
 this (same) country, 'had many (men) 'destroyed by  
 τῶν τούτων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ ἀφαιρεθῆναι  
 — these men (of this country), and had-been-deprived-of  
 τὰ σκευοφόρα. δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν Θυνοί,  
 — (his) baggage; and these were (the) Thynians,  
 λεγόμενοι εἶναι πολεμικώτατοι πάντων, μάλιστα  
 said to-be (the) most-warlike of-all, especially  
 νυκτός.  
 by-night.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευσε Ξενο-  
 When indeed they-were near, (Seuthes) requested Xeno-  
 φῶντα εἰσελθεῖν ἔχοντα δύο οὖς βούλοιτο.  
 phon to-enter having two (with him) whom he-might-wish.  
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἐνδον, πρώτον μὲν ἥσπάζοντο  
 When indeed they-were within, 'they first indeed 'embraced  
 ἀλλήλους, καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον προϊπ-  
 one-another, and according-to the Thracian custom they-drank.  
 νον κέρατα οἴνου· (δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης  
 to-one-another (in) horns of-wine; (and also Medosades  
 παρῆν τῷ Σεύδῃ, ὅςπερ ἐπρέσβευε τῷ αὐτῷ  
 was-present with — Seuthes, who was-the-ambassador for — him

πάτοσε). Ἐπειτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν·  
to-all-places). Afterwards indeed Xenophon began to-speak:

Ὦ Σεύδη, ἔπειμις πρὸς ἐμὲ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα,  
‘You, O Seuthes, ‘having-sent to me, at Calchedon,  
πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τοντονί, δεόμενος  
(the) first (time) Medosades this-same-one (here), entreating  
μον συμπροδυμηδῆναι τὸ στράτευμα  
me to-co-operate-with (you) (that) the army (might)  
διαβῆναι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνούμενός μοι,  
be-crossed-over from — Asia, and promising me,  
εἰ πράξαιμι ταῦτα, ποιήσειν  
if I-should-effect these (things), (that) you-would-do (something)  
εὖ, ὡς Μηδοσάδης οὗτοσι ἔφη.  
good (for me), as Medosades the-same (here present) said.  
Εἰπὼν ταῦτα, ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ  
Saying these (things), he-inquired-of — Medosades if  
ταῦτ’ εἴη ἀληδῆ. ‘Ο δέ ἔφη.  
these (things) were true. — ‘He indeed said (that they were).  
Οὗτος Μηδοσάδης αὖθις ἦλιε ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ διέβην  
This Medosades again came (to me) when I went-over  
πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παρίου, ὑπισχνούμενος,  
back to the army from Parium, promising,  
εἰ ἄγοίμι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς σέ, τὰλλα  
if I-should-lead the army to you, in-other-respects  
τέ χρήσεσθαι μοι φίλῳ καὶ  
you-would not-only ‘treat me ‘as (a) friend but-also (a)  
ἀδελφῷ, καὶ τὰ χωρία παρὰ τὰ θαλάττη,  
brother, and (that) the places along the sea,  
ὅν σὺ κρατεῖς, ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ μοι.  
of-which you are-master, would-be (a present) from you to-me.  
Ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην,  
About these (things) ‘he again ‘inquired-of — Medosades,  
εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. ‘Ο δέ συνέφη  
if he-said these (things). — ‘He indeed agreed (that he said)  
καὶ ταῦτα. Ἱδι νῦν, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι  
even these (things). Go-on now, said (Xenophon) to-relat-

τούτῳ τί ἀπεκρινάμην πρῶτον ἐν Καλχηδόνι  
to-this (Seuthes) what I-answered first in Calchedon.

'Απεκρίνω δτι τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσοιτο εἰς Βυζάν-  
You-answered that the army would-cross-over to Byzant.

τιον, καὶ ἐνεκα τούτου δέοι οὐτε σοὶ  
tium, and on-account-of this there-would-be-need neither for-you  
οὐτε ἄλλω τελεῖν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἔφησδα ἐπεὶ  
or for-another to-pay; yourself indeed said (that) when  
διαβαίνεις, ἀπιέναι· καὶ

you-had-crossed-over, (that) you-would-depart (from the army); and  
οὗτως ἐγένετο ὥσπερ σὺ ἐλεγεῖς. Τί γὰρ ἐλεγον,  
thus it-happened as you have-said. What — (then) did-I-say.

ἔφη, δτε ἀφίκου κατὰ Σηλυβρίαν; Ἐφησδα  
said-he, when you-came to Selybria? You-said (that)

εἶναι οὐκ οἷόν τε, ἀλλ' ἐλθόντας εἰς  
it-was not possible, but (that) (the army) having-gone to

Πέρινδον διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν  
Perineus (was) to-cross-over into — Asia. Nor

τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυ-  
therefore, said — Xenophon, and I and-also this Phry-

νίσκος, εἰς τῶν στρατηγῶν, καὶ οὗτος Πολυκράτες,  
niscus, one of-the generals, and this Polyrates,

εἰς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ εἴξω εἰσὶν πιστότατος  
one of-the captains, and without are (the) most-confidential (friends)

ἀπὸ ἑκάστῳ τῶν στρατηγῶν, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ  
from each of-the generals, except Neon the

Λακωνικοῦ. Εἰ οὖν βούλει τὴν πρᾶξιν εἶναι  
Lacedæmonian. If therefore you-wish the business to-be

πιστοτέραν, καὶ κάλεσαι ἑκείνους. Δέ σὺ,  
more-trustworthy, even call them (in). And 'do you,

ὦ Πολύκρατες, ἐλθὼν, εἰπέ δτι ἐγὼ κελεύω  
O Polyrates, going, tell (them) that I request (them)

καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ αὐτὸς καταλιπὼ  
to-leave-behind — (their) arms; and you-yourself, leaving-behind

ἐκεῖ τὴν μάχαιραν εἰσιδε.  
there ~ (your) sword come-in

‘Ο Σεύδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀπι-  
— Seuthes hearing these (things) said, that he-  
ττήσειεν οὐδενὶ ‘Αθηναίων· γάρ καὶ ὅτι  
would-distrust no-one 'of (the) 'Athenians; for truly-indeed that (he)  
εἰδέναι εἶεν συγγενεῖς, καὶ ἔφη νομίζειν  
knew they-were relatives, and said (that) he-considered (them as)  
εὔνοις φίλους. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ εἰ-  
kind friends. But after these (things) when (those) en-  
ῆλθον οὓς ἔδει, Ξενοφῶν πρῶτον μὲν ἐπήρετο  
tered whom he-wanted, Xenophon first indeed inquired-of  
Σεύδην ὃ τι δέοιτο. χρῆσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ.  
Seuthes in-what he-might-require to-use the army.

‘Ο δὲ εἶπεν ὥδε· Μαισάδες ἦν πατήρ μοι,  
— (Seuthes) indeed spoke thus: Mæsades was father to-me,  
δὲ ἔκεινον ἦν ἀρχη  
|and of-him was (the) government [and under his government were]  
Μελανδῖται, καὶ Θυνοί, καὶ Τρανίψαι. Ἐπεὶ  
(the) Melanditæ, and Thynians, and Tranipsians. WH  
τὰ πράγματα Ὅδρυσῶν ἐνόσησεν, ὁ πατήρ  
the affairs 'of (the) 'Odrysæ had-declined, — (my) father  
ἐκπεσῶν οὖν ἐκ τῆς ταύτης χώρας, αὐτὸς μὲν  
being-driven therefore from — these-same countries, he indeed  
ἀποθνήσκει νόσῳ· δ' ἐγὼ ὄρφανὸς ἐξετράφην  
died 'of (a) disease; and I (an) orphan was-brought-up  
παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγενόμην  
under Medocus the present king. When indeed I-had-become

νεανίσκος, ἐδυνάμην οὐ ζῆν ἀποθλέπων εἰς  
(a) young-man, I-could not live looking-for (support) to  
ἀλλοτρίαν τράπεζαν· καὶ ἐκοδεζόμην ἐνδίφριος  
another's table; and I-sat on-the-same-seat  
αὐτῷ ἵκετης, δοῦναι μοι ὅπόσους ἄνδρας  
with-him (a) suppliant, to-give me as-'many men 'as  
εἴη δυνατός, ὅπως ποιοίην κακὸν, εἰ τι  
he-might-be able, in-order-that I-might-do evil, if any  
δυναίμην, καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς, καὶ ζώην.  
I-could. even on — (those) expelling us, and might-live

μὴ ἀποβλέπων εἰς τὴν τράπεζαν ἐκείνουν ὥσπερ  
 (not looking at the table of-him like  
 κύων. Ἐξ τούτου δίδωσι μοι τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ  
 (a) dog. On this he-gave me the men and  
 τοὺς ἵππους, οὓς ὑμεῖς ὅψεσθε ἐπειδὰν γένηται  
 the cavalry, which you will-see after it-becomes  
 ἡμέρα. Καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ζῶ, ἔχων τούτους,  
 day. And I now live, having these (under my command)  
 ληζόμενος τὴν πατρώαν χώραν ἐμαυτοῦ.  
 (by) depredate-on the paternal country of-myself.  
 Εἴ δὲ ὑμεῖς παραγένοισθε μοι, οἵμαι ἄν  
 If indeed you join me, I-think (that I) may  
 σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥᾳδίως ἀπολαβεῖν  
 with (the assistance of) the gods easily recover  
 τὴν ἀρχήν. Ταῦτ' ἐστίν αἱ ἐγὼ δέομαι  
 the government. These are (the things) which I want  
 ὑμῶν.  
 of-you.

Tί οὖν ἀν δύναιο, ἐφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰ  
 What therefore might you-be-able, said — Xenophon, if  
 ἔλθοιμεν, διδόναι τε τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ τοῖς  
 we-come, to-give not-only to-the army but-also to-the  
 λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι  
 captains and the generals? tell-us, in-order-that these  
 ἀπαγγέλλωσι. Δ' ὁ ὑπέσχετο μὲν τῷ  
 (persons) may-announce (it). And — he-promised indeed to-the  
 στρατιώτῃ Κυζικηνόν, δὲ τῷ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν,  
 soldier (a) Cyzicene, and to-the captain twice-as-much,  
 δὲ τῷ στρατηγῷ τετραμοιρίαν, καὶ γῆν, ὅπόσην  
 and to-the general four-times-as-much, and land, as-much-as  
 ἀν βούλωνται, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ χωρίου  
 'they might' 'desire, and yokes (of oxen), and (a) place  
 ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δέ, ἐφη ὁ  
 near (the) sea having-been-fortified. If indeed, said —  
 Ξενοφῶν, πειρώμενοι ταῦτα  
 Xenophon, attempting these (things) we-'sheuld not 'sue

περάξωμεν, ἀλλὰ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακε-  
σεως, but (that) there-may-be some fear about (the) Lace-  
δαιμονίων, εάν τις βούληται ἀπιέναι παρὰ σέ,  
daemonians, if any (of us) may-wish to-depart to you,  
δέξῃ εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ; 'Ο δ'  
would-you-receive (them) into — (your) country? — 'He indeed  
εἶπε, Kai γε ποιήσομαι ἀδελφούς, καὶ  
said, Even 'I at-least 'will-make (them) brothers, and  
ἐνδιφρίους, καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἀπάντων, ὃν ἀν  
table-companions, and sharers of-all, which 'we may  
δινώμεδα κτᾶσθαι. Δὲ σοὶ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, δώσω  
'be-able to-acquire. And to-you, O Xenophon, I-will-give  
καὶ θυγατέρα, καὶ εἰ ἔστι τις θυγάτηρ σοὶ  
even (my) daughter, and if there-is any daughter to-you  
ἀνήσομαι Θρακίω νόμῳ· καὶ δώσω  
I-will-buy (her according) 'to (the) 'Thracian eustom; and I-will-give  
Βισάνθην οἰκησιν, ὅπερ ἔστι ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον  
(you) Bisanthe (as a) residence, which is to-me the-most-beautiful  
χωρίον τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάσσῃ.  
place of — (those) on (the) sea.

---

## CHAPTER III.

Ακούσαντες ταῦτα, καὶ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες  
HEARING these (things), and giving and taking  
ἔξιας ἀπῆλαντον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο  
right-hands they-rode-off; and before day (break) they-got  
ἐπὶ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ ἔσαστοι ἀπῆγγειλαν  
to the camp, and each reported  
τοῖς πέμψασι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα  
to — (those) having-sent (them). And when it-was day (light)  
ἢ Ἀρίσταρχος μὲν πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγοὺς  
— Aristarchus indeed again called-for the generals

και τιχαγον, ο σουζε τις, εάν μετ ιην  
and captains; but it seemed (best) to — (them) to omit indeed the  
όδὸν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ συγκαλέσαι τὸ  
road to Aristarchus, and to-call-together the  
στράτευμα. Καὶ πάντες συνῆλθον, πλὴν οἱ  
army. And all assembled, except the (soldiers)  
Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπεῖχον ὡς δέκα στάδια  
of-Neon; these indeed were-distant about ten stadia.  
Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἰπε  
When indeed they-had-assembled, Xenophon rising-up spoke  
τάδε· Ἀνδρες, Ἀρίσταρχος ἔχων τριήρεις κωλύει  
thus: Men, Aristarchus having galleys prevents (us)  
διαπλεῖν ἐνδα μὲν βουλόμεδα· ὅςτε οὐκ  
to-sail (there) where indeed we-wish; so-that (it is) not  
ἀσφαλές ἐμβαίνειν εἰς πλοῖα· δὲ οὗτος ὁ αὐτὸς  
safe to-embark on vessels; but this — (same) —  
κελεύει πορεύεσθαι βίᾳ διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους  
(man) orders (us) to-proceed by-force over the sacred mountain  
εἰς Χερσόνησον· ἦν δὲ, κρατήσαντες τούτου  
into (the) Chersonesus; if indeed, having-overcome this  
ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε, φησιν οὕτε πωλήσειν  
we-should-arrive there, he-says (that) he-'would neither 'sell  
ὑμᾶς ἔτι ὅςπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὕτε ἔτι  
you hereafter as (he did) at Byzantium, nor hereafter  
ἔξαπατήσεσθαι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μισθόν,  
deceive you, but (that you) shall-receive pay,  
οὕτε ἔτι περιόψεσθαι, ὅςπερ νῦν  
(nor) (and) hereafter he-will-take-care, that-as now you-'will (not)  
δεομένος τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Οὗτος μὲν  
'be-wanting — provisions. This (Aristarchus) indeed  
λέγει ταῦτα. Δὲ Σεύδης φησιν, ἀν ίητε  
says these (things). But Seuthes says, if you-go  
πρὸς ἐκεῖνον, ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς εὖ.  
to him, | (that) he-will-make you well [that he will bene-  
Nῦν οὖν σκέψασθε, πότερον μένοντες  
at you}, Now therefore consider, whether remaining

ενδάδε βουλεύσεσθε τοῦτο, ἢ ἐπανελθόντες  
 here you-will-deliberate (about) this, or (after) having-gone-back  
 εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὖν μὲν δοκεῖ ἔμοι ἐπεὶ  
 for provision. Therefore indeed it-seems to-me (that) since  
 ενδάδε ἔχομεν οὔτε ἀργύριον, ὡςτε ἀγοράζειν,  
 here we-have neither money, that (we may) buy-provisions,  
 οὔτε ἀνευ ἀργυρίου ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν τὰ  
 nor, without money, will-they-allow (us) to-take —  
 ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπανελθόντες εἰς τὰς κώμας, ὅδεν οἱ  
 provisions, having-returned to the villages, where the  
 ἥττους ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν,  
 (inhabitants being) weaker (than we) will-permit (us) to-take  
 ἔκει, ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀκοίοντας  
 (provisions), there, having — provisions, (and) hearing  
 ὃ τι τις δεῖται ὑμῶν, αἵρεισθαι ὃ τι ἀν δοκῆ  
 what any-one asks of-you, to-choose what may seem  
 εἶναι κράτιστον ὑμῖν. Καὶ ἔφη ὅτῳ ταῦτα  
 to-be the-best to-you. And he-said to-whomsoever these  
 δοκεῖ ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἀπαντεῖς  
 (things) seem (good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All  
 ἀνέτειναν. Ἀπιόντες τοίνυν, ἔφη, συσκευ-  
 extended (them) upwards. Going-away therefore, said-he, pack  
 ἀλεσθε, καὶ ἐπειδὰν τις παραγγέλλῃ,  
 'up (your) baggage, and when any-one may-announce (it),  
 ἐπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.  
 follow — (your) leader.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενωφῶν μὲν ἦγεῖτο, δ'  
 After these (things) Xenophon indeed led-on and  
 οἱ εἴποντο. Δὲ Νέων καὶ ἄλλοι παρ'  
 the (soldiers) followed. And Neon and others about  
 Ἀριστάρχου ἐπειδὸν ἀποτρέπεσθαι. δ' οἱ  
 Aristarchus persuaded (them) to-turn-back; but — (they)  
 οὐχ ὑπήκοον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ προεληλύθεσαν  
 'would not 'mind (them). When indeed they-had-advanced  
 δσον τριάκοντα σταδίους, Σεύδης ἀπαντᾷ.  
 as-much-as thirty stadia, Seuthes meets (them).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἴδων αὐτόν ἐκέλευσε προσελάσα.  
 And — Xenophon seeing him requested (him) to-ride-up.

δπως δτι εἰποι αὐτῷ πλείστων  
 so that he-might-speak to-him (while) the-greatest-number (were)

ἀκούοντων ἀ εδόκει συμφέρειν.  
 listening, (about) what might-seem to-be-'for (their) advantage.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθε, Ξενοφῶν εἶπε. Ἡμεῖς πορευ-  
 When indeed he-came-forward, Xenophon said: We are-pro-

δμεδα, δπου τὸ στράτευμα μέλλει ἔξειν τροφήν.  
 seed-ing, where the army will-be-about to-have food;

δ ἐκεὶ ἀκούοντες καὶ σοῦ καὶ τοῦ  
 at i where hearing both (the propositions) of-you and — (those)

τῶν Λακωνικοῦ, αἱρησόμεδα ἀ ἀν δοκῇ εἴναι  
 of-the Lacedæmonians, we-shall-determine what may seem to-be

κράτιστα. Ἡν οὖν ἡγήσῃ ἡμῖν, δπου  
 the-best. If therefore you-should-conduct us, where

ἐπιτήδεια ἔστιν πλείστα, νομιοῦμεν  
 provisions are most (abundant), we-shall-consider (ourselves)

ξενίζεσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ. Καὶ ὁ Σεύδης ἔφη.  
 to-be-hospitably-entertained by you. And — Seuthes said:

Αλλὰ οἶδα πολλὰς κώμας ἄδροας, καὶ  
 But I-know (of) many villages (being) close-together, and

ἔχούσας πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀπεχούσας  
 having all (kinds of) — provisions, being-distant

ἡμῖν δσον διελθόντες ἀν ἀριστώητε  
 from-us as-much-as having-gone-over (to them) 'you may 'dine

ἕδεως. Ἡγοῦ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. Ἐπεὶ  
 pleasantly. Conduct (us) therefore, said — Xenophon. When

δ ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δείλης, οἱ στρα-  
 indeed they-arrived to them towards-the evening, the sol

τιῶται συνῆλδον, καὶ Σεύδης εἶπε τοιάδε. Ἔγὼ  
 liers assembled, and Seuthes spoke thus: I

δ ἀνδρες, δέομαι ἡμῖν στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοι,  
 O men, want you to-serve-as-soldiers with me,

καὶ ἵπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις  
 and I-promise you to-give to-the soldiers

κυζικηνόν, δὲ καὶ λοχαγοῖς στρα-  
cyzene (each month), and also 'to (the) 'captains (and) gene-  
τηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα. ἔξω δὲ τούτων  
rals — (that) being-right-and-customary; besides indeed these  
τιμήσω τὸν ἄξιον. Ὁ Εὖτε σῖτα καὶ δὲ  
(things) I-will-honour the deserving. You-shall-have meat and also  
ποτά δεσπερ καὶ νῦν, λαμβάνοντες ἐκ τῆς  
link as even now, taking (them) from the  
χώρας. Δ' ὅποσα ἀν ἀλίσκηται, αὐτὸς  
country. But whatever (spoils) may be-taken, I-myself  
ἀξιώσω ἔχειν ἵνα διατιθέμενος ταῦτα  
shall claim to-have (it) in-order-that having-disposed-of these (things)  
πορίζω τὸν μισθὸν ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὰ μὲν  
'I (may) 'provide — pay for-you. And — (those) indeed  
φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἐσόμεθα ἴκανοι  
deeing and concealing-themselves we will-be able  
διώκειν καὶ μαστεῦειν. Ἐν δέ τις ἀνδιστῆται,  
to-pursue and to-seek-out. If indeed any-one resists,  
σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν  
with you we-shall-endeavour to-overcome (him). — Xenophon  
ἐπηρέτο. Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις  
inquired: How (far) indeed from (the) sea will-you-require  
τὸ στράτευμα συνέπεσθαι σοι; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,  
the army to-accompany you? — 'he indeed replied,  
Οὐδαμῆ πλεῖον ἐπτὰ ἡμέρων, δὲ πολλαχῆ  
Never more (than) seven days' (march), but often  
μείον.  
less.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδοτο τῷ βου-  
λομένῳ λέγειν· καὶ πολλοὶ ἐλεγον κατὰ  
ταῦτα, ὅτι Σεύδης λέγοι παντὸς  
ecurring in) these (things), that Seuthes spoke (words) αὐ-  
τοῖς· γάρ εἰν χειμῶν,  
worthy-of-esteem (and advantageous to them); for it-was winter

καὶ οὐτε εἴη δυνατὸν τῷ βουλομένῳ τοῦτο  
and neither was-it possible for — (those) desiring this  
ἀποπλεῖν οἰκαδε, τε εἴη οὐχ οἶν τε διαγενέδαι  
to-sail-away home, and it-was not possible to-stay  
ἐν φιλίᾳ, εἰ δέοι ζῆν ὀνομένους,  
in (a) friendly (country), if it-might-be-necessary to-live buying  
δὲ ἀσφαλέστερον διατρίβειν  
(their provisions), but (it would be) safest to-remain

καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ μετὰ Σεύδον,  
and to-be-nourished in — (a) hostile (country) with Seuthes,  
ἢ μόνους, δυτῶν τοσούτων ἀγαθῶν· εἰ δὲ  
than alone, there-being so-many advantages; if moreover  
προσλήψοιντο μισθὸν ἔδοκει εἶναι  
they-should-receive in-addition pay it-would-seem to-be (an unexpected)

εὑρημα. Ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν εἶπε.  
good-fortune. | On these (things) Xenophon said: [Xeno-  
phon then said:] If any-one (have anything) to-say-against (this), 'let  
λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψήφιζέτω ταῦτα.  
(him) 'speak: if however not, 'let (him) 'vote-for these

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,  
(things). When indeed no-one said (anything) 'against,  
ἐπεψήφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα.  
he-'put (it) to-vote, | and it-seemed (that) these (things were good)

Δέ εὐθὺς εἶπε ταῦτα  
[and it was carried]. And (Xenophon) immediately told these (things)  
Σεύδη, ὅτι συστρατεύσοιντο αὐτῷ.  
to-Seuthes, (and) that they-would-fight-and-join with-him (in the expedition).

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ ἄλλοι μὲν ἐσκήνωσαν  
After this the other (soldiers) indeed encamped  
κατὰ τάξεις, Σεύδης ἔχων  
according-to (their) ranks-and-divisions, Seuthes (having) (being in)  
πλησίον κώμην, ἐκάλεσε στρατηγούς δὲ καὶ  
, a) near village, invited (the) generals and-also  
λοχαγοὺς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐπὶ<sup>the)</sup> captains to supper. And when they-were at (the)

θύραις, ὡς παριόντες ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, ἦν τις Ηρα-  
doors, as going to supper, there-was a-certain Hera-  
κλείδης Μαρωνείτης· οὗτος προσιὼν ἔκάππε-  
clides (a) Maronean; this (person) going-to such  
ἔνι, οὗτινας ὤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύδη,  
one, whom he-thought to-have any-thing to-give to-Seuthes,  
πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τινας Παριανούς, οἵ παρῆσαν  
first indeed to some Parians, — (who) were-present  
διαπραξόμενοι φιλίαν πρὸς Μήδοκον, τὸν βασιλέα  
about-to-obtain friendship with Medocus, the king

\*Οδρυσῶν, καὶ ἀγοντες δῶρα αὐτῷ τε καὶ  
'of (the) Odrysia, and bringing presents to-him and-also  
τῇ γυναικὶ, ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν εἴη ἄνω  
to — (his) wife, he-said, that Medocus indeed was up

δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ὄδόν ἀπὸ θαλάττης,  
(in the country) twelve days' journey from (the) sea,

δὲ Σεύδης, ἐπεὶ εἰληφε τὸ τοῦτο στράτευμα,  
out Seuthes, since he-has-taken — this army (into his

ἔσοιτο ἀρχων ἐπὶ θαλάττη. \*Ων οὖν  
service), would-be master on (the) sea (coast). Being therefore

γείτων, ἔσται ἴκανώτατος ποιεῖν ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ  
neighbours, he-will-be most-able to-treat you both well

καὶ κακῶς. \*Ἡν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, δώσετε τούτῳ  
and ill. If therefore you-are-wise, give to-this

ὅ τι ἀν αἰτῆται, καὶ διακείσεται  
(Seuthes to obtain) what 'you may ask-for, and it-will-be-disposed-of

ἀμεινον ὑμῖν, ἢ ἐὰν δῶτε Μήδόκῳ τῷ οἰκοῦντι  
better for-you, than if you-give (it) to-Medocus — dwelling

πρόσω. Οὕτως μὲν ἐπειδε τούτους. Αὐδίς δὲ  
far-off. Thus indeed he-persuaded them. Afterwards indeed

προσελθών Τιμασίων τῷ Δαρδανεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἥκουσεν  
going-to Timasion the Dardanian, since he-had-heard

εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ ἔκπόματα καὶ  
|(that there) were to-him [that he had] both cups and

βαρβαρικάς ταπίδας, ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομίζοιτο  
barbaric (or Persian) carpets, he-said that it-was-customary

όπότε Σεύδης καλέσαιτο δεῖπνον τοὺς κλητ  
whenever Seuthes invited to-supper (for) — (those) having.

Σέιτας δωρεῖσθαι αὐτῷ. Δ' οὗτος  
been-invited to-give (presents) to-him. And this (Seuthes  
ἥν γένηται μέγας ἐνδάδε, ἔσται ἴκανὸς, καὶ  
if he-becomes great here, will-be able, both

καταγαγεῖν σε οἴκαδε, καὶ ποιῆσαι πλούσιον  
to-have-restored you to-home, and to-make (you) rich

ἐνδάδε. Τοιαῦτα προίμνατο, προς  
here. (In) such (a manner) be-kept-sung (for Seuthes), go

ών ἔκάστῳ. Δὲ καὶ προελθὼν Ξενο-  
ing-to each (of the guests). And also advancing to-Xeno-

φῶντι εἴλεγε. Σὺ εἶ καὶ μεγίστης πόλεως,  
phon he-said: You are also (from a) very-great city,

καὶ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα ἔστι μέγιστον παρὰ Σεύδη,  
and — your name is very-great with Seuthes,

καὶ ἐν τῇδε χώρᾳ ίσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ λαμ-  
and in this country you-will perhaps claim even to-re-

βάνειν τείχη, ὅπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων  
ceive walled-places, as even others of — your

ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν· οὖν  
(countrymen) have-received, and-likewise land; (it will) therefore (be)

ἀξιον σοι τιμῆσαι Σεύδην καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα.  
proper for-you to-honour Seuthes even most-magnificently

Δέ παραινῶ σοι δὲ εὔνους· γάρ εὐ οἶδα,  
And I-advice you being (your) well-wisher; for 'I well 'know

ὅτι ὅσῳ μεῖζῳ ἀν δωρήσῃ τούτῳ  
that how-much the-greater may (be the presents) you-give him

τοσούτῳ μεῖζῳ πείσῃ ὑπὸ τούτου  
so-much the-greater you-may-persuade of this (person)

ἀγαθὰ. Ξενοφῶν ἀκούων ταῦτα  
(to grant you) benefits. Xenophon hearing these (things),

τίπορει· γάρ δὴ διαθεβήκει ἐκ Παρίου οὐ ἔχων,  
τις · perplexed; for indeed he-had-come-over from Parium not having

*εἰ μη παῖδα καὶ ὅσον*  
 (any thing), | if not, [except] (a) servant and as-much-as (enough  
*ἐφόδιον.*  
 money) 'for (the) 'journey.

*\*Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰςῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον*  
 When indeed they-went-in to the supper (the guests consist

*τὲ τῶν Θρακῶν, οἱ κράτιστο*  
 (ing of) indeed the Thracians, — (those namely being) the-best  
*τῶν παρόντων, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοί*  
 (and most considerable) of — (those) present, and the genera.  
*καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ εἰ τις πρεσβεία*  
 and the captains of-the Greeks, and if any ambassador  
*παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν*  
 was-present from (a) town, | the supper indeed was (for them)  
*καθημένοις κύκλῳ.*

sitting 'in (a) 'circle; [they took their supper sitting in a circle.]

*ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰσηνέχθησαν πᾶσιν*  
 afterwards indeed tables-with-three-feet were-brought-in for-all,

*οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν μεστοὶ κρεῶν νενεμημέ-*  
 these (tables) indeed were full (of pieces of) meat heaped.

*των, καὶ μεγάλοι ζυμίται ἄρτοι ἦσαν προσ-*  
 up, and large leavened (loaves of) bread were at.

*πεπερινημένοι πρὸς τοὺς κρέασι. Δ' αἱ*  
 tached to the (pieces of) meat. And the

*τράπεζαι ἀεὶ μάλιστα ἐτίθεντο κατὰ τοὺς*  
 tables 'were always in-preference 'placed near the

*ξένους· γὰρ ἦν νόμος. Καὶ Σεύθης πρῶτος*  
 guests; for (this) was (their) custom. And Seuthes first

*ἐποίει τοῦτο· ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἄρτους παρα-*  
 acted thus: taking-up the (loaves of) bread lying-

*κειμένους ἔαντῷ διέκλα κατὰ μικρόν, καὶ*  
 near him he-broke (them) into small (pieces), and

*διερρίπτειν, οἷς ἐδόκει αὐτῷ· καὶ τὰ κρέα ἀ-*  
 distributed, to-whom it-pleased him; and the meat in-like

*αὐτῶς καταλιπών ἔαντῷ μόνον ὅσον γεύσασθαι.*  
 manner, leaving for-himself only as-much-as to-taste

Kai oī ἄλλοι δὲ, καὶ οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο,  
And the others indeed, before whom the tables were-placed,

ἐποίουν κατὰ ταῦτα. Δέ τις Ἀρκᾶς  
acted according to-this-same (manner). But a-certain Arcadian,

\*Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, δεινός φαγεῖν, εἴα  
Arystas by-name, | terrible to-eat, [a very great eater,] | permitted

χαίρειν μὲν τὸ διαρρίπτειν,  
(himself to say) good-by [took no care of] indeed the distributing,

δέ λαβὼν εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ἄρτον ὅσον  
but having-taken in — (his) hand (a loaf of) bread (of) as-much-as

τριχοίνικον, καὶ κρέα, θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ  
three-chœnix, and-also meat, having-placed (them) on — (his)

γόνατα, ἐδείπνει. Δὲ περιέφερον κέρατα  
knees, he-ate (his) 'supper. And they-carried-about horns

νεῦν, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο. Δ' ὁ Ἀρύστας,  
of-wine, and all received (some). But — Arystas,

ἐπεὶ ὁ οἰνοχόος ἤκεν παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας,  
when the cup-bearer came to him bearing the horn,

εἶπεν, ἴδων τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα,  
he-said, seeing — Xenophon no-longer supping,

δός, ἔφη, ἔκεινῳ· γάρ οὐδηὶ σχολάζει, δέ ἐγώ  
give (it), said-he, to-him; for now he-is-at-leisure, but I

οὐδέπω. Σεύδης ἀκούσας τὴν φωνὴν ἥρωτα τὸν  
not-yet Seuthes nearing the voice asked the

οἰνοχόον τί λέγοι. Δὲ ὁ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν·  
cup-bearer what he-might-say. And the cup-bearer told (him);

γάρ οὐπίστατο ἐλληνίζειν. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ  
for he-knew (how) to-speak-Greek. Then indeed truly

ἔγένετο γέλιος.  
there-was laughter.

\*Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὁ πότος προύχώρει, ἀνὴρ, Θρακός,  
When indeed the drinking was-going-on, (a) man, (a) Thracian,

εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων λευκόν ἵππον· καὶ λαβὼν κέρας  
entered having (a) white horse; and taking (a) horn

μεστὸν εἶπε· Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύδη, καὶ  
full (of wine) said · L-drink to-you, O Seuthes, and

δωροῦμαι τὸν τοῦτον ἵππον, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκω  
 present (you) — this-same horse, on which both following  
 δν ἀν θέλης, αἱρήσεις, καὶ ἀποχωρῶν  
 whom 'you may 'wish you-will-take (him), and retreating you-will  
 οὐ μὴ δείσης τὸν πολέμιον. Ἀλλος εἰςαγαγὼν  
 not — 'fear the enemy. Another leading-in (a)  
 παῖδα, οὗτως προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο, καὶ  
 boy, in-like-manner drinking-to (him) presented (the boy), and  
 ἄλλος ἴμάτια τῷ γυναικί. Καὶ Τιμασίων προ-  
 another vestments for — (his) wife. And Timasion drink-  
 πίνων ἐδωρήσατο τε ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην καὶ  
 ing-to (him) presented not-only (a) silver cup but-also  
 ταπίδα ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν. Δὲ Γνήσιππος, τις  
 (a) carpet worth ten minæ. But Gnesippus, a-certain  
 Ἄθηναῖος, ἀναστὰς εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀρχαῖος νόμος  
 Athenian, rising-up said, that (the) ancient custom  
 εἴη κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ  
 was most-beautiful for — (those) indeed having to-give to-the  
 βασιλεὶ ἐνεκα τιμῆς, δὲ τὸν  
 king | by-reason-of honour, [in order to honour him,] but (that) the  
 βασιλέα διδόναι τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι, ἵνα καὶ  
 king should-give to — (those) indeed not having, therefore even  
 ἐγώ, ἐφη, σοι ἔχω δωρεῖσθαι  
 I, said-he, (beg of) you (that) I-may-have (s·methng) to-present  
 καὶ τιμᾶν. Ο Xenophōn δὲ ἥπαρεῖτο  
 and to-honour (you). — Xenophon indeed was-perplexed (to know)  
 ὅτι ποιήσοι. γὰρ καὶ ἐτίγχανεν καθήμενος ὡς  
 what he-might-do; for even he-happened being-seated as  
 τιμώμενος ἐν δίφρῳ πλησιατάτῳ Σεύδη.  
 (one) honoured in (the) seat the-nearest to-Seuthes  
 Ο Herachlēs δὲ ἐκέλευεν τὸν οἰνοχόον ὁρέξαι  
 — Herachlēs indeed requests the cup-bearer o-present  
 τὸ κέρας αὐτῷ. Ο Xenophōn δὲ (γὰρ ἥδη  
 the cup to-him. — Xenophon however (for already  
 ἐτίγχανεν ἴποπεπωκώς) ἀνέστη, θαρρα-  
 he-happened being-somewhat-exhilarated-by-wine) stood-up, (and) boldly

λέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρας, καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δέ,  
 taking the horn, 'he also 'said: I indeed  
 Ὡ Σεύδη, δίδωμι σοι ἐμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς τούτους  
 O Seuthes, give to-you myself and — these  
 ἔμοὺς ἐταίρους, εἰναι πιστούς φίλους, καὶ οὐδένα  
 my companions, to-be (your) faithful friends, and none  
 ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ βού-  
 being-reluctant, but all more than-even myself de-  
 λομένους εἶναι φίλους. Καὶ νῦν πάρεισι  
 siring to-be (your) friends. And now they-are-present  
 προσαιτοῦντες οὐδέν σε, ἀλλὰ καὶ προϊέμενοι  
 asking-for nothing 'more of-you, but even giving  
 καὶ ἐδέλοντες πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ  
 (themselves) 'up (to you) and desiring to-labour for you  
 καὶ προκινδυνεύειν. μεδ' ὅν, ἀν οἱ θεοὶ<sup>1</sup>  
 and-also to-incur-danger (for you); with whom, if the gods  
 θέλωσι, ἀπολήψῃ πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν  
 will (it), you-will-retake much territory — (that) indeed  
 ὑσαν πατρώαν, δὲ κτήση τὴν. δὲ  
 being paternal, but-also you-will-acquire — (other territory); also  
 κτήση πολλοὺς ἵππους δὲ ἄνδρας, καὶ καλὰς  
 you-will-acquire many horses and men, and handsome  
 γυναικας, οὓς οὐ δεήσει ληίζεσθαι, ἀλλ  
 women, whom it-will not be-necessary to-take-by-force, but  
 αὐτοὶ παρέσονται φέροντες δῶρα πρὸς σε.  
 they-themselves will-be-present bringing gifts for you

\*Ο Σεύδης ἀναστὰς συνεξέπιε  
 Seuthes standing-up drank-out-of (the same horn) 'with (him)  
 καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο συγκατεσκεδάσατο  
 and after this 'with (him) 'poured out (on himself)

τὸ κέρας. Μετὰ ταῦτα  
 (the contents of) the horn. After these (things) (persons)  
 εἰσῆλθον αὐλοῦντες τε κέρασι, οἷοις σημαίνονται  
 entered playing not-only on-horns, such-as they-make-signals-  
 οιν, καὶ σάλπιγξιν ωμοβοΐναις, σαλπίζοντες τε  
 with, but-also on-trumpets made-of-rav-w-hides. blowing not-only

ρυθμούς καὶ οἰον μαγάδι. Καὶ Σεύθης αὐτὸς regular-tunes but-also as-if 'on (the) 'megadis. And Seuthes himself ἀναστὰς τε ἀνέκραγε πολεμικόν, καὶ standing-up not-only shouted (a) warlike (cry), but-also ἔξηλατο μάλα ἐλαφρῶς, ὥσπερ φυλαττόμενος . leaped-away very nimbly, as-if guarding-against (a) βέλος. Δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί εἰσήσαν. missile. And also buffoons entered.

‘Ως δ’ ἥλιος ἦν ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, οἱ Ἑλληνες As indeed (the) sun was about setting, the Greeks ἀνεστησαν, καὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ὅρα καδιστάναι stood-up, and said, that (it was) time to-place (the) νυκτοφύλακας, καὶ παραδιδόναι σύνδημα. Καὶ night-sentinels, and to-give-out (the) watch-word. And ἐκέλευνον Σεύθην παραγγεῖλαι, ὅπως μηδεὶς τῶν they-requested Seuthes to-announce, that no-one of-the Θρακῶν εἴσεισι εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα Thracians should-enter into the Greek camp. νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ πολέμιοι ὑμῖν Θρᾷκες, καὶ by-night; for not-only the enemies to-you (are) Thracians, but-also οἱ φίλοι ὑμῖν. ‘Ως δ’ ἔξησαν, ὁ Σεύθης the friends to-us. As indeed they-went-out, — Seuthes συνανέστη οὐδὲν ἔτι ἐοικώς μεδύοντι. stood-up-with (them) not as-yet like (a man) being-intoxicated. Δ’ ἔξελθὼν, ἀποκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς αὐτοὺς, And going-out, having-called-back the generals (by) themselves, εἶπεν· Ὡ ξανδρες, οἱ πολέμιοι ὑμῶν οὐκ ἴσασι he-said: O men, the enemies of-us 'do not 'know πω τὴν ὑμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἦν οὖν ἔλωμεν as-yet — (of) our alliance; if therefore we-should-go ἐπ’ αὐτούς, πρὶν φυλάξασθαι, ὥστε against them, before (that) they-were-on (their) 'guard, so-as μὴ ληφθῆναι, ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὥστε not to-be-taken, or prepared (for defence), thus ἀμύνασθαι ἀν λάβοιμεν μάλιστα καὶ to-arrange-ourselves (if) 'we may 'have-taken the-most both (of

ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρήματα. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνεπήνοι  
 men and things. The generals assented-to  
 ταῦτα, καὶ ἐκέλευνον ἡγεῖσθαι. Δ' ὁ εἶπε·  
 these (things), and requested (him) to-lead-on. But—said-he:  
 Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅπόταν  
 Having-prepared-yourselves wait-for (me); I indeed when  
 καιρὸς ἢ ἥξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ ἀναλαβὼν  
 (the) proper-time may-be will-come to you, and taking  
 τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἡγησομαι σὺν  
 the targeteers and you I-will-lead (you) with (the assist-  
 τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·  
 ance of) the gods. And — Xenophon said. (We ought)  
 Σκέψαι τοίνυν, εἰπερ πορευσόμεδα νυκτὸς, εἰ  
 to-consider therefore, if-indeed we-are-to-proceed by-night, whether  
 ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος ἔχει κάλλιον.  
 the Grecian custom | has (itself) more-beautifully; [is the best;]  
 γὰρ μὲν ἐν ταῖς πορείαις μεδ' ἡμέραν, τοῦ  
 for indeed on the march during (the) day, (that part) of-the  
 στρατεύματος, ἵποιον ἀν ἀεὶ συμφέρῃ πρὸς τὴν  
 army, whi-ther ever may always be-best-suited to the  
 χώραν, ἡγεῖται, εἰν τε ὁπλιτικὸν, ἐάν τε πελ-  
 place, leads, it-may-be heavy-armed-men, — (or) tar-  
 ταστικόν, ἐάν τε ἵππικόν· δὲ νύκτῳ νόμος  
 geeters, — (or) cavalry; but by-night (the) custom  
 ἔστι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν τὸ βραδύτατον ἡγεῖσθαι.  
 is fer-the Greeks (for, the slowest (troops) to-lead-the-way.  
 Γὰρ οὕτω τὰ στρατεύματα ἡκιστα διασπάται,  
 For thus the army will-be least dispersed,  
 καὶ ἡκιστα ἀποδιδράσκοντες λανθάνουσιν  
 and there-will-be the-least 'straggling unperceived  
 ἀλλήλους· δὲ οἱ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ  
 from-one-another; but — (those) having-been-dispersed often both  
 περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες ποιοῦσι  
 fall-foul-of one-another, and not-knowing (it) they-do  
 καὶ πάσχοντι κακῶς. Οὖν Σεύθης εἶπεν· Τε  
 and suffer ill. Therefore Seuthes said: 'You indeed

λέγετε ὁρθῶς, καὶ ἐγὼ πείσομαι τῷ νόμῳ τῷ  
say what-is-right, and I will-conform to-the custom —

ὑμετέρῳ. Καὶ δώσω ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας τῷ  
(namely) to-yours. And I-will-give you indeed guides of-the

πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπιειροτάτους τῆς  
oldest-men — (those namely) best-acquainted with-the

χώρας, δὸς αὐτὸς ἐφέψομαι ἔχων τοὺς ἵππους  
country, but I-myself will-follow having the cavalry

τελευταῖος. ἀν δέη γάρ ταχὺ<sup>ν</sup>  
last (in the rear); if required I-will-be however speedily

παρέσομαι πρῶτος. Δ' εἰπον σύνδημα  
'present first (in front). And they-said (the) watch-word

Ἄθηναίαν, κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. Εἰπόντες  
(was) Minerva, on-account-of — (their) relationship. Having-said

ταῦτ' ἀνεπαύοντο.  
these (things) they-went-to-sleep.

Ἐνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας Σεύδης  
When indeed it-was about mid night Seuthes  
παρῆν ἔχων τοὺς ἵππεας τεθωρακισμένους, καὶ  
was-present having the cavalry clad-in-corslets, and

τοὺς πελταστὰς σύν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Καὶ ἐπεὶ<sup>ν</sup>  
the targeteers with — (their) arms. And when

παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ ὅπλιται μὲν  
he-had-delivered the guides, the heavy-armed-men indeed

ἡγοῦντο, δὸς οἱ πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, δὸς οἱ ἵππεις  
took-the-lead, and the targeteers followed, and the cavalry

ἀπισθοφυλάκουν. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἡμέρα, ὁ Σεύδης  
brought-up-the-rear. When indeed it-was day, — Seuthes

παρήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπήνεσε τὸν  
rode-up to the front, and praised the

Ἐλληνικὸν νόμον πολλάκις, γάρ ἐφη αὐτός  
Greek custom much, for he-said he-himself

νύκτωρ, καὶ πορευόμενος σὺν ὄλιγοις,  
at-night, even proceeding with (but) few (men),

ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν.  
we-have-been-separated with the cavalry from the infantry

Δέ νῦν ὁςπερ δεῖ, πάντες φαινόμεθα ἀμφι  
But now as it-ought-to-be 'we all appear at-the-same-time  
τὴν ἡμέραν ἀδρόοι. Ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν  
with-the (break of) day collected-in-a-body. But 'do you indeed  
περιμένετε αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ  
'remain here, and rest-yourselves, I however  
σκεψάμενός τι ἥξω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'  
having-r. connoitred somewhat will-return. Having said these (things)  
ῆλαυνε δι' ὁρους λαβών τινα ὁδόν. Δ' ἐπεὶ  
he-rode over (a) mountain taking a-certain road But when  
ἀφίκετο εἰς πολλήν χιόνα, ἐσκέψατο εἰ εἴη  
he-had-come to much snow, he-examined if there-might-be  
ἴχην ἀνθρώπων ἢ ἡγούμενα πρόσω ἢ  
foot-steps of-men (and) whether leading forward or (the)  
ἐναντία. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἔώρα τὴν ὁδόν ἀτριβῆ,  
contrary (way.) But when he-perceived the road untrodden,  
ταχὺ ἤκε πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν. Ἀνδρες, ἐσται  
he speedily 'came back and said: Men, it-will-be  
καλῶς, ἢν θεὸς θέλῃ· γάρ λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες  
well, if god (so) wishes, | for we-shall-concealing be-attacking  
τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἀλλ᾽  
the men [for we shall fall upon the men unawares]. But  
ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως, ἀν ίδωμεν  
I indeed will-lead with-the cavalry, so-that, if we-may-see  
τινα μὴ διαφυγὴν σημήνη τοῖς πολεμίοις.  
any-one he-'may not fleeing-away 'give-notice to-the enemy;  
δέ ὑμεῖς ἐπεσθε· κἄν λειφθῆτε, ἐπεσθε  
but 'do you 'follow; and-if you-are-left (behind), follow  
τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων. Δέ ὑπερβάντες τὰ  
the tracks of-the horses. And having-crossed-over — (those)  
ὄρη ἥξομεν εἰς πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας  
mountains we-shall-come to many and also rich  
κώμας.  
villages.

Δ' ἦνίκα ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, τε ἥδη ἦν ἐπὶ<sup>on</sup>  
And when it-was mid day, and already he-was on

τοῖς ἄκροις, καὶ κατιδὼν τὰς κώμας, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων  
 the heights, and seeing the villages, he-came riding  
 πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἡδη μὲν  
 to the heavy-armed-men and said: I-will now indeed  
 ἀφήσω τοὺς ἵππεας καταδεῖν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, δὲ  
 send-off the cavalry to-run-down to the plain, and  
 τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. Ἀλλ' ἔπεισθε  
 the targeteers to the villages. But follow  
 ὡς τάχιστα δύνησθε, ὅπως ἔάν τις οὐφιστῆται  
 as speedily (as) you-can, so-that if any-one withstand  
 ἀλέξησθε. Οἱ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα  
 (them) you-may-help (them). — Xenophon having-heard these  
 κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου. Καὶ δὲ  
 (things) dismounted from — (his) horse. And — (Seuthes)  
 ἥρετο· Τί καταβαίνεις, ἐπεὶ δεῖ σπεύδειν;  
 inquired: Why do-you-dismount, when it-is-necessary to-hasten?  
 Οἴδα, ἔφη, δτι οὐ δέῃ ἔμοῦ μόνοῦ·  
 I-know, said (Xenophon), that you-do not 'want me alone,  
 δοι ὀπλίται δραμοῦνται θᾶττον καὶ ἥδιον,  
 and the heavy-armed-men will-hasten-on more-quickly and agreeably,  
 ἔὰν ἔγὼ καὶ ἥγωμαι πεζός. Μετὰ ταῦτα  
 if I even lead (them) on-foot. After these (things)  
 ὥχετο, καὶ Τιμασίου μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ὡς  
 (Seuthes) departed, and Timasion with him having about  
 τετταράκοντα ἵππεας τῶν Ἑλλήνων· Ξενοφῶν δὲ  
 forty horsemen of-the Greeks; Xenophon also  
 παρηγγυησε τοὺς εὑζώνους ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εἰς  
 ordered the active (men) from the companies about  
 τριάκοντα ἔτη παριέναι. Καὶ αὐτὸς  
 thirty (years of) age to-proceed-forward. And he  
 ἐτρόχαζε ἔχων τούτους. Δέ Κλεάνωρ ἥγειτο  
 ran-on having these (men). And Cleanor led  
 τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Ἐπεὶ θ' ἥσαν ἐν ταῖς  
 the other Greeks. When indeed they-were in the  
 κώμαις, Σεύδης, ἔχων δσον τριάκοντα ἵππεας.  
 villages, Seuthes, having about thirty horsemen

προελάσας εἰπε· Τάδε δή, ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἀ  
having-ridden-up said: The (things) indeed, O Xenophon, which

σὺ ἔλεγες· οἱ ἄνδρωποι ἔχονται  
you told (us) (are taking place): the men are-he'd

ἀλλὰ γὰρ οἱ μοι ἵππεῖς οἴχονται ἔρημοι  
captives); but however — my cavalry are-gone-off destitute

διώκων ἄλλος ἄλλη.

(of a leader) pursuing (the enemy) | other in-another; [some one way,

καὶ δέδοικα μὴ οἱ πολέμοι συστάντες  
some another;] and I-have-feared lest the enemy assembling

που ἀδρόοι ἐργάσωνται τι κακόν· καὶ  
somewhere collected-in-a-body may-do (us) some injury; and

δὲ δεῖ τινᾶς ἡμῶν καταμένειν ἐν ταῖς  
also it-is-necessary (that) some of-us should-remain in the  
κώμαις· γὰρ εἰσιν μεσταὶ ἀνδρώπων. 'Αλλ' ἐγὼ  
villages, for they-are full of-people. But I

μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω  
indeed, said — Xenophon, with (those) whom I-have (with me)  
καταλήψομαι τὰ ἄκρα· δὲ σὺ κέλευν Κλεάνορα  
will-take-possession-of the heights; and 'do you 'order Cleanor

παρατείναι τὴν φάλαγγα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ  
to-stretch — (his) line through the plain by

τὰς κώμας. 'Επει δέ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα, συνη-  
the villages. When indeed they-had-done these (things), there-

λίσθησαν μὲν ὡς χίλια ἀνδράποδα, δὲ δις-  
were-collected-together indeed about a-thousand slaves, and two.

χίλιοι βόες, ἄλλα καὶ μύρια πρόβατα. Τότε μὲν  
thousand oxen, but also ten-thousand sheep. Then indeed

δὴ ηὐλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ.

— they-'quartered there 'for-the-night.

## CHAPTER IV.

**Δέ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Σεύδης παντελῶς κατα-**  
 But on-the next-day — Seuthes 'having entirely "burned-  
**καύσας τὰς κώμας, καὶ λιπών οὐδεμίαν οἰκίαν,**  
 down the villages, and leaving not (a) house,  
**ὅπως ἐνδείη φόβον καὶ τοῖς ἀλλοῖς,**  
 in-order-that he-might-'strike fear 'into even the rest, (when  
**οἵα πείσονται ἀν μὴ πείδωνται,**  
 they saw) what they-would-suffer if they-'did not 'submit,  
**ἀπήγει πάλιν. Καὶ ἀπέπεμψε μὲν Ἡρακλείδην**  
 ne-departed back. And he-sent indeed Heraclides  
**διατίθεσθαι μὲν τὴν λείαν εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως**  
 to-sell indeed the booty at Perinthus, that  
**μισθὸς ἀν γένηται τοῖς στρατιώταις. δὲ αὐτὸς**  
 pay might be-got for-the soldiers; but he  
**καὶ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ πεδίον**  
 and the Greeks encamped on the plain

**Θυνῶν, οἵ ἐκλιπόντες ἐφευγον εἰς**  
 'of (the) Thynians, — (who) deserting (their houses) fled to  
**τὰ ὄρη. Ήν δὲ πολλή χιὼν, καὶ οὕτως**  
 the mountains. There-was indeed much snow, and such  
**ψυχος, ὅστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνου**  
 cold, that the water which they-brought-in for supper  
**ἐπήγυντο, καὶ ὁ οἶνος, ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγεί-**  
 was-frozen, and-also the wine, — (that namely) in the ves-  
**οις, καὶ βῖνες καὶ ὤτα πολλῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων**  
 sels, likewise (the) noses and ears of-many of-the Greeks  
**ἀπεκαίουντο. Καὶ τότε ἐγένετο δῆλον**  
 | were-burnt-off [were frozen off]. And thus it-becomes evident  
**οὗ ἔνεκα οἱ Θρᾷκες φοροῦσι τὰς ἀλωπεκίδας**  
 why the Thracians wear — (their) fox (skin caps)  
**ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς καὶ τοῖς ὠσί, καὶ**  
 on — (their) heads and — (their) ears, and have'

**χιτωνας** οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις, ἀλλὰ  
roats (extending) not only about the breasts, but

**καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς,** καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ήπων  
also about the thighs, and (why) on — horse (back)

**ἔχουσιν ζευράς** μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν, ἀλλ᾽  
they-have wide-upper-garments (reaching) just-to the feet, but

ὑπὸ χλαμύδας. Ὁ Σεύδης ἀφιεὶς δὲ τῶν  
not (having cloaks. — Seuthes letting-go indeed (some) of-the

αιχμαλώτων εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἰ μὴ  
captives to the mountains he-said, that unless

**καταβήσονται καὶ πείσονται,** ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ  
they-should-come-down and obey, that he-would-burn-down both

τὰς κώμας τούτων, καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται  
the villages of-themselves, and the corn, and they-would-perish

τῷ λιμῷ. Ἐκ τούτου καὶ γυναικες καὶ παῖδες  
of— hunger. On this both women and children

**καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι κατέβαινον.** Δὲ οἱ νεώτεροι  
and-also the old-men descended. But the younger

ηὐλίζοντο ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος.  
(persons) quartered in the villages under the mountain.

**Καὶ ὁ Σεύδης καταμαθὼν** ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενο-

φῶντα λαβόντα τοὺς νεωτάτους τῶν ὁπλιτῶν  
phon taking the youngest of-the heavy-armed-men

**συνεπισπέδαι.** Καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτός  
to-follow-with (him). And having-risen-up at — night

**ἄμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρῆσαν εἰς τὰς κώμας.**  
together with-the (break of) day they-were-present at the villages

**Καὶ μέν οἱ πλεῖστοι** ἔξεφυγον· (γάρ τὸ ὄρος  
And indeed the most (of them) fled-away; (for the mountain

ἥν πλησίον·) δὲ ὅσους Σεύδης ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν  
was near;) but as-many-as Seuthes took he-speared

**ἀφειδῶς.**

without-mercy.

**Δ'** ἦν τις Ἐπισθέντος, Ὄλυδιος, παιδε-

And there-wa<sup>n</sup>a c-ertain Episthines, (an) Olynthian, (a) lover

παστής, δις ἴδων καλὸν παιδα ἄρτι ήβάσκοντα,  
 of-boys, who seeing (a) handsome youth just arrived-at-the-age-of  
 ἔχοντα πέλτην, μέλλοντα ἀποδνήσκειν,  
 puberty, having (a) shield, about-being put-to-death,  
 προσδραμών Ξενοφῶντα ἵκέτευσε βοηθῆσαι  
 having-run-to Xenophon he-supplied (him) to-succor (the)  
 καλῶ παιδί. Καὶ δις προελθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ,  
 handsome boy. And who going-up to Seuthes,  
 δεῖται μὴ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν παιδα· καὶ διηγεῖται  
 requests (him) not to-kill the boy; and relates  
 τὸν τρόπον τοῦ Ἐπισθένους, καὶ ὅτι ποτὲ  
 the character of — Episthenes, and that once  
 συνελέξατο λόχον σκοπῶν οὐδὲν  
 he-collected (a) company (of soldiers) looking-to nothing (else)  
 η̄ εἰ τινες εἰεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων  
 (or if) (but that) such might-be handsome, and with these  
 η̄ν ἀγαθός ἀνὴρ. Δέ ὁ Σεύδης ἤρετο Καὶ η̄  
 he-was (a) brave man. But — Seuthes inquired: And —  
 ἀν θέλοις, ο Ἐπίσθενες ἀποδανεῖν ὑπερ  
 would you-be-willing, O Episthenes to-die for  
 τούτου; Δέ ὁ ἀνατείνας τὸν  
 this (youth)? But — (Episthenes) having-stretched-out — (his)  
 τράχηλον εἶπε Παιε, ἔφη, εἰ ὁ παις κελεύει,  
 neck said: Strike, said-he, if the boy requires (it)  
 καὶ μέλλει εἰδέναι χάριν. Ο Σεύδης ἐπήρετο  
 and hereafter-will consider (it as a) favour. — Seuthes inquired-of  
 τὸν παιδα, εἰ παίσειεν αὐτὸν ἀντ' ἔκείνον.  
 the youth, if he-should-strike him [Episthenes] in-place-of himself.  
 Ο παις οὐκ εἴα, ἀλλ' ἵκέτευε κατα-  
 The youth 'would not 'permit (this), but requested (him) to-  
 καίνειν μηδέτερον Ἐνταῦδα ὁ Ἐπισθένος, περι-  
 kill neither. Then — Episthenes, having-  
 λαβὼν τὸν παιδα, εἶπε. Ωρα σοι, ο Σεύδη,  
 embraced the youth, said: (It is) time for-you, O Seuthes,  
 διαμάχεσθα μοι περὶ τοῦδε. γὰρ οὐ  
 to-fight with-me for this (youth); for I-'will not

μεδήσω τὸν παῖδα. Ὁ Σεύδης δὲ γελῶν, εἴα μεν  
give-up the boy. — Seuthes then laughing, 'let indeed

ταῦτα. <sup>Ἐδοξε</sup>  
these (things) 'alone (and the boy's life was spared). It-seemed (best)

δὲ αὐτῷ αὐλισθῆναι αὐτοῦ, ἵνα οἱ ἐπὶ<sup>τοῦ</sup>  
indeed to-him to-encamp there, in-order-that — (those) on  
τοῦ ὅρους μὴ τρέφοιντο ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν.  
the mountain 'might not 'be-nourished from these — villages.

Καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ὑποκαταβὰς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ  
And he indeed having-gone-down-lower in he plain

ἐσκήνων. Δέ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους,  
encamped. But — Xenophon, having the select-body-of-men,

ἀνωτάτῳ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ὑπὸ τὸ ὅρος, καὶ  
(quartered) higher-up in the village under the mountain, and

οἱ ἄλλοι Ἑλληνες κατεσκήνησαν πλησίον ἐν  
the other Greeks encamped near-by among

τοῖς καλούμενοις τοῖς ὄρεινοις Θραξί.  
— (those) called the mountain Thracians.

\*Ἐκ τούτου οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι διετρίβοντο, καὶ οἱ  
After this not many days had-passed, and the

Θράκες ἐκ τοῦ ὅρους, καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν  
Thracians from the mountain, coming-down to —

Σεύδην, διεπράττοντο περὶ σπουδῶν καὶ ὀχήρων.  
Seuthes, negotiated about (a) treaty and hostages.

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ ἔλεγε, δότι  
And — Xenophon going to Seuthes said, that

σκηνῶεν ἐν πονηροῖς τόποις, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι  
they-were-encamped on dangerous places, and (that) the enemv

εἰεν πλησίον· τ' ἔφη δὲν ἥδιων αὐλίζεσ-  
were near; 'he also 'said 'it would 'be-more-agreeable to-en-

δαι ἔξω ἐν ἔχυροις χωρίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς  
camp without in strong places rather than in —

στεγνοῖς, δεστε ἀπολέσθαι. Δέ ὁ  
covered (places as houses), so-as to-perish. But — (Seuthes)

ἐκέλευε θαρρεῖν, καὶ ἐδειξεν ὁμήρους πα-  
requested (him) to-be-confident, and showed (the) hostages | being.

φόντας αὐτῷ.

Δὲ καὶ τινες τῶν  
present with-him [in his possession]. And also some of — (those)  
ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους καταβείνοντες ἐδέοντο τυῦ Ξενο-  
from the mountain coming-down begged — Xenon-  
φῶντος συμπαρᾶξαι σφισι τὰς σπουδάς.  
phon to-assist them (to obtain) — (a) truece.

Ο δ ὡμολόγει, καὶ ἐλέλευθε θαρ-  
— (Xenophon) indeed consented, and requested (them) to-be-in-  
ρέειν, καὶ ἦγγυάτο αὐτοὺς πείσεσθαι μηδὲν  
good-spirits, and assured (them that) they should-suffer no  
κακὸν πειδομένους Σεύδη. Δὲ οἱ ἄρα ἐλεγον ταῦτ'  
evil being-obedient to-Seuthes. But — therefore they-said these

ἔνεκα κατασκοπῆς.

(things) for-the-purpose (of) spying-out (the condition of the Grecians).

Ταῦτα μὲν ἐγένετο τῆς ἡμέρας, δὲ εἰς  
These (things) indeed happened during-the day, but on  
τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν νύκτα οἱ Θυνοί ἐλαδόντες ἐκ τοῦ  
the following night the Thynians coming from the  
ὄρους ἐπιτίθενται. Καὶ ὁ δεσπότης ἐκάστης  
mountain attacked (them). And the master of-each  
τῆς οἰκίας ἦν μὲν ἥγεμὼν γάρ ἦν κα-  
— house was indeed (a) leader; for it-would-have-been dif-  
λεπὸν ἀλλως ἀνευρίσκειν τὰς οἰκίας ὅντας  
cult otherwise to-find-out the houses being (in the)  
σκότους ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. γάρ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι  
dark in the villages; for even the houses  
περιεσταύρωντο κύκλῳ μεγάλοις σταυροῖς ἔνεκα  
were-palisaded 'in (a) circle with-large palisades on-account-of  
τῶν προβάτων. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο κατὰ θύρας  
the cattle. And when they-got near (the) doors  
ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰςηκόντιζον,  
of-each — dwelling, — (some) indeed threw-spears-in,  
οἱ δὲ ἔβαλλον τοῖς σκυτάλοις, ἃ  
— (others) indeed threw with — (their) clubs, which  
ἔβασαν ἔχειν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τὰς λόγχας  
— were-said to-have as (for) knocking-off the sharp-iron-heads

τῶν δοράτων, δ' οἱ ἐνεπίμπρασαν,  
 of — spears, and — (others) set-fire-to (the buildings).

καὶ καλοῦντες Ξενοφῶντα ὄνομαστὶ ἐκέλενον  
 and calling-on Xenophon by-name bade (him)

ἔξιόντα ἀποδυῆσκειν, ἢ ἔφασαν αὐτὸν κατα-  
 coming-out to-die, or they-said (that) he would-

καυδήσεσθαι αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἦδη τὲ πῦρ ἐφαίνετο  
 be-burnt-up there. And already not-only fire appeared

διὰ τοῦ ὄρόφου, καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα  
 through the roofs, but-also — (those) about Xenophon

ἐντεθωρακισμένοι ἥσαν ἐνδον, ἔχοντες ἀσπίδας καὶ  
 having-their-corselets-on were within, having shields and

μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακέστιος ὅν  
 swords and helmets, and Silanus (a) Macestian being

ἦδη ὡς ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἐτῶν σημαίνει τῇ  
 already about eighteen (years) of-age gives-the-signal with-the

σάλπιγγι· καὶ ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη ενδὺς  
 trumpet, and having-drawn — (their) swords 'they immediately

ἐκπηδῶσιν, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνω-  
 'sprang-out, and (also) — (those) from the other quar-

μάτων. Οἱ Θράκες δὲ φεύγουσι, περιβαλλόμενοι  
 ters. The Thracians indeed flee, throwing-over

τὰς πέλτας ὄπισθεν, ὅςπερ δὴ  
 — (their) shields behmd (them on their backs), as indeed

τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπεραλλομένων  
 (the) custom was to-them, and they jumping-over

τοὺς σταυροὺς τινες ἐλήφθησαν κρεμασθέντες,  
 the palisades some were-caught having-been-suspended

τῶν πελτῶν ἐνεχομένων τοῖς σταυροῖς· καὶ οἱ  
 the shields holding-fast to-the stakes; and — (others)

δὲ ἀπέθανον διαμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· δὲ οἱ  
 also died missing the outlets, and the

Ἑλληνες ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς κώμης. Τινὲς τῶν  
 Greeks drove (them) out-of the village. Some of-the

Θυνῶν δὲ ὑποστραφέντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, ἤκοντιζον  
 Thynians however coming-back in the dark, 'brew

εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους τοὺς  
 (their) javelins into the light out-of the dark at — (those)  
 παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην· καὶ ἔτρωσαν  
 running-along by (a) house on-fire; and wounded  
 Ἱερώνυμον τε καὶ Εὐοδέα, λοχαγόν, καὶ Θεο-  
 Hieronymus indeed — (the) Euodean, (a) captain, as-also Theo-  
 γένην Λοκρὸν λοχαγον· δὲ οὐδείς ἀπέθανε  
 genes (the) Locrian captain; but no-one died;  
 μέντοι καὶ ἐσφῆς καὶ σκεύη τινων κατεκαυδη.  
 however even (the) clothes and baggage of-some were-burnt.  
 Δὲ Σεύδης ἦκε βοηθόσων σὺν ἑπτά ἵππεῦσι  
 But Seuthes came about-helping (them) with seven horsemen,  
 τοῖς πρώτηις ἔχων τὸν σαλπιγκτὴν τὸν Θρά-  
 the first (assembled) having the trumpeter the Thra-  
 κιον. Καὶ ἐπείπερ ἥσθετο,  
 κian (namely). And when he-perceived (the state of affairs), as-  
 περ χρόνον ἐβοήθει,  
 'long (a) time 'as he-was-assisting (them by marching to their aid),  
 τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφθέγγετο αὐτῷ. ὅςτε  
 so-long even the horn sounded for him; so-that  
 καὶ τοῦτο συμπαρέσχε φόβον τοῖς πολεμίοις.  
 also this (noise) furnished fear to-the enemy.  
 Ἐπεὶ δ' ἥλθεν τε ἐδεξιοῦτο καὶ  
 When however he-came 'he not-only 'shook-hands (with them) but-also  
 ἔλεγεν, ὅτι οἷοιτο εὑρήσειν πολλοὺς τεθνεῶτας.  
 said, that he-thought to-find many dead.  
 Ἐξ τούτου δὲ Ξενοφῶν τε δεῖται τοὺς ὁμήρους  
 After this — Xenophon not-only asks-for the hostages  
 παραδοῦναι αὐτῷ, καὶ συστρατεύεσθαι, εἰ  
 to-be-given-up to-him, but-also to-march-with (him), if  
 βούλεται, ἐπὶ τὸ ὅρος. εἰ δὲ μή, ἐᾶσαι αὐτὸν.  
 he-wished, to the mountain; if indeed not, to-allow him (to go)  
 Τῇ ἴστεραιά οὖν δὲ Σεύδης παραδίδωσι τοὺς  
 On-the next-day therefore — Seuthes gave-up (to him) the  
 ὁμήρους, ἥδη πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας, τοὺς κρατίστους,  
 hostages, already old men, the best

ὡς ἔφυσαι, τῶν ὄρεινῶν· καὶ αὐτὸς ἐρχεταῖ  
 as they-said, of-the mountain (people); and he came  
 σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. Δέ τὴδη ὁ Σεύδης εἶχε καὶ  
 with — (his) forces. And already — Seuthes had even  
 τριπλασίαν δύναμιν·  
 three-times (as large a) force (as he had when the Greeks came),  
 γὰρ πολλοὶ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν, ᾧκούοντες ἀ ὁ Σεύδης  
 for many of-the Odrysians, hearing what — Seuthes  
 πράττοι, κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. Δέ οἱ  
 might-be-doing, came-down taking-the-field-with (him). But the  
 Θινοί ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους μὲν πολλοὺς  
 Thynians when they-saw from the mountain indeed many  
 ὅπλιτας, δὲ πολλοὺς πελταστάς, δὲ πολλοὺς  
 heavy-armed-men, and many targeteers, and many  
 ἵππεis, καταβάντες ἵκέτευον σπείσασδαι·  
 horsemen, coming-down besought (him) to-make-a-treaty (of peace)  
 καὶ ὀμολόγουν ποιήσειν πάντα,  
 with them; and promised to-do all (he might require),  
 καὶ ἐκέλευον λαμβάνειν τὰ πιστὰ.  
 and requested (him) to-take the pledges (of fidelity from them)  
 Δέ ὁ Σεύδης, καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεδείχνυεν  
 But — Seuthes, having-called-on — Xenophon, showed  
 ἀ λέγοιεν, καὶ ἔφη οὐ σπεί-  
 what they-may-have-said, and he-said (that he) 'would not 'treat-  
 σασδαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βοῦλοιτο τιμωρήσασδαι αὐτοὺς  
 with-them, if Xenophon might-wish to-punish them  
 τῆς ἐπιδέσεως. 'Ο δέ εἶπεν· 'Αλλ'  
 (for) — (their) attack. — But (Xenophon) said: But  
 ἔγωγε νομίζω ἔχειν καὶ νῦν ἴκανὴν δίκην,  
 I-at-least consider (that I) have even now sufficient revenge,  
 εἰ οὗτοι ἔσονται δοῦλοι ἀντ' ἐλευθέρων.  
 If these (people) will-be slaves (having) before (been) free.  
 Μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ συμβουλεύειν, τὸ λοιπὸν  
 Moreover said-he to-him (that I) counsel (you), in-future  
 λαμβάνειν δομῆρους τοὺς δυνατωτάτους ποιεῖται  
 \* -take (as) hostages — (those) the-most-able to-d

τι κακόν, δὲ ἔαν τοὺς γέροντας οἴκοι.  
 (you) any harm, but leave the old-men at-home.

Οὖν μὲν οἱ ταύτη πάντες δὴ  
 therefore indeed the (inhabitants) in-this (country) all truly  
 προσωμολόγουν.  
 ubmited (to him).

---

## CHAPTER V.

Δὲ ὑπερβάλλοντι τοὺς Θρᾷκας ὑπερ Βυζαντίου  
 AND they-cross-over to-the Thracians above Byzantium,

εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι  
 into the Delta so-called; this (country) indeed was not

ἀρχὴ Μαισάδον, ἀλλὰ Τήρους  
 (a part of the) dominion of-Mæsades, but (it belonged to) Teres

τοῦ Ὀδρύσον, τινός ἀρχαίου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα  
 the (son) of-Odryses, some ancient (king). And here

οἱ Ἡρακλείδης παρῆν ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας.  
 — Heraclides was-present having the price of-the spoils.

Καὶ Σεύδης ἔξαγαγὼν τρία ζεύγη ἡμιονικὰ (γὰρ  
 And Seuthes selecting three pair (of) mules (for

ἥν οὐ πλείω) δὲ τὰ ἀλλα βοῦκά, καλέσας  
 there-were no more) and the others oxen, having-called-for

Ξενοφῶντα, ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν, δὲ  
 Xenophon, he-requested (him) to-take (the mules for himself), but

διανεῖμαι τὰ ἀλλα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς  
 to-distribute the rest (namely the oxen) to-the generals

καὶ λοχαγοῖς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ μὲν  
 and captains. But Xenophon said: For-myself indeed

τοίνυν ἀρκεῖ καὶ αὐτὸς λαβεῖν. δὲ  
 therefore it-is-sufficient even hereafter to-take (something); but

δωροῦ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς,  
 make-a present (of them) to-the generals and captains,

οἱ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἥκολούθησαν. Καὶ Τιμασίω  
 — (those who) with me have-accompanied (you). And Timasion  
 ὁ Δαρδανεὺς λαμβάνε μὲν ἐν τῶν ζευγῶν, ἐν δὲ  
 the Dardanean took indeed one of-the pair, one also  
 Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἐν Φρυνίκος ὁ Ἀχαιός·  
 Cleanor the Orchomenian, and one Phrynicus the Achæan;  
 δὲ τὰ ζεύγη βοῦκα κατεμερίσθη τοῖς λοχαγοῖς.  
 but the yokes (of) oxen were-distributed to-the captains.

Δὲ ἀποδίδωσι τὸν μισθὸν μόνον  
 'He [Seuthes] indeed paid the wages only (for)  
 εἴκοσι ἡμερῶν, τοῦ μηνός ἡδὴ ἔξεληλυθότος·  
 twenty days, the month 'having already elapsed;

γὰρ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ ἐμπολήσαι  
 for — Herachides said that he 'could not 'sell  
 πλεῖον. Οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀχθεσθεὶς ἐπομό-  
 more. Therefore — Xenophon being-distressed (at this) having-impre-  
 σας εἶπε· Δοκεῖς μοι, ὁ Ἡρακλείδη, οὐ κῆδεσθαι  
 cated said: It-seems to-me, O Herachides, (that you do) not take-care

Σεύδον ως δεῖ· γὰρ εἰ ἐκήδον,  
 (of the affairs) of Seuthes as they-ought-to-be, for if you-had-taken-care  
 ἥκεις ἀν φέρων τὸν πλήρη μισθὸν, καὶ  
 'you would 'have-come bringing the full pay, even  
 προσδανεισάμενος, εἰ ἐδύνω μὴ ἄλλως, καὶ ἀπο-  
 having-borrowed (it), if you-could not otherwise, and having.  
 δόμενος τὰ ἴματα σαυτοῦ.  
 sold the clothes of-yourself.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης τε ἡχθέσθη,  
 Then — Herachides 'was not-only grievously-'axed,  
 καὶ ἔδεισε, μὴ ἐκβληθείη ἐκ τῆς φιλίας τῆς  
 but-also feared, lest he-might-be-deprived of the friendship of —  
 Σεύδον· καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας ὁ τι  
 Seuthes; and from that — day (in) whatever  
 ἐδύνατο διέβαλλε Ξενοφῶντα πρὸς Σεύδην. Οἱ  
 he-could he-calumniated Xenophon to Seuthes. The  
 στρατιῶται μὲν δὴ ἐνεκαλούντι Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι εἰχον  
 soldiers indeed truly blamed Xenophon. that they-had

οὐ τὸν μισθόν· δὲ Σεύδης ἤχθετο αὐτῷ,  
not — (their) pay, and Seuthes was-much-displeased with-him.

ὅτι ἐντόνως ἀπήγτει τὸν μισθὸν τοῖς  
(because) that he-had strenuously requested the pay for-the  
στρατιώταις. Καὶ τέως μὲν ἀεὶ ἐμέμνη-  
soldiers. And until-then indeed he-had continually 'men-

το, ὡς ἐπειδὴν ἀπέλθῃ ἐπὶ θάλατταν παρα-  
tioned, that when they-should-arrive at (the) sea he-would-

δῶσει αὐτῷ Βισάνθην καὶ Γάνον καὶ Νέον τείκος·  
give him Bisanthe and Ganus and Neontichus;

δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνου ἐμέμνητο ἔτι οὐδενὸς  
but from that — time he-mentioned afterwards none

τούτων. Γὰρ δὲ Ἡρακλείδης καὶ διεβεβλήκει  
of-these (places). For — Herachdes also insinuated  
τοῦτο, ὡς εἴη οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς παραδιδόναι τείχη  
this, that it-was not safe to-give-over fortresses 'to (a  
ἀνδρὶ ἔχοντι δύναμιν.  
'man having (an) army.

\*Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔβουλεύετο  
On this (account) — Xenophon indeed counselled-with-himself  
τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ στρατεύεσθαι ἔτι  
what it-was-necessary to-do | about the to-march-with-the-army yet  
ἄνω. Δ' δὲ

(farther) up [about the expedition farther up the country]. But —

\*Ἡρακλείδης εἰσαγαγὼν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς  
Herachdes was-bringing-forward the other generals

πρὸς Σεύδην, τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτούς λέγειν, δῆτι  
to Seuthes, also he-requested them to-say, that  
τοφεῖς ἀν ἀνάγοιεν τὴν στρατιὰν οὐδὲν ἥττον  
they could lead the army not less

ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τε ἴπισχνείτο αὐτοῖς τόν  
(effectively) than Xenophon, and promised them (that) the  
μισθὸν ἔκπλεων δυοῖν μηνοῖν παρέσεσθαι  
pay (in) full (for) two months would-be-present (for them)

οὐλίγων ἡμέρῶν, καὶ ἐκέλευε συστρατεύεσ-  
in (a) 'few days, and he-requested (them) to-continue-in-the-ser-

**Seu.** *Kai ó Tímasiōn eíπεν.* Ἐγώ μει  
rice (of Seuthes). And — Timasion said: I indeed  
τοίνιν οὐδ', ἀν μέλλη εἶναι πέντε μηνῶν  
therefore not, if there-were-about to-be five months'  
μισθός, ἀν στρατευσάμην ἀνευ Ξενοφῶντος. *Kai*  
— *ay,* would serve-in-the-army without Xenophon. *And*  
**Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν τῷ**  
— Phryniscus and — Cleanor agreed-with —

**Τίμασιων.**

Timasion.

\**Eντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύδης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην,*  
Then — Seuthes repreached — Heraclides,  
ὅτι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. Δ' ἐκ  
that he-had not 'called-in also Xenophon. And on  
τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. Δ' δὲ  
this they-call-for him alone. But — (Xenophon)  
γνοὺς τὴν πανουργίαν τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου, ὅτι  
knowing the knavery of — Heraclides, that  
βούλοιτο διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς  
he-wished to-calumniate (and make him unpopular, with the  
ἄλλονς στρατηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν τε  
other generals, departed taking (with him) not-only  
πάντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς.  
all the generals, but-also the captains.  
**Καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπείσθησαν συνεστρα-**  
And when all had-been-persuaded (by Seuthes) they-  
τεύοντο, καὶ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον  
'joined (him) 'in-an-expedition, and having the Euxine-Sea  
ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν,  
on (their) right they-arrived at — Salmydessus,  
διὰ τῶν Θρακῶν καλούμένων Μελινο-  
φάγων· εἰδα πολλαὶ τῶν νεῶν πλεονσῶν εἰς τὸν  
phagi; here many of-the vessels sailing into the  
Πόντον ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· γάρ ἐστι  
Euxine-Sea strike and (are) cast-away; for there-is (a)

τέναγος πάμπολυ ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης.  
 shoal (there) (stretching) very-far (out) into the sea.

Καὶ οἱ Θράκες, οἱ οἰκοῦντες κατὰ ταῦτα,  
 And the Thracians, — (those namely) dwelling along there,

ὅρισάμενοι στήλας, ἔκαστοι  
 having-set-up pillars 'to-mark-the-boundaries, (so that) each

ληιζονται τὰ ἐκπίπτοντα καδ' αὐτοὺς  
 plunder the (things) cast (on shore) on these

δὲ ἔλεγον τέως πρὶν  
 (their own limits); and they-say (that) for-some-time before (that they)

ὅρισασθαι, ἀρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ἀποδνή-  
 erected-boundaries, (that while) plundering many died

σκειν ὑπ' ἀλλήλων. Ἐνταῦθα εὑρίσκονται  
 by (the hands) of-one-another. There are-found

μὲν πολλαὶ κλῖναι, δὲ πολλὰ κιβώτια, δὲ πολλαὶ  
 indeed many couches, also many chests, likewise many

γεγραμμέναι βίβλοι, καὶ πολλά τάλλα, ὅσα  
 written books, and many other (things), such-as

ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι. Ἐντεῦθεν  
 seamen carry in wooden receptacles. Then

καταστρεψάμενοι ταῦτα, ἀπήσαν πάλιν.  
 having-subdued these (people), they-departed back

Ἐνδα δὴ Σεύδης εἶχε στράτευμα ἥδη πλέον  
 Then truly Seuthes had (an) army already more

τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. Γάρ τε πολὺ ἔτ  
 (numerous than) the Grecian. For not-only many yet

πλείους Ὁδρυσῶν καταβεβήκεσαν, καὶ οἱ  
 numerous 'of-(the)' Odrysæ had-come-down (to him), but-also —

ἀεὶ πειδόμενοι συνεστρατεῖ-  
 (those) successively obeying-and-submitting (to him) 'joined

οντο. Δὲ κατηυλίσθησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ  
 (his) 'army. And they-encamped on the plain

ὑπὲρ Σηλυβρίας, ἀπέχοντες ὅσον τριάκοντα στα-  
 above Selybria, being-distant about 'thirty sta-

δίους τῆς θαλάττης. Καὶ οὐδεὶς μισθὸς μὲν  
 dia (from) the sea. And no pay indeed

πω ἐφαίνετο· τε οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον τὸν Ξενό-  
as-yet appeared, and the soldiers | had — Xenos  
φῶντα παγχαλέπως,  
phon much-aggrieved, [were very much displeased with Xenophon,]  
τε ὁ Σευδῆς οὐκέτι οἰκεῖως διέκειτο, ἀλλ  
and — Seuthes no-longer 'was familiarly 'disposed (to him), but  
‘πότε ἔλθοι Βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αἰτῶ,  
whenever he-might-go desiring to-have-an-interview-with him.  
πολλαὶ ἀσχολίαι ηδη ἐφαίνοντο.  
many occupations were now pretended.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

<sup>Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ὅντων ηδη σχεδὸν δύο</sup>  
At this — time, being already nearly two  
μηνῶν, Χαρμίνος τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος  
months, Charminus indeed the Lacedæmonian and Polynicus  
ἀφικοῦνται παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν, ὅτι  
arrived from Thibron, and they-said, that  
δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ<sup>it-seemed (good) 'to (the)</sup> <sup>'Lacedæmonians</sup> to-take-the-field against  
Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς πολε-  
Tissaphernes, and Thibron had-set-sail as about-  
μήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ  
making-war, and (that) he-wanted this — army, and  
λέγει, ὅτι δαρεικὸς τοῦ μηνὸς ἔσται μισθὸς  
he-says that (a) daric the month would-be (the) pay  
ἐκάστῳ, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμοιρία, δὲ τοῖς  
to-each (soldier), and to-the captains twice-as-much, but to-the  
στρατηγοῖς τετραμοιρία. <sup>Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Λακε-</sup>  
generals four-times-as-much. When indeed — (these) Lacedæmonians  
δαιμόνιοι ἦλθον, εὐδὺς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πυθόμενος  
came, immediately — Heraclides, hearing

ὅτι ἤκουσι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, λέγε. τῷ Σεύθῃ,  
 that they-came for the army, says to — Seuthes,  
 ὅτι γεγένηται κάλλιστον· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Λακεδαι-  
 monians wanted the army, but you no-longer  
 μόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ σὺ οὐκέτε  
 want (it); giving-up the army you-will-gratify them,  
 δέ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν μισθόν σε,  
 and they-will no-more demand — (their) pay of-you,  
 ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ο Σεύθης  
 but will-depart from the country. — Seuthes  
 ἀκούσας ταῦτα κελεύει παράγειν·  
 hearing these (things) requests (him) to-bring (them) to (him);  
 καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ἤκουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα,  
 and when they-said, that they-come for the army,  
 ἔλεγεν, ὅτι ἀποδίδωσι τὸ στράτευμα, τε βούλεται  
 he-said, that he-would-give-up the army, and desired  
 εἶναι φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος· τε καλεῖ αὐτοὺς  
 to-be (their) friend — and ally; and he-invited them  
 ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ, καὶ ἐξένιζε μεγαλοπρεπῶς.  
 on terms-of-hospitality, and he-entertained (them) magnificently.  
 Δέ οὐκ ἐκάλει Ξενοφῶντα οὐδὲ οὐδένα τῷ  
 But he-did not invite Xenophon nor (none) (any) of-the  
 ἄλλων στρατηγῶν. Δέ τῷ Λακεδαιμονίων ἐρω-  
 other generals. But the Lacedæmonians in-  
 τώντων, τίς ἀνὴρ Ξενοφῶν εἴη, ἀπεκρίνατο,  
 quired, what (kind of) man Xenophon might-be, he-replied,  
 ὅτι μὲν τὰ ἄλλα εἴη οὐ κακός, δὲ  
 that indeed in — other (respects) he-was not (a) bad (man), but  
 φιλοστρατιώτης· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐστιν χείρον  
 (was a) friend-of-the-soldiers; and through this it-is worse  
 κυντῷ. Καὶ οἱ εἶπον· Ἄλλ' ἦ δὲ ἀνὴρ δημα-  
 for-him. And — they-said: But — 'does the man 'make-  
 γωγεῖ τοὺς ἄνδρας; Καὶ οἱ Ἡρακλείδης  
 himself popular (with) the men? And — Heraclides

ἔφη, Οὖν μὲν πάνυ. Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν,  
said, Therefore indeed altogether (so). — Therefore, said-they,  
 μὴ καὶ ἀνατιώσεται ἡμῖν περὶ τῆς ἀπαγω-  
will-he not even oppose us about the leading-  
 γῆς; Ἀλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης,  
away (of the army)? But if you, said — Herachides,  
 συλλέξαντες αὐτοὺς, ὑποσχῆσθε τὸν μισθόν,  
assembling them, promise the pay,  
 προσχόντες ὅλιγον ἐκείνῳ, ἀποδραμοῦνται  
'paying little 'attention to-him, they-will-return  
 τὸν ὑμῖν. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, ἀν συλλεγεῖεν  
with you. How therefore, said-they, may (they) assemble  
 ἡμῖν; Αὔριον πρωὶ, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, ἀξομεν  
for-us? To-morrow early, said — Herachides, we-will-conduct  
 ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, δτι ἐπειδὰν  
you to them; and I-know, said-he, that when  
 ἴδωσιν ὑμᾶς, ἀσμενοὶ συνδραμοῦνται.  
they-see you, they-will willingly flock-round (you).  
 Αὕτη ἡ ἡμέρα μὲν ἔληξε οὕτως.  
This — day indeed closed thus.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης  
And on-the next-day Seuthes and also Herachides  
 ἄγουσιν τοὺς Λάκωνας ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ  
conducted the Lacedæmonians to the army, and  
 ἡ στρατιά συλλέγεται. Δὲ τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην,  
the army assembled. And the-two Lacedæmonians said,  
 ὅτι δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις πολεμεῖν Τισσα-  
that it-seemed (good) 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians to-go-to-war with-Tissa-  
 φέρνει, τῷ ἀδικήσαντι ὑμᾶς· ἦν οὖν ἵητε σὺν  
phernes, — (he) having-injured you; if therefore you-go with  
 ἡμῖν, τε τιμωρήσεσθε τὸν ἔχθρον, καὶ  
us, you-will not-only 'revenge-yourselves-on the enemy, but-also  
 ἔκαστος ὑμῶν οἵσει δαρεικὸν τοῦ μηνὸς, δὲ  
each of-you will-receive (a) daric the month, and (a)  
 λοχαγὸς τὸ διπλοῦν, δὲ στρατηγὸς τὸ τετρα-  
captain the double. and (a) general the qua-

πλοῦν. Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται τε ἀσμενοὶ ἤκουσαν,  
 druple. And the soldiers not-only willingly listened,  
 καὶ τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων εὐθὺς ἀνίσταται  
 but-also some-one -the Arcadians immediately rising-up  
 κατηγορήσων τὸν Ξενοφῶντος. Δέ καὶ Σεύδης  
 denouncing - Xenophon. But also Seuthes  
 παρῆν, βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πραχθήσεται·  
 was-present, desiring to-know how the-affair-would-be-conducted;  
 καὶ εἰστήκει ἐν ἐπηκόῳ, ἔχων ἐρμηνέα·  
 and stood in (a place proper for) hearing, having (an) interpreter;  
 δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ξυνίει τὰ πλεῖστα ἐλληνιστὶ.  
 and also he-himself understood — most (things) in-Greek.  
 Ἐνδα δὴ ὁ Ἀρκάς λέγει· Ἄλλοι δέ μὲν,  
 Then indeed the Arcadian speaks: But we indeed,  
 οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἀν δέ μεν παρ' ὑμῖν,  
 O Lacedæmonians, even long-ago would have-been with you,  
 εἰ Ξενοφῶν πείσας δέ μὲν ἀπήγαγεν  
 if Xenophon having-persuaded us had not led (us)  
 δεῦρο, ἐνδα δὴ δέ μεν στρατευόμενοι τὸν  
 hitber, where truly we indeed performing-military-duty (through) —  
 δεινὸν χειμῶνα πεπαύμεδα οὐδὲν καὶ νύκτα  
 most-severe cold-weather we-rested neither - night  
 καὶ δέ μέραν· δὲ ὁ ἔχει τοὺς δέ μετέρους  
 — (or) day; but — (he) has (the fruits of) — our  
 πόνους· καὶ Σεύδης μὲν πεπλούτικεν ἐκεινον ἰδίᾳ,  
 labour; and Seuthes indeed has-enriched him personally,  
 δὲ ἀποστερεῖ δέ μέραν τὸν μισθόν. Οὕτε δέ  
 but defrauded us (of) — (our) pay. So-that (I) who  
 γε λέγων πρῶτος ἐγὼ μὲν εἰδοῦμι τοῦτον  
 'am at-least speaking first I indeed if I-saw this  
 καταλευσθέντα, καὶ δόντα δίκην  
 [Xenophon] stoned-to-death, | and giving justice [and thus  
 δέν περιεῖλκε δέ μέραν, about, [for having so  
 be punished] | of-which he-has-dragged us about, [for having so  
 καὶ ἀν δοκῶ μοι ἔχειν τον  
 dragged us about,] and I would seem to-myself to-have — (my)

μισθὸν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἀχθεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονη·  
pay, and neither to-be-aggrived at — (what I) had-under-  
μένοις. Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη καὶ  
gone. After this (one) another stood-up and  
ἔμοιώς ἄλλος. Ἐξ τούτου δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν  
likewise another. After this indeed Xenophon spoke  
ἕδε·  
thus:

\*Αλλὰ μὲν ἄρα δεῖ ἄνδρωπον  
But indeed therefore | it-is-necessary (that) (a) man  
δοντα προσδοκᾶν πάντα,  
being to-expect all, [one must expect all kinds of fate,]  
όπότε γε καὶ νῦν ἔχω αἰτίας ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ἐν  
since at-least even now I-have accusations from you, in  
ῳ δοκῶ συνειδέναι γε ἐμαυτῷ  
(the thing) which I-seem to-be-conscious at-least to-myself (of)  
παρεσχημένος πλείστην προδυμίαν περὶ ὑμᾶς.  
having-shown (the) most zeal for you.

Μὲν γε ἀπετραπόμεν ἦδη ὠρμημένος  
'I indeed at-least turned-back having already set-out  
οἴκαδε, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὕτοι πυνθανόμενος  
for-home, no by — Jupiter not-indeed hearing (that)  
ὑμᾶς πράττειν εὖ· ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀκούων  
you (were) doing well; but rather hearing (that)  
εἶναι ἐν ἀπόροις, ὡς ὁ φελήσων, εἰ τι  
(you) were in difficulties, as being-about-helping (you) if in-any-thing  
δυναίμεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, τουτοὶ Σεύθον  
I-might-be-able. When indeed I-came, this-here Seuthes  
πέμποντος πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ, καὶ  
sending many messengers to me, and  
ἵπισχυομένου πολλὰ μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς  
promising many (things) to-me, if I-would-persuade you  
ἔλθειν πρὸς αὐτὸν, οὐκ μὲν ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν  
to-go to him, I-did not indeed attempt to-do  
τοῦτο, ὡς ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ ἐπίστασθε· δὲ ἦγον  
this, as you yourselves know; but I-led (you to

δέεν ωόμεν                          ἀν τάχιστα διαβῆναι  
 a place, whence I-thought (that you) might the-most-speedily cross-over  
 εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν                          Γὰρ ἐνόμιζον ταῦτα εἶναι  
 into — Asia                                  For I-thought this to-be  
 βέλτιστα ὑμῖν, καὶ ἦδειν ὑμᾶς Βουλομένος. Δ'  
 the-best for-you, and I-knew you desiring (it). But  
 ἐπεὶ Ἀρίσταρχος, ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν, ἐκώλυε  
 when Aristarchus, coming with galleys, prohibited  
 ὑμᾶς διαπλεῖν, ἐκ τοῦτου, ὅπερ ἦν δῆπον εἰκὸς,  
 us to-sail-across, on this, as was certainly proper,  
 συνέλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως                          βούλευσαιμέδα ὁ τι  
 I-assembled you, in-order-that we-might-consult-together what  
 χρὴ ποιεῖν.                                  Τμεῖς οὐκ οὖν, ἀκού-  
 it-might-be-necessary to-do. (Did) you not therefore, hear-  
 οντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάπτοντος ὑμῖν πορεύ-  
 ing indeed Aristarchus commanding you to-pro-  
 εσθαι εἰς Χερόνησον, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύδον πεί-  
 ced to (the) Chersonesus, hearing also Seuthes per-  
 δοντος ἔαυτῷ συστρατεύεσθαι,                          μεν πάντες  
 suading yourselves to-enter-into-his-service, (did you not) indeed all  
 ἐλέγετε                                  ιέναι σὺν Σεύδῃ, δὲ  
 say (that you would) go with Seuthes, and (did you not)  
 πάντες ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα;                          Τί οὖν ἐγώ<sup>I</sup>  
 all vote-for these (things)? How therefore 'did I  
 ἐνταῦθα ἥδικησα,                          ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἐνθα ἐδόκει  
 then 'wrong (you), leading you there-where it-seemed  
 ὑμῖν πάσιν;                                  Ἐπεὶ γε Σεύδης μὲν ἦρξατο  
 (good) for-you all (to go)? Since at-least Seuthes indeed began  
 φεύδοισθαι περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν                          ἐπαινῶ  
 to-deceive about the pay, if indeed I-should-praise  
 αὐτόν,                                  ἀν δικαίως καὶ αἰτιώσθε καὶ μισοῖτε·  
 him, 'you would justly both 'accuse and detest (me)  
 εἰ δὲ ὡν πρόσθεν μάλιστα πάντων φίλος,  
 if however being formerly most of-all (his) friend,  
 νῦν πάντωι εἴμι διαφορώτατός,                          πῶς  
 now of-all (men) I-am the-most-at-variance (with him), how

ἀν αἰρούμενος ὑμᾶς ἀντὶ Σεύδου, ἔτι δικαίως  
can 'I, preferring you before Seuthes, as-yet justly  
ἔχομι αἰτίαν ὑφ' ὑμῶν περὶ δω δια-  
'have censure from you about (those things in) which I-am-  
φέρομαι πρὸς τοῦτον; Ἀλλ' ἀν εἰποῖτε, ὅτι  
at-variance with this [Seuthes]? But 'you may 'say, that  
ἔξεστι πάρα Σεύδου  
lt-is (possible that) 'I, having your (money) from Seuthes  
τεχνάζειν. Οὐκ οὖν τοῦτό γε δῆλον, ὅτι,  
'am-practising-artifice. 'Is not therefore this at-least 'evident, that,  
εἰπερ Σεύδης ἐτέλει τι ἔμοι, οὐ δῆπον  
if Seuthes paid any-thing to-me, he-'did not certainly  
ἐτέλει οὗτως, ὡς τε στεροῖτο δω  
'pay (it) for-the-purpose, that not-only he-might-be-deprived-of what  
δοίη ἔμοι, ἄλλα καὶ ἀποτίσειν ὑμῖν; Ἀλλ' οἶμαι,  
he-gave me, but also to-repay you? But I-think,  
εἰ ἐδίδουν, δν ἐδίδον ἐπὶ τούτῳ,  
if he-gave (me anything) 'he may 'have-given (it) for this (purpose),  
ὅπως δοὺς μεῖον μὴ ἀποδοίη ὑμῖν  
that having-given (a) less (sum) he-'might not 'pay you  
τὸ πλεῖον. Εἰ τοίνυν οἰεσθε ἔχειν  
the greater (sum). If therefore you-think (the affair) to-have (itself)  
οὗτως, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν μάλα αὐτίκα ποιῆσαι ταύτην  
thus, it-is-allowed you very speedily to-make this  
τὴν πρᾶξιν ματαίαν ἀμφοτέροις ὑμῖν, ἐὰν πράτ-  
transaction useless for-both (of) us, if you  
τητε αὐτὸν τὰ χρήματα. Γάρ δῆλον, ὅτι  
exact (from) him the money. For (it is) evident, that  
Σεύδης, εἰ ἔχω τι παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσει  
Seuthes, if I-have (received) anything from him, will-'demand  
με, καὶ μέντοι ἀπαιτήσαι δικαίως, ἐὰν  
(it) 'back (of) me, and moreover will-demand (it) justly, if  
μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πρᾶξιν αὐτῷ ἐφ' ἦ δὲ ἐδωρα-  
I-do not 'confirm the transaction to-him for which I-received-  
δόκουν τι παρ' αὐτοῦ δεῖν πολλοῦ  
gifts 'from him). But I-seem to-myself to-want much (af-

ἔχειν τὰ ὑμέτερα· γάρ δικυνόω ὑμῖν ἀπαντας  
 having — your (money); for I-swear to-you by-all  
 θεοὺς καὶ πάσας ἔχειν μηδέ  
 (the) gods and (by) all (the goddesses) (that I) have never-indeed  
 ἀ Σεύδης ὑπέσχετο ἐμοὶ ἵδιᾳ·  
 (received) what Seuthes promised me (as my own) proper (pay);  
 δὲ καὶ αὐτός πάρεστι, καὶ ἀκούων σύνοιδέ μοι, εἰ  
 and also he-himself is-present, and hearing knows with-me, if  
 ἐπιορκῶ. Ἱνα δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε,  
 I-perjure-myself. That indeed you-may-'be yet-more 'surprised,  
 συνεπόμνυμι μηδέ εἰληφέναι ἀ οἱ  
 I-swear (that) I-'have not-indeed 'received what the  
 ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον, μὴ τοίνυν μηδὲ ὅσα  
 other generals received, no moreover not-indeed as-much-as  
 ἔνιοι τῶν λοχαγῶν. Καὶ τί ἐποίουν ταῦτα;  
 some of-the captains. And why did-I-do this?  
 'Ω ἄνδρες, δσῳ μᾶλλον συμφέροιμι  
 C men, (I thought that) how-much the-more I-endured-with  
 τυντῷ τότε τὴν πενίαν, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον  
 this (man) while in — poverty, so-much the-more  
 ποιήσεσθαι αὐτὸν φίλον δπότε δυνασθείη. Δὲ  
 I-would-make him (a) friend whenever he-might-be-able. But  
 ἔγὼ ἀμα τε ὁρῶ αὐτὸν πράττοντα εὖ,  
 I at-the-present-time not-only see him doing well,  
 καὶ δὴ γιγνώσκω τὴν γνώμην αὐτοῦ. Τις  
 but-also truly know the disposition of-him. Some-one  
 δὴ ἀν εἰποι· οὐκ οὖν αἰσχύνῃ οὗτῳ  
 indeed may say: are-'you not therefore 'ashamed (at) 'being thus  
 μωρῶς ἐξαπατώμενος; Ναι μὰ Δία μέντοι  
 foolishly 'deceived? Certainly, by Jupiter, I-'would indeed  
 ἥσχυνόμεν, εἰ ἐξηπατήθην ὑπὸ γε ὅντος  
 'have-been-ashamed, if I-had-been-deceived by (one) at-least being (an)  
 πολεμίου· δὲ δυτὶ φίλῳ δοκεῖ μοι αἰσχιον  
 enemy; but being (a) friend it-seems to-me more-shameful  
 ἐξαπατᾶν ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι. Ἐπεὶ, εἰ γε  
 io-deceive than to-be-deceived. Since if at-least the

φυλακή ἐστὶ πρὸς φίλους, οἶδα ὑμᾶς φυλαξαμένους  
 guard is-to-be against friends, I-know you guarding

πᾶσαν, ὡς μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτῳ δικαιαν  
 all, so-as not to-give to-this [Seuthes] (a) just

πρόφασιν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ὑμῖν ἀ  
 pretext, (that he might) not pay us what

ὑπέσχετο· γάρ οὔτε ἀδικήσαμεν τοῦτον  
 he-promised, for we-'have neither 'injured this [Seuthes]

οὐδέν, οὔτε κατεβλακεύσαμεν τὰ  
 — (in any thing), nor neglected the (affairs)

τούτου, οὐδὲ μὲν κατεδειλάσαμεν οὐδὲν  
 of-this (man), or indeed did-we-cowardly-shrink — (from any

ἐφ' ὃ τι οὗτος παρεκάλεσεν ὑμᾶς. Ἀλλά,  
 thing) to which he called us. But, 'you

ἀν φαίητε, ἔδει τότε λαβεῖν τὰ  
 may 'say, it-ought (to be, that I should) then have-taken —

ἐνέχυρα, ὡς εἰ ἔθεούλετο μηδ' ἐδύνατο ἔξα-  
 pledges, so-that if he-wished he-'could not-indeed 'be-able te

πατᾶν. Πρὸς ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσατε, ἀ εγώ  
 deceive. As-respects these (things) indeed hear, what I

ἀν οὐκ εἴπον ἐναντίον τούτο, εἰ  
 should 'at no 'time have-mentioned 'before this [Seuthes], if

μὴ ἐδοκείτε μοι εἶναι παντάπασιν  
 you-'had not 'shown (yourselves) to-me to-be altogether

ἀγνώμονες, η λίαν ἀχάριστοι εἰς ἐμὲ. Γάρ  
 destitute-of-intelligence, or very ungrateful towards me. | For

ἀναμνήσθητε ἐν ποίοις τισὶ πράγμασιν ἐτυγχάνετε  
 recollect in what any things you-happened

δυτες ξξ  
 being [for recollect in what kind of circumstances you were placed] out-of

ἀν ἔγω ἀνήγαγον ὑμᾶς πρὸς Σεύδην.  
 which I (extricated you and) led you 'up to Seuthes

Οὐκ μὲν Πέρινθον προσῆτε εἰς πόλιν,  
 (Was it) not indeed (at) Perinthus you-went to (the) city,

δ 'Αρισταρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀποκλείσας τὰς  
 but Aristarchus the Lacedaemonian having-shut the

πύλας οὐκ εἴα ὑμᾶς εἰζιέναι; Δ' ἐστρα-  
gates he-did not let you go-in? And did-you (not) en-  
τοπεδεύετε ἔξω ὑπαίθριοι; Ἡν δὲ μέσος  
camp without in-the-open-air? Was-it (not) indeed (the) middle

χειμῶν; Ἐχρῆσθε ἀγορā,  
(of) winter? | Had-you (not) 'to-make-use-of (a) market, [had you

ορῶντες μὲν σπάνια τὰ ὄντα,  
not to buy your provisions,] seeing indeed (a) scarcity (of) — saleable

δ' ἔχοντες σπάνια ὅτων ὄνήσεσθε;  
(things), and having (a) scarcity of-any (things that) you-may-buy

Δὲ ἦν ἀνάγκη μένειν ἐπὶ Θράκης.  
(with)? And was-there (not a) necessity to-remain in Thrace;

(γὰρ τριήρεις ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκώλυνον διαπλεῖν.)  
(for galleys having-been-anchored hindered (us) to-sail-over:)

εἰ δὲ τις μένοι εἶναι ἐν πολεμίᾳ,  
if indeed any-one stayed (it was) to-be in (a) hostile (country),

ἔνδια μὲν ἡσαν πολλοὶ ἵππεις ἐναντίοι, δέ  
where indeed there-were many horsemen opposed (to you), as-likewise

πολλοὶ πελτασταί; Δὲ μὲν ἦν ὄπλιτικὸν  
many targeteers? And indeed there-was (a) heavy-armed

ἡμῖν, ὃ, ιόντες μὲν ἀδρόοι ἐπὶ τὰς  
(corps) for-us, with-which, going indeed 'in (a) 'body to the  
κώμας, ἴσως ἀν ἐδυνάμεδα λαμβάνειν σίτου  
villages, perhaps 'we might 'be-able to-take food

οὐδέν τι ἀφθονον. δέ διώκοντες ὅτῳ ἀν  
but) not any abundance; and following whom 'we might  
ιατελαμβάνομεν ἢ ἀνδράποδα ἢ πρόβατα,  
capture neither slaves or cattle, (for the

ἦν οὐχ ἡμῖν. Γὰρ ἐγὼ κατέλαθον οὔτε  
proper troops) were not to-us. For I found neither  
ἵππικὸν οὔτε πελταστικὸν συνεστηκὸς παρ' ὑμῖν.  
cavalry nor targeteers constituted-in-a-body among you.

Εἰ οὖν, ὑμῶν ὅντων ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ, μηδὲ  
If therefore, you being in this difficulty, not-indeed  
προσωιτήσας οὐτιναοῦν μισθὸν,  
having-asked-in-addition (for any thing) whatever (as) pay

προσέλαβον Σεύδην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν, ἔχοντα  
 I-had-acquired Seuthes (as an) ally for-you, (he) having  
 καὶ ἵππεας καὶ πελταστὰς, ὃν ὑμεῖς προσεδεῖσθε,  
 both cavalry and targeteers, which you were-in-want-of,  
 ἦ ἀν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβούλευσθαι κακῶς;  
 would I-have-seemed to-you to-have-consulted ill (for you)?  
 Ήτάρ δῆπον κοινωνήσαντες τούτων,  
 For certainly having-shared (in the advantages) of-these  
 καὶ εὑρίσκετε ἀφδονώτερον σίτον  
 kinds of troops), 'you both found more-abundant provisions  
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, διὰ τοὺς Θράκες τὸ ἀναγκά-  
 in the villages, on-account-of the Thracians — being-  
 ζεσθαι φεύγειν κατὰ μᾶλλον σπουδὴν, καὶ  
 forced to-flee with greater speed, and you-'had (a)  
 μᾶλλον μετέσχετε προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων. Καὶ  
 greater share of-cattle and of-slaves. And  
 ἐωρῶμεν οὐδένα πολέμιον οὐχέτι, ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἵππικὸν  
 we-saw no enemy no-more, after the cavalry  
 προσεγένετο ἡμῖν, δὲ τέως οἱ πολέμιοι θαρραλέως  
 were-joined to-us, but at-this-time the enemy boldly  
 ἀφείποντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἵππικῷ καὶ πελταστικῷ,  
 pursued us both cavalry and targeteers  
 κωλύοντες ἡμᾶς ἀποσκεδαννυμένους κατ' ὄλιγους  
 hindering us (from) being-dispersed in small  
 μηδαμῆ πορίζεσθαι ἀφδονώτερα τὰ ἐπι-  
 (parties) every-where to-procure more-abundant — pro  
 τήδεια.  
 visions.

Δέ εἰ δὴ ὁ συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν  
 But if truly (he) — (who) presenting you this —  
 ἀσφάλειαν μὴ προσετέλει πάνυ πολὺν  
 security did not pay (you) 'in-addition very great  
 μισθον τῆς ἀσφαλείας, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σχέτλιον  
 wages for-the security, (is) this indeed the shocking  
 πάθημα; καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οἴεσθε  
 suffering (you complain of)? and on-account-of this do-you-think

χρῆναι οὐδαμῆ ἀνεῖναι ἐμὲ ζῶντα;  
 (that) it-is-necessary not to-'send me 'away alive?

Δέ νῦν δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; Οὐ διαχειμά-  
 But now truly how do-you-depart? (Is it) not after-having-passed-the-  
 σαντες ἐν ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, δ' ἔχοντες  
 winter in abundant — provisions, and having

περιπτὸν τοῦτο εἰ τι ἐλάβετε παρὰ  
 moreover-in-addition that, if any, (which) you-received from

Σεύδον; Γὰρ ἐδαπανᾶτε τὰ τῶν πολεμίων.  
 Seuthes? For you-consumed the (things) of-the enemy.

Καὶ πράττοντες ταῦτα οὐτε  
 | And performing these (things) [and faring thus] ! 'you neither

ἐπείδετε ἄνδρας ὑμῶν ἀποδανόντας αὐτῶν,  
 'beheld (the) men of-you having-died from-them, [you

οὐτε ἀπεβάλετε ζῶντας.  
 neither saw any of your men killed,] nor have-you-lost (any) living.

Εἰ δὲ τι καλὸν ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν ἐν τῇ Ασίᾳ  
 If indeed any-thing glorious has-been-performed by-you in — Asia

πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους, καὶ οἷς ἐκεῖνο σῶν,  
 against the barbarians, and have-'you not 'that safe,

καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις προσειλήφατε νῦν ἄλλην  
 and to these have-'you (not) 'added now another

εὔκλειαν, καὶ κρατήσαντες τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐν Εὐρώπῃ,  
 glory, and having-subdued the Thracians in Europe,

ἐφ' οὓς ἐστρατεύσασθε; Ἔγὼ μὲν ἀν δικαίως  
 against whom you-marched? I indeed may justly

φημὶ ὑμᾶς δὲν χαλεπαίνετε ἐμοὶ,  
 say (to) you (the things) for-which you-are-angry with-me,

τούτων εἰδέναι χάριν τοῖς θεοῖς ὡς  
 for-these (we ought) to-consider (as a) favour from-the gods as

ἀγαθῶν. Καὶ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα  
 for so many) good-things. And indeed truly such (is the state of)

τὰ ὑμέτερα. Ἄγετε δὲ πρὸς  
 — our (affairs). | Lead indeed [well then] for (the sake)

θεῶν, σκέψασθε καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ ὡς  
 of (the) 'gods, | consider also — my (affairs) as (how they)

ἔχε..  
 have (themselves) [consider my condition]. For I when indeed  
 πρότερον ἀπῆτα οἴκαδε, ἀπεπορευόμην μὲν  
 'I first went-away (for) home, I-went-away indeed  
 ἔχων πολὺν ἔπαινον πρὸς ὑμῶν, ἔχων δὲ δ' ὑμᾶς  
 having much praise from you, having also through you  
 ταὶ εὐχλειαν οὐπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων.  
 even glory (and renown) with the other Greeks

Δέ ἐπιστευόμην οὐπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων· γάρ  
 And I-was-trusted by (the) Lacedæmonians, for 'they  
 ἀν οὐ ἔπειπον με πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Νῦν δὲ  
 would not 'have-sent me back to you. Now indeed  
 ἀπέρχομαι διαβεβλημένος ὑφ' ὑμῶν μὲν πρὸς  
 I-depart calumniated by you indeed to (the)  
 Λακεδαιμονίους, δὲ ἀπηχθημένος Σεύσῃ οὐπέρ  
 Lacedæmonians, and having-offended Seuthes by (reason of)  
 ὑμῶν, οὖν ἦλπιζον ποιήσας εὖ  
 you, whom I-hoped | having-made (it) well [having served him effec-  
 μεδ' ὑμῶν, καὶ καταδήσεσθαι καλὴν  
 tively] with you, and to-have-procured (with him an) honourable  
 ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἔμοι καὶ παισίν, εἰ γένοιντο.  
 retreat both for-myself and (my) children, if there-should-be

Δ' οὐδεὶς οὐπέρ οὖν ἔγὼ τε ἀπῆχθημαι  
 (any to me). But you for whom I not-only have-incurred  
 πλεῖστα, καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττοσιν  
 the-most 'hatred, but-also this (from those) much better

ἔμαυτοῦ, τε οὐδὲ πω νῦν πέπαυμαι πραγμα-  
 (than) myself, and neither not-even now do-I-cease labouring-to-  
 τευόμενος δ τι ἀγαθὸν δύναμαι ὑμῖν, ἔχετε  
 effect whatever good I-can for-you, who-have  
 τοιαύτην γνώμην περὶ ἔμοῦ. 'Αλλ' μὲν ἔχετε  
 such (an) opinion respecting me. But indeed you have

με οὔτε λαβόντες φεύγοντα, οὔτε  
 me (in your power). neither having-taken (me) fleeing-away, nor

ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ήν δὲ ποιήσητε ἀ λέγετε, ιστε,  
 about-running-away; if indeed you-will-do what you-say, know

ὅτι ἔσεσθε κατακανόντες ἄνδρα ἀγρυπνήσαντα  
 that you-will-be killing (a) man having-watched  
 μὲν δὴ πολλὰ πρὸ ὑμῶν, δὲ πονήσαντα καὶ  
 indeed truly much for you, and having-laboured(much) and  
 κινδυνεύσαντα πολλὰ σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἐν τῷ  
 encountered many 'dangers with you, both in —  
 μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ μέρος, δὲ θεῶν ὄντων  
 his) share and beyond — (his) share, and (the) gods being  
 ἥλεων πολλὰ τρόπαια δὴ βαρβάρων στη-  
 propitious many trophies truly 'over (the) 'barbarians have-  
 σάμενον σὺν ὑμῖν· διατεινάμενον πρὸς ὑμᾶς πάν  
 been-erected with you; having-exerted-myself for you (in) all  
 ὅσον ἔδυνάμην, ὅπως δὲ γένοισθε πολέμιοι  
 as-much-as I-was-able, that indeed you-might-become inimical  
 γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Γάρ καὶ οὖν νῦν  
 at-least to-none of-the Greeks. For even therefore now  
 ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἀνεπιλήπτως πορεύεσθαι, δῆπη ἀν  
 it-is-allowed you blamelessly to-proceed, where 'you may  
 ἔλησθε, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.  
 'have-desired, both by land and by sea.  
 Δὲ ὑμεῖς, ὅτε πολλὴ εὐπορία φαίνεται ὑμῖν, καὶ  
 And you, when great abundance shows-itself to-γου, and  
 πλεῖτε ἐνδα δὴ πάλαι ἐπιδυμεῖτε, τε  
 about-to-sail where indeed heretofore you-have-desired-to-be, and  
 δέονται ὑμῶν οἱ  
 those desire you — (those, namely, who are considered as) 'being  
 μέγιστον δυνάμενοι,  
 the-most 'able (and powerful), | and pay appears  
 δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἱ  
 [and pay is offered to you,] and Lacedæmonians, — (those, namely,  
 νομιζόμενοι χράτιστοι ἡγεμόνες ἦκουνσι,  
 who) being-considered the-best leaders come (for you).  
 νῦν δὴ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν εἶναι καιρὸς κατα-  
 does it now indeed seem to-you to-be (a) proper (time) to  
 κανεῖν ἐμὲ ὡς τάχιστα;  
 kill me as speedily (as possible)? (You had) no (such)

μήν γε ὅτε ἡμεν ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις,  
 intentions) certainly at-least when we-were in — difficulties  
 ἢ μνημονικώτατοι πάντων· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκαλεῖτε  
 O (men) having-memories of-all; but even you-called  
 ἐμὲ πατέρα, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖσθε δέι μεμνῆσθαι ὡς  
 me father, and you-promised always to-remember (me) as (a)  
 εὐεργέτου. Μέντοι οὗτοί, οἱ νῦν ἔχοντες  
 benefactor. However those, — (those namely) now come  
 ἐφ' ὑμᾶς, εἰσιν οὐ οὐδὲ ἀγνώμονες· ὥστε, ὡς  
 for you, are not either (so) ignorant, so-that, as  
 ἔγὼ οἴμαι, οὐδὲ δοκεῖτε βελτίονες τούτοις,  
 I think, you-will neither seem better to-these  
 ὄντες τοιοῦτοι περὶ ἐμέ. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'  
 (persons), being such as-respects me. Having-said the e  
 ἐπαύσατο.  
 (things) he-ceased.

Δέ Χαρμίνος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν·  
 And Charminus the Lacedæmonian standing-up said:  
 'Αλλ' οὐ τῷ σιώ, μέντοι δοκεῖτε ἐμοὶ, ὡς ἀνδρες,  
 Certainly by-the twin-gods, however you-seem to-me, O men,  
 χαλεπάίνειν τῷ τούτῳ ἀνδρὶ οὐ δικαίως· γάρ  
 to-be-displeased with — this man not justly; for  
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἔχω μαρτυρῆσαι αὐτῷ. Γάρ Σεύδης  
 even I-myself have to-bear-witness to-him. For Seuthes  
 ἐρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου περὶ Ξενοφῶντος,  
 inquiring of-me and Polynicus about Xenophon,  
 τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη, εἰχε μὲν οὐδὲν  
 what-kind (of a) man he-might-be, (he said) he-had indeed nothing  
 ἀλλο μέμψασθαι, δέ εἴφη αὐτὸν εἶναι  
 else to-accuse (him) of, but he-said (that) he was  
 φιλοστρατιώτην· διὸ εἶναι χείρον αὐτῷ  
 a) friend-of-the-soldiers; wherefore (that it) was worse for-him  
 τε πρὸς ἡμῶν τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, καὶ πρὸς  
 not-only with us the Lacedæmonians, but-also with  
 αὐτοῦ. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιάτης  
 himself. After this-one Eurylochus (the) Lusian (a)

Ἄρκας ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Καὶ δοκεῖ γὲ μοι, Λακεδαι-  
Arcadian rising-up said: 'It even seems at-least to-me, Lacedæ-  
μόνιοι ἄνδρες, ὑμᾶς στρατηγῆσαι πρῶτον  
monian men, (that) you should-'be (our) 'generals first  
τοῦτο ἀναπρᾶξαι παρὰ Σεύδον ἡμῖν τὸν μισθὸν  
in-this to-have-exacted from Seuthes for-us — (our) pay  
ἢ ἔκόντος, ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον  
either willingly, or unwillingly, and not before (this was done)  
ἀπαγαγεῖν ὑμᾶς. Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι  
to-have-'led us 'away. Polycrates indeed (the) Athenian  
ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὑπέρ Ξενοφῶντος· Γέ μὴν ὄρῳ,  
rising-up spoke for Xenophon: 'I at-least certainly 'see,  
ἔφη, ὃ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην παρόντα ἐνταῦθα,  
said-he, C men, even Heracles being-present here,  
δος παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα, ἀ ἡμεῖς ἐπονήσαμεν,  
who having-received the things, which we laboured  
ἀποδόμενος ταῦτα, ἀπέδωκε τὰ γιγνό-  
(to obtain), having-sold these (things) gave the pro-  
μενα οὔτε Σεύδη οὔτε ἡμῖν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας,  
seeds neither to-Seuthes nor to-us, but he having stolen  
πέπαται. "Ην οὖν σωφρονῶμεν  
(them), keeps-possession (of them). If therefore we-are-wise  
ἔξόμεδα αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ, ἔφη, οὔτος δὴ  
we-will-lay-hold of-him. For, said-he, this (person) indeed  
ἐστιν οὐ γε Θράξ, ἀλλ' ὁν "Ελλην  
is not at-least (a) Thracian, but being (a) Greek 'treats

"Ελληνας ἀδίκει.  
(the) Greeks 'unjustly.

"Ο Ἡρακλείδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα μᾶλλον  
— Heracles hearing these (things), 'was more  
ἔξεπλάγη· καὶ προελθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ λέγει·  
'alarmed (than before); and proceeding to — Seuthes he-says:  
"Ην σωφρονῶμεν ἀπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς  
If we-are-wise 'we (will) 'depart hence from the  
ἐπικρατείας τούτων. Καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς  
power of-these (men). And mounting on — (their)

πποντος ωχοντο απελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον  
 horses they-departed riding-off to the camp  
 ξαυτῶν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύδης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλμην  
 of-themselves. And thence Seuthes sends Abrozelmes  
 τὸν ἔρμηνέα ἑαυτοῦ πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ κελεύει  
 he interpreter of-himself to Xenophon, and requesta  
 τὸν καταμεῖναι παρ' ἑαυτῷ, ἔχοντα χιλίους  
 'm to-remain with himself, having (a) thousand  
 πλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται ἀποδώσειν αὐτῷ τε  
 heavy-armed-men, and promised to-give to-him also  
 τὰ χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττη, καὶ  
 the places — (those namely) on (the) sea (coast), and  
 τάλλα ἀ ὑπέσχετο. Καὶ ποιησάμενος  
 the-other (things), which he-promised. And having-made (the  
 ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ λέγει, ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πο-  
 (communication) in secret he-says, that he-had-heard from-Po-  
 λυνίκοι, ὡς, εἰ ἔσται ὑποχείριος Λακεδαι-  
 lynicus, that, if he-should-be in-the-hands 'of (the) 'Lacedæ-  
 μονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποδανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. Δὲ  
 monians, evidently he-would-be-put-to-death by Thibron. And  
 καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι ἐπέστελλον ταῦτα τῷ Ξενο-  
 also many others communicated these (things) to — Xenon-  
 φῶντι, ὡς εἶη διαβεβλημένος, καὶ δέοι φυλάττεσθαι.  
 phon, that he-was calumniated, and ought to-be-on-his-guard.  
 Δέ ὁ ίκούων ταῦτα, λαβὼν δύο ιερεῖα,  
 But — (he) bearing these (things), having-taken two victims,  
 ἔδνε τῷ Δίῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ, πότερά εἴη λῶν  
 sacrificed to — Jupiter the king, whether it-would-be more-desirable  
 καὶ ἀμεινν μένειν παρὰ Σεύδη ἐφ' οἵς  
 and better to-remain with Seuthes on (the terms) which  
 Σεύδης λέγει, ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι.  
 Seuthes mentions, or to-remain with the army.  
 Δ' ἀναιρεῖ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.  
 And (Jupiter) signifies to-him to-depart.

## CHAPTER VII.

**Σεύδης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο**      **ἐντεῦθεν**  
SEUTHES indeed      removed (his) camp thence

**προσωτέρω· δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες ἐσκήνωσαν εἰς κώμας,**  
farther-off; and the Greeks quartered in villages,

**ὅδεν ἔμελλον, ἐπισιτισάμενοι πλεῖ-**  
whence they-intended, having-supplied-themselves-with-provisions plenti-

**στα, ἥξειν ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Αἱ αὗται κώμαι δὲ**  
fully, to-go to (the) sea. — These villages indeed

**ἥσαν δεδομέναι Μηδοσάδη ὑπὸ Σεύδου. Οὖν ὁ**  
had been-given to-Medosades by Seuthes. Therefore —

**Μηδοσάδης ὄρῶν τὰ ἔαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς**  
Medosades seeing [the (things) of-him [his property] in the

**κώμαις δαπανώμενα ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλληνων, χαλε-**  
villages consumed by the Greeks, he-was grievous-

**πῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν Ὁδρύσην ἄνδρα δυνα-**  
ly excited; and taking (an) Odrysian man, (the) most-

**τώτατον τῶν καταβεηκότων ἀνωδεν,**  
powerful of — (those) having-come-down | from-above, [from the

**καὶ ἵππεας ὅσον τριάκοντα, ἔρχεται**  
upper country,] and horsemen as-many-as thirty, he-went

**καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ**  
and called-out Xenophon from the Grecia

**στρατεύματος. Καὶ δὲ λαβὼν τινας τῶν λοχαγῶν**  
camp. And who taking some of-the captains

**καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται.**  
and others of-the proper (men) went-to-meet (him).

**Ἐνδα δὴ Μηδοσάδης λέγει· Ἄδικετε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν**  
Then indeed Medosades said: You-act-unjustly, O Xenophon,

**πορθοῦντες τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας. Οὖν προλέγομεν**  
laying-waste — our villages. Therefore we warn

**ὑμῖν, ἐγώ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύδου, καὶ ὅδε ὁ ἀνήρ,**  
you. I not-only for Seuthes, but also this — man,

ἥκων παρὰ Μηδόκου τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω,  
coming from Medocus the king | above, [of the upper  
άπιέναι τῆς χώρας· δὲ εἰ μή,  
country,] to-leave — (these) places, but if (you do) not  
οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιήτε  
we-shall not 'permit you (to do so), but if you-do  
κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ἀλεξόμεδα  
harm — our territory, we-shall-defend (ourselves against)  
ώς πολεμίους.  
you) as enemies.

Οὐ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν.  
— Xenophon indeed hearing these (things) said:  
Αλλὰ μὲν σοι λέγοντι τοιαῦτα καὶ ἀποκρί-  
But indeed to-you saying such (things) even to-an-  
νασθαι χαλεπόν· δ' ἐνεκα τοῦδε τοῦ νεανισκον  
swer (is) painful; but on-account-of this — young-man  
λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῆ τε οἵοι ὑμεῖς  
I-shall-reply, that he-may-know, not-only what-sort (of people) you  
ἐστε, καὶ οἵοι ἡμεῖς. Γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη,  
are, but-also what-sort we (are). For we indeed, said-he,  
πρὶν γενέσθαι φίλοι ὑμῖν, ἐπορευόμεδα διὰ  
before (that we) became friends to-you, marched through  
ταύτης τῆς χώρας, ὅποι ἐβούλόμεδα, πορθοῦντες  
this — country, wherever we-wished, laying-waste  
ἥν μὲν ἐδέλοιμεν, δὲ καίοντες ἥν ἐδέλοιμεν. Καὶ  
what indeed we-wished, and burning what we-wished. And  
τὸν ὅπότε ἐλθοις ἡμᾶς πρεσβεύων, ηὐλίζον τότε  
you when you-came to-us acting-as-an-ambassador, encamped then  
παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβούμενος οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων· δὲ  
by us, fearing none of-the enemy; but  
ὑμεῖς οὐκ ἤτε εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, οὐ, εἰ  
you 'did not 'come into this — country. or, if  
ποτε ἐλθοιτε ηὐλίζεσθε τοῖς ἵπποις  
at-any-time you-may-have-came you-encamped with — (your) horses  
ἴγκεχαλινωμένοις ως ἐν χώρᾳ κρειττόνων.  
eady-bridled as in (a) country (of people); better

Δέ επει ἐγένεσθε φίλοι  
 (or more powerful than yourselves). But when you-became friends  
 ἡμῖν, καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε  
 to-us, and through us with (the assistance of the) gods you-have  
 τὴνδε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε  
 (possession of) this — country, now truly 'you (would) 'expel  
 ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρας, ἦν ἔχόντων παρελάβετε  
 us from this — country, which having you-received  
 παρ' ἡμῶν κατὰ κράτος· γὰρ ὡς αὐτὸς  
 from us as (the more) powerful; for as you-yourselves  
 οἰσθα, οἱ πολέμιοι ἥσαν οὐχ ἴκανοι ἐξελαύνειν  
 know, the enemy were not able to-'drive  
 ἡμᾶς. Καὶ ἀξιοῖς ἀποπέμψασθαι ἡμᾶς  
 us 'out. And you-think-proper to-'send us 'away  
 ὅπως οὐ δοὺς δῶρα καὶ ποιήσας εὖ,  
 so-as not (only not) having-given presents and having-done well  
 ἀνδ' ὧν ἐπαθεῖς εὖ, ἀλλ' (to us), in-place-of (that) which you-receive<sup>r</sup> \enefits (from us), but  
 ἀποκορευομένους, ἐπιτρέπεις ἡμᾶς. οὐδὲ ἐναυλισθῆναι,  
 about-departing, you-would-permit us another to-sojourn  
 ὅσον δύνασαι. Ιαὶ λέγων ταῦτα  
 (in) as-much-as (that you were) able. And saying these  
 οὔτε αἰσχύνη θεοὺς, οὔτε τόνδε τὸν  
 (things), 'you neither reverence (the) gods, nor this —  
 ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν ὄρῃ σε πλούτον ντα, δὲ πρὶν  
 man, who now indeed sees you being. but before  
 γενέσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν ἔχοντα  
 (that you) became (a) friend to-us (he saw you) (having)  
 τὸν βίον ἀπὸ ληστείας, οἷς αὐτὸς  
 (supporting) — (your) life by plunder, as you-yourselves  
 ἔφησθα. Ατὰρ τί καὶ λέγεις ταῦτα πρὸς  
 have-said. But why even do-you-say these (things) to  
 ἔμε; ἔφη. γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἀρχω, ἀλλὰ  
 me? continued-he; for I-at-least no-longer command, but (the)  
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἵς ὑμεῖς, ὃ θαυμαστότατοι,  
 Lacedæmonians, to-whom you, O most-wonderful (men)

παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν, οὐδέτε  
 'gave the army up to have-led (it) away, not  
 παρακαλέσαντες, δπως, ὡςπερ ἀπηχθάνομην αὐτοῖς,  
 having-called-on-me, so-that, as I-was-hated by-them,  
 δτε ἥγον πρὸς ὑμᾶς, οὗτω καὶ νῦν χαρισάμην  
 as I-led (the army) to you, so even now I-might-gratify,  
 ἀποδιδούς.

/them) having-restored (it).

<sup>3</sup>Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ὁδρύσης ἤκουσεν ταῦτα, εἶπεν.  
 When indeed the Odrysian heard these (things), he-said:  
 Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἀκούων ταῦτα  
 I indeed, O Medosades, hearing these (things), (feel)  
 καταδύομαι κατὰ τὴς γῆς ὑπὸ αἰσχύνης. Καὶ  
 myself-sinking beneath the earth from shame. And  
 εἰ μὲν ἤπιστάμην πρόσθεν, ἀν οὐδ' συνηκο-  
 if indeed I-had-known (this) before, 'I would not 'have-accom-  
 λούθησά σοι. καὶ νῦν ἀπειμι. Γάρ Μήδοκός ὁ  
 panied you; and now I-depart. For Medocus the  
 βασιλεὺς ἀν οὐδ' ἐπαινοίη με, εἰ ἔξελαύνοιμι τοὺς  
 king would not approve me, if I-had-expelled — (his)  
 εὐεργέτας. Εἰπων ταῦτ', ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν  
 benefactors. Having-said these (things), mounting on — (his)  
 ἵππον ἀπῆλαυνε, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἵππεῖς,  
 horse he-rode-off, and with him the other horsemen,  
 πλὴν τεττάρων οὐ πέντε. Δὲ ὁ Μηδοσάδης, (γὰρ  
 except four or five. But — Medosades, (for  
 η χώρα πορθουμένη ἐλύπει αὐτὸν,) ἐκέλευε τὸν  
 the country being-laid-waste distressed him,) requested —  
 Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. Καὶ δε  
 Xenophon to-call-on the-two Lacedæmonians. And who  
 λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους,  
 taking — (those) most-suitable (for the purpose with him),  
 πρυηηλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ, καὶ ἔλεξεν,  
 he-went-to — Charminus and Polynicus, and said,  
 δτι Μηδοσάδης καλεῖ αὐτοὺς, προερῶν ἀπερ  
 that Medosades calls-on them, warning (them) as

αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ἄν οὖν  
 (he had done) himself to-depart from the country 'I should therefore  
 οἴμαι, ἔφη, ὅτι ὑμᾶς ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν  
 'think, said (Xenophon), that you (would) obtain the  
 μισθόν ὁφειλόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ εἴποιτε ὅτι  
 pay due to-the army, if you-were-to-say that  
 ἡ στρατιὰ δεδέηται ὑμῶν συναναπρᾶξαι τὸν  
 the army has-entreated of-you together-to-exact — (your)  
 μισθόν Σεύδον ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἀκοντος,  
 pay of-Seuthes either — willing or — unwilling,  
 καὶ ὅτι φασι τυχόντες τούτων ἀν προδύ-  
 and that they-say having-obtained these (things) 'they would cheer-  
 μως συνέπεσδαι ὑμῖν, καὶ ὅτι δοκοῦσι ὑμῖν λέγειν  
 fully 'follow you, and that they-appear to-you to-say

δίκαια, καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς  
 (the things that are) just, and that you-had-promised them  
 τότε ἀπιέναι, ὅταν οἱ στρατιῶται ἔχωσι τὰ  
 then to-depart, when the soldiers might-have — (their)  
 δίκαια. Οἱ Λάκωνες ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,  
 just (demands). The Lacedæmonians hearing these (things),  
 ἔφασαν ἐρεῖν, καὶ ἄλλα  
 said (that they would) say (so), and (such) other (things)  
 ὅποια ἀν δύνωνται κράτιστα.  
 as-that 'they might 'be-able (to urge) to-the-best (advantage),  
 καὶ εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς  
 and immediately they-proceeded having all the  
 ἐπικαιρίους. Ἐλδὼν δὲ Χαρμίνος ἔλεξε. Εἰ μὲν,  
 proper-persons. Having-come indeed Charminus said: If indeed,  
 ὁ Μηδόσαδης, σύ ἔχεις τι, λέγειν πρὸς ὑμᾶς  
 O Medosades, you have any-thing, to-say to us  
 δὲ εἰ μή, ἥμετις ἔχομεν πρὸς σέ.  
 (say it); but if not, we have (something to say) to you.  
 Ὁ Μηδοσάδης δὲ μάλα ἴφειμένως ἔφη. Ἀλλ' ἔγω  
 — Medosades indeed very submissively said: But I  
 μὲν λέγω, καὶ Σεύδης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιοῦμεν  
 indeed say. and Seuthes (says) the same, that we-consider

τοὺς γεγε-ημένους φίλους ἡμῖν  
 (it right, that) — (those) having-become friends to-us, (ought)  
 μὴ πάσχειν κακῶς ὑφ' ὑμῶν· γὰρ ὅ τι ἀρ-  
 not to-suffer evil by you; for whatever you may  
 ποιῆτε κακῶς τούτους, ποιεῖτε ἥδη ἡμᾶς.  
 do ill (to) them, you-do already (the same to) us;  
 γὰρ εἰσιν ἡμέτεροι. Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ  
 for they-are ours. We therefore, said the  
 Λάκωνες, ἀν ἀπίοιμεν, ὅπότε οἱ καταπράξαντες  
 Lacedæmonians, may depart, when — (those) having-performed  
 ταῦτα ὑμῖν ἔχοιεν τὸν μισθὸν· εἰ δὲ μή,  
 these (great things) for-you may-have — (their) pay; if indeed not,  
 ἔρχόμεδα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηδήσοντες  
 we-come indeed even now helping (and taking part with)  
 τούτοις, καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἱ ἥδικη-  
 these, and about-taking-vengeance-on (the) men who wronged  
 σαν τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὄρκους. Δὲ ήν  
 these (soldiers) against — (their) oaths. And if  
 δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε τοιοῦτοι, ἐνδένδε  
 indeed also you may-have-been (of) such (number), (from-here)  
 ἀρξόμεδα λαμβάνειν τὰ δίκαια. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν  
 (of you) we-will-begin to-take — justice. — Xenophon  
 δὲ εἶπεν. Δ' ἐδέλοιτε, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἀν  
 (then) indeed said: And would-you-be-willing, O Medosades, —  
 ἐπιτρέψαι τούτοις, (ἐπειδὴ ἔφατε  
 to-leave (it) to-these (people), (since they-say (that they)  
 εἶναι φίλους ὑμῖν,) ἐν δν τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν,  
 are friends to-you,) in whose — country we-are, (that they)  
 ἀν ψηφίσωνται ὅπότερα, εἰδ' προσῆκεν ἡμᾶς ἀπιένα  
 might decide-by-vote either, whether it-were fit for-you to-depart  
 ἐκ τῆς χώρας, εἴτε ἡμᾶς; Δὲ ὁ ἔφη  
 from the country, or us? But — (Medosades) said (I do)  
 τού μὲν ταῦτα· δὲ μάλιστα μὲν ἐκέλευε αὐτῷ  
 not indeed (want) this; but most-of-all indeed he-requested these-two  
 τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύδην περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ,  
 — Lacedæmonians to-go to Seuthes about the pay,

*καὶ οἴεσθαι ἀν πεῖσαι Σείδην· δ'*  
 and (that he) thought (that they) might persuade Seuthes; but  
*εἰ μή, πέμπειν Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ, καὶ ὑπε-*  
 if not, to-send Xenophon with himself, and he-  
*σχνεῖτο συμπράξειν. Ἐδείτο δὲ μὴ καίειν*  
 promised to-co-operate. He-requested (them) moreover not to-burn  
*τὰς κώμας.* the villages.

*'Εντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ*  
 Thereupon they-send Xenophon, and with him  
*οἱ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτηδειότατοι. Ο*  
 (those) who seemed to-be the-most-proper (persons). — (He)  
*δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς Σεύδην· Πάρειμι,*  
 indeed having-come speaks (thus) to Seuthes; I-am-here,  
*ὅ Σεύδη, οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ἀλλὰ*  
 O Seuthes, not about-demanding (any thing of you), but  
*διδάξων, ήν δύνωμαι, ὡς οὐ*  
 teaching (and convincing you), if I-am-able, that you-'are not  
*δικαίως ἤχθεσθης μοι, δτι προδύμως ἀπήτουν*  
 justly displeased with-me, because 'I earnestly 'entreated  
*σε ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἀ ὑπέσχου*  
 you about (the pay) of-the soldiers, which you-promised  
*χύτοις· γὰρ ἔγωγε ἐνόμιζον οὐκ εἶναι ἥττον*  
 them; for I-at-least thought (it would) not be less  
*συμφέρον σοὶ ἀποδοῦναι, ἢ ἀπολαβεῖν*  
 advantageous to-you to-pay, than (that it would be) to-receive  
*ἐκείνοις. Γὰρ οἶδα μὲν πρῶτον μετὰ τοὺς*  
 (it) by-them. For I-know indeed (that) first after the  
*θεοὺς, τούτους καταστήσαντα σε εἰς τὰ*  
 gods, these (soldiers) having-placed you in — (a)  
*φανερόν, ἐπεὶ γε ἐποίησαν σε βασιλέα*  
 conspicuous (position), then at-least they-made you king  
*πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων· ὅςτε οὐχ*  
 of-many places and of-many men; so-that (it is) not  
*οἷον τε λανθάνειν σοι, οὔτε η*  
 possible | to-conceal yourself, [to escape notice,] whether if

ποιήσης τι καλὸν, οὐτε ἥν τι αἰσχρὸν.  
 you-do any-thing good, or if any-thing shameful. To (a,  
 'Ανδρὶ δὲ ὅντι τοιούτῳ ἐδόκει μὲν εἶναι  
 man indeed being such (in situation) it-seems indeed to-be  
 μοι μέγα μὴ δοκεῖν ἀποπέμψασ-  
 to-me (to be a thing of) great (importance) not to-seem to-have-sent-  
 δαι ἀχαρίστως ἄνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα  
 away ungratefully men (his) benefactors, (a) great (thing)  
 δὲ εὗ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἔξακισχιλίων ἄνδρώπων.  
 indeed to-be-well-spoken-of by six-thousand men  
 δὲ τὸ μέγιστον καταστῆναι  
 and the greatest to-be-firmly-established (in the confidence that)  
 σαντὸν μηδαμῶς ἀπιστον δ τι λέγοις.  
 you (are) in-no-wise unworthy-of-belief (in) what you-may-say  
 Γάρ ὁρῶ τοὺς λόγους μὲν ἀπιστων πλανω-  
 For I-see the words indeed of-those-unworthy-of-belief wander-  
 μένους ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους. δ'  
 ing-about in-vain and powerless and dishonoured; but  
 οἱ λόγοι τούτων, οἱ ἀν ωσιν φανεροὶ ἀσκοῦντες  
 the words of-those, who may be openly cultivating  
 ἀλήθειαν, ἥν δέονται τι, δύνανται οὐδὲν μεῖον  
 truth, if they-want any-thing, are-able not less  
 ἀνύσασθαι, ἥν ἡ βία ἄλλων. ἥν τε βού-  
 to-effect (it), than the force of-other (men); if also they-  
 λωνται σωφρονίζειν τινας, γιγνώσκω τὰς  
 wish to-bring any-one 'to-reason, I-know the  
 ἀπειλὰς τούτων οὐχ ἥττον σωφρονίζούσας,  
 threats of-these (men are) not less correcting,  
 ἥ τὰς ἥδη κολάσεις ἄλλων. ἥν τέ οἱ  
 than the already (given) punishments of-others; if also —  
 τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες ὑπασχνῶνται τῷ τι δια-  
 such men promise —(any one) anything they-  
 πράττονται οὐδὲν μεῖον, ἥ ἄλλοι διδόντες παρα-  
 accomplish no less, than others giving at-the-  
 χρῆμα. Δέ καὶ ἀναμνήσθητι σύ, τί προτελέσας  
 instant. And also recollect yourself. what προ-τελεσαν

ἵμιν ἔλαβες ἡμᾶς συμμάχους. Οἰσδ' ὅτι  
to-us having-taken us (as) allies. You-know that (it was)

οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεῖς ἀληθεύσειν, ἢ ἔλαβες,  
nothing; | but having-been-trusted to-speak-the-truth, what you-say,

*ἐπῆρας*

[but trusting that you spoke the truth in what you said,] you-induced  
τοσούτους ἀνδρώπους τε συστρατεύεσθαι τε καὶ  
such-a-number (of) men not-only to-fight-with (you), but-also

συγκατεργάσασθαι σοι ἀρχὴν οἱ μόνον ἀξίαν  
to-conquer-with you (a) government not only worth

τριάκοντα ταλάντων, ὅσα οὗτοι οἴονται  
thirty talents. which (sum) they think (that they)

δεῖν νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων.  
ought now to-receive (from you), but many-times-more.

Οὐκ οὖν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτο τὸ πιστεύεσθαι σε,  
(Is) not therefore first indeed this | the to-confide in-you,

τὸ καὶ κατεργασάμενον  
[the confidence placed in you,] — (that) even (which) secured

σοι τὴν βασιλείαν πιπράσκεται ὑπὸ σου τούτων  
for-you the kingdom sold by you (for) this

τῶν χρημάτων. Ἰδι δὴ ἀναμνήσθετι, πῶς μέγα  
— money. Well-then truly recollect, how great

τότε ἦγοῦ καταπράξασθαι  
you then considered (it) to-accomplish (those things) which

νῦν ἔχεις καταστρεψάμενος. Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶδ' εὖ,  
now you-have having-conquered. I indeed know well

ὅτι εὑξώ ἀν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα  
that you would have-prayed (for) the (things) now accomplished

μᾶλλον καταπραχθῆναι σοι, ἢ πολλαπλάσια  
rather to-be-effected for-you, than (for) many-times

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. Τοίνυν  
that (sum) of — money (might) be. Therefore

ἴμοι δοκεῖ εἶναι μεῖζον βλάβος καὶ αἰσχιον μή  
to-me it-seems to-be (a) greater detriment and disgrace not

νῦν κατασχεῖν τὸ ταῦτα, ἢ τότε μὴ  
now to-have-retained — these (things), than then not

λαβεῖν, δσωπερ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίον  
to-have-acquired (them), as (it is) more-grievous from (the) rich  
γενέσδαι πένητα, ἢ μὴ πλουτῆσαι ἢ  
to-become poor, | than not to-have-been-rich if (from the)  
ἀρχήν, καὶ δσω  
beginning, [than not to have been rich at all,] and in as-much-as (it is)  
λυπηρότερον φανῆναι ἴδιωτην ἐκ  
more-distressing to-appear (a) private (person) from (having been a)  
βασιλέως, ἢ μὴ βασιλεῦσαι ἢ ἀρχήν.  
king, than not to-have-reigned | if (from the) beginning [at all].

Οὐκ οὖν μὲν ἐπίστασαι ὅτι οἱ γενόμενοι  
Do-'you not therefore indeed 'know that — (those) 'having  
νῦν ὑπήκοοι σοι ἐπείσθησαν οὐ τῇ  
now 'become subject to-you 'have not 'submitted | (for) —  
τῇ φιλίᾳ ἀρχεσδαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἀλλ'  
your love [through love of you] to-be-governed by you, but  
ἀνάγκῃ, καὶ ὅτι ἀν ἐπιχειροῖεν πάλιν  
through-necessity, and that 'they would 'endeavour again  
γίγνεσδαι ἐλεύθεροι, εἰ μὴ τις φόβος  
to-become free, if (there were) not some fear (that)  
κατέχοι; Ποτέρως οὖν οἴει αὐτούς  
might-restrain (them)? Whether therefore do-you-think (that) they  
ἀν τε μᾶλλον φοβεισδαι, καὶ σωφρονεῖν  
would also 'be more 'restrained-by-fear, and 'conduct (them-  
τὰ πρὸς σέ,  
selves more) 'discreetly (and obediently) in-the (affairs) concerning you,  
εἰ ὅρῶεν τοὺς στρατιώτας οὖτα διακειμένους σοι,  
if they-should-see the soldiers so dispose l to-yon,  
ώς νῦν τε μένοντας, εἰ σὺ ἀν κελεύεις, τ' ἀν  
as now also remaining, if you would request (it), and —  
ἐλθοντας αὐδίς ταχὺ, εἰ δέοι, τε ἀλλοις  
having-come back speedily, if it-is-required, also (that) others  
ἀκούοντας πολλὰ ἀγαδά τούτων  
hearing much good (concerning you) of-those (soldiers  
περὶ σοῦ, ἀν παραγενέσδαι  
who have been in service) with you, would join (you)

**ταχὺ** ὅπότε βούλοιο· **ἢ** εἰ κατα-  
immediately when you-might-wish (it); or if they-should-form-a-un-  
**δοξάσειαν** **ἄλλους** **ἀ** μητ' ἐλθεῖν σοι,  
favourable-opinion (of you, that) others would not go to-you,  
**δί** **ἀπιστίαν** **ἐκ** τῶν **νῦν** γεγενη-  
through distrust (arising) from the (things that) now have-hap-  
**μένων,** **τε** **τούτους** **εἰναι** εὖνουστέρους αὐτοῖς  
pened, also (that) these (Greeks) are better-affected to-them  
**ἢ** **σοί;** **Ἄλλὰ** **μὴ**  
(namely, your unconquered subjects,) than to-yourself? But certainly

**ὑπειξάν** **σοι** οὐδέ γε λειφθέντε  
(that these people) submitted to-you not at-least (as) deficient  
**πλήθει** **ἡμῶν,** **ἄλλ'** **ἀπορίᾳ** προστατῶν.  
in-number (to) us, but (as being) in-want of-leaders.

**Οὐκ** οὖν καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος, μὴ λάβωσι  
(Is there) not therefore even this (as a) danger, lest they take

**προστάτας** **τινας** αὐτῶν τούτων, οἱ νομίζουσιν  
(as) leaders some of-those same, who consider

**ἀδικεῖσθαι** **ὑπὸ** **σοῦ,** **ἢ** καὶ τοὺς Λακε-  
(themselves) wronged by you, or even the Lacede-  
**δαιμονίους** **χρείττονας** **τούτων,**  
dæmonians better (and more powerful than) those,  
**ἔὰν** μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται **ὑπισχνῶνται** συστρατεύεσθαι  
if indeed the soldiers promise to-serve-in-the-army  
**αὐτοῖς** προδυμότρον **ἀν** νῦν ἀναπράξωσι τὰ  
with-them more-spiritedly (if) 'they would now exact the

**παρὰ** **σοῦ,** δὲ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι συναινέσωσιν  
(money) from you, and the Lacedæmonians should-agree-with

**αὐτοῖς** **ταῦτα** **διὰ** **τὸ** **δεῖσθαι** **τῆς**  
hem (about) these (things) through | the to-want [want] of the  
**τιρατιᾶς;** **Ὄτι** γε μὴν οἱ Θράκες γενόμενοι  
That at-least certainly the Thracians | having-become

**ὑπὸ** **σοὶ** **ἀν** πολὺ προδυμότερον ἰοιεν  
under you [subjugated by you] would much more-promptly ge-  
**ἐπὶ** σε **ἢ** σύν **σοὶ,** οὐκ ἀδηλον· γάρ μὲν **σοὶ**  
against you than with you, (is) not doubtful; for indeed you

κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάχει αὐτοῖς, δὲ σοῦ κρατοῦ  
 conquering slavery is for-them, but you being-con-  
 μένων, ἐλευθερία. Δὲ καὶ εἰ ἦδη δεῖ προνο-  
 quered, liberty. And also if it-is now necessary to-pro-  
 εῖσθαι τι τῆς χώρας, ὡς οὖσης σῆς, ποτέρως  
 εἰσθε something for-the country, as being yours, whether  
 ἀν οἵει αὐτὴν εἶναι μᾶλλον ἀπαδή κακῶν,  
 you may 'think it to-be more free-from evil,  
 εἰ αὐτοὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπολαβόντες  
 if they the soldiers having-received (from you) what  
 ἔγκαλοῦσιν καταλιπόντες εἰρήνην οἴχοιντο, ἢ εἰ  
 they-claim leaving peace should-depart, or if  
 οὗτοί τε μένοιεν ὡς ἐν πολεμίᾳ,  
 these (soldiers should) also remain as in (a) hostile (country),  
 σύ τε πειρῶ ξεχων ἄλλους πλείονας  
 you also should-endeavour having other (soldiers) more-numerous (than)  
 τούτων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι, δεομένους τῶν  
 these to-encamp-over-against (them), wanting —  
 ἐπιτηδείων; Δὲ ποτέρως πλείον ἀργύριον ἀν  
 provisions? And whether more money might  
 ἀναλαθείη, εἰ τοῦτο τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθείη,  
 be-spent, if that — (which) is-due should-be-paid,  
 ἢ εἰ τε ταῦτα ὀφείλοιντο, τε δέοι  
 than if also this (money were left) due, and it-were-necessary  
 σε μισθοῦσθαι ἄλλους κρείττονας τούτων;  
 (that) you should-hire other (troops) better (than) these?  
 Ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδη, ὡς ἐδήλου πρὸς ἐμὲ, τοῦτο  
 But — Heraclides, as he-declared to me, this  
 τὸ ἀργύριον δοκεῖ εἶναι πάμπολυ. Ἡ μὴν ἐστι  
 — money seems to-be very-great. — Certainly it-is  
 γε πολύ ἐλαττον  
 at-least (a) much smaller (or easier affair) now for-you both  
 λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι τοῦτο, ἢ, πρὶν  
 to take this and pay this, than, before (that)  
 ἥμας ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σε, δέκατον μέρος  
 we come to you, (to take or pay the) tenth part

*τούτου.* Γὰρ ἐστιν οὐ ἀριθμός ὁ ὄρι-  
of-it. For it-is not (the) number (or amount) — (that) de-  
ζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις  
termines the much and the little, but the power  
τε τοῦ ἀποδιδόντος καὶ τοῦ λαμβάνοντος.  
not-only of — paying but-also of — taking (and

Δέ νῦν ἡ πρόσοδος σοὶ κατ' ἑνιαυτὸν  
receiving). But now the income to-you for (the) year  
ἔσται πλείων, ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ πάντα ἀ ἔκέν-  
will-be more, than before — all which you-had-pos-  
τησο. Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ Σεύθη, προενοούμην ταῦτα  
sessed. I indeed, O Seuthes, have-considered these (things)  
ὡς ὄντος φίλου σου, ὅπως τε σύ δοκοίης ἄξιος  
as being (a) friend of-you, so-that also you may-appear worthy  
ῶν ἀγαθῶν οἱ θεοί ἔδωκαν σοι, ἐγὼ  
of-the good-things — (that the) gods have-given you, | (and) I  
τε μὴ διαφθαρείην ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ.  
also (that) I-might not be-ruined in the army

Γὰρ οἶδι εὖ,  
[and that I might not lose all credit in the army]. For know well,  
ὅτι ἐγὼ νῦν οὔτ' βουλόμενος ἀν δυνηθείην ποιῆσαι  
that I now neither wishing could I-be-able to-do  
κακῶς σὺν ταύτῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ, οὔτ' εἰ ἀν πάλιν  
narm with this — army, nor if 'I might again  
βουλοίμην βοηθῆσαι, ἀν γενοίμην ἴχανός.  
desire to-assist (you), might I-be able.

Γὰρ οὕτω ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειτα πρὸς ἐμέ. Καίτηι  
For thus the army (is) disposed to me. | And-certain'y  
ποιοῦμαι αὐτὸν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσιν,  
I-make you yourself to-give-witness with (the) gods knowing.

ὅτι  
[and I call on you and the gods, knowing the truth, to witness,] that 'I  
οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ σοῦ οὐδέντιν εἴπι τοῖς στρατιώταις,  
— 'have from you nothing for the soldiers,  
οὔτε πώποτε ἤτησα εἰς τὸ ἴδιον  
nor have-'I ever 'asked (of you) for — (my) private (use)

τὰ ἔκείνων, οὐτε ἀπήγτησα  
the (things belonging to) them, nor have-I-asked-for (that) which  
ὑπέσχον μοι. Ὁμνυμι σοι δὲ ἀποδιδόντος  
you-promised me. I-swear to-you indeed (that) offering

ἄν μηδὲ δέξασθαι, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρα-  
(pay to me) I would not 'have-received (it), unless also the sol-  
τῶται ἔμελλον συναπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἔκεί-  
diers were-about to-receive-together-with (me) the (pay) of-them-  
τῶν. Γὰρ ἦν αἰσχρὸν διαπεπρᾶχαι μὲν  
selves. For it-would-have-been disgraceful to-have-accomplished indeed  
τὰ ἐμὰ, δὲ ἐμὲ περιδεῖν τὰ  
-- my-own (affairs), | but (for) me to-have-neglected the (affairs)  
ἔκείνων ἔχοντα κακῶς,  
of-them having (themselves) ill, [but for me to neglect their

ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώ-  
affairs when in an unsatisfactory condition,] otherwise also even hon-  
μενον ὑπ' ἔκείνων. Καίτοι Ἡρακλείδη γε  
oured by them. Though-indeed to-Heraclides at-least  
πάντα δοκεῖ εἶναι λῆπτος, πρὸς ἔχειν τὸ  
all seems to-be (a) trifle, — (compared) to-having —  
ἀργύριον ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου. Ἔγὼ δὲ, ὦ Σεύδη,  
money by all means. I indeed, O Seuthes,  
νομίζω οὐδὲν κτῆμα εἶναι κάλλιον οὐδὲ λαμ-  
think (that) no possession to-be more-beautiful or more-  
πρότερον ἀνδρί, ἄλλως τε καὶ  
illustrious 'in (a) 'man, | otherwise also even [especially] 'in (a)  
ἀρχοντι, ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναιό-  
'ruler, (than) virtue and justice and gene-  
τητος. Γὰρ ὁ ἔχων ταῦτα πλούτει μὲν  
rosity. For — (he) having these (things) is-rich indeed  
δυτῶν πολλῶν φίλων, δὲ καὶ πλούτει  
(being) (having) many friends, and also rich (in)  
ἄλλων βουλομένω γενέσθαι, καὶ μὲν  
others wishing to-become (his friends), and indeed (when)  
πρᾶττων εὖ ἔχει τοὺς συνησθησομένους,  
well he-has — (those) rejoicing-with (him),

ἐὰν δὲ σφαλῆ τι,  
 [if indeed he-falls (in) any-thing, [in reverse of fortune,]  
 σπανίζει  
 he-wants  
 οὐ τῶν βοηθησόντων.  
 not — (those) helping (him). But (enough) for  
 εἰ μήτε κατέμαδες ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν ἔργων,  
 if you-'have neither learned from — my actions,  
 οὐτὶ ήν φίλος σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς,  
 tha. I-was (a) friend to-you from — mind, [at heart,] nor  
 δύνασαι γνῶναι τοῦτο ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν  
 (that you) have-been-able to-have-known this from — my  
 λόγων, ἀλλὰ κατανόησον πάντως τοὺς λόγους τῶν  
 words, but-yet consider by-all-means the words of-the  
 στρατιωτῶν· γάρ παρῆσθα, καὶ ἤκουες, ἃ<sup>ν</sup>  
 soldiers; for you-were-present, and you-heard, what  
 ἔλεγον οἱ βουλόμενοι ψέγειν ἐμὲ. Γάρ κατη-  
 they-said, — (those) wishing to-asperse me. For they-  
 γόρουν μου μὲν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὡς ποιόμην  
 accused me indeed to (the) Lacedæmonians, that I-made  
 πλείονος περὶ σε η̄ Λακεδαιμονίους· δ'  
 more — (of) you than (of the) Lacedæmonians; and  
 αὐτοὶ ἐνεκάλουν ἐμοὶ, ὡς μᾶλλον μέλοι μοι,  
 they charged me, that it-'was more (a) 'care to-me,  
 ὅπως τὰ σὰ ἔχοι καλῶς  
 !that — your (affairs) might-have (themselves) well [that your  
 η̄ ὅπως τὰ εἰστῶν· ἔφασαν  
 affairs might prosper] or than the (affairs) of-them; they-said  
 δὲ με καὶ ἔχειν δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ. Καίτοι  
 indeed (that) I even had presents from you And-yet  
 πότερον οἴει αὐτοὺς ἐνιδόντας μοι τινὰ  
 whether do-you-think (that) they having-seen in-me some  
 κακόνοιαν πρὸς σέ, αἰτιᾶσθαι με ἔχειν τὰ ταῦτα  
 ill-will toward you, accused me of-having — these  
 δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ, η̄ κατανοήσαντης πολλὴ  
 presents from you, or perceiving (in me) much  
 προδυμίαν περὶ σε; Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι ἀνθρώπους  
 seal for you? I indeed think (that) men

νομίζειν, εἰνοιαν δεῖν ἀποκεῖσθαι τούτω  
 consider (that) gratitude ought to-be-laid-up for-those persons,  
 παρ' οὖν τις δωρά ἀν λαμβάνῃ. Δέ σὺ πρὶν μὲν  
 from whom any gift may be-received. But you before indeed  
 ἔμε ὑπηρετῆσαι σοι τι, ἐδέξω ἥδεως καὶ  
 I had-done you any service, gave favourably —  
 δημασι καὶ φωνῇ καὶ ξενίοις, καὶ οὐκ  
 looks and words and gifts-of-hospitality, | and 'had not  
 ἐνεπίμπλασο ὑπισχνούμενος  
 'filled-up [and did not satisfy yourself] promising  
 δσα ἔσοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας  
 how-great would-be (my rewards); when indeed you-had-accomplished  
 ἀ ἐβούλου, καὶ γεγένησαι μέγιστος δσον  
 what you-wished, and (that you) have-become as-great as  
 ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην, τολμᾶς περιο-  
 I was-able (to assist you to become), can-you-bear to-see-with-  
 ρᾶν νῦν με δντα οὕτω ἀτιμον ἐν τοῖς στρα-  
 indifference now me being thus dishonoured among the sol-  
 τιώταις; Ἀλλὰ μὴν, πιστεύω δτι καὶ τὸν χρόνον  
 diers? But certainly, I-trust that even — time  
 διδάξειν σε δόξει σοι ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ σε  
 will-teach you (that) it-will-seem (best) to-you to-pay-the-debt, and you  
 αὐτόν γε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι ὄρωντά τοὺς  
 yourself at-least 'will not 'bear seeing — (those)  
 προεμένους εὐεργεσίαν σοὶ ἐγκαλοῦντας  
 freely-bestowing benefits on-you accusing (and reproaching)  
 σοι. Οὖν δέομαι σοῦ, δταν ἀποδιδῶς, προδυμεῖσθαι  
 you. Therefore I-entreat you, when you-pay, you-will-study  
 ποιῆσαι ἔμε τοιοῦτον παρὰ τοῖς στρατιώταις οἰονπερ  
 to-make me the-same with the soldiers as-altogether  
 καὶ παρέλαβες.  
 even (when) you-received (me into your service).

'Ο Σεύθης ἀκούσας ταῦτα κατηράσατο  
 — Seuthes hearing these (things) uttered-imprecations-agair w  
 τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν  
 the author of — not long-since paying the wage

(καὶ πάντες ὑπώπτευσαν τοῦτον εἶναι Ἡρα-  
(and all suspected this (one) to-be Hera-  
κλείδην·) γὰρ ἐγώ, ἔφη, οὐτε διενοήθη  
clides;) for I, said-he, [Seuthes,] never intended  
πώποτε ἀποστερῆσαι, τε ἀποδώσω.  
at-any-time to-deprive (the men of their pay), and I-will-pay (it).  
 Ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν  
— Xenophon then again said: Since therefore  
διανοῇ ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν ἐγώ δέομαι σου ἀποδιδόναι  
you-are-resolved to-pay, now I entreat you to-pay  
 δι’ ἐμοῦ, καὶ μὴ περιιδεῖν με διὰ σὲ  
(them) through me, and not to-neglect me through you  
ἔχοντα ἀνομοίως νῦν τε ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ  
having (myself) differently now also in the army  
 καὶ ὅτε ἀφικόμεδα πρὸς σὲ. Ὁ δὲ  
— (than) when we-came to you. — (Seuthes) indeed  
 εἶπεν· Ἀλλ’ οὐτ’ ἔσῃ ἀτιμότερος τοῖς  
said: But you-will not be more-dishonoured among-the  
στρατιώταις δι’ ἐμὲ, ἂν τε μένης παρ’ ἐμοὶ,  
soldiers through me, should also you-remain with me,  
 ᔁχων μόνον χιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἐγὼ τε  
having only heavy-armed-men, I will also  
 ἀποδώσω σοὶ τὰ χωρία, καὶ τὰλλα ἀ  
 'give you — (strong) places, and the-other (things) which  
 ὑπεσχόμεν. Δέ ὁ πάλιν εἶπε·  
 I-promised (you). But — (Xenophon) again said: (That)  
 Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὐτως οὐχ  
 these (things) indeed (should) have (themselves) so (is) not  
 οἷόν τε· δὲ ἀπόπεμπε ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μήν, ἔφη  
 possible; but send us away. And certainly, said  
 Σεύδης γε οἴδα ὃν καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον σοι  
 Seuthes 'I at-least know (it is) being even safer for-you  
 μένειν ἐμοὶ η̄ ἀπιέναι. Ὁ δὲ πάλιν  
 to-remain with-me than to-depart. — (Xenophon) indeed again  
 εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἔπαινω τὴν σὴν πρόνοιαν.  
 said: But indeed I-praise — your forethought.

Ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε. Δ' ὅποι ἐγώ<sup>I</sup>  
For-me indeed to-remain (is) not possible. But wherever I

ἂν ὁ ἐντιμότερος, νῦμιζε καὶ τυῦτο ἔσεσθαι  
may be more-honoured, know (that) even this will-be (a)  
ἀγαθὸν σοὶ. Ἐντεῦδεν Σεύδης λέγει·  
good (thing) for-you. Then Seuthes says:

Αργύριον μὲν ἔχω οὐκ, ἀλλ' η̄ τι μικρόν,  
Money indeed I-have not, but really-only some little,  
καὶ τοῦτο δίδωμι σοι, τάλαντον. δὲ  
and this I-will-give you, (namely a) talent; (I have) however  
ἕξακοσίους βοῦς, καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια,  
six-hundred oxen, and sheep about four-thousand,  
καὶ ἀνδράποδα εἰς ἑκατόν καὶ εἴκοσι.  
and slaves to (the number of a) hundred and twenty.

Λαβὼν ταῦτα, καὶ τοὺς ὁμήρους τῶν ἀδικη-  
Having-taken these, and the hostages of — (those) acting-  
σάντων σε, προσλαβὼν, ἀπιδι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν  
unjustly to-you, (and) having-received (them) depart. — Xenophon  
γελάσας εἶπεν. Ἡν οὖν ταῦτα μὴ  
having-laughed said: If therefore these (things) 'do not

ἔξικνῆται εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνος φήσω  
'amount to (a sufficiency) for-the pay, (for) whom shall-I-say

ἔχειν τάλαντον; Οὐκ ἀρ', ἐπειδὴ καὶ  
(that I) have (the) talent? (Is it) not therefore, since even  
ἐπικίνδυνόν ἔστι μοί, ἀμεινον ἀπιόντά γε φυλάτ-  
danger is to-me, better going-away at-least to-guard-  
τεσθαι πέτρους; Δὲ ἦκουες τὰς ἀπειλάς.  
myself (against) stones? 'You indeed 'heard the threats

Τότε δὴ μὲν ἔμεινε αὐτού.

Then truly indeed he-remained there (that day).

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τε ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς ἀ ὑπέ-  
But on-the next-day 'he also 'gave to-them what he-had-  
σχετο, καὶ συνέπεμψε τοὺς ἐλάσοντας  
promised, and he-sent-with (them) — (those) driving  
ταῦτα. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ τέως μὲν  
these (battle). The soldiers however in-the-mean-time indeed

ἔλεγον, ὡς Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὡς Σεύδην οἰκήσων  
 said, that Xenophon was-gone to Seuthes, dwelling  
 καὶ ἀποληψόμενος ἀ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ·  
 (with him) and having-received what he-promised him;  
 δε ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν ἤκουντα τε ἡσθησαν  
 bū. when they-saw him coming they-'were not-only 'delighted  
 καὶ προσέδεον. Δέ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρ-  
 εut-also ran-to (him). But Xenophon when he-saw Char-  
 μῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· Ταῦτα, ἔφη, καὶ  
 minus as also Polynicus: These (things), said-he, 'have even  
 δι' ὑμᾶς σέσωσται τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ ἐγὼ παρα-  
 through you 'been-saved for-the army, and I de-  
 δίδωμι αὐτὰ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαδέμενοι διά-  
 liver them to-you; you indeed having-disposed-of (them) dis-  
 δοτε τῇ στρατιᾳ. Οἱ οὖν μὲν,  
 tribute (the proceeds) to-the soldiers. — (Those) therefore indeed,  
 παραλαβόντες καὶ καταστήσαντες λαφυρο-  
 having-received (the things) and having-appointed booty-  
 πώλας, ἐπώλουν, καὶ εἰχον πολλὴν αἰτίαν.  
 sellers, sold (the things), and they-had much blame.  
 Δέ Ξενοφῶν οὐ προσῆι, ἀλλὰ ἦν φανερὸς  
 Bū. Xenophon 'did not 'go-near (them), but was openly  
 παρασκευοζόμενος οἰκαδε· γάρ πω ψῆφος  
 preparing for-home; for as-yet (a) vote (or sentence)  
 οὐ ἐπῆκτο αὐτῷ Ἄδηνησι περὶ φυγῆς.  
 'was not 'proposed against-him at-Athens respecting banishment.  
 Δέ οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ προσελθόντες  
 But — (his) friends in the camp going-to  
 αὐτῷ ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν, πρὶν ἀπα-  
 him requested (that he would) not depart, before he-might  
 γάγοι τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ παραδοίη Θίβρων.  
 lead-off the army, and deliver (it) to-Thibron

## CHAPTER VI.I

Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον· καὶ  
 THENCE they-sailed-across to Lampsacus; and  
 Εὐκλείδης μάντις, Φλιάσιος, ὁ νιός Κλεαγόρου,  
 Euclides (the) augur, (a) Phliasian, the son of Cleagorus,  
 τοῦ γεγραφότος τὰ ἐνύπνια ἐν Λυκείῳ, ἀπαντᾶ  
 the (one) having-written the dreams in (the) Lyceum, came-to-meet  
 τῷ Ξενοφῶντι. Οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι,  
 — Xenophon. This (person) congratulated — Xenophon,  
 ὅτι ἔσεσθαι, καὶ ἥρωτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον  
 that he-had-been-saved, and inquired-of him how-much gold  
 ἔχει. 'Ο δὲ ἐπομόσας αὐτῷ εἶπεν,  
 he-has. — (Xenophon) indeed having-taken-an-oath to-him said,  
 ἵ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μηδὲ ἴκανὸν ἐφόδιον  
 (that) there-was certainly to-be not sufficient travelling-expenses  
 ἀπιόντι οἴκαδε, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ  
 departing for-home, unless he-sold — (his) horse and  
 ἀ εἰχεν ἀμφ' αὐτὸν. Δ' οὐκ ἐπί-  
 what he-had about him. But — (Euclides) did not 'be-  
 στευεν αὐτῷ. Δ' ἐπεὶ Λαμψακηνοὶ ἐπεμψαν  
 lieve him. But when (the) Lampsaceans had-sent  
 ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἔδνε τῷ Ἀπόλ-  
 gifts-of-hospitality to — Xenophon, and he-sacrificed to — Apollo.  
 λων, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ὁ Εὐκλείδης  
 he-placed-beside (him) — Euclides; — Euclides  
 δὲ ἰδὼν τὰ ιερεῖα εἶπεν, ὅτι πείδοιτο αὐτῷ  
 indeed seeing the victims said, that he-believed him  
 μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. Αλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτε  
 [not to-be [not to have] riches. But I-know, said-he, that  
 κἄν ποτέ μέλλῃ ἔσεσθαι τι  
 even-if (money) at-any-time should-be-about to-be (yours) some  
 ἐμπόδιον φαίνεται, ἐάν μηδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαντῷ  
 impediment shows-itself, if no other, you yourself

**Ο Ξενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα.** — Xenophon assents to-these (things). — (Euclides, indeed said. — (However) — Jupiter — Meilichius is (a) ἐπέδοιτο· καὶ ἐπήρετο, εἰ ποτὲ ἤδη θύσειν, hindrance: and inquired, if ever now (that he) sacrificed, ἔπειρ οἴκοι, ἔφη, ἐγὼ εἰώθειν θύεσθαι καὶ the-same-as at-home, said-he, I was-accustomed to-sacrifice and ὀλοκαυτεῖν ὑμῖν. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἔξι δτου offer-holocausts for-you. But — (Xenophon) said, from whatever ἀπεδήμησε οὐ τεδικέναι τῷ τούτῳ (time) he-left-home (that he) 'had not 'sacrificed to — this θεῷ. Οὖν συνεβούλευσεν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθά god. Therefore he-advised him to-sacrifice as εἰώθει, καὶ, ἔφη, συνοίσειν ue-had-been-accustomed, and, said-he, (I think that) it-will-contribute ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. Δέ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν προ- for the better. And on-the next-day — Xenophon pro- ελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐδύετο, καὶ ὠλοκαύτει χοίρους proceeding to Ophrynum sacrificed, and burned-up hogs τῷ νόμῳ πατρίῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρει. in-the manner (of his) country, and he-found-the entrails-favourable. Καὶ ταύτη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ Βίτων ἀφικεῖται καὶ And on-that — (same) day Biton arrived also ἄμα Εὐκλείδης δώσοντες χρήματα τῷ στρατεύ- together-with Euclides | having-given money to-the army; ματι· καὶ ξενοῦνται τῷ [with pay for the army;] and they-were-hospitably-entertained by — Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ λυσάμενοι ἵππον, ὃν ἀπέδοτο ξ- Xenophon, and having-redeemed (the) horse, which he-sold in Λαμψάκῳ πεντήκοντα δαρεῖκῶν, ὑποπτεύοντες Lampsacus for-fifty daries, suspecting (that) αὐτὸν πεπραχέναι δι' ἔνδειαν, δτι he had-sold (it) through want, (because) that ἥκουν αὐτὸν ἤδεσθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, ἀπέ- they-had-heard (that) he was-fond-of the horse. they-

δοσαν καὶ ἡδελον οὐκ ἀπολαβεῖν τὴν  
restored (it to him) and they-would not receive the  
τιμὴν.  
price (from him).

\*Εντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ  
Thence they-proceeded through — Troas, and  
ἐπερβάντες τὴν \*Ιδην ἀφικοῦνται πρῶτον εἰς \*Αν-  
crossing-over — Ida they-arrived first at An-  
τανδρον· εἶτα πορευόμενοι παρὰ θάλατταν  
tandrum; afterwards proceeding along (the) sea (they arrived)  
εἰς πεδίον Θήβης τῆς Λυδίας. \*Εντεῦθεν  
on (the) plain of-Thebe — (in) Lydia. Thence  
ὁδεύσαντες δὲ \*Ατραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ παρ'  
journeying through Atramyttium and Certonum by  
\*Αταρνέα ἔλαδόντες εἰς πεδίον Καίκου κατα-  
Atarneus having-come to (the) plain of-Caucus they-  
λαμβάνουσι Πέργαμον τῆς Μυσίας.  
reached Pergamus — (in) Mysia.

\*Ενταῦθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν ξενοῦται παρ'  
Here indeed Xenophon was-entertained-hospitably by  
\*Ἐλλάδι, γυναικὶ τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ \*Ερετριέως,  
Hellas, (the) wife of — Gongylus the Eretrian,  
καὶ μητρὶ Γοργίωνης καὶ Γογγύλου. Αὕτη  
and (the) mother of-Gorgion and Gongylus. This (Hellas)  
δὲ φράζει αὐτῷ, διτι εἶστιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ Πέρσης  
indeed mentions to-him, that there-was in the plain (a) Persian  
ἀνήρ \*Ασιδάτης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν,  
man (called) Asidates; this (person) she-said (that) he, [Xenophon,]  
εἰ ἔλαδοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίοις ἄνδρασι,  
if he-would-go at — night with three-hundred men,  
ἂν λαβεῖν καὶ αὐτὸν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ παῖδας,  
might capture — him, and (his) wife, and children,  
καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἴναι δὲ πολλά.  
and — (his) property; (and that this) was indeed much.  
\*Ἐπειμψε δὲ τε τὸν ἀνεψιὸν αὗτῆς καὶ Δαφνα·  
She-ends indeed also the cousin of-herself and Daphna

γόρας, ὃν ἐποιεῖτο πλείστου, καθηγησομένους  
goras, whom she-made much <sup>of</sup>, acting-as-guides (in)  
ταῦτα. Οἱ Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔχων τούτους  
these (things). — Xenophon therefore having these (men)  
παρ ἔσαντῷ ἐδύετο. Καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἡλεῖος,  
with himself sacrificed. And Basias the Elian, (an)  
μάντις παρών, εἰπεν, δτι τὰ ιερὰ εἴη κἀλλιστα  
augur being-present, said, that the victims were most-favourable  
αὐτῷ, καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ εἴη ἀλώσιμος. Λειπυήσας οὖν  
to-him, and the man might-be easily-captured. Having-supped therefore  
ἐπορεύετο τε λαβὼν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς τοὺς  
he-proceeded-forth also taking the captains — (those namely  
μάλιστα φίλους, καὶ γεγενημένους πιστοὺς διὰ  
his) greatest friends, and having-been faithful through  
παντός, ὅπως ποιήσαι εὖ αὐτούς. Δὲ καὶ  
all, in-order-that he-might-do good to-them. And also  
ἄλλοι συνεξέρχονται αὐτῷ βιασάμενοι  
others joined him having-forced-themselves (on him)  
εἰς ἔξακοσίους· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἀπῆλανον,  
to (the number of) six-hundred, but the captains 'drove  
ἴνα μὴ μεταδοῖεν τὸ μέρος  
(them) 'back, that they-'might not 'share (in) the part  
χρημάτων ὡς δὴ ἐτοίμων.  
of-things as really ready (to be taken).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ  
When however they-arrived (there) about mid night, the  
ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὄντα πέριξ τῆς τύρσιος καὶ τὰ  
slaves indeed being about the castle and the  
πλεῖστα χρήματα ἀπέδρα αὐτοὺς, παραμε-  
most (of the) things escaped them, having.  
λοῦντας, ὡς λάθοιεν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν καὶ  
neglected (them), that they-might-take Asidates himself and  
τὰ ἔκείνου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πυργομαχοῦντες  
the (property) of-him. But when assaulting they-'were  
οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν, (γὰρ ἦν ὑψηλὴ,  
not 'able to-take the castle, (for it-was high.

καὶ μεγάλη, καὶ ἔχουσα προμαχεῶνας καὶ πολιοὺς  
and large, and having battlements and many  
καὶ μαχίμους ἄνδρας,) ἐπεχειρησαν διορύττειν  
and brave men,) they-endeavoured to-dig-through (the  
τὸν πύργον. Οὐ τοῖχος δὲ ἦν ἐπ' ὅκτω  
walls of) the castle. The wall indeed was of eight.  
γηίνων πλίνθων τὸ εὖρος. Ἄμα δὲ  
earthen bricks (in) the breadth. At-the-same-time however  
τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διωρώρυκτο· καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον  
with-the (break of) day it-was-dug-through; and as the first  
διεφάνη τις ἐνδοδεν βουπόρῳ ὁβελίσκῳ  
(opening) appeared some-one from-within 'with (an) ox-piercing spit  
ἐπάταξε τοῦ ἐγγυτάτω διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρὸν· δὲ  
struck the nearest entirely-through the thigh; | and  
τὸ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν  
(for) the rest [and afterwards] shooting-arrows they-made (it)  
μηδὲ ἔτι εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς παριέναι. Δέ αἰτῶν  
no longer to-be safe to-approach. But they  
κεκραγότων καὶ πυρσενόντων, Ἰταμβέλεσις μὲν  
shouting and giving-signals-by-torches, Itambelesis indeed  
ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἔαυτοῦ ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὅπλίται  
having the force of-himself from Comania and heavy-armed  
Ἄσσυριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ἵππεῖς, ὡς ὅγδοήκοντα,  
(men) Assyrians and Hyrcanian cavalry, about eighty,  
καὶ οὗτοι μισδοφόροι βασιλέως, καὶ ἄλλοι  
and these mercenaries 'of (the) king, and other  
πελτασταὶ εἰς ὅκτακοσίους, ἐκβοηδοῦσιν  
targeteers to (the number of) eight-hundred, came-to (their)  
δὲ ἄλλοι ἐκ Παρθενίου, δὲ ἄλλοι  
assistance; and (also) others (came) from Parthenium, and others  
ἴξ Ἀππολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίον χωρίων,  
from Apollonia and from the near places,  
καὶ ἵππεῖς.  
likewise cavalry.

\*Ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὴν ὥρα σκοπεῖν, πῶς ἢ ἀφοδος  
Now truly it-was time to-consider, how the retreat

ἔσται· καὶ λαβόντες, ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ  
 would-be; and taking, as-many-as there-were oxen and  
 πρόβατα, ἥλιαννον, καὶ ποιησάμενοι  
 sheep, they-drove (them) off, and having-placed (the)  
 ἄνδράποδα ἐντὸς πλαισίου· οὐ οὕτω προσέχοντες  
 slaves within (the) square; not so-much as-applying  
 τὸν νοῦν τοῖς χρήμασιν, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἀφοδος  
 the mind to — (these) things, but (that) the retreat  
 μὴ εἴη φυγὴ, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ χρήματα  
 might not be (like a) flight, if leaving-behind the things  
 ἀπίστειν, καὶ τε οἱ πολέμιοι εἰεν θρασύτεροι,  
 they-should-depart, and also the enemy might-become more-bold,  
 καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀδυνάτεροι· δὲ νῦν ἀπήεσαν ὡς  
 and the soldiers discouraged; but now they-retreated as  
 μαχούμενοι περὶ τῶν χρημάτων. Δὲ ἐπεὶ  
 fighting about the things (captured). But when  
 Γογγύλος ἤώρα τοὺς Ἑλληνας ὅλιγους μὲν,  
 Gorgylus saw the Greeks (to be) few indeed,  
 δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους πολλοὺς, καὶ αὐτὸς  
 but — (those) pressing-on (them) many, — he  
 ἔξερχεται βίᾳ τῆς μητρὸς, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν  
 sallied-forth despite — (his) mother, | having the force  
 ἑαυτοῦ,  
 Βουλόμενος συμ-  
 of-himself, [having his own force with him,] wishing to-par-  
 μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς συνεβοήθει  
 ticipate (in) the action; but also Procles came-to  
 ἐξ Ἀλισάρνης καὶ Τευθρανίας,  
 (their) assistance from Halisarne and (likewise) Teuthranias,  
 ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. Οἱ δὲ περὶ<sup>i</sup>  
 (he) who (was descended) from Damaratus. The (men) indeed with  
 Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ ἥδη πάνυ ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν  
 Xenophon when already much oppressed by the  
 τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, πορευόμενοι  
 arrows and slings, (while) marching-forward 'in (a)  
 κύκλῳ, ὅπως ἔχοιεν τὰ ὅπλα προ-  
 circle, so-that they-might-have — (their) shields (as a defence) against

τῶν τοξευμάτων, μόλις διαβαίνουσι τὸν ποταμόν  
 the arrows, 'they with-difficulty crossed-over the river  
 Κάικον, ἐγγὺς οἱ ἡμίσεις τετρωμένοι. Καὶ  
 Caucas, near the half (of them) being-wounded. And  
 ἐνταῦθα Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς τιτρω-  
 here Agasias (the) Stymphalian, (a) captain, was  
 σκεται, μαχόμενος τὸν πάντα χρόνον πρὸς τοὺς  
 wounded, fighting the whole time against the  
 πολεμίους. Καὶ διασώζονται, ἔχοντες ὡς διακόσια  
 enemy. And they-were-saved, having about two-hundred  
 ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα ὅσου θύματα.  
 slaves and cattle as-much-as (was required for the) sacrifices.  
 Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θυσάμενος, ἐξάγει  
 But the next-day — Xenophon having-sacrificed, lead-out  
 τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα νύκτωρ, ὅπως ὅτι ἔλθοι  
 the whole army at-night, in-order that he-might-go (a)  
 μακροτάτην τῆς Λυδίας εἰς τὸ  
 very-long (way) through — Lydia for the (purpose, that the  
 μὴ φοβεῖσθαι διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐγγὺς,  
 Persian) 'might not be-alarmed | through the to-be near, [by  
 ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἄσι-  
 his proximity,] but be-'off (his) 'guard. But — Asi-  
 δάτης ἀκούσας, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν εἴη τεθυμένος πάλιν  
 dates hearing, that Xenophon has-been-sacrificing again  
 ἐπ' αὐτὸν, καὶ ἦξοι  
 (about marching) against him, and (that) he-would-come (back)  
 παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐξαυλίζεται εἰς  
 with-all the army, 'he [the Persian] 'went-out to  
 κώμας ἔχούσας ὑπὸ τὸ πόλισμα Παρθένιον.  
 villages having (themselves) under the town (of) Parthenium.  
 Ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγχάνουσιν  
 Here — (those) with Xenophon come-upon  
 αὐτῷ, καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν, καὶ γυναικα, καὶ  
 him, and captured him, and (his) wife, and  
 παιδας, καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, καὶ πάντα τὰ  
 (his) children, and — (his) horses. | and all the

τὰ δυτα· καὶ οὗτο τὰ πρότερα  
— being (his); [and all his property;] and thus the first  
ιερὰ ἀπέβη. Ἐπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται  
sacrifices happened (truly). Afterwards they again arrived  
εἰς Πέργαμον. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὐκ  
at Pergamus. Here — Xenophon could not  
γῆπάσατο τὸν θεὸν· γάρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες, καὶ  
complain (of) the god; for also the Lacedæmonians, and  
οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ, καὶ οἱ στρα-  
the captains and the other generals, and the sol-  
τιῶται, συνέπραττον ὅτε λαμβάνειν ἔξαίρετα  
diers, agreed that he-should-take select-portions  
καὶ ἵππους, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ τἄλλα· ὅτε  
— (namely) horses, and yokes-of-oxen, and other-things; so-that  
εἶναι ἡδη ἰκανὸν καὶ ποιεῖν εὖ ἄλλον.  
he-was now able even to-do good to-another.

\*Ἐν τούτοι Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ  
After this Thibron having-arrived he-received the  
στράτευμα καὶ συμμίξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ,  
army and having-mixed (it) with-the other Grecian

ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον  
(force), he-made-war against Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus.

Οἵδε ἄρχοντες δὲ τῆς χώρας βασιλέως,  
Those governors indeed of-the territories 'of (the) king,  
ὅσην ἐπήλθομεν· Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας·  
as-much-as we-passed-through (were these): of-Lydia, Artimas;  
Φρυγίας Ἀρτακάμας· Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας  
of-Phrygia, Artacamas; of-Lycenia and Cappadocia,  
Μιθριδάτης· Κιλικίας Συέννεσις· Φοινίκης καὶ  
Mithridates; of-Cilicia, Suennesis; of-Phoenicia and  
Ἀραβίας Δέρνης· Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσυς·  
Arabia, Dernes; of-Syria and Assyria Belesys;  
Βαβυλῶνος Ῥωπάρας· Μηδίας Ἀρβάκας· Φασι-  
of-Babylon, Rhoparas; of-Media, Arbacas; of-the-Pha-  
νῶν καὶ Ἐσπεριτῶν Τιρίβαζος· (δὲ Καρδοῦχοι,  
sians and the-Hesperitæ, Tiribazus; (for (the) Cardouchi,

δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαιοὶ καὶ Μάκρωνες,  
and also (the) Chalybes and (the) Chaldaean and (the) Macrones  
καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι καὶ Τίβαρηνοι  
and (the) Colchians and (the) Mossynoeci and (the) Tibareni  
αὐτόνομοι·) Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας·  
(were) independent-nations; of-Paphlagonia, Corylas; of (the)  
Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος· τῶν Θρακῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ  
'Bithynians Pharnabazus; of — (those) Thracians in Europe,  
Σεύθης. Ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς συμπάσης ὁδού τῆς  
Seuthes. (The) enumeration indeed of-the entire route of-the  
ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως διακόσιοι δεκα-  
ascent and descent (is) two-hundred (and) fif-  
πέντε σταδμοὶ, χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πεντήκοντα  
teen days'-march, one-thousand one-hundred (and) five  
πέντε παρασάγγαι, τρισμύρια τετρακισχίλια  
five parasangs, thirty-thousand (and) four-thousand  
εξακόσια πεντήκοντα στάδια. Πλῆθος  
(and) six-hundred (and) fifty stadia. (The) amount-of  
χρόνου τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως  
time (spent in) the ascent and descent (being)  
ἐνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.  
a-year and three months.

























**PROPERTY OF UNIVERSITY  
OF WASHINGTON LIBRARIES  
GRADUATE READING ROOM  
NON-CIRCULATING**

3620